UTTAR PRADESH

Stormwater Design Manual

Standards for the planning, design, construction, operation and maintenance of stormwater systems

Preserve | Retain | Detain | Convey | Maintain

Draft v1.0

November 2026

Prepared by

Neer.

About this draft

Status. This is Draft v1.0 of the *Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual*. It was prepared by Neer as a proposed stormwater design standard for Uttar Pradesh.

Not adopted. This Manual has not been adopted, notified or endorsed by the Government of Uttar Pradesh or by any of its departments, local bodies or agencies. In particular, it has not been adopted, notified or endorsed by the Housing and Urban Planning Department, the Urban Development Department (UDD), any development authority or industrial development authority, any Nagar Nigam or other local body, UP Jal Nigam (Urban) or UP Jal Nigam (Rural), or the Irrigation and Water Resources Department (I&WRD). Where it names a body, such as the Directorate of Local Bodies, the Town and Country Planning Department (TCPD), the Revenue Department, the UP Ground Water Department, the Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board (UPPCB), the State Mission for Clean Ganga, the UP State Wetland Authority, the Uttar Pradesh State Disaster Management Authority (UPSDMA), the Lucknow Municipal Corporation (LMC), the Lucknow Development Authority (LDA), Noida, GNIDA or YEIDA, it describes the role that body would have if the Manual were adopted. It does not say the body has agreed to that role.

No legal force. Until a competent authority adopts it, with or without changes, this Manual has no legal force. The building byelaws, master plans, drainage guidelines and approval conditions in force continue to apply.

Names. Some places and rivers have more than one name or spelling in statutes, sources and on IMD and CWC stations:

- Prayagraj was formerly Allahabad. The Allahabad High Court, IMD's Allahabad/Bamrauli observatory (also spelt Bamhrauli) and older sources keep the old name. Ayodhya was formerly Faizabad, and IMD's Faizabad station keeps that name;
- the IMD observatories at Lucknow are Lucknow City and Lucknow/Amausi, the observatory at Lucknow airport, called Amausi in this Manual; Varanasi has two, Varanasi (BHU) and Varanasi/Babatpur, the airport observatory;
- Gautam Buddh Nagar is the district that contains Noida and Greater Noida;
- the Gomti is also spelt Gomati; the Ghaghra Ghagra or Gogra, and it is called the Saryu at Ayodhya; the Hindon Hindan; Ghazipur Gazipur; and
- Ramgarh Tal is also written Ramgarh Taal, the form its wetland notification uses.

This Manual uses the first form and keeps the others where a title, a source or a station uses them. Some names of bodies need a word of explanation:

- a **Nagar Nigam** is a Municipal Corporation under the Uttar Pradesh Municipal Corporations Act, 1959; Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats are constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Municipalities Act, 1916. All three are urban local bodies (ULBs);
- **Jal Kal** (Jal Kal Vibhag) is the water supply and sewerage department of a Nagar Nigam. In some cities it took over the work of a Jal Sansthan constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Water Supply and Sewerage Act, 1975;
- **UP Jal Nigam** was divided on 9 September 2021 into UP Jal Nigam (Urban) and UP Jal Nigam (Rural). Its **Construction and Design Services (C&DS)** wing, of UP Jal Nigam (Urban), is to prepare the city drainage master plans under UDD's guideline of December 2024;
- an **Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan (IUSWDMP)** is the city drainage master plan that UDD's guideline requires before a project is funded;
- a **development authority** is an authority constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, such as LDA. Each development authority issues the Byelaws 2025 in its own name;

- **Noida** (the New Okhla Industrial Development Authority), the Greater Noida Industrial Development Authority (**GNIDA**) and the Yamuna Expressway Industrial Development Authority (**YEIDA**) are industrial development authorities under the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976. They are not development authorities under the 1973 Act, and they keep their own building regulations of 2010. "Noida" also names the city; the sense is clear from the context; and
- **I&WRD** is the Irrigation and Water Resources Department, which holds the rivers, embankments, canals and flood works and notifies the floodplain zones.

Some abbreviations have more than one meaning:

- AMC is the antecedent moisture condition in Chapters 2 and 3; this Manual does not use it for any municipal body;
- GDA is the Ghaziabad Development Authority; the Gorakhpur Development Authority is written in full;
- HFL is the highest flood level recorded at a gauge, as CWC and I&WRD use it. It is not a design level, and sources sometimes give different values for the same gauge;
- UDD is the Urban Development Department, not a development authority; and
- SWD is a storm water drain.

The sense is clear from the context. Hindi and Urdu terms used in the text, such as *tal* (ताल; also *talab* and *pokhar*, a pond or tank that holds rainwater), *nala* (natural drain or large storm drain), *nali* (small street drain), *jhil* (lake or marsh), *bandh* (embankment), *khadar* (the low floodplain of a river), *bangar* (the older upland alluvium above it), *kachhar* (moist riverside land), *usar* (barren sodic or saline land) and *jalplavan* (waterlogging, the word UDD uses for urban flooding), are explained where they first appear.

Use with care. Clauses and values may change after review. Designers remain responsible for their designs and for checking the data they use. Neer accepts no liability for decisions made on the basis of this draft.

Disclosure. Neer publishes the India Flood Atlas, a national map of modelled 1% AEP flood depth. Clause 6.11.3 names it as one example of a regional map that an Approving Authority may adopt for floor levels. The Manual does not require the Atlas; any map adopted under Clause 7.3.4 may be used.

Comments. Comments and corrections are welcome at info@neer.ai.

Preface

Uttar Pradesh's cities flood for three reasons. Lucknow showed the first in September 2022 and again in September 2023, when a day's rain fell on drains that the State itself says are usually built for a storm of one or two years; Gorakhpur showed the second in August 1998, when the Rapti rose higher than ever recorded against the embankments that protect the city; and UDD described the third in December 2024, when it found that no city in the State had an integrated plan for its urban drainage.

1. **Short, intense storms beyond what the drains were built for.** UDD's guideline of December 2024 records that urban drains in the State are "usually designed for a 1–2 year" return period, and that this is proving inadequate as more rain falls in shorter periods; it cites Lucknow in 2023 among its examples of short-duration floods. IMD recorded 20 cm at two Lucknow gauges and 16 cm at Amausi in the 24 hours to 08:30 on 16 September 2022, and 29 cm at Fatehpur Tehsil in Barabanki; nine people were reported killed when a wall collapsed in Lucknow's Dilkusha area that day. A day earlier Gorakhpur had recorded 20 cm and Jaunpur 23 cm. In the 24 hours to 08:30 on 11 September 2023 Kanpur recorded 15 cm and Lucknow 14 cm, and Gomti Nagar, Ashiana, Jankipuram, Aliganj and Hazratganj were reported waterlogged. The only published station analysis of short-duration rainfall in the State, for Lucknow (Kathuria, Kaur and Mehra, 1987), gives 50.8 mm in one hour at 2 years and 106.0 mm at 50 years, 22–43% more than the ratios of the CWC flood estimation report give for the same hour. The all-time records are larger still: 311.7 mm in a day at Lucknow City (17 July 1947), and 460.6 mm at Baheri in Bareilly district on 8 July 2024. Even modest rain overwhelms drains that are blocked or undersized: on 17 August 2026 Prayagraj was reported to have recorded 73.4 mm, below a two-year day on the CWC maps, yet George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh were waterlogged, and the Allahabad High Court took up the matter on its own motion. Roofs, roads and paving now send more water to the drains, and faster.
2. **Rivers lock the outfalls.** Most of the State's large cities drain to a river that, in flood, stands above their outfalls for days. In Lucknow the Gomti runs through the city between embankments, and the Jal Kal department of LMC has told the NGT that 33 of the city's 34 drains join it; when the river is high the outfalls are shut and the drains are pumped, and LDA has proposed 12 more pumping stations, as reported. The Gomti reached 110.85 m at Lucknow on 11 September 1971, against a danger level of 109.5 m, as reported. The Ganga and the Yamuna rose to about 88 m at Prayagraj on 8 September 1978, more than 3 m above the danger level, and the Ganga to 73.901 m at Varanasi the next day, 2.64 m above it; in August 2025 the Ganga at Varanasi again stood above its danger level, as reported. On 23 August 1998 the Rapti reached 77.54 m at Birdghat in Gorakhpur, 2.56 m above its danger level, and its embankments were breached in 13 places in the district, as reported. On 26 July 2023 the Hindon at Noida was reported to have reached 197.28 m, 1.81 m above its previous highest level; about 350 cars parked in its floodplain at Ecotech-3 were submerged. UDD's checklist for project reports now asks for drainage pumps that work above the high flood level, and for pumping where an outfall lies below the river's normal level.
3. **A drain network split among agencies, built to no common standard, and carrying sewage.** Within a single city, the river and its embankments, the canals and the drains of canal commands are held by I&WRD; the municipal nalas and road drains by the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat; the drains of colonies not yet handed over by the development authority or the Housing Board; the sewers, interceptors and the tapping of drains by UP Jal Nigam; highways by PWD or NHAI; and industrial areas by Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA or UPSIDA. No rule was found that divides natural drains held by I&WRD from municipal nalas. UDD found in 2024 that small nalas and nalis are built piecemeal, and its guideline now requires every agency in a city to work to one approved master plan, regulated by the Nagar Nigam. In practice the city nalas also carry sewage, and the State's main remedy is to intercept it where a drain meets the river. Before the Kumbh of 2025, 39 of Prayagraj's 81 drains to the Ganga and Yamuna were reported to be untapped, and 22 of them were treated in geotubes; in Lucknow, 28 of 45 drains to the Gomti were reported to be untapped or partly tapped, carrying about 260 million litres a day (MLD); in Kanpur the Sisamau nala, about 140 MLD, was reported tapped in 2018. In 2011 the Allahabad High Court recorded that the city produced 232 MLD of sewage against 93 MLD of treatment capacity.

Behind all three lies lost storage. The *tals*, *talabs* and *pokhars* that once held rain are protected by their record in the revenue papers rather than by any width of buffer. In *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi* (2001) the Supreme Court held that where a pond's area varies in the rainy season, no part of it could be allotted for building, and directed the State to restore the pond; the Allahabad High Court has since used the revenue record of 1 July 1952 to identify ponds for restoration, and in 2025 it issued a statewide order against the encroachment of ponds and public land, as reported. Ramgarh Tal in Gorakhpur, notified as a wetland on 7 December 2020 with a zone of influence of 50 m, received the sewage of six major nalas until they were intercepted in proceedings before the National Green Tribunal (NGT). In Lucknow the Supreme Court agreed in May 2024 that the Akbar Nagar colony stood on the floodplain of the Kukrail, as reported. Drains have lost their fall as well as their storage: LMC records that the Qila Mohammadi drain is blocked at several places because its level is lower than that of the culverts near Bijnore.

Design for Uttar Pradesh therefore has to cover a long monsoon over a wide plain. The monsoon normally reaches the east of the State on 20 June, covers the whole State by 30 June and withdraws by 10 October. Its normal from June to September is 746.2 mm for the State, 799.2 mm in the east and 672.0 mm in the west. June is already wet in the north-east terai (a June normal of 187.8 mm at Gorakhpur) but not in the west (46.4 mm at Agra), and some of the largest days on record fell at or before the onset: 487.2 mm at Gonda on 12 June 1984, and 327.2 mm at Aligarh on 30 June 1981. Heavy rain can also come after the withdrawal: Hardoi recorded 310.0 mm on 13 October 1985. I&WRD's flood control rooms run from 15 June to 15 October, as reported.

National guidance sizes public drains but does not control the runoff that new building adds. This Manual makes stormwater a **condition of development approval**. Every development above a modest size must:

- hold frequent rainfall on site;
- release the large storms no faster than the undeveloped land did, or slower where catchments already flood; and
- show that its outfall still works when the river or the receiving nala is high and the flap gate or regulator is shut, or when the pumps that serve it are running at full capacity.

The Manual also sets how public drains, roads, nalas, tals and other water bodies, gated and pumped outfalls and basin-wide master plans are designed, so that private sites and public works aim at the same standard.

The Manual draws on leading stormwater standards from India and abroad. Each is adapted to Uttar Pradesh's south-west monsoon from late June to early October and the short, intense storms that come with it; the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Ghaghra, the Rapti and the Hindon, their embankments and the gated and pumped outfalls of the cities on their banks; the khadar and bangar of the alluvial plain, the usar soils that let little water in, the shallow water table of the terai and the over-drawn aquifers beneath Lucknow and the cities of the National Capital Region, and the hard rock and thin soils of Bundelkhand; the tals; and cities whose dense old cores, new colonies and basements turn ordinary storms into floods.

1. **National base.** The CPHEEO *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems* (2019). This Manual builds on it and sets higher standards where it allows a State to do so. IRC road-drainage codes and the NDMA urban flood guidelines are also used.
2. **Overall structure.** Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 (Version 2025.01), the most recent comprehensive regional standard. It supplies the preserve, retain, detain, convey and maintain sequence and the required retention volume.
3. **Design rainfall.** The CWC *Flood Estimation Reports* for the subzones that cover Uttar Pradesh, 1(e) Upper Indo-Ganga Plains, 1(f) Middle Ganga Plains, 1(c) Betwa and 1(b) Chambal, as the interim source; the report for subzone 1(d) Sone, which covers the south-east of the State, could not be found for this Manual [TBC]. The Lucknow station analysis of Kathuria, Kaur and Mehra (1987), the only published short-duration rainfall-frequency relationship for a station in the State. Frequency analysis of hourly rainfall by the National Institute of Hydrology (NIH), Roorkee, for comparison only.
4. **Monsoon practice.** The PUB Singapore *Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage* (7th ed., 2025), for the fixed-coefficient route for small sites and drainage reserves. Malaysia's MSMA 2 (2012), for monsoon design storms and simplified on-site detention.

5. **Runoff reduction and treatment.** The Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016), for runoff reduction and downstream analysis. CIRIA C753 *The SuDS Manual* (2015), for the treatment train. The Mile High Flood District criteria manual, for outlet and storage design.
6. **Local rules.** The Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973 and the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and Model Zoning Regulations 2025 made under it; for Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA, their own building regulations of 2010 under the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976; the Uttar Pradesh Municipal Corporations Act, 1959 and the Uttar Pradesh Municipalities Act, 1916; the Uttar Pradesh Water Supply and Sewerage Act, 1975; the Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019; the Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006; the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016 and the floodplain zones notified under it; the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017; UDD's storm water drainage guideline of December 2024; and the judgments of the Supreme Court, the Allahabad High Court and the NGT on ponds, floodplains and drains. This Manual follows them or, where disclosed, makes them stricter. The drainage chapters of the two municipal Acts were not read for this Manual [TBC], nor were the 2010 building regulations of Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA [TBC]; the Byelaws 2025 were read in their English text.

Why this Manual is needed

India has no uniform stormwater design standard. The CPHEEO *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems* (2019) is the country's first manual dedicated to storm water drainage, but it is advisory. The Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs lists it among advisory guidelines and treats urban flooding as a matter for State Governments and urban local bodies. None of the national rules or State building rules reviewed for this Manual makes runoff control a condition of building approval, and neither does the Model Building Bye-Laws 2016.

The national documents leave key values open, or give different answers.

- **Return periods.** CPHEEO recommends 5 years for drains in Class I cities and 2 years elsewhere, and lets a State committee adopt higher values. A 2023 CPHEEO presentation shows a different table. IRC:SP:50-2013 suggests 1–2 years for urban road drains; IRC:SP:42-2014 suggests 25 years. An engineer designing a drain in Uttar Pradesh can cite 1, 2, 5 or 25 years, depending on the code chosen.
- **Detention.** CPHEEO describes limiting peak outflow to pre-development rates as general practice. It uses no "shall" and names no storm frequencies.
- **Climate.** The NDMA Urban Flooding Guidelines (2010) call for detention and retention facilities and for rainfall curves adjusted for climate change, but give no sizing rule or return period.
- **Design rainfall.** No national document gives design rainfall that a designer can apply directly to a given town. Each project chooses its own source. IMD's 2022 national set of rainfall intensity curves has no panel for any station in Uttar Pradesh, and the range it gives for the Gangetic plain puts the largest 3-hour depth below the largest 1-hour depth. The CWC reports for the State's subzones date from 1984 to 1989. At Lucknow their ratios give a 50-year hour of about 74–87 mm, against 106.0 mm in the Lucknow station analysis. The reanalysis grids of NIH-DHAARA read lower still at one hour, 70.7 mm at Lucknow; at 24 hours they read well above the CWC maps in the terai and Rohilkhand (380 mm for a 50-year day at Gorakhpur, against about 240–280 mm and a station record of 284.5 mm) and below the maps or the station records at Prayagraj, Varanasi and Noida. In Uttar Pradesh, as in Delhi and unlike the coastal States, the published ratios understate the short storms.

Uttar Pradesh has no drainage design standard of its own. Research for this Manual found no design standard, rainfall intensity–duration–frequency (IDF) relationship or circular of UDD, UP Jal Nigam, I&WRD, any Nagar Nigam or any development authority that fixes return periods or design rainfall for storm drains. In particular:

- **The State's drainage guideline asks for master plans but sets no design storm.** UDD's guideline of December 2024, for a scheme with ₹1,000 crore in 2024-25 (₹100 crore of it for master plans), makes an approved IUSWDMP a condition of project funding, with the condition waived for 2024-25. All Nagar Nigams are eligible

first. The plans are to be prepared by C&DS, UP Jal Nigam (Urban), "as per" the CPHEEO manual, and approved by a State Level Apex Committee chaired by the Chief Secretary. Its checklist for project reports asks for 25–30 years or more of IMD autographic rainfall with an IDF curve, and for pumps that work above the high flood level. It records that drains are usually built for 1–2 years, but sets no return period, runoff coefficient or detention rule of its own, and no approved IUSWDMP was found. One project report read for this Manual, for a drain in Agra, adopted a 2-year intensity of 28.2 mm/h derived from a daily rainfall series whose values cannot be right. This Manual is offered as a technical companion to the guideline: it supplies the design storm, detention and buffer values that the guideline leaves open. It has not been adopted by UDD or by any other body;

- **The building byelaws require recharge but not detention.** The Byelaws 2025 require rooftop rainwater harvesting on plots of 300 m² and more where there is no collective recharge network, except in waterlogged areas, where recharge is not to be adopted and rooftop rainwater may be collected instead (clause 13.1.2). Layouts of more than 4 ha must build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of their area, no more than 2 m deep. Building projects of 20,000 m² of built-up area and more must provide one recharge bore for every 5,000 m² of built-up area, keep at least 20% of their open space pervious, and keep the natural drainage through the site, where check dams, bio-swales and other sustainable drainage systems are allowed (clause 13.3). Green-rated buildings receive 3%, 5% or 7% extra floor area ratio (FAR). No rule requires on-site detention, limits peak runoff or sets "zero runoff". The Chief Minister was reported in October 2025 to have directed that rainwater harvesting be mandatory on buildings of more than 100 m², but no Government Order (G.O.) giving effect to it was found;
- **Basements are guarded against surface water, not floods.** The Byelaws 2025 require only that surface water be kept out of a basement (clause 3.3.3.2(iv)) and set a minimum plinth of 0.30 m. They do not restrict basements in low-lying or flood-prone areas;
- **The groundwater law limits where runoff may be recharged.** The Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 makes the State's rooftop rainwater harvesting conditions binding on every agency that sanctions building plans, and requires a combined recharge system for group housing and colonies (s.31(2)). It bars the direct recharge of rain falling on roads, open land and farms into aquifers through recharge wells, bores or shafts; only rooftop water is excepted (s.28). It also requires the authorities to prevent waterlogging (s.33). A recharge well in a road drain or in a basin that receives street runoff therefore conflicts with the Act;
- **Floodplains are notified for the 100-year flood, but no rule sets a setback from nalas or tals.** The River Ganga Authorities Order, 2016 defines the floodplain by the flood of once in a hundred years. I&WRD notified the floodplain zone of the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia, in 13 districts, by coordinates on 29 January 2025; a notification for the Yamuna in 17 districts followed in January 2025, as reported. The Hindon's floodplain had not yet been demarcated in May 2026; I&WRD gives its 100-year flood level as 205.39 m at km 49 and 205.20 m at km 110. An amendment of the Order in 2026 is reported to divide the floodplain into zones by the 5-, 25- and 100-year floods; its text was not read for this Manual. The Byelaws 2025 permit only repair and renovation within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga, and make building on ponds or drains recorded in plans or revenue records an offence that cannot be compounded. Court orders add lines of their own: in 2011 the Allahabad High Court directed that there be no construction within 500 m of the mid-stream of the Ganga at Prayagraj, and the Prayagraj Development Authority applies a line of the high flood level plus 500 m along the Yamuna; for the Gomti, a line of 100 m set by the High Court's Lucknow bench in 2010 and one of 50 m set by an Irrigation order in 2020 are both reported. The Wetlands Rules bar permanent construction within 50 m of the mean high flood level of a notified wetland. No setback in metres from nalas or tals was found in any rule read for this Manual;
- **Tals are protected by title, not by width.** The Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006 vests the beds of rivers, nalas, ponds and tanks in the State (s.54), reserves village tanks of 0.5 acre or less for public use, where "tank" includes *talab*, pond and *pokhar* (s.61), bars the accrual of bhumidhari rights in land covered by a pond, tank or lake or forming part of an embankment (s.77(1)(i)), and provides for eviction (s.67). None of these sets a buffer around a tal; and
- **No document sets the river level for which an outfall is designed.** The warning and danger levels and the highest flood levels published for river gauges are flood-warning levels and records, not design levels, and sources give different values for some gauges.

So each agency and each local body interprets the central manual its own way. The Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats, the development authorities, Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA, I&WRD, UP Jal Nigam, PWD, their consultants and funding agencies fill the gaps differently. Two drains on the same street, built by different

agencies, can be sized for different storms from different rainfall sources. A municipal nala can pass through a colony drained by a development authority and end at an I&WRD regulator in an embankment, designed to another standard, with no agreed level at which the river shuts the gate. And a reviewer has no common basis against which to check a design.

What this Manual does about it. It turns those open choices into one State standard:

- one source and method for design rainfall, with a floor for short storms where the published ratios understate them (Chapter 2);
- named return periods for every drainage element (Chapters 2 and 6);
- a required pre- versus post-development rule for private sites (Chapter 4);
- a required tailwater check for outfalls to rivers and nalas, gated, regulated or pumped, against a design river level (Chapter 5);
- corridors and setbacks along nalas and around tals, which no rule now sizes, proposed by this Manual (Chapter 7);
- recharge only where the ground and the groundwater law allow it, and treatment where nalas carry sewage (Chapter 8); and
- basin-wide master plans, so that the agencies that share a basin plan together (Chapter 11).

It uses the route the CPHEEO manual itself provides: a State may adopt standards higher than the national values (CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.1, Note 2). A Nagar Nigam, a development authority or an industrial development authority can still adopt a stricter standard (Chapter 1).

Sources: CPHEEO (2019) Part A §4.4–4.5 and Table 4.1; CPHEEO presentation to CSE (August 2023); IRC:SP:50-2013 §6; IRC:SP:42-2014 §6; NDMA (2010) Urban Flooding Guidelines, para 6.6.2; MoHUA Model Building Bye-Laws (2016); UDD, Government of Uttar Pradesh, Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines (Hindi, December 2024), §§1.1, 1.3, 2.1, 2.2, 3.2, 3.3 and 4, and the checklist for detailed project reports, items 2.14 and 2.26 and Annexure 2; Housing and Urban Planning Department, G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 (July 2025), and Model Building Construction and Development Byelaws and Model Zoning Regulations for Development Authorities of Uttar Pradesh, 2025 (English text), clauses 1.1, 2.11, 3.3.1.21, 3.3.3.2, 9.3, 13.1.2, 13.3 and 16.3.2; Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019), ss.28, 31 and 33; Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006 (as updated to 5 March 2021), ss.54, 61, 67 and 77; UDD action taken report in NGT O.A. 370/2021, on the division of UP Jal Nigam (Gazette notification of 9 September 2021); River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl.3(l), as quoted by I&WRD and NMCG; I&WRD Section-4, G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ)(NGT)/2023 (29 January 2025), annexed to the Irrigation Department's report in NGT O.A. 341/2022 (2 April 2025); Irrigation Department progress report in NGT O.A. 569/2023 (23 May 2026), on the Hindon; Allahabad High Court, PIL No. 4003 of 2006, In re Ganga Pollution, order of 28 March 2011, annexed to the reply of the Prayagraj Development Authority in NGT I.A. 288/2024 in O.A. 526/2023 (17 December 2025); Supreme Court, Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi, AIR 2001 SC 3215 (25 July 2001); Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, r.4(2)(vi), as quoted by CPCB, and Government of Uttar Pradesh notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018 (7 December 2020), Ramgarh Taal wetland, annexed to CPCB's response in NGT O.A. 1057/2024; NGT O.A. 116/2014, Meera Shukla v. MC Gorakhpur, as reported in later filings; LMC, AMRUT detailed project report for Lucknow (2018), §2.1.7; Agra Smart City, Improvements to Taj East Drain, detailed project report, chapter 9; Kathuria, S.N., Kaur, S. and Mehra, A.K. (1987), Rainfall intensity for local drainage design in Lucknow and its neighbouring area, MAUSAM 38(1), 85–88; IMD, Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012); IMD press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 and 11 September 2023; IMD Meteorological Centre Lucknow, Southwest Monsoon Reports 2024 and 2025 for Uttar Pradesh and station climatological tables (1991–2020); Das et al. (2022), MAUSAM 73(4); NIH-DHAARA (accessed 6 November 2026); CWC, Flood Estimation Reports for Subzones 1(e) (approved July 1984; report number not on the copy read [TBC]), 1(f) (GP/10/1984), 1(c) (B/17/1989) and 1(b) (C/16/1988); SANDRP, Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (updated 2019), and Rivers breaching highest flood levels in July 2023, compiled from CWC data (secondary); reports of the Lucknow events of September 2022 and September 2023, the Prayagraj waterlogging of August 2026 and the High Court's suo motu case, the Gorakhpur flood of 1998, the Hindon flood of July 2023, the Ganga at Varanasi in August 2025, the Yamuna floodplain notification (January 2025), the 2026

amendment of the Ganga Order, the Gomti setback orders of 2010 and 2020, the Akbar Nagar judgment (May 2024), the Allahabad High Court's orders on ponds (2007 and 2025), the drain counts and tapping at Prayagraj, Lucknow and Kanpur, LDA's proposed pumping stations, the Chief Minister's direction on rainwater harvesting (October 2025) and I&WRD's flood control rooms (press).

How to use this Manual

Clauses and commentary. Numbered clauses (for example 4.5.2) are the requirements of this Manual and use "shall". Paragraphs headed **Commentary** explain the reason for a clause and cite its precedent. They are guidance, not requirements. Where a value has no direct precedent elsewhere, the commentary says so and explains why this Manual sets it.

Return periods. Storms are described both by annual exceedance probability (AEP) and by return period. For example, "1% AEP (100-yr)" means a storm with a 1-in-100 chance of being equalled or exceeded in any year.

Illustrative values. Worked examples and figures marked "Illustrative — not design values" show method and scale only. Design values come from the sources set in Chapter 2.

Annexes and forms. Each chapter lists the annexes and forms it relies on. They follow the chapters, grouped by chapter, and hold the forms to submit, worked examples, templates, model text and standard drawings. Annexes that need data not yet collected are marked *To be prepared*. They say what they will contain, and the clause that depends on them states the rule that applies in the meantime.

Figures. All figures are original drawings prepared for this Manual. Where a figure follows a published concept, its caption credits the source.

Where to start.

If you are…	Read first
A developer or architect	Chapter 1 (does it apply?), Chapter 4 (what to provide), Chapter 10 (what to submit)
A design engineer	Chapters 2–6, then 8 and 9
A local body or approving authority	Chapters 1, 10 and 11
A planner or waterbody manager	Chapters 7 and 11

Contents

Ch	Title	Annexes and forms
1	Policy, Applicability and Adoption	Annexes 1
2	Design Rainfall and Design Storms	Annexes 2
3	Hydrologic Methods	Annexes 3
4	Site Runoff Control: Retention and Detention	Annexes 4
5	Downstream and Tailwater Analysis	Annexes 5
6	Minor and Major Drainage Systems	Annexes 6

Ch	Title	Annexes and forms
7	Waterbodies, Tals (Ponds) and Setbacks	Annexes 7
8	Water Quality and Recharge	Annexes 8
9	Hydraulic Design of Structures	Annexes 9
10	Submittals, Review, Operation & Maintenance and Enforcement	Annexes 10
11	Basin and City Stormwater Master Plans	Annexes 11

List of tables

Table	Title
1.1	Differences between Tier A and Tier B authorities
1.2	Policy supplement: adoptable alternatives S-1 to S-5
1.3	Relationship with other instruments
1.4	Roles and responsibilities under this Manual
1.5	Working assignment of drainage elements under this Manual
2.1	Design return periods (summary)
2.2	Interim climate factors
2.3	Illustrative scale of the mixed-frequency rule (not design values)
3.1	Permitted hydrologic methods
3.2	Runoff coefficient C (for AEP of 10% or more frequent)
3.3	Frequency factor Cf
3.4	Manning's n for sheet flow (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Table 3-1)
3.5	Runoff curve numbers, AMC II, Ia = 0.2S (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Tables 2-2a and 2-2c)
4.1	Design storms to be routed for detention sizing
4.2	Illustrative example: peak discharges and storage used, by duration (Illustrative — not design values)
4.3	Tier B permissible site discharge and site storage requirement (template)
4.3A	Fixed release coefficients (provisional)
5.1	Design tailwater levels for tidal outfalls
5.2	Joint-probability cases for tidal and riverine outfalls
6.1	Design AEPs for conveyance (matches Clause 2.4)
6.2	Street flow limits
6.3	Flow hazard limits for streets and overland flow paths
6.4	Combined flood hazard vulnerability classes (reproduced for reference)
6.5	Inlet clogging factors (share of clean capacity assumed lost)
6.6	Manning's n for design (from CPHEEO 2019)

Table	Title
6.7	Minimum freeboard in open and covered drains
6.8	Maximum spacing of manholes on straight pipe runs
6.9	Minimum drainage reserve width (adopted from PUB Singapore)
7.1	Fixed-width setback where no 1% AEP extent is available
8.1	Pollutants of concern, sources and primary controls
8.2	Required Level of Service for sites that are not redevelopment
8.3	BMP Value Ratings and suitability in Uttar Pradesh
9.1	Entrance loss coefficients ke (outlet control, full or partly full)
9.2	Maximum permissible mean velocities in channels
9.3	Riprap classes and apron dimensions (HEC-14)
9.4	Minimum internal size of manholes
9.5	Minimum IS 456 exposure classes for Uttar Pradesh locations
10.1	Submittal stages and linked approvals
10.2	Forms used in submittals
10.3	Minimum owner inspection frequencies
10.4	Graduated enforcement response
11.1	Minimum data and surveys for a BSMP
11.2	Minimum levels of service
1A.1	Tier A authorities as defined in Clause 1.6.1
1A.2	Register of Tier A authorities (layout)
1B.1	Flood-sensitive catchments listed in Clause 4.5.3.2
1B.2	Attributes of the flood-sensitive catchment layer (layout)
1C.1	Alternatives adopted by this resolution
1D.1	Schedule: alternatives adopted (layout)
2A.1	Benchmark comparison of design depths (layout)
2A.2	Rainfall zones (layout)
2B.1	Ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone (layout)
2B.2	Fixed-interval adjustment factors (Clause 2.6.3)
2C.1	Grid-to-point factors (layout)
2D.1	Cumulative fraction of storm depth against cumulative fraction of storm time (layout, one table per zone, duration class and quartile)
2E.1	Retention depth P_R by zone (layout)
3A.1	Soil series to HSG lookup (layout)
3A.2	Seasonal high water table, by mapping unit (layout)
3B.1	Supplementary land covers, AMC II (layout)

Table	Title
3B.2	CN calibration catchments (layout)
3C.1	Problem 3C-1 solution
3C.2	Problem 3C-2 solution
3C.3	Problem 3C-3 solution
3C.4	Problem 3C-4 solution
3C.5	Problem 3C-5 stage–storage–discharge relationship
3C.6	Problem 3C-5 routed outflow
3C.7	Benchmark results to be reported by the applicant
3D.1	Calibrated peak rate factors (layout)
3E.1	SUH relationships by subzone (layout)
3E.2	Worked example outline (layout)
4A.1	Attributes of the shallow-groundwater zone layer (layout)
4B.1	Contents of Annex 4B and their status
4B.2	Tier B PSD and SSR (layout of Table 4.3)
4B.3	Retention credit factor C_R (layout)
4B.4	Largest orifice diameter (mm) for a permissible discharge at a given head (Cd = 0.60, free discharge)
4B.5	Fixed release coefficients C_10 and C_2 (provisional, Table 4.3A)
4C.1	Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.2	Design rainfall depths, mm (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.3	Curve numbers and abstractions (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.4	Storm runoff depth Q, mm (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.5	Unit hydrograph parameters (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.6	Stage–storage–discharge, trial outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.7	Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, around the peak (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.8	Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, hourly (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.9	Results for the trial outlet (120 mm and 470 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.10	Stage–storage–discharge, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.11	Results for the revised outlet (170 mm and 460 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.12	Retention credit by routing, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.13	Outlet checks, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.14	Summary of the revised design (Illustrative — not design values)
5A.1	Use of the Annex 5A values in the design tailwater (Table 5.1)
5A.2	Tidal datums, surge and still-water levels by coastal segment (layout)
5B.1	Water bodies named in Chapter 5

Table	Title
5B.2	Attributes of the Annex 5B layers (layout)
5C.1	Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.2	Outfall-closed check results (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.3	Volume balance, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.4	Stage hydrograph, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.5	Summary (Illustrative — not design values)
6A.1	Interim requirements for inlets until Annex 6A is published (from Chapters 6 and 9)
6A.2	Register of standard inlet types (layout)
6A.3	Capacity on grade (layout; one table per inlet type)
6A.4	Capacity in a sag (layout; one table per inlet type)
6B.1	Sediment allowances already set by Chapter 6 (provisional, to be calibrated)
6B.2	Sediment yield by land use and drain type (layout)
6B.3	Calibration of the sediment allowance (layout)
6C.1	Dimensions on the standard drawings and their source clauses
7A.1	Attribute fields of the waterbody inventory (WB_POLY)
7A.2	Code lists
7A.3	Attribute fields of structures (WB_STRUCT)
7B.1	Fixed-width setback by waterbody class (alternative S-3)
7B.2	Source buffers cited in Clause 7.4.6 (KC APWA 5600, 2006, §5605.3)
7C.1	Rule levels by period (to be completed for each tank)
7C.2	Outlet settings by level (to be completed for each tank)
7C.3	Triggers and actions (to be completed for each tank)
7D.1	Hold points for desilting and restoration works
7E.1	Waterbodies and land
7E.2	Channels, embankments and parts of the system
7E.3	Floods and statutory terms
7E.4	Terms not yet verified
8A.1	Water quality rainfall depths by zone (layout)
8A.2	3-month ARI intensity by duration (layout)
8B.1	Required LoS for redevelopment (layout)
8B.2	Worked example: composite VR (illustrative)
8B.3	Composite VR of treatment trains (layout)
8C.1	Monitoring site register (layout)
8C.2	Event record (layout; parameters of Clause 8.13.2)

Table	Title
8C.3	Performance summary and proposed VR (layout)
8D.1	Pretreatment (all BMPs)
8D.2	Bioretention and rain gardens (Figure 8.2)
8D.3	Vegetated swales
8D.4	Vegetated filter strips
8D.5	Permeable pavement
8D.6	Infiltration trenches and basins (Figure 8.3)
8D.7	Wet ponds (extended wet detention)
8D.8	Constructed wetlands
8D.9	Gross pollutant traps and outfall screens
8D.10	Oil-grit separators
8D.11	Infiltration and recharge criteria (all infiltrating BMPs)
8D.12	Bioretention filter media and layers
8D.13	Indicative plants for bioretention, swales and filter strips
8D.14	Indicative plants for constructed wetlands and wet ponds
8D.15	Species not to be planted
8E.1	Selection of measures (Clause 8.12.3)
8E.2	ESC timing and inspection (Clauses 8.12.2 and 8.12.5)
9A.1	HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients for common inlets
9A.2	Inputs for the worked example
9A.3	Critical depth and specific head (D = 1.2 m)
9A.4	Inlet-control headwater
9A.5	Outlet-control headwater
9A.6	Governing headwater and checks
9A.7	Riprap apron sizing
9A.8	Summary of the worked example (Illustrative — not design values)
9B.1	Dimensions and rules on the standard drawings and their source clauses
9C.1	Pump station design checklist
9C.2	Control levels (values to be set in design)
10A.1	Calculator inputs
10A.2	Calculations the calculator shall perform
10B.1	Layers
10B.2	Attributes of SW_FAC (facilities)
10B.3	Attributes of SW_OUTF (outfalls)

Table	Title
10B.4	Attributes of SW_CATCH (catchments)
10B.5	Attributes of SW_FLOW and SW_CONV (flow paths and conveyance)
10B.6	Metadata (SW_META)
10B.7	Facility type codes (FAC_TYPE)
10B.8	Status codes (STATUS)
10B.9	Inspection result codes (INSP_RES)
10C.1	Access dimensions set by the Manual
10C.2	Access dimensions not set by the Manual (to be confirmed in design)
10D.1	Contents of an O&M plan
10D.2	Retention and infiltration (soakaways, trenches, bioretention, permeable paving)
10D.3	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
10D.4	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
10D.5	Pumped detention, pumps and controls
10D.6	Flap or tide gate, non-return valve
10D.7	Gross pollutant trap or first-flush device
10D.8	Private drains and inlets
11A.1	Deliverables
11B.1	Basins named in Clause 11.3.3 (provisional)
11B.2	Attributes of the basin boundary layer (layout)
11C.1	Depth–damage curve (layout, one table per building type)
11D.1	Items to be published

List of figures

Figure	Title
1.1	Stormwater management hierarchy
1.2	Applicability decision flowchart
2.1	Design rainfall source hierarchy and adjustments
2.2	Design hyetographs
2.3	From design rainfall source to design storm
3.1	Selection of hydrologic method
3.2	Time of concentration: flow segments along the longest flow path (schematic)
3.3	SCS-CN runoff depth versus rainfall depth
3.4	Two-step continuous simulation: starting tank level (schematic)

Figure	Title
3.5	Pre- and post-development hydrographs
4.1	Pre-development 10-yr, post-development 100-yr uncontrolled, and detained hydrographs (illustrative)
4.2	Detention storage stack and multi-stage outlet (schematic)
4.3	Fixed-coefficient route: release caps, storage by the mass-curve method and two-stage outlet (schematic)
5.1	Extent of downstream analysis
5.2	Tidal outfall section with flap gate and design tailwater levels
5.3	Tide-locked outfall timeline (illustrative)
6.1	Minor and major drainage in a kerbed street
6.2	Gutter spread, inlet interception and clogging
6.3	Drain sections: freeboard, sediment allowance and access
6.4	Drainage reserve: cross-section (schematic)
6.5	Coastal band: floor level stack and extent of the band (schematic)
7.1	Waterbody setback zones
7.2	Compensatory storage by elevation band (schematic)
7.3	Tal–nala–river chain: colony drains, a tal used as detention, the nala, and a flap-gated, pumped outfall through the river embankment
8.1	Treatment train
8.2	Bioretention cell
8.3	Infiltration trench
9.1	Culvert hydraulics: inlet control and outlet control
9.2	Riprap apron at a pipe or culvert outlet (schematic)
9.3	Stormwater pump station: wet well, screens, levels and outfall
10.1	Submittal, review and approval workflow
10.2	Construction hold points from approval to handover
10.3	Maintenance cycle and responsibility
11.1	Basin master plan process
11.2	BSMP model schematic
6C.1	Covered roadside drain with removable covers
6C.2	Access and junction chamber on a covered drain
6C.3	Kerb inlet with silt sump
8E.1	Silt fence: section and plan (schematic)
8E.2	Sediment basin with surface dewatering outlet: section (schematic)
8E.3	Stabilised construction exit: plan and section (schematic)
8E.4	Drain inlet protection (schematic)
9B.1	Culvert headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls

Figure	Title
9B.2	Straight vertical drop structure
9B.3	Trash rack at a conduit entrance
9B.4	Detention outlet riser and emergency spillway

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
AEP	Annual exceedance probability
AMC	Antecedent moisture condition
AMRUT	Atal Mission for Rejuvenation and Urban Transformation
APWA	American Public Works Association
ARF	Areal reduction factor
AWS	Automatic weather station
BSMP	Basin Stormwater Master Plan
C&DS	Construction and Design Services, UP Jal Nigam (Urban)
CAG	Comptroller and Auditor General of India
CGWA	Central Ground Water Authority
CGWB	Central Ground Water Board
CN	Curve number (SCS/NRCS method)
CPCB	Central Pollution Control Board
CPHEEO	Central Public Health and Environmental Engineering Organisation
CSE	Centre for Science and Environment
CWC	Central Water Commission
DPR	Detailed project report
DWF	Dry-weather flow
EIA	Environmental impact assessment
ESC	Erosion and sediment control
FAR	Floor area ratio
FER	Flood Estimation Report (CWC)
FTL / MWL	Full tank level / maximum water level
G.O.	Government Order, Government of Uttar Pradesh
GDA	Ghaziabad Development Authority (the Gorakhpur Development Authority is written in full)
GNIDA	Greater Noida Industrial Development Authority

Abbreviation	Meaning
HAT / MHWS	Highest astronomical tide / mean high water springs (coastal terms; not applicable in Uttar Pradesh)
HFL	High flood level (the highest level recorded at a gauge)
HGL	Hydraulic grade line
HSG	Hydrologic soil group
I&WRD	Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Uttar Pradesh
IDF	Intensity–duration–frequency
IMD	India Meteorological Department
IRC	Indian Roads Congress
IUSWDMP	Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan (UDD guideline, December 2024)
LDA	Lucknow Development Authority
LMC	Lucknow Municipal Corporation (Nagar Nigam Lucknow)
MLD	Million litres a day
MoEF&CC	Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
MoHUA	Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs
NCR	National Capital Region
NDMA	National Disaster Management Authority
NGT	National Green Tribunal
NHAI	National Highways Authority of India
NIH	National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee
NMCG	National Mission for Clean Ganga
NOC	No-objection certificate
Noida	New Okhla Industrial Development Authority (also the city)
PSD	Permissible site discharge
PWD	Public Works Department, Uttar Pradesh
RRV	Required retention volume
RWH	Rainwater harvesting
SANDRP	South Asia Network on Dams, Rivers and People
SLA	Sea-level allowance (coastal term; not applicable in Uttar Pradesh)
SoI	Survey of India
SRRG	Self-recording rain gauge
SUH	Synthetic unit hydrograph (CWC)
SW monsoon / JJAS	South-west monsoon, June–September
SWD	Storm water drain
TCPD	Town and Country Planning Department, Uttar Pradesh

Abbreviation	Meaning
UDD	Urban Development Department, Uttar Pradesh
ULB	Urban local body (a Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat)
UP	Uttar Pradesh (in the names of Acts and bodies)
UPPCB	Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board
UPSDMA	Uttar Pradesh State Disaster Management Authority
UPSIDA	Uttar Pradesh State Industrial Development Authority
UTM	Universal Transverse Mercator
WQv	Water quality volume
WSUD	Water-sensitive urban design
YEIDA	Yamuna Expressway Industrial Development Authority

CHAPTER 1

Policy, Applicability and Adoption

1.1 Purpose and objectives

1.1.1 This Manual sets the minimum standards for the planning, design, construction, operation and maintenance of stormwater systems in Uttar Pradesh. It applies to private development and to public works, as set out in Clause 1.5.

1.1.2 The Manual has the following objectives:

- (a) to make stormwater management a **condition of development approval**, so that new development and redevelopment do not increase flood peaks or runoff volumes downstream;
- (b) to retain frequent rainfall on site, so that groundwater recharge is sustained and pollutant loads are reduced;
- (c) to size storage for the long-duration south-west monsoon storms of July–September, brought by monsoon depressions, which fall on ground and water tables raised by weeks of rain and often on rivers already in flood, as well as for short-duration intensities;
- (d) to design outfalls for the stage of the rivers into which the cities drain, the Gomti at Lucknow, the Ganga at Kanpur, Prayagraj and Varanasi, the Yamuna at Agra and Prayagraj, the Rapti at Gorakhpur and the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida, which closes the gates on outfalls through the river embankments and leaves the land behind them to be drained by pumping, and the levels of the nalas and tals into which local drains discharge, including the case where the outfall is closed;
- (e) to protect tanks (tals), marshes, rivers, supply channels and surplus courses as part of the drainage system;
- (f) to give every element of the drainage network a safe overland path for the 1% AEP (100-yr) storm;
- (g) to make design inputs, approvals and facility records public, so that designs can be checked and repeated; and
- (h) to make sure that facilities, once built, are maintained and remain effective.

1.1.3 This Manual does not replace the rainwater harvesting (RWH) mandate, the building bye-laws approved by the Government under section 57 of the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973 and issued by each development authority in its own name (the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025), or the statutes on waterbodies. It adds runoff control requirements to them (Clause 1.8).

> **Commentary.** Uttar Pradesh's floods come from three sources, often together. The first is the rivers. In September 1978 the Yamuna and the Ganga set the highest levels on record at most sites below Agra: 154.76 m at Agra on 9 September, 87.98 m at Phaphamau and 87.99 m at Naini in Prayagraj on 8 September, and 73.901 m at Varanasi on 9 September, against danger levels of 152.4 m, 84.73 m and 71.262 m (CWC levels, as reported). The Gomti at Lucknow reached its highest recorded level, 110.85 m, on 11 September 1971, and the Rapti at Birdghat in Gorakhpur 77.54 m on 23 August 1998, when 13 embankments breached in Gorakhpur district and road and rail links were cut for more than 72 hours (as reported). The Ganga at Prayagraj reached 86.52 m in 2013, its third-highest level, and in August 2025 it ran above the danger level in 13 districts, at about 72.1 m at Varanasi (as reported). On 26 July 2023 the Hindon at Noida reached 197.28 m, 1.81 m above its previous highest level; Karhera in Ghaziabad was evacuated, and about 350 cars parked on the floodplain at Ecotech-3 in Greater Noida were submerged (as reported). The second is the heavy storm on cities whose drains were not designed for it. In the 24 hours to 08:30 on 16 September 2022 Lucknow recorded 20 cm at two stations and 16 cm at the airport, a day after Gorakhpur had recorded 20 cm and Jaunpur 23 cm (IMD, 2022), and nine people died when a wall

collapsed at Dilkusha in Lucknow (as reported). In the 24 hours to 08:30 on 11 September 2023, 14 cm fell at Lucknow, 15 cm at Kanpur and 32 cm at Fatehpur tehsil in Barabanki (IMD, 2023), and Gomti Nagar, Ashiana, Jankipuram, Aliganj and Hazratganj were waterlogged (as reported); the State's own guideline names "Lucknow 2023" among India's urban flash floods (UDD, 2024). The third is the city drainage that fails in a fall that is not extreme at all: on 17 August 2026, 73.4 mm in 24 hours at Prayagraj, less than a 2-year day, left George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh under water, and the Allahabad High Court took up the waterlogging of its own motion and ordered it pumped out within 24 hours (as reported).

Missing design makes all three worse. The Urban Development Department (UDD) records that there is at present no integrated plan for urban drainage in the State's urban areas, that small nalas and nalis are built piecemeal, and that urban drains are "usually designed for a 1–2 year" rainfall return period (UDD, 2024). Most city outfalls discharge to rivers whose highest flood levels lie 1–3.3 m above their danger levels, so an outfall below the river's flood level is shut, or pumped, for days. The one storm-drain DPR read for this Manual, for the Taj East Drain in Agra, adopted a 2-year intensity of 28.20 mm/h derived from a daily rainfall series whose printed values cannot be right (Clause 2.3.6). No published Uttar Pradesh document sets a design storm for a city's drains. Objectives (b) to (e) address the storage, outfall and building-level failures, which a drain-sizing manual alone cannot fix.

No national instrument requires on-site detention. CPHEEO (2019) is advisory and describes peak control only as typical practice. NDMA (2010) says detention and retention "will" be included but gives no sizing rule. MBBL 2016 and the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 mandate RWH only. Objective (a) is therefore the main new step this Manual takes.

1.2 Stormwater management hierarchy

1.2.1 Every development to which Chapter 4 applies shall consider stormwater measures in the following order. A designer shall not use a lower measure in place of a higher one that is practicable on the site.

1. **Preserve** — keep or restore natural drainage features, tanks, wetlands, permeable soils, trees and overland flow paths (Chapter 7).
2. **Retain** — hold the runoff from the retention depth of Annex 2E on site, by infiltration, reuse or evapotranspiration (Chapters 4 and 8).
3. **Detain** — store larger storms temporarily and release them at or below the rates in Chapter 4, checked against downstream and tailwater conditions (Chapters 4 and 5).
4. **Convey** — carry the remaining flow safely in the minor system, and the 1% AEP flow in the major system (Chapters 6 and 9).

1.2.2 **Maintenance** underlies all four measures. A measure that cannot be maintained by its owner under Chapter 10 shall not be credited.

1.2.3 Credits from higher measures reduce the requirements of lower ones. Preserved areas and retained volume reduce detention storage as set out in Chapter 4.

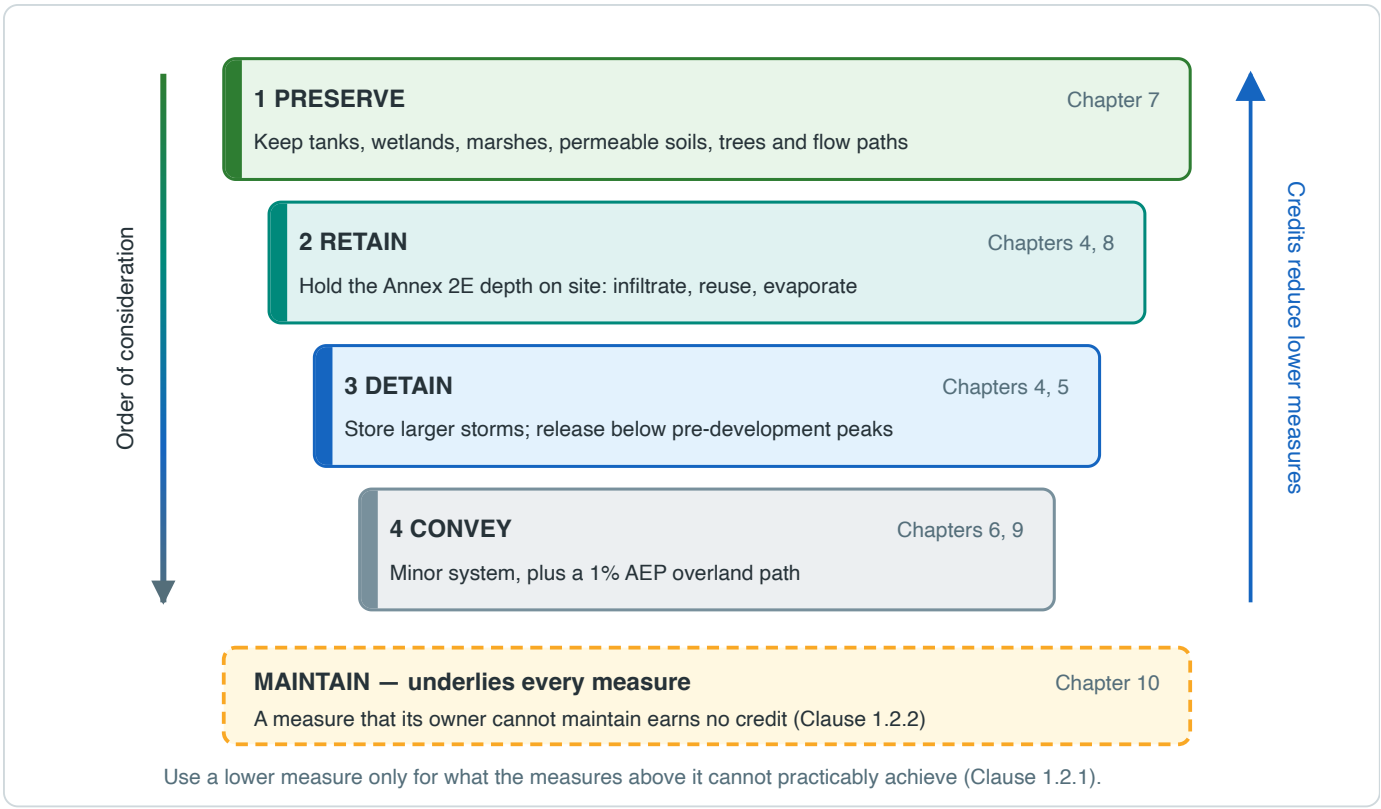


Figure 1.1 — Stormwater management hierarchy: preserve, retain, detain, convey, with maintenance underlying each measure. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Mid-America Regional Council / Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA, "Layers of Stormwater Management", APWA 5600 Manual Factsheet, 2025 (concept).

Commentary. The order follows the "layers" of Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600, Version 2025.01: preserve or restore, retain, detain, convey, maintain (MARC factsheet, 2025). The same logic is behind Georgia's runoff-reduction standard and CSE's "attenuate and infiltrate first" principle (CSE, 2023). For Uttar Pradesh, the top layer has a particular meaning. Much of the State's flood storage lies in its tals, ponds and jheels, which the law already protects more strongly than any other water feature. Under the Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006 the beds of nalas, ponds and tanks vest in the State, a village tank of 0.5 acre or less "shall be reserved for public use", and "tank" includes "talab, pond, pokhar and other land covered with water" (ss.54 and 61); no bhumidhari right accrues in land "covered by a pond, tank or lake, or forming part of an embankment, bandh or bhita" (s.77(1)(i)); and the Supreme Court has held that where a pond exists "and the area covered by it varies in rainy season … no part of it could have been allotted", and directed the State to restore it (*Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, 2001). The rest of the storage lies in the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Rapti and the Hindon, which the State now notifies river by river on the line of the 1-in-100-year flood, and in wetlands such as Ramgarh Tal at Gorakhpur, notified in 2020 over 742.245 ha with a zone of influence of 50 m and its six inflow nalas. The Byelaws 2025 make construction on ponds, reservoirs, rivers and drains recorded in a plan or in the revenue records a non-compoundable offence (cl. 16.3.2(xi)), and the UDD guideline asks city drainage master plans to use existing ponds and lakes as detention and to rejuvenate them (UDD, 2024). Losing that storage cannot be offset economically by pipes and pumps.

1.3 Legal basis and status

1.3.1 **Notification.** This Manual shall be given statutory effect by the Government of Uttar Pradesh through:

- (a) an amendment to the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 that makes compliance with this Manual a condition of planning permission, building permit, layout approval and completion certificate, for development to which Clause 1.5 applies; and
- (b) bye-laws or standing orders of each urban local body (ULB), adopting the Manual for works executed or approved by that ULB, including the ULB's own drains and roads.

1.3.2 **Higher State standards.** The design return periods and performance criteria of this Manual exceed the national advisory minimums of the CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019). The State shall constitute, by notification, a high-powered committee (the **State Stormwater Technical Committee**, Clause 1.9) to adopt these higher standards. This is the route that CPHEEO (2019) provides for higher return periods.

1.3.3 **Precedence.** Within its scope, this Manual governs where it is stricter than CPHEEO (2019), IRC:SP:42-2014, IRC:SP:50-2013 or any departmental standard. Where a statute or statutory rule sets a stricter requirement (for example a waterbody setback), the statute governs.

1.3.4 **Design-practice standard for public works.** Departments and ULBs that procure drainage, road or waterbody works shall require compliance with this Manual in detailed project reports (DPRs) and contracts, from the dates in Clause 1.11.

> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh has one set of building rules for the development authorities and a separate set for the industrial authorities. The Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and the Model Zoning Regulations 2025 were approved by the Government in the Housing and Urban Planning Department by G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025, under sections 57 and 13(2) of the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, superseding the bye-laws of 2008 and 19 other G.O.s; each development authority issues them in its own name (cl. 1.1), and where the Hindi and English versions differ the English prevails (cl. 1.4). An amendment of 21 November 2025 changed only clauses on township policy and risk-based approval and has no drainage content (as reported). Noida, the Greater Noida Industrial Development Authority (GNIDA) and the Yamuna Expressway Industrial Development Authority (YEIDA), constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976, were not addressed by the G.O. and keep their own building regulations of 2010, which were not read for this Manual [TBC]. The Byelaws 2025 set no design storm, return period, release rate or detention volume, no "zero runoff" rule, and no setback in metres from a nala or a tal. They make rooftop rainwater harvesting mandatory on plots of 300 m² and more where the scheme has no collective recharge network, "except waterlogged areas" (cl. 13.1.2); require layouts of more than 4 ha to build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the scheme area, no more than 2 m deep; set a minimum plinth of 0.30 m above the surrounding ground (cl. 3.3.1.21); require only that surface water does not enter a basement (cl. 3.3.3.2(iv)); permit only repair and renovation within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga (cl. 2.11); make construction on recorded ponds and drains non-compoundable (cl. 16.3.2(xi)); give 3, 5 or 7% extra FAR for green-rated buildings (cl. 9.3); and, for projects of 20,000 m² of built-up area and more, require the natural drainage to be kept and allow "Check dams, bio-swales, landscape, and other sustainable urban drainage systems (SUDS)" (cl. 13.3). In Uttar Pradesh the route of Clause 1.3.1(a) therefore runs through the Housing and Urban Planning Department, which approved the Byelaws 2025 by G.O. and would approve an amendment in the same way for each development authority to issue, and through Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA, which would amend their own regulations. This Manual is a draft; neither the Government nor any authority has adopted it. MoHUA told Parliament in July 2026 that urban flooding "falls under the purview of the State Governments and the ULBs" and listed the CPHEEO manual among "advisory guidelines" (Lok Sabha AU1847). The State therefore needs no central approval to adopt higher standards. CPHEEO's Note 2 to Table 4.1 (§4.4.1.4) allows "a high powered committee constituted by State/UT Government through a notification" to adopt higher return periods. Clause 1.3.2 uses that route so that higher standards are on record for centrally funded schemes.

1.4 Definitions

1.4.1 The following terms apply throughout this Manual. Chapter-specific terms are defined in each chapter (for example Clause 2.2).

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Approving Authority (the Authority)	The body that grants planning permission, building permit or layout approval for a development, or that sanctions a public work: the development authority or special area development authority in its development area, under its own edition of the Byelaws 2025; the controlling authority of a regulated area; Noida, the Greater Noida Industrial Development Authority (GNIDA), the Yamuna Expressway Industrial Development Authority (YEIDA) or UPSIDA in its industrial development area, under its own building regulations; or, where it grants building or layout permission, the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat concerned, or a department for its own works.
Applicant	The owner, developer or department that seeks approval, and its successors in title.
Development	Any building, layout, sub-division, road, paving or land-use change that requires approval under the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 or that is executed as a public work.
Redevelopment	Development on a site where impervious cover already exists.
Land disturbance	Clearing, grading, excavation, filling or paving of land, measured in plan area over the whole of a common plan of development (Clause 1.5.5).
Impervious area	Roofs, paving, compacted gravel, decks and other surfaces that prevent infiltration. Permeable paving designed to Chapter 8 is counted as pervious only for the area it treats.
New or replaced impervious area	Impervious area created, or removed and rebuilt down to the subgrade, by the development. Resurfacing that leaves the base in place is not "replaced".
Retention	Permanent removal of runoff from the drainage system on site, by infiltration, reuse or evapotranspiration (Chapter 4).
Detention	Temporary storage of runoff with a controlled outlet, emptied after the storm (Chapter 4).
Rainwater harvesting (RWH)	Collection of rainfall for supply or recharge under the RWH mandate. RWH storage is not detention unless Chapter 4 allows it.
Minor system	Drains, pipes and inlets designed for the minor-system AEP of Chapter 6.
Major system	The overland and floodway path that carries the 1% AEP (100-yr) flow (Chapter 6).
Pre-development condition	Greenfield: open land in good condition for the mapped hydrologic soil group. Existing impervious cover is not counted (Chapter 3).
Flood-sensitive catchment	The catchments of the drains of Lucknow that outfall to the Gomti through pumping stations, gates or regulators in its embankments, including the Kukrail; the city of Gorakhpur behind the Rapti and Rohin embankments, including the catchments of Ramgarh Tal and the Goddhoia nala; the catchments of the drains of Prayagraj that outfall to the Ganga and the Yamuna near their confluence; and the low-lying land of Ghaziabad and Gautam Buddh Nagar (Noida) beside the Hindon, and any catchment the Authority notifies (Chapter 4; Annex 1B).
Waterbody	A river, stream, canal, tank (tal), lake, pond, marsh, supply channel or surplus course, whether perennial or seasonal (Chapter 7).
Regional facility	A detention, retention or tank storage facility serving more than one development, built or restored under a basin plan (Chapter 4).
Tier A / Tier B authority	An Approving Authority classed under Clause 1.6.
Policy supplement	The set of adoptable alternative clauses in Clause 1.7 and Annex 1C.
Drainage report	The preliminary or final report required by Chapter 10.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Registered professional	A person registered under the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 to prepare and sign the relevant plans, with any further qualification required by Clause 10.6.
Compliance calculator	The State-issued tool for computing and reporting compliance (Clause 10.5).
Maintenance declaration	The registered undertaking by an owner to maintain a stormwater facility (Clause 10.10).
Variance	Approval to depart from a numeric requirement, with equivalent performance shown (Clause 1.10).
Waiver	Approval that a requirement does not apply to a site, on the grounds in Clause 1.10.
Notified	Published by the Government or the State Stormwater Technical Committee in the Uttar Pradesh Gazette.

> **Commentary.** "Replaced" impervious area is defined to the subgrade so that redevelopment of a fully paved site is captured, while routine resurfacing is not. This follows the approach of the APWA 5600 (2025.01) redevelopment triggers (MARC Supplement, 2025).

1.5 Applicability

1.5.1 **Who is covered.** This Manual applies to:

- (a) all development requiring planning permission, building permit or layout approval under the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025;
- (b) all drainage, road, bridge, culvert, waterbody and flood-mitigation works executed by a ULB, a State department, a board, or a State undertaking; and
- (c) works executed by Central agencies or their contractors within Uttar Pradesh, to the extent that the Authority's approval or no-objection is required.

1.5.2 **Retention and detention threshold.** Chapters 4 and 5 (retention, detention, downstream and tailwater analysis) apply to any development that, over the common plan of development, involves:

- (a) land disturbance of **0.1 ha or more**; **or**
- (b) new or replaced impervious area of **500 m² or more**.

1.5.3 **RWH.** The existing RWH mandate continues to apply under clause 13.1.2 of the Byelaws 2025 to every plot of **300 m²** and more, of all uses including group housing, where the scheme has no collective recharge network, except in waterlogged areas, where roof water may be stored but not recharged; to plots of 100–300 m² in new schemes through the scheme's collective recharge network; and to layouts of more than 4 ha through recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the scheme area; through the stipulations for rooftop rainwater harvesting that section 31(2) of the Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 makes binding on every agency that sanctions building plans, with a combined recharge system for group housing and colonies; and, in the Noida, Greater Noida and YEIDA areas, under their own building regulations [TBC], as now. This Manual does not change it.

1.5.4 **Provisions that apply at every size.** The following apply to all development under Clause 1.5.1, whatever its size, unless exempted by Clause 1.5.8:

- (a) no sewage connection to a storm drain (Chapter 8);
- (b) lowest habitable floor and openings at or above the 1% AEP level plus 0.5 m, where a 1% AEP level is mapped or determinable (Chapter 6);
- (c) waterbody setbacks and the no-fill zone (Chapter 7); and

- (d) no obstruction of a natural drainage path or major-system flow path (Chapter 6).

1.5.5 **Common plan of development.** The thresholds of Clause 1.5.2 apply to the total area of a development, including all phases, plots and sub-divisions under one layout approval or one ownership at the date of application. A development shall not be divided to avoid the thresholds.

1.5.6 **Redevelopment.** For redevelopment, the thresholds apply to new plus replaced impervious area. Retention and detention apply to the whole of the new and replaced impervious area, and the pre-development condition is greenfield (Clause 1.4). Where greenfield control cannot be achieved on a constrained redevelopment site, the relief route of Clause 4.5.6 applies: a minimum on-site cut of 50% from existing peaks, with the shortfall paid as fee-in-lieu into basin storage.

1.5.7 **Linear public works.** For roads, widening and other linear works, the impervious area threshold applies to the added impervious area within each drainage catchment crossed. Retention and detention shall be provided within the right of way, or in a regional facility under Chapter 4, where the right of way cannot hold them.

1.5.8 **Exemptions.** The following are exempt from Chapters 4 and 5:

- (a) a single dwelling on its own plot, where the thresholds of Clause 1.5.2 are not met; and
- (b) linear road resurfacing that adds no impervious area.

Exempt development remains subject to the RWH mandate and to Clause 1.5.4.

1.5.9 **Applicability determination.** The Applicant shall record the applicability decision on **Form 1-1** (Applicability Determination) with the first submittal under Chapter 10. The Authority may confirm or correct it at the pre-application stage.

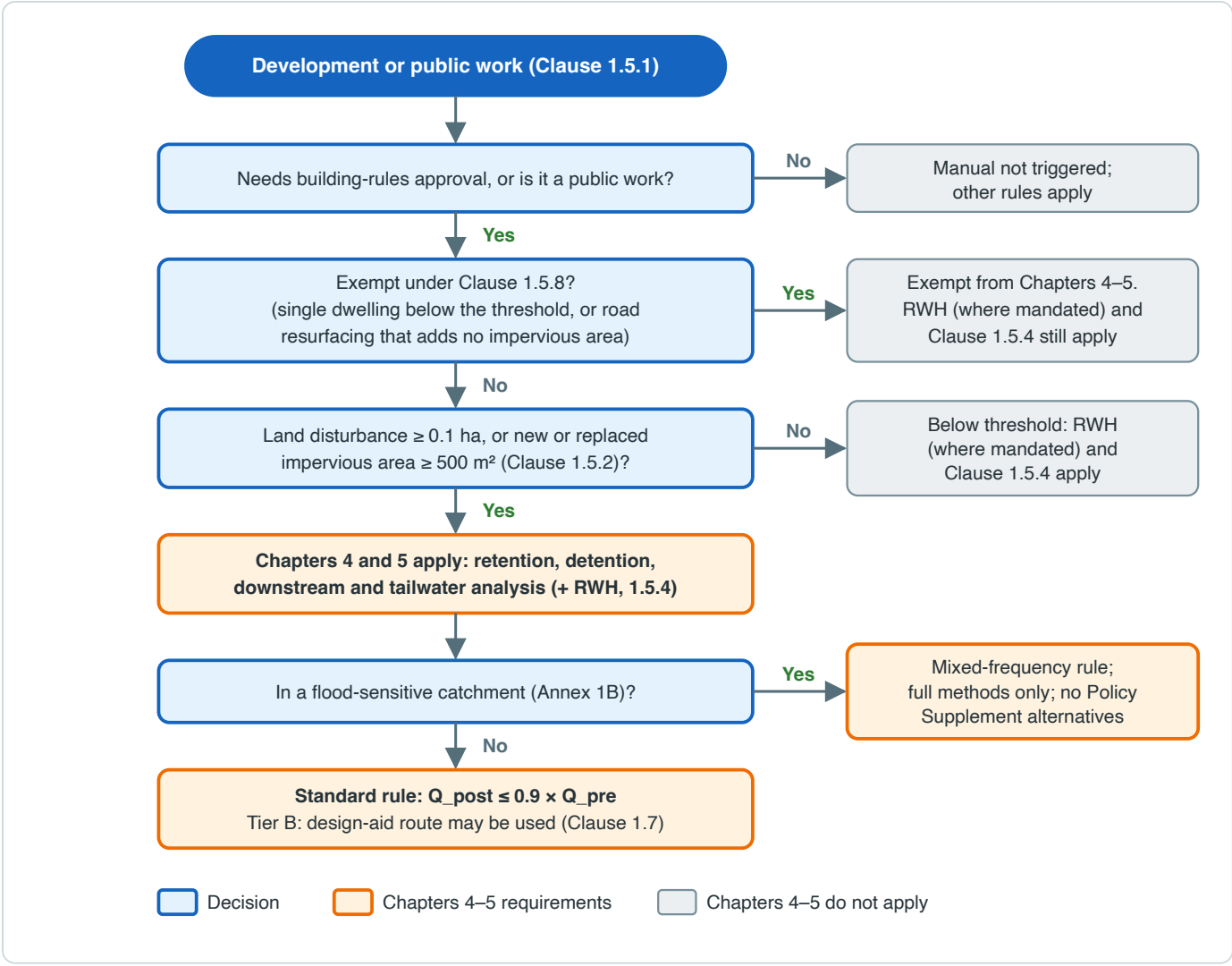


Figure 1.2 — Applicability decision flowchart for Clause 1.5. Original drawing for this Manual.

Commentary. The thresholds have no single direct precedent; they are set by this Manual. Precedents span a wide range:

- Singapore controls peak runoff from developments of 0.2 ha or more (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., cl. 7.1.5).
- Malaysia's 2008 DID checklist used on-site detention for sites up to 0.1 ha and community ponds above that.
- The APWA 5600 (2025.01) Policy Supplement offers alternative triggers of ¼ acre (about 0.1 ha) disturbed, or 1 acre (about 0.4 ha) with 10,000 sq ft (about 930 m²) impervious, and warns agencies not to exceed a 1-acre trigger.
- MBBL 2016 makes recharge mandatory for buildings over 500 m².

The 0.1 ha / 500 m² trigger sits at the strict end of these, because typical Uttar Pradesh plots are small and the cumulative effect of many small plots is what fills Lucknow's drains. For small buildings in Uttar Pradesh, the Byelaws 2025 require rooftop rainwater harvesting only on plots of 300 m² and more; plots of 100–300 m² in new schemes rely on the scheme's collective recharge network (cl. 13.1.2). A press report says the Chief Minister directed in October 2025 that rainwater harvesting be mandatory on buildings of more than 100 m², but no G.O. giving effect to it was found [TBC], and it is not treated as law here. The Byelaws set a minimum plinth of 0.30 m above the surrounding ground (cl. 3.3.1.21), not above the road or above a flood level; they allow a basement ceiling 0.9–1.2 m above the adjacent road and require only that surface water does not enter it (cl. 3.3.3.2(iv)),

and they do not bar basements in low-lying or flood-prone areas. Since November 2025 small residential buildings of up to 100 m² are approved as low-risk on self-certification (as reported). Clause 1.5.4(b) applies to every building whatever its size for this reason.

Clause 1.5.4(b) has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because floor levels are the cheapest protection a building can have, and it would be perverse to protect only large developments. Where no 1% AEP level is mapped, Chapter 6 gives the method for small sites.

1.6 Tiered adoption

1.6.1 **Tier A authorities.** The following are Tier A:

- (a) the Lucknow Municipal Corporation (LMC);
- (b) every Approving Authority within the development area of LDA or of any other development authority constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, as those areas are notified from time to time, including the development authorities themselves where they are the Approving Authority, and the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats in those areas; and
- (c) Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA, constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976, and UPSIDA, in their industrial development areas, and every other Nagar Nigam constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Municipal Corporations Act, 1959, as constituted from time to time.

1.6.2 **Tier B authorities.** All other Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats are Tier B.

1.6.3 **What differs between tiers.** All criteria of this Manual apply in both tiers. The tiers differ only in method and review:

Table 1.1 — Differences between Tier A and Tier B authorities

Item	Tier A	Tier B
Performance criteria (Chapters 2–9)	Apply in full	Apply in full
Hydrologic method for storage	Hydrograph method (Chapter 3)	Hydrograph method, or the design-aid route of Clause 1.7 where eligible
Compliance calculator (Clause 10.5)	Required as a summary	Required; may be the sole calculation on the design-aid route
Policy supplement alternatives (Clause 1.7)	Only with State Stormwater Technical Committee concurrence	May be adopted by council resolution
Technical review	By the Authority	By the Authority, with TCPD regional support or an empanelled reviewer (Clause 10.7)
Flood-sensitive catchment rule	Applies	Applies

1.6.4 **Moving between tiers.** A Tier B authority may opt into Tier A by council resolution. The Government may notify a Tier B authority as Tier A when it becomes a Corporation, joins the development area of a development authority constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, or an industrial development area under the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976, or is found by a post-event review (Clause 10.16) to need the full methods.

1.6.5 **Flood-sensitive catchments override tier.** In a flood-sensitive catchment, whatever the tier, the alternatives of Clause 1.7 are available only as Table 1.2 allows: S-1 (the design-aid route) for sites of 0.5 ha or less (Clause 4.14.1), and S-5 fee-in-lieu where a basin plan has been notified (Clause 1.10.3(d)). S-2, S-3 and S-4 are not available.

> **Commentary.** Lucknow Municipal Corporation (Nagar Nigam Lucknow), with its engineering wing, its Jal Kal Vibhag and a city of 34 drains, 33 of which outfall to the Gomti (as reported to the NGT), and a small Nagar Panchayat with one assistant engineer cannot be asked to review the same hydrograph models. The Kansas City solution was to keep one regional standard and publish adoptable alternatives for the most contested criteria, so that smaller agencies can "opt down" without leaving the standard (MARC Supplement, Nov 2025). The tiers here keep the performance criteria the same in both tiers and vary only the method, so that a building in a Tier B town is protected to the same level as one in Lucknow.

1.7 Policy supplement: adoptable alternatives

1.7.1 The Government shall publish, with this Manual, a **Policy Supplement** (Annex 1C) of alternative clauses. An Approving Authority may adopt one or more alternatives under the conditions in Clause 1.7.3.

1.7.2 The alternatives are:

Table 1.2 — Policy supplement: adoptable alternatives S-1 to S-5

No.	Main-text requirement	Adoptable alternative	Eligibility
S-1	Storage sized by hydrograph method (Chapter 3)	**Design-aid route:** retention and detention volumes taken from the unit-storage tables (m³ per ha, by rainfall zone, soil group and impervious fraction) in Annex 4 and the compliance calculator	Sites ≤ 2 ha outside flood-sensitive catchments; ≤ 0.5 ha within them (as Clause 4.14.1)
S-2	Release rate Q_post(T) ≤ 0.9 × Q_pre(T), computed for the site	**Permissible site discharge (PSD):** a tabulated unit-area release rate (m³/s/ha) by zone and AEP, derived from the 0.9 × Q_pre rule	Any site outside flood-sensitive catchments
S-3	Waterbody setback extended to the mapped 1% AEP flood extent plus margin (Chapter 7)	**Fixed-width setback table** by waterbody class, where no 1% AEP extent is mapped. Never less than the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7	Waterbodies with no mapped 1% AEP extent
S-4	Downstream analysis by hydraulic model (Chapter 5)	**Screening checklist** of downstream capacity and known flooding, with a model only where the screen fails	Sites < 1 ha, outside flood-sensitive catchments, not discharging to a tidal outfall
S-5	On-site detention	**Fee-in-lieu** toward a regional facility or restored tank storage in a master-planned basin (Chapter 4)	Where a basin plan has been notified

1.7.3 **Conditions on adoption.**

- (a) An alternative shall not lower any criterion below the values of this Manual. S-1 and S-2 are simplified methods for meeting the same criterion. They are not lower criteria.
- (b) A Tier B authority adopts an alternative by council resolution, sent to the State Stormwater Technical Committee within 30 days. A Tier A authority needs the Committee's concurrence before adoption.
- (c) The adopted alternatives shall be published on the Authority's website and in the register of Clause 10.17.
- (d) Retention (Annex 2E depth) cannot be replaced by any alternative, except where fee-in-lieu under S-5 funds equivalent retention in the same basin.
- (e) The tables for S-1, S-2 and S-3 shall be issued by the State Stormwater Technical Committee, and reviewed with Chapter 2 (Clause 2.14).

Commentary. The supplement follows the model of the APWA 5600 (2025.01) Policy Supplement, which gives alternatives for the four most contested criteria (applicability, Rational Method limits, stream setback trigger, and Zone 2 setback width). Two of those map onto S-3 and onto the applicability threshold of Clause 1.5.2. Alternative S-3 copies the APWA answer to the same problem: the 1% AEP extent is not mapped for small drainage areas, so a fixed-width table is offered. S-2 follows the Kansas City 2011 shift from "match existing" to fixed unit-area release rates. Local agencies preferred a set rate because existing conditions were hard to determine consistently (MARC Evolution deck). It also reflects the Sydney Water permissible site discharge (PSD) method. The 2 ha / 0.5 ha limits for S-1 (matching Clause 4.14.1) and the 1 ha limit for S-4 have no direct precedent; they are set by this Manual.

1.8 Relationship with other instruments

1.8.1 This Manual shall be applied together with the instruments below. Where they overlap, Clause 1.3.3 governs.

Table 1.3 — Relationship with other instruments

Instrument	Relationship
Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and Model Zoning Regulations 2025, approved by G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025 under sections 57 and 13(2) of the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, issued by each development authority in its own name, and amended on 21 November 2025	Continue. They supersede the bye-laws of 2008, which are not cited as current. They require site and layout plans to show "any water body, flood affected areas" and nalas, with contours at 0.3 m where the slope is steeper than 1:20 (cl. 2.3.2); drains to be "an integral part of the road" with sufficient slope (cl. 3.1.3.5) and road margins and pathways to be as unpaved or perforated as possible "to ensure maximum groundwater recharge" (cl. 3.1.3.6); parks to have no more than 5% concrete (cl. 13.1.2); a minimum plinth of 0.30 m (cl. 3.3.1.21); basements that keep out surface water (cl. 3.3.3.2(iv)); only repair and renovation within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga, with drainage there "not released directly into the river" (cl. 2.11); and, for projects of 20,000 m² of built-up area and more, the natural drainage kept, no construction on wetlands and water bodies, and SUDS allowed (cl. 13.3). Construction on ponds, reservoirs, rivers and drains identified in a plan or recorded in the revenue records is not compoundable (cl. 16.3.2(xi)). They set no design storm, release rate, detention volume or setback in metres from a nala or a tal. The design criteria of Chapters 2–6 and the hydraulic corridor and setbacks of Chapter 7, whose Zone 1 is at least 15 m, are this Manual's proposals; they are not statutory values, and no authority has adopted them. Where the Byelaws 2025 or a Master Plan or Zonal Plan are stricter, they govern (Clause 1.3.3).
Rainwater harvesting: Byelaws 2025, cl. 13.1.2 and the environmental conditions for large projects; Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019, ss.31(2) and 39(4)	Continue unchanged. Rooftop rainwater harvesting is mandatory on plots of 300 m² and more of all uses, including group housing, where the scheme has no collective recharge network, "except waterlogged areas", where roof water may be stored but "Ground water recharging system should not be adopted"; plots of 100–300 m² in new schemes may rely on the scheme's collective network; layouts of more than 4 ha build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the scheme area, no more than 2 m deep, fed only by surface runoff (cl. 13.1.2); and projects of 20,000 m² of built-up area and more provide at least one recharge bore per 5,000 m² of built-up area, keep recharge to the shallow aquifer, and keep at least 20% of the open space pervious. Section 31(2) of the Act makes the rooftop harvesting stipulations that the Municipal Water Management Committee imposes binding on every agency that sanctions building plans, and makes a combined recharge system for group housing and colonies mandatory; s.39(4) penalises an owner who fails to install it. A direction of the Chief Minister of October 2025 to extend harvesting to buildings of more than 100 m² is reported in the press, but no G.O. was found [TBC]. None of these gives an outlet rule or a storage that is empty when a storm arrives. RWH storage is not detention unless it is a dedicated empty-on-arrival volume with an outlet, and tanks are assumed full at the start of SW monsoon storms (Chapter 4). Recharge structures may count toward retention where they meet Chapters 4 and 8.

Instrument	Relationship
Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973	The development authorities constituted under section 4 of the Act prepare the Master Plans and Zonal Plans (section 13), approve and enforce development in their development areas under the Byelaws 2025 (section 57), and act on the Government's directions (section 41). This Manual does not decide zoning.
Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976; the building regulations of Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA (2010)	Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA approve buildings and layouts in their industrial development areas under their own regulations, and UPSIDA in its industrial areas [TBC]. Their drainage, rainwater harvesting and floodplain provisions were not read for this Manual [TBC]. Clause 1.3.1(a) applies to them as to the Byelaws 2025.
Uttar Pradesh Municipal Corporations Act, 1959 (Chapter 10, sections 228–249) and Uttar Pradesh Municipalities Act, 1916 (Chapter 7, sections 189–194)	The Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats build and maintain the drains in their areas. The UDD guideline cites these chapters as the basis of urban drainage and directs that all agencies carry out drainage works in conformity with the approved IUSWDMP, regulated by the Nagar Nigam under them (UDD, 2024); their sections were not read for this Manual [TBC]. No rule dividing the natural drains of I&WRD from the municipal nalas was found (Clause 1.9).
Uttar Pradesh Water Supply and Sewerage Act, 1975; division of UP Jal Nigam into UP Jal Nigam (Urban) and UP Jal Nigam (Rural) by Gazette notification No. 1770/9-3-21-05lh/2021 of 9 September 2021	UP Jal Nigam builds sewerage and the interception and diversion of drains ("tapping"); its Construction and Design Services wing prepares the IUSWDMPs; the Jal Kal departments of the Nagar Nigams run the city systems. Most city nalas carry sewage, and the State's main remedy has been to intercept them at the outfall under Namami Gange: before the Kumbh of 2025, 39 of the 81 drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna at Prayagraj were untapped, and 22 of them were treated with geotubes; 28 of 45 drains to the Gomti at Lucknow are untapped or partly tapped; and the Sisamau nala at Kanpur was tapped in 2018 (all as reported). The interception of dry-weather flow under Chapter 8 (Clause 8.9) applies until the connections are removed.
Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019)	Continues. Section 28 bars the direct recharge of rain water, other than from rooftops, "falling on open land, ground, roads (paved/unpaved), agricultural farms" into the aquifers "through recharge well, bore well, recharge shaft, injection well etc."; section 33 makes the prevention of "potential water logging" a duty of the Appropriate Authorities; and section 9 provides for over-exploited and critical blocks and "stressed urban areas" to be notified. Lucknow city is classed as over-exploited, with pre-monsoon water levels of 7.65–45.6 m below ground in 2023 (CGWB). Under Chapters 4 and 8, runoff from roads and open land is sent to surface systems and not to recharge wells or shafts, and infiltration is refused on waterlogged land and where the water table is within the separation of Chapter 8.
Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006, ss.54, 59, 61, 67 and 77; *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi* (Supreme Court, 2001)	Continue. The beds of rivers, streams, nalas, lakes, ponds and tanks vest in the State (s.54); a village tank of 0.5 acre or less "shall be reserved for public use", and "tank" includes "talab, pond, pokhar and other land covered with water" (s.61); wrongful occupation is met by eviction and compensation (s.67); and no bhumidhari right accrues in land covered by a pond, tank or lake or forming part of an embankment (s.77(1)(i)). The Supreme Court held that where a pond's area "varies in rainy season … no part of it could have been allotted" and directed the State to "restore the pond" (2001), and the Allahabad High Court has used the revenue record of 1 July 1952 as the baseline for restoring ponds (as reported). No setback in metres around a pond or tal was found; the setbacks of Chapter 7 are this Manual's proposal. Where the Code or a court order is wider, it governs (Clause 1.3.3).
River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl. 3(l), 6(3) and 42; floodplain zones notified by I&WRD: the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia (13 districts, G.O. of 29 January 2025) and the Yamuna (17 districts, January 2025, as reported)	Continue. The Order defines the floodplain by "a flood of frequency once in hundred years", bars structures in the active floodplain of the Ganga and its tributaries, and requires the prior approval of NMCG for embankments and channelisation in it (as quoted by I&WRD and NMCG). I&WRD notifies the zones by coordinates. The Hindon in Ghaziabad and Gautam Buddh Nagar is not yet demarcated; its 100-year flood level is 205.39 m at km 49 and 205.20 m at km 110 (I&WRD, 2026). An amendment of the Order in 2026 is reported to define the active floodplain by the 5-year flood, with regulatory and warning zones to the 25- and 100-year floods; its text was not read [TBC]. Court lines also apply: no construction within 500 m of the mid-stream of the Ganga at Prayagraj (Allahabad High Court, 2011), "HFL + 500 m" along the Yamuna as applied by the Prayagraj Development Authority, and along the Gomti at Lucknow 100 m (High Court, Lucknow bench, 2010) or 50 m (Irrigation order, 2020), both as reported. Where the 1% AEP extent of Chapter 7 is mapped and wider, it governs.

Instrument	Relationship
Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017; UP State Wetland Authority; notification of Ramgarh Tal, Gorakhpur, 7 December 2020	Continue. The Rules bar construction of a permanent nature, except boat jetties, "within fifty metres from the mean high flood level" of a notified wetland. Ramgarh Tal was notified over 742.245 ha with a zone of influence of 50 m and its six inflow nalas, and may not be used as a "Sink for treated and untreated sewage"; hydrological interventions there need the permission of the UP State Wetland Authority on the recommendation of the District Wetland Committee. Other wetlands are reported to have been notified since [TBC]. Where a notification is wider than the setback of Chapter 7, it governs (Clause 1.3.3).
UDD guideline for the Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme (December 2024)	Continues. IUSWDMPs and DPRs under the scheme follow the CPHEEO Manual of 2019, which sets national minimum return periods and allows a State committee to adopt higher ones (Clause 1.3.2). This Manual can serve those plans and DPRs as a technical companion: it supplies the design storm (Chapter 2), detention (Chapter 4), tailwater (Chapter 5) and buffer (Chapter 7) values that the guideline does not set, and the master-plan method of Chapter 11. It has not been adopted by UDD.
Disaster Management Act, 2005, s.41 (and s.41A, inserted in December 2024, as cited by UDD); flood control rooms of I&WRD; UPSDMA	Continue. I&WRD runs its flood control rooms from 15 June to 15 October and completes flood-protection works by 15 June (as reported). No urban flood plan or SOP of UPSDMA was found [TBC]. Chapter 10 links its pre-monsoon checks to these dates.
CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019)	Engineering reference. This Manual sets higher return periods under Clause 1.3.2.
NDMA Guidelines on Management of Urban Flooding (2010) and MoHUA SOP (2017)	This Manual puts into effect the NDMA directives on catchment-based design, detention and retention, waterbody protection and climate-adjusted IDF.
NDMA Urban Flood Risk Management Programme (UFRMP) and AMRUT 2.0	Works funded under these programmes shall comply with this Manual. The development controls of Chapters 4–5 protect the capacity those works create.
IRC:SP:42-2014 and IRC:SP:50-2013	Apply to road drainage only where they do not conflict with Chapter 6.
MBBL 2016, Chapter 9	Model for RWH and for the inspection regime in Chapter 10.

Commentary. RWH in Uttar Pradesh is framed as a water supply and recharge measure. It works well for that purpose. It cannot, however, be relied on for flood control in the SW monsoon, because RWH sumps are usually full or the ground saturated by the time a July to September monsoon depression arrives after weeks of rain. The Manual therefore keeps harvest volume and attenuation volume apart, while letting recharge count as retention where it truly removes water from the system.

Uttar Pradesh is planning to spend on drainage. The UDD's Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme had ₹1,000 crore in 2024-25, ₹100 crore of it for master plans. Its guideline of December 2024 makes an approved Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan (IUSWDMP), prepared by catchment by the Construction and Design Services (C&DS) of UP Jal Nigam (Urban) "as per the CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage System (Aug-2019)" and approved by a State Level Apex Committee chaired by the Chief Secretary, the basis for funding; makes all Nagar Nigams eligible first; and asks each DPR for 25–30 years of IMD autographic rainfall analysed into an IDF curve, and for pumps that can operate above the high flood level (UDD, 2024). It records that existing drains are usually designed for a 1–2-year storm, but it sets no design return period of its own, no detention rule and no buffer. No development-control condition stops new plots in the same catchments from using up the capacity such works create. Linking Chapters 4–5 to approvals closes that gap.

The State's law already holds many of the tools. It protects ponds and tanks through the Revenue Code and *Hinch Lal Tiwari*, notifies the floodplains of the Ganga and the Yamuna on the 1-in-100-year flood; makes building on recorded ponds and drains non-compoundable and limits building within 200 m of the Ganga (Byelaws 2025); makes rooftop rainwater harvesting binding on every agency that sanctions building plans, bars the direct recharge of runoff from roads and open land through wells and shafts, and makes the prevention of waterlogging a duty (Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019, ss.31(2), 28 and 33). What it lacks

is a design standard. None of these instruments says how large a drain must be, which storm it must carry, how wide the reserve along a nala or around a tal should be, or how much storage a filled pond or a paved plot removes. This Manual is offered as a technical companion to the UDD guideline and to these instruments: it supplies the design storm, detention and buffer numbers they do not set, as a proposal for the Government and the authorities to consider. Neither UDD nor any other body has adopted it.

1.9 Roles and responsibilities

1.9.1 The responsibilities below apply under this Manual. They do not change any agency's statutory powers.

Table 1.4 — Roles and responsibilities under this Manual

Agency	Role under this Manual
Housing and Urban Planning Department, with the TCPD (Town and Country Planning Department, headed by the Chief Town and Country Planner)	Approves the building bye-laws and zoning regulations of the development authorities under the 1973 Act, as it did the Byelaws 2025, and directs the authorities under section 41. Would approve the amendment of Clause 1.3.1(a) for each development authority to issue, and give regional support to Tier B authorities (Table 1.1). Maintains the empanelled reviewer list (Clause 10.7).
Urban Development Department (UDD) and the Directorate of Local Bodies	Oversee the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats, and run the Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: appraisal of IUSWDMPs and DPRs, the project management unit and third-party review (UDD, 2024). Would issue the model ULB bye-law of Clause 1.3.1(b) and require compliance in the drainage works of the local bodies.
State Stormwater Technical Committee (Clause 1.3.2)	Would adopt higher standards, issue Annexes, tables and the compliance calculator, concur with Tier A alternatives, decide variances referred to it and review the Manual (Clause 1.12). How it would relate to the State Level Apex Committee of the UDD scheme, which approves IUSWDMPs, is for the Government to decide.
Nagar Nigams, with their Jal Kal departments; Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats	Build and maintain the drains in their areas and grant building permission where they are the Approving Authority. Under the UDD guideline the Nagar Nigam regulates drainage works by all agencies in its city against the approved IUSWDMP. LMC's Jal Kal Vibhag reported 34 drains in Lucknow, 33 of which join the Gomti (as reported to the NGT). Would apply this Manual to their works, receive handed-over assets (Clause 10.14), and inspect and enforce (Clauses 10.12–10.15).
Development authorities constituted under the 1973 Act, such as LDA, and the special area development authorities	Approving Authorities in their development areas; prepare the Master Plans and Zonal Plans; build and hold the drains of their schemes until they are handed to the Nagar Nigam. LDA is reported to propose 12 more pumping stations along the embanked Gomti (as reported). Would show flood-sensitive catchments, drain reserves and regional facility sites in their plans.
Industrial development authorities: Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA under the 1976 Act, and UPSIDA	Approving Authorities in their industrial development areas under their own regulations; hold the drains of those areas. Would amend their regulations under Clause 1.3.1(a) and apply this Manual to their works.
Irrigation and Water Resources Department (I&WRD)	Holds the rivers, embankments, regulators, canals and the drains of the canal commands; computes the 1-in-100-year flood and notifies the floodplain zones by coordinates; runs the flood control rooms from 15 June to 15 October. Its divisions include the Flood Works Division at Prayagraj and the Irrigation Construction Division at Ghaziabad for the Hindon. Would provide design river levels and the regulator and pump operating rules for Chapter 5, and consent to outfalls into its rivers and drains.
UP Jal Nigam (Urban) and UP Jal Nigam (Rural)	Sewerage and the interception and diversion of drains; Jal Nigam (Rural) executes Namami Gange projects under the policy of 2021, and the Construction and Design Services of Jal Nigam (Urban) prepare the IUSWDMPs. Would design interception works that keep the storm capacity of the nala (Chapter 8) and apply this Manual in the IUSWDMPs.

Agency	Role under this Manual
UP Ground Water Department and the Municipal Water Management Committees	Administer the Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019; the Committees impose the rooftop harvesting stipulations under section 31(2). The Department's NOC is among those listed for building permission in the Byelaws 2025. Would supply groundwater levels for the infiltration checks of Chapters 4 and 8.
Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board (UPPCB)	Monitors the quality of the drains and rivers and consents to sewage treatment works; a respondent in the floodplain and drain cases before the NGT. Supports the removal of sewage from storm drains (Chapter 8).
State Mission for Clean Ganga (SMCG) and the National Mission for Clean Ganga (NMCG)	Plan and fund the interception of drains and sewage treatment under Namami Gange; NMCG's prior approval is needed for embankments and channelisation in the Ganga floodplain under the 2016 Order, and a Gomti task force under NMCG includes I&WRD, UPPCB, Jal Nigam, LMC and LDA (as reported). Would be consulted on outfalls in the Ganga basin.
UP State Wetland Authority and the District Wetland Committees	Keep the list of wetlands notified under the Wetlands Rules 2017, such as Ramgarh Tal, and permit regulated activities in their zones of influence (Chapter 7).
UPSDMA and the District Disaster Management Authorities	Approve the State and district disaster management plans. Would recommend flood-sensitive catchments, hold the record of flood-prone locations with the District Magistrates, and lead the post-event review (Clause 10.16). No urban flood SOP of UPSDMA was found [TBC].
Revenue Department: the District Magistrates, the Sub-Divisional Officers and the tehsil offices	Keep the revenue records and village maps in which ponds, tanks, nalas and embankments are recorded and vest in the State or the Gram Panchayat (Revenue Code, ss.54 and 61); evict encroachments (s.67); lead flood relief. Would certify the recorded extent of a pond or tal for Chapter 7.
Central Water Commission (CWC), a body of the Union	Publishes the Flood Estimation Reports for subzones 1(e), 1(f), 1(c) and 1(b) used in Chapters 2 and 3, and the river levels at its flood forecasting sites, such as Hanuman Setu at Lucknow, Birdghat at Gorakhpur, Kanpur, Phaphamau and Naini at Prayagraj, Varanasi and Agra. Would supply river stage records and forecasts for Chapter 5.
Central Ground Water Board (CGWB) and the Central Ground Water Authority, bodies of the Union	Assess the groundwater units of the State and their categories, and monitor water levels. Would supply groundwater levels with the UP Ground Water Department.
IMD (Meteorological Centre Lucknow), and road and rail owners (PWD, NHAI, Indian Railways)	IMD's stations supply the rainfall records of Chapter 2. Road and rail owners would apply this Manual to road drainage (Chapter 6), culverts and linear works (Clause 1.5.7).

Commentary. Stormwater in Uttar Pradesh is split between three departments: Housing and Urban Planning, through the development authorities and their bye-laws; Urban Development, through the Nagar Nigams, the Directorate of Local Bodies and UP Jal Nigam (Urban); and Irrigation and Water Resources, through the rivers, floodplains, embankments and canals. The industrial development authorities are a fourth regime. The UDD guideline of December 2024 is the first document found that names one owner of the drainage plan for each city, the Nagar Nigam, with UP Jal Nigam (Urban) as planner (UDD, 2024). No rule was found that divides the natural drains held by I&WRD from the nalas held by the local bodies, or that sets when the drains of a development authority's scheme pass to the Nagar Nigam [TBC]. The question is not academic: in the Akbar Nagar case in Lucknow the occupants argued that the Kukrail is a nala and not a river, and the Supreme Court agreed with the High Court that the colony stood on its floodplain (as reported). Until such a rule is made, this Manual assigns the drainage elements as in Table 1.5. The assignment is this Manual's working split for applying its clauses; it does not change any agency's powers.

Table 1.5 — Working assignment of drainage elements under this Manual

Element	Assigned to
Rivers, their floodplains and embankments, regulators on the embankments, canals and the drains of canal commands	I&WRD
Nalas and road drains within the limits of a local body, including the pumping stations that lift them over a river embankment, unless an order assigns them otherwise	The Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat, through its Jal Kal department or engineering wing
Drains within a scheme of a development authority or the UP Awas Evam Vikas Parishad, until they are handed to the local body	The development authority or the Parishad
Trunk sewers, interceptors and the interception and diversion (tapping) of nalas	UP Jal Nigam (Urban) or (Rural), as the work is assigned
Drains of State and national highways	PWD or NHAI
Drains within an industrial development area	Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA or UPSIDA

This Manual names departments and authorities as the statutes, orders and records name them. A manual that names one owner for each task does not fix institutions by itself, but it removes ambiguity about who signs what.

1.10 Variances and waivers

1.10.1 **Variance.** The Authority may grant a variance from a numeric requirement where the Applicant shows, through a report certified under Clause 10.6, that:

- (a) compliance is impracticable because of site conditions such as a high groundwater table, contaminated soil, rock, or a site area too small for the required facility; and
- (b) the proposed alternative gives equal or better performance at the downstream point of Chapter 5, or the shortfall is made up by fee-in-lieu or off-site works in the same catchment.

1.10.2 **Waiver.** The Authority may waive Chapter 4 detention requirements (not retention) where a hydraulic analysis certified under Clause 10.6 shows that the site discharges directly to the sea, or to a tidal reach with no flood-prone property downstream, and that undetained flow does not worsen the outfall-closed condition of Chapter 5. Uttar Pradesh has no coast and no tidal reach, so no site in the State qualifies for this waiver. A site that drains to a river through a gate, regulator or flap gate in an embankment, as along the Gomti at Lucknow and the Rapti at Gorakhpur, or only by pumping, is in the outfall-closed condition of Chapter 5 whenever the river is high, and detention is not waived for it.

1.10.3 **No variance or waiver.** No variance or waiver shall be granted for:

- (a) a sewage connection to a storm drain;
- (b) the lowest habitable floor level of Chapter 6;
- (c) any reduction of a waterbody setback below the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7, or any fill or construction in the no-fill zone of Chapter 7; or
- (d) the retention requirement in a flood-sensitive catchment, except by fee-in-lieu under Clause 1.7.

1.10.4 **Procedure.**

- (a) The request shall be made on **Form 1-2** (Variance / Waiver Request) with the preliminary drainage report.
- (b) A Tier B authority shall refer any variance on a site of 1 ha or more to the State Stormwater Technical Committee.
- (c) A decision shall state its reasons and any conditions, and shall be entered in the public register of Clause 10.17.
- (d) A variance runs with the approval. It lapses if the approval lapses.

> **Commentary.** The 2006 APWA 5600 included a waivers section (5601.6), and Georgia allows waivers where downstream analysis shows a peak control is unnecessary. The waiver of Clause 1.10.2 is narrow: on a tidal coast, undetained flow can help by passing through before the tide closes the outfall, but only an analysis can show that. This Manual requires every decision to be published because publication deters case-by-case erosion of the standard; in Uttar Pradesh the Allahabad High Court has had to order that ponds and water channels be identified from the revenue records of 1 July 1952 and restored (*Iqbal Ahmad*, 2007, as reported), and in October 2025 warned Pradhans, Lekhpals and Tahsildars of contempt for failing to act against the encroachment of ponds and public land (as reported).

1.11 Transition provisions

1.11.1 **Effective date.** This Manual takes effect for new applications **6 months** after notification (the effective date).

1.11.2 **Applications in process.** An application filed complete before the effective date may be decided under the rules in force when it was filed, if a decision is issued within 12 months of the effective date. Otherwise, this Manual applies.

1.11.3 **Phased start for Tier B.** In Tier B authorities, Chapters 4 and 5 apply from **24 months** after notification, except in flood-sensitive catchments, where they apply from the effective date.

1.11.4 **Public works.** DPRs sanctioned before the effective date may proceed as sanctioned. Any DPR revised or re-tendered after the effective date shall comply. Departments shall report non-compliant works in progress to the State Stormwater Technical Committee within 12 months.

1.11.5 **Before the annexes are issued.** Until an annex referred to in this Manual is issued, the Applicant shall use the method stated in the clause, with values agreed with the Authority and recorded in the drainage report.

> **Commentary.** The 6-month lead time matches the lead time for NIH-DHAARA updates in Clause 2.14.2. Singapore gave a similar interval for its 2025 detention addendum (issued 16 Apr 2025, applied from 1 Oct 2025). The 12- and 24-month periods are set by this Manual to let Tier B authorities train staff and to let the State issue the design-aid tables (Clause 1.7).

1.12 Review and amendment

1.12.1 The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall review this Manual every **10 years**, and after any event that exceeds the 1% AEP design depth as set out in Clause 2.14.1.

1.12.2 Amendments shall be notified in the Gazette, published with a change log, and take effect 6 months after notification unless the notification states otherwise.

1.12.3 Any person may propose an amendment to the Committee. Proposals and the Committee's decisions shall be published.

References (chapter)

- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Section-3, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025, July 2025, approving the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and Model Zoning Regulations 2025, with the English text (Version PRF3, 3 Jul 2025), cl. 1.1, 1.4, 2.3.2, 2.11, 3.1.2.3, 3.1.3.5, 3.1.3.6, 3.3.1.21, 3.3.3, 9.3, 13.1.2, 13.3 and 16.3.2, and the environmental conditions for building projects (the day of the G.O. is handwritten on the scanned cover [TBC]). https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- Housing and Urban Planning Department (2025). Amendment notification No. 57/2025/I/1150135/2025/8-3099/208/2025, 21 Nov 2025 (summary by TeamLease RegTech; secondary source). https://teamleaseregtech.com/updates/article/49758/u-p-govt-issued-amendments-in-the-uttar-pradesh-development-authority-building-construction-and-development-byelaws-2025/
- Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, ss.4, 13, 41 and 57 (as cited in G.O. No. 1323/2025).
- Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976; building regulations of Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA (2010) (not read for this Manual [TBC]).
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). अर्बन फ्लड/जलप्लावन नियंत्रण एवं स्टॉर्म वाटर ड्रेनेज योजना — दिशा-निर्देश (Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines), Dec 2024 (Hindi, with an English DPR checklist), §§1.1, 1.3, 2.1, 2.2, 3.2, 3.3 and 4. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019), ss.5, 9, 28, 29, 31, 33, 34 and 39 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf ; https://www.indiacode.nic.in/handle/123456789/17016
- Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006 (updated to 5 Mar 2021), ss.54, 59, 61, 67 and 77 (LBSNAA copy). https://www.lbsnaa.gov.in/storage/uploads/pdf_data/1742473203_Uttar%20Pradesh%20Revenue%20Code%202006%20updated%20till%2005.03.2021.pdf
- Uttar Pradesh Municipal Corporations Act, 1959, Chapter 10; Uttar Pradesh Municipalities Act, 1916, Chapter 7; Uttar Pradesh Water Supply and Sewerage Act, 1975 (as cited by UDD; not read for this Manual [TBC]).
- Supreme Court of India. *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, 25 Jul 2001, AIR 2001 SC 3215. https://leap.unep.org/sites/default/files/court-case/COU-156224.pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Section-4 (2025). G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ) (NGT)/2023, 29 Jan 2025 (Ganga floodplain zone, Unnao to Ballia), as annexed to the Irrigation Department's report of 2 Apr 2025 in NGT O.A. 341/2022, *Deepak Awasthi v. State of U.P.* https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPORT%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20UP%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20341%20of%202022%20%20Deepak%20Awasthi%20Vs.%20State%20of%20U.P..pdf
- Irrigation Department, Uttar Pradesh (2026). Progress report of 23 May 2026 in NGT O.A. 569/2023, *Alok Kumar v. Union of India* (Hindon floodplain). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Progress%20Report%20By%20Irrigation%20Department,%20State%20of%20Uttar%20Pradesh%20DATED%2023-05-2026%20in%20OA%20569%20of%202023%20Alok%20Kumar%20Vs%20UOI%20and%20Ors.pdf
- National Mission for Clean Ganga (2024). Reply in NGT O.A. 515/2023, *Ganga Pollution v. State of U.P.* (quoting the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl. 3(l), 6(3) and 42). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20of%20NMCG%20in%20OA%20NO%20515%20of%202023%20(Ganga%20Pollution%20Vs.%20State%20of%20UP%20&%20Ors.).pdf
- Prayagraj Development Authority (2025). Reply of 17 Dec 2025 in NGT I.A. 288/2024 in O.A. 526/2023, annexing the order of the Allahabad High Court of 28 Mar 2011 in PIL No. 4003 of 2006, *In re Ganga Pollution*; and District Magistrate, Prayagraj, reply of 18 Dec 2025 in I.A. 458/2024 in O.A. 515/2023. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20by%20Prayagraj%20Development%20Authority%20in%20IA%20No.%20288%20of%202024%20IN%20OA%20No.%20526%20OF%202023%20(Ganga%20Sewa%20Abhiyan%20and%20Ors.%20Vs.%20UOI%20and%20Ors.).pdf ;

https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20by%20DM,%20Prayagraj%20in%20IA%20No.%20458%20OF%202024%20IN%20OA%20No.%20515%20OF%202023%20(Ganga%20Pollution%20Vs.%20State%20of%20UP%20&%20Ors.).pdf

- Government of Uttar Pradesh (2020). Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018, 7 Dec 2020 (Ramgarh Taal Wetland, Gorakhpur), as annexed to CPCB's response in NGT O.A. 1057/2024, *Sudhir Kumar Jha v. Gorakhpur Development Authority*, which also quotes the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, r.4(2)(vi). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf
- Urban Development Department, Uttar Pradesh (2021). Action Taken Report in NGT O.A. 370/2021, *Manoj Kumar Rai v. State of U.P.* (division of UP Jal Nigam). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Action%20Taken%20Report%20by%20Department%20of%20Urban%20Development,%20UP%20in%20OA%20No.%20370%20of%202021%20(Manoj%20Kumar%20Rai%20Versus%20State%20of%20U.%20P.%20&%20Ors).pdf
- Central Ground Water Board, Northern Region (2024). Submission on behalf of CGWA in NGT O.A. 594/2024 (groundwater levels in Lucknow city, 2014–2023). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Documents%20on%20behalf%20of%20CGWA%20in%20OA%20ON%20594%20of%202024%20(NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20LUCKNOW%20ME%20PAANEE%20CHALA%20RASATAL%2010%20SAAL%20ME%20160%20FOOT%20NEECHE%20CHALA%20GAYA%20JALSTAR%20MEL%20RAHE%20KHATARNAK%20SANKET_0.pdf
- Press reports of the Yamuna floodplain notification of January 2025, the 2026 amendment of the Ganga Order, the Gomti setbacks of 2010 and 2020, the direction on rainwater harvesting of October 2025, the Akbar Nagar (Kukrail) judgment of 2024 and the High Court's orders on pond encroachment of 2025 (secondary sources). https://theprint.in/india/over-5000-buildings-in-agra-face-risk-of-demolition-after-up-govt-demarcates-yamuna-floodplain/2478998 ; https://www.freepressjournal.in/india/centre-redefines-ganga-floodplain-drops-construction-free-zone-wording ; https://www.downtoearth.org.in/urbanisation/dte-exclusive-2020-order-on-floodplain-zoning-declaring-gomti-non-perennial-river-draws-flak-90655 ; https://www.amarujala.com/lucknow/up-cm-yogi-orders-rainwater-harvesting-to-be-mandatory-in-buildings-larger-than-100-square-meters-potters-ex-2025-10-04 ; https://www.livelaw.in/top-stories/supreme-court-lucknow-akbarnagar-demolitions-eviction-upheld-slum-dwellers-alternative-accommodation-257604 ; https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/allahabad-high-court-crackdown-gram-sabha-land-encroachments-pradhans-lekhpals-tahsildars-inaction-306753
- Press reports of the drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna at Prayagraj, to the Gomti at Lucknow and of the Sisamau nala at Kanpur (secondary sources). https://www.thestatesman.com/india/up-jal-nigam-adopts-geotube-technology-to-treat-drains-ahead-of-maha-kumbh-2025-1503376493.html ; https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/up-plans-45-drain-sewage-control-network-to-clean-gomti-river-in-lucknow-under-namami-gange ; https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/dirty-ganga-funds-down-the-drain-in-up-63980
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A, §4.4.1.4 (Table 4.1 and notes).
- Kakkar, R. (CPHEEO) (2023). Understanding Urban Stormwater Management. CSE, Aug 2023.
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). National Guidelines on Management of Urban Flooding.
- MoHUA (2016). Model Building Bye-Laws, Chapter 9.
- Lok Sabha Unstarred Question 1847, 30 Jul 2026 (MoHUA). https://sansad.in/getFile/lsapps/loksabhaquestions/annex/188/AU1847_x29brZ.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2022, 2023). Press releases of 15 and 16 Sep 2022 and 11 Sep 2023 (heavy rainfall over Uttar Pradesh). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (compiled from CWC site data; secondary source); and Rivers breaching highest flood levels in July 2023 (secondary source). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/ ; https://sandrp.in/2023/08/03/rivers-breaching-highest-flood-levels-in-july-2023/

- Press reports of the Rapti flood at Gorakhpur in 1998, the Ganga at Prayagraj in 2013 (Hindustan Times, 2019), the Lucknow rain of September 2022, the Hindon flood of July 2023, the Ganga floods of August 2025, and the waterlogging of Prayagraj and the Allahabad High Court's order of August 2026 (secondary sources). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/news/waters-of-woe-22412 ; https://scroll.in/latest/1032979/scroll_in ; https://www.tribuneindia.com/news/delhi/about-350-cars-at-ola-dump-yard-submerged-by-overflowing-hindon-529226 ; https://www.businesstoday.in/india/story/flooding-in-13-up-districts-ganga-flows-above-danger-mark-in-varanasi-mirzapur-ghazipur-ballia-487669-2025-08-04 ; https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/prayagraj-waterlogging-allahabad-hc-pumps-24-hours-municipal-corporation-546731
- Agra Smart City Ltd. Improvements to Taj East Drain, Detailed Project Report, Chapter 9 (rainfall analysis). https://agrasmartcity.in/pdf/wc13581914%20Improvements%20to%20Taj%20East%20Drain.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA 5600 Manual Factsheet; APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement (7 Nov 2025). https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- Mid-America Regional Council. The Evolution of Regional Stormwater Design Standards (presentation). https://www.marc2.org/Assets/Environment/WQEC/The_Evolution_of_Regional_Strormwater_Design_Standards.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600, §5601.6 Waivers.
- PUB Singapore (2018, with Addendum No. 3 of 16 Apr 2025). Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed.
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management.
- Centre for Science and Environment (2023). Urban Stormwater Management (presentation).
- Press reports of the drainage proposals of LDA along the Gomti in Lucknow, including 12 additional pumping stations between IIM Road and Kisan Path (secondary source). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/urbanisation/lucknows-floods-are-man-made-encroached-river-space-and-blocked-drains-turn-even-moderate-rain-into-flooding
- Press reports of the Goddhoia nala and Ramgarh Tal project at Gorakhpur (₹474.42 crore, approved 7 Nov 2022) and of drainage allocations for Lucknow, Meerut, Mathura, Ghaziabad and Shahjahanpur (secondary sources). https://www.drishtiias.com/state-pcs-current-affairs/goddhoia-drain-and-ramgarh-tal ; https://www.constructionworld.in/policy-updates-and-economic-news/up-govt-strengthens-urban-drainage-to-tackle-flooding-risks/70124
- Lok Sabha reply on the preparation of IUSWDMPs for 16 municipal corporations in Uttar Pradesh (seen only through a search summary). https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/3018402/1/AS269_Ws6AF1.pdf
- ISET-International and CDKN (2014). Gorakhpur: Extreme Rainfall, Climate Change, and Flooding, technical report (landing-page summary read). https://cdkn.org/resource/gorakhpur-extreme-rainfall-technical-report

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
1A	List of Tier A authorities, with the boundaries of the Nagar Nigams, of the development areas of the development authorities and of the industrial development areas
1B	Maps of flood-sensitive catchments
1C	Policy Supplement: text of alternatives S-1 to S-5 and model council resolution
1D	Model Byelaws 2025 amendment and model ULB bye-law
Form 1-1	Applicability Determination
Form 1-2	Variance / Waiver Request

CHAPTER 2

Design Rainfall and Design Storms

2.1 Purpose and scope

2.1.1 This chapter sets the rainfall inputs for every hydrologic calculation in this Manual: drain and inlet sizing (Chapter 6), retention and detention sizing (Chapter 4), downstream and tailwater analysis (Chapter 5), and waterbody and tank works (Chapter 7).

2.1.2 It specifies:

- (a) the approved sources of design rainfall depth and intensity;
- (b) how depths are converted between durations, between point and area, and from present to future climate;
- (c) how design storms (hyetographs) are constructed; and
- (d) the storms that must be applied to pre- and post-development conditions.

2.1.3 This chapter applies throughout Uttar Pradesh. Where a Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad, Nagar Panchayat, development authority or industrial development authority has adopted a stricter rainfall standard under Chapter 1, the stricter standard governs.

> **Commentary.** Most past drainage failures in Uttar Pradesh trace to the rainfall input, not the hydraulics. Uttar Pradesh shows how. The State's own guideline records that urban drains are "usually designed for a 1–2 year" return period and that no integrated plan for urban drainage exists (UDD, 2024), and no city has published an approved design storm. The guideline asks each DPR for an IDF curve from 25–30 years of IMD autographic rainfall, but the one storm-drain DPR read for this Manual, for the Taj East Drain in Agra, built its IDF from daily maxima by the one-third rule and adopted a 2-year intensity of 28.20 mm/h, from a series whose printed annual totals include 22.5–38.6 mm in several years and a one-day maximum of 500 mm in a year of 500.5 mm, against an IMD annual normal of 693.6 mm and a station record day of 286.0 mm (IMD). The two published sources that seem to fill the gap do not. IMD Das et al. (2022) has no panel for any station in the State, and NIH-DHAARA's reanalysis-based depths are too high in the terai and too low at Prayagraj, Varanasi and Noida, and low at 1 hour everywhere (Clause 2.3.6). The CWC ratios, the only regional sub-daily source, also understate the short storms of the one station with a published fit, Lucknow, the opposite of their error on the coast. Fixing one transparent source and method for the whole state is the main purpose of this chapter.

2.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Annual exceedance probability (AEP)	Probability that a given rainfall depth is equalled or exceeded in any one year. A 1% AEP storm is the "100-year" storm. Both forms are used here: T-year = 1/AEP.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
IDF / DDF	Intensity–duration–frequency and depth–duration–frequency relationships for a location.
Point rainfall	Rainfall at a single location, as measured by a rain gauge.
Design storm	A hyetograph (rainfall depth versus time) of stated AEP, duration and temporal pattern.
Critical duration	The storm duration that produces the largest peak flow, water level or storage requirement for the element being designed.
Areal reduction factor (ARF)	Ratio of catchment-average rainfall to point rainfall for the same AEP and duration.
SW monsoon season (JJAS)	June–September, when Uttar Pradesh receives about 82–90% of its annual rainfall at the main stations: normals for 1991–2020 of 693.6 mm a year at Agra, 861.4 mm at Lucknow, 915.4 mm at Prayagraj, 985.9 mm at Varanasi (BHU) and 1,240.9 mm at Gorakhpur, with July and August the wettest months almost everywhere. The June–September normal is 746.2 mm for the State, 799.2 mm for East and 672.0 mm for West Uttar Pradesh (IMD). The normal date of onset is 20 June, when the monsoon first enters the east, and it covers the whole State by 30 June; the normal date of withdrawal is 10 October (in 2025, onset on 18 June and withdrawal on 13 October). June is already wet in the north-east terai, with normals of 187.8 mm at Gorakhpur and 180.8 mm at Bahraich, but not in the west (46.4 mm at Agra, 81.9 mm at Meerut). Very large falls have come at or before onset: 487.2 mm at Gonda on 12 June 1984, 259.0 mm at Gorakhpur on 9 June 1984, and 327.2 mm at Aligarh and 313.2 mm at Mainpuri on 30 June 1981 (IMD). The antecedent moisture rule of Clause 2.11.4 refers to this season; the pre-monsoon deadline of 31 May is set ahead of the earliest onset.
Storms outside the season	Rarer but large falls come before and after it: 129.5 mm at Lucknow on 21 April 1909, 111.8 mm at Meerut on 6 April 1918 and 110.2 mm at Gorakhpur on 13 May 1956 before the monsoon; 310.0 mm at Hardoi on 13 October 1985, 199.8 mm at Lucknow (Amausi) on 10 October 1985 and 241.2 mm at Shahjahanpur and at Sultanpur on 6 October 2009 after its normal withdrawal; and 142.8 mm at Jhansi on 9 December 1997 from a western disturbance (IMD). Gorakhpur recorded 193 mm in the 24 hours to 08:30 on 2 October 2021 (as reported). Design statistics use annual maxima from all months, and no works deadline or operating rule shall assume that heavy rain is confined to June–September.
Climate factor (CF)	Multiplier applied to present-day design depths to represent the design-life climate.
Approved source	A rainfall source listed in Clause 2.3.

2.3 Approved sources of design rainfall

2.3.1 **Primary source.** Design rainfall depths and intensities shall be taken from the National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee **NIH-DHAARA** platform (Design Hydrology and Advanced Rainfall Analysis, nihdhaara.in). Use its IDF / frequency tools for the site's coordinates, for each duration and AEP required by Clause 2.4. In Uttar Pradesh this clause is suspended until Annex 2A is published: Clause 2.3.6 sets the interim source.

2.3.2 **Station IDF.** A station-specific IDF relationship may be used in place of 2.3.1 only if all of the following hold:

- (a) it is derived from at least 30 years of recording-gauge (hourly or finer) data;
- (b) it has been published or approved by IMD, the State Hydrology Authority or the approving authority; and
- (c) the gauge is within 10 km of the site, with no major change of terrain or coastal exposure in between.

Where a station IDF is used, the design value shall be the **greater** of the station value and the NIH-DHAARA value.

2.3.3 **Cross-checks (mandatory, not alternatives).** The designer shall report, but need not adopt, the following values for comparison:

- (a) the IMD isopluvial / IDF values of Das et al. (2022), *MAUSAM* 73(4), for durations of 1–24 h;

- (b) for catchments of 25–5,000 km², the 24-hour point rainfall from the CWC Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(e) (Upper Indo-Ganga Plains), 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains), 1(c) (Betwa) or 1(b) (Chambal), as applicable.

Where the design value is lower than the CWC 1(e)/1(f)/1(c)/1(b) value for the same AEP, the CWC value shall be adopted as a floor.

2.3.4 **Not permitted.** None of the following shall be used as a design rainfall source:

- (a) generalised all-India IDF formulae (for example Kothyari & Garde, 1992);
- (b) rainfall values that cite no source, including vendor or web-calculator tables;
- (c) single-event maxima; or
- (d) design intensities carried forward from a previous project without a stated AEP.

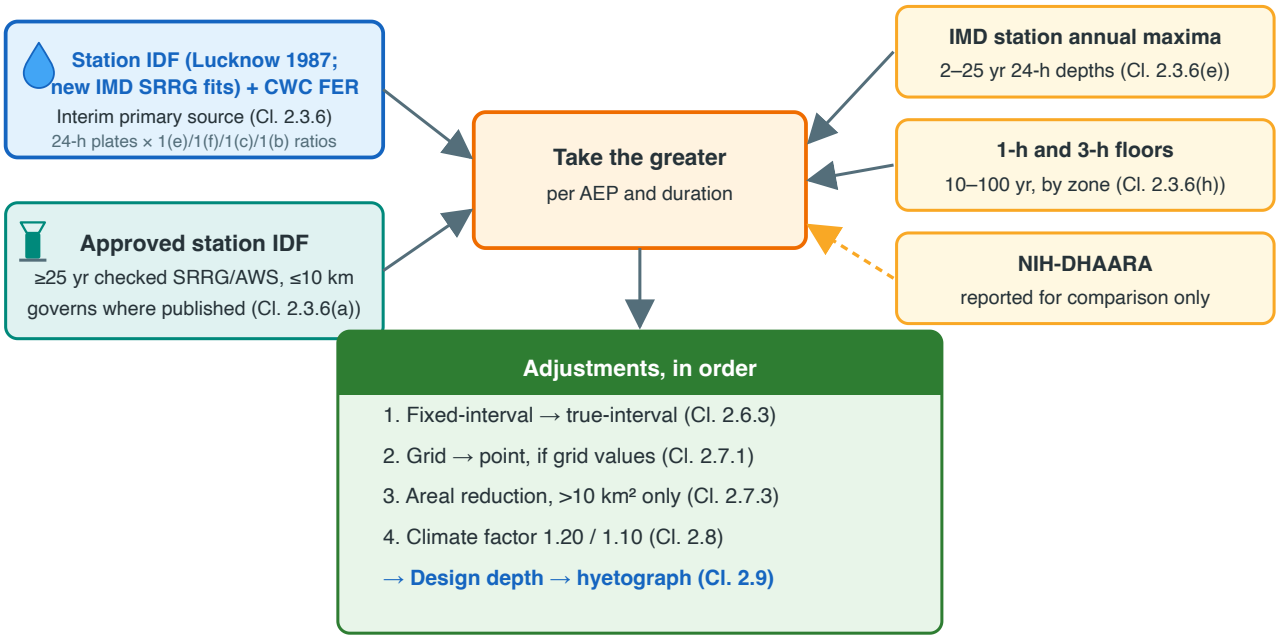


Figure 2.1 — Design rainfall source hierarchy and adjustment sequence. Original drawing for this Manual.

2.3.5 **Version control.** Every submittal shall record the source, its version or access date, the coordinates queried, and the values extracted (Clause 2.13).

2.3.6 **Interim source in Uttar Pradesh.** Until Annex 2A is published and confirms NIH-DHAARA, or an approved station IDF, for a zone, Clause 2.3.1 does not apply in Uttar Pradesh, and design rainfall shall be taken as follows:

- (a) **Station IDF.** Where a station IDF fitted to a checked IMD recording-gauge (SRRG) or automatic weather station record of at least 25 years has been published in Annex 2B, it governs, within 10 km of the station, for the durations and AEPs it covers, in place of (g) and (h); the comparison of Clause 2.3.2 is then made with the 24-hour and longer depths of (d) to (f), and the CWC floor of Clause 2.3.3 still applies. A record is checked when its annual totals and annual maxima have been compared with the IMD normals and station extremes for the station, and every year that disagrees has been explained or removed. An IDF derived from daily data by the one-third rule (Clause 2.6.4) or by any other fixed ratio is not a station IDF. In Uttar Pradesh Clause 2.3.2(a) is read with 25 years in place of 30, the length of record that the UDD guideline asks for in drainage DPRs (UDD, 2024). No IDF has yet been published in Annex 2B.

- (b) **Lucknow.** The only published station IDF in the State is the fit of Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra (1987) to about 25 years of hourly SRRG data at Lucknow, which end before 1985. Because the record is old and short, it is used as a floor and not as a cap: at every site in the development area of LDA, the 1-, 3- and 6-hour depths shall be not less than the values below, and a fit under (a) to a longer Lucknow record governs above them but not below them. The values at 2, 5, 50 and 100 years are those of the paper (Gumbel, maximum likelihood); those at 10 and 25 years are interpolated by this Manual on the Gumbel reduced variate between the paper's 2- and 100-year values.

Duration	50% (2)	20% (5)	10% (10)	4% (25)	2% (50)	1% (100)
1 hour (mm)	50.8	68.5	80.2	95.0	106.0	116.9
3 hours (mm)	80.7	110.8	130.7	155.9	174.6	193.1
6 hours (mm)	98.4	141.7	170.4	206.6	233.5	260.1

- (c) **Subzone.** The site's CWC subzone is that of the Flood Estimation Report whose area contains it, by the boundaries drawn on the reports' plates: 1(e) (Upper Indo-Ganga Plains, 1984) in the west, including Saharanpur, Muzaffarnagar, Shamli, Baghpat, Meerut, Hapur, Ghaziabad, Gautam Buddh Nagar (Noida and Greater Noida), Bulandshahr, Aligarh, Hathras, Mathura, Agra, Firozabad, Etah, Mainpuri, Etawah, Farrukhabad, Budaun, Bijnor, Moradabad, Rampur, Bareilly, Pilibhit and Shahjahanpur; 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains, GP/10/1984, 1985) east of the boundary that Plate 8 of that report draws from just west of Lakhimpur south-west to the Yamuna near 79.9° E, including Lucknow and Kanpur, which the report lists, Prayagraj north of the Yamuna, Varanasi, Gorakhpur and the north-east terai; 1(c) (Betwa, B/17/1989) in Bundelkhand, including Jhansi, Lalitpur, Jalaun (Orai and Kalpi), Hamirpur, Mahoba, Banda and Chitrakoot; and 1(b) (Chambal, C/16/1988) along the last 46 km of the Chambal, in the ravines of Agra and Etawah districts. The report for subzone 1(d) (Sone), which covers Sonbhadra, the south of Mirzapur and Chandauli, and Prayagraj south of the Yamuna (Meja, Koraon and Shankargarh), was not found for this Manual [TBC]; there the ratios of 1(c) are used with the higher of the 1(c) and 1(f) plate values, read at the nearest point of each plate where the plate does not reach the site (set by this Manual). Within 5 km of a subzone boundary, the higher of the two plate values is used, and at each duration the higher of the two products under (g); Lakhimpur lies on the 1(e)/1(f) boundary. The district lists are a guide: the plate boundaries govern, and are to be confirmed on the reports' index maps [TBC]. The rainfall zone and sub-area of the site are those of Annex 2A.

- (d) **24-hour depth, 2% and 1% AEP (50- and 100-yr).** The 24-hour point value at the site read from the 50- and 100-year isopluvial plates of the report for its subzone (Plates 9 and 10 of 1(e), Plates 8 and 9 of 1(f), Plates 10 and 11 of 1(c), and the corresponding plates of 1(b)), whatever the catchment area. Where the site lies between two contours, the higher contour value is used; where it lies inside a closed contour with no higher contour within it, the value is that contour plus one contour interval (set by this Manual). For orientation only, read by eye to about one contour, the 50-year plates give about 240–280 mm at Lucknow, Varanasi, Gorakhpur, Jhansi and Banda, 220–240 mm at Kanpur, Ghaziabad and Noida, 200–240 mm at Agra, 280–320 mm at Prayagraj and Moradabad, about 280 mm at Meerut and Bareilly, about 320 mm near Gonda, and more than 320 mm at Lakhimpur and Lalitpur, with a cell of more than 400 mm on the Nepal border north of Maharajganj and Kushinagar; the 100-year values are about one contour (40 mm) higher. Where the Gumbel estimate of (e) for the station of the site is higher for the same AEP, it governs.

- (e) **24-hour depth, 50%, 20%, 10% and 4% AEP (2-, 5-, 10- and 25-yr).** The reports have no plates for these. The depth is the Gumbel (EV1) estimate from the annual maximum daily rainfall series, of all months, of the IMD station agreed with the Authority, checked as in (a), multiplied by the fixed-interval factor of Clause 2.6.3. The station is, for example, the higher of Lucknow City, 42368 (daily record from 1901), and Lucknow/Amausi, 42369 (from 1951), for Lucknow; Kanpur, 42366; Allahabad/Bamhrauli, 42475 (from 1886), for Prayagraj; the higher of Varanasi (BHU), 42483, and Varanasi/Babatpur, 42479, for Varanasi; Gorakhpur, 42379; Agra, 42261; Aligarh, 42262; Meerut, 42139; Moradabad, 42187; Bareilly, 42189; Bahraich, 42273; or Jhansi, 42463. Ghaziabad and

Gautam Buddh Nagar have no long-record IMD station; for them the station is New Delhi/Safdarjung, 42182, the nearest, until a station in those districts has 30 or more years of record. Elsewhere it is the nearest IMD station with 30 or more years of record, from the candidates in Annex 2A.

- (f) **48- and 72-hour depths.** The Gumbel estimate from the annual maximum 2-day and 3-day rainfall series of the same station, with the fixed-interval factors of Clause 2.6.3, and not less than the 24-hour depth for the same AEP.

- (g) **Durations of 1 to 24 hours.** The 24-hour depth of (d) or (e) multiplied by the 50-year ratios of the report for the site's subzone in Table 2B.1, at every AEP: in 1(f), 0.31 at 1 hour, 0.425 at 2 hours, 0.50 at 3 hours, 0.555 at 4 hours, 0.605 at 5 hours, 0.65 at 6 hours, 0.75 at 9 hours, 0.82 at 12 hours, 0.89 at 15 hours and 0.94 at 18 hours; in 1(e), 0.34, 0.475, 0.56, 0.607, 0.647, 0.68, 0.77, 0.84, 0.89 and 0.93 at the same durations; in 1(c), 0.32 at 1 hour, 0.50 at 3 hours, 0.65 at 6 hours, 0.72 at 9 hours, 0.79 at 12 hours, 0.84 at 15 hours and 0.90 at 18 hours; and in 1(b), 0.35, 0.53, 0.67, 0.74, 0.80, 0.85 and 0.90 at those durations. Between the tabulated durations the ratio is interpolated on logarithmic axes. The 1-, 2- and 3-hour depths are then subject to (h), and, in the development area of LDA, the 1-, 3- and 6-hour depths to (b).

- (h) **Floor for short storms, 10-yr and rarer.** The 1-hour and 3-hour depths shall be not less than the greater of (i) 0.35 times (1 hour) and 0.57 times (3 hours) the 24-hour depth of (d) or (e) for the same AEP, and (ii) the following values for the site's zone of Annex 2A, all set by this Manual; the 2-hour depth shall be not less than the value interpolated on logarithmic axes between the 1- and 3-hour values for the same AEP:

Zone	Duration	10% (10)	4% (25)	2% (50)	1% (100)
UP-Z1 West	1-hour depth not less than (mm)	70	80	90	100
UP-Z1 West	3-hour depth not less than (mm)	110	135	150	165
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand; UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand	1-hour depth not less than (mm)	80	95	105	115
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand; UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand	3-hour depth not less than (mm)	130	155	175	195

The reason is that the subzone ratios, derived in 1984–1989 from recording-gauge data averaged over each subzone, understate the short storms of the one station in the State with a published fit. At Lucknow the 1(f) plates and ratios give about 74–87 mm in 1 hour and 120–140 mm in 3 hours for the 50-year storm; the station fit of (b) gives 106.0 mm and 174.6 mm, 22–43% more at 1 hour. The same paper's 2-year ratios of the 1-hour to the 24-hour depth are 0.36 at Lucknow, 0.38 at Kanpur and 0.35 at Bahraich, and of the 3-hour depth 0.58, 0.61 and 0.57, all above the 1(f) ratios of 0.31 and 0.50 and the 1(e) ratios of 0.34 and 0.56 (Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra, 1987); the ratio floor of (i) takes the lowest of the three stations at each duration. The depths of (ii) for UP-Z2 and UP-Z3 are the Lucknow values of (b) at 10, 25, 50 and 100 years, rounded to 5 mm. They are applied across both zones because the 24-hour plate values there, about 220–320 mm in the central and eastern plain and in Bundelkhand and from about 240 mm to more than 400 mm in the terai and Rohilkhand, are mostly equal to or higher than Lucknow's 240–280 mm, and because the Kanpur and Bahraich ratios give no sign that short storms are smaller there. In UP-Z1, where the 1(e) plates give about 200–280 mm and typically about 240 mm, the Lucknow values are scaled by 240/280 and rounded to 5 mm. Where the 24-hour depth is large, as in the terai, the ratio floor of (i) governs. The floors are present-day, true-interval values: the fixed-interval factor of Clause 2.6.3 is not applied to them, and the climate factor of Clause 2.8 is. The paper does not state whether its hourly maxima are for fixed clock hours, in which case the true-interval depths would be higher [TBC]. The floors are interim: the Lucknow fit rests on about 25 years of data that end before 1985, with standard errors of 10–12% at

50 years; no IMD hourly maximum for a recent storm in the State was found in research for this Manual [TBC]; and Annex 2B is to replace the floors with frequency analyses of the IMD recording-gauge and automatic weather station records of the State.

- (i) **Durations below 1 hour.** No sub-hourly frequency analysis for any station in the State was found in research for this Manual. Until Annex 2B gives one, the ratio of the depth for a duration below 1 hour to the 1-hour design depth is agreed with the Authority, from a published recording-gauge analysis whose source is stated, and recorded on Form 2-1 [TBC]; the average intensity for a duration below 1 hour shall be not less than the 1-hour design intensity for the same AEP (set by this Manual).
- (j) **Order of depths.** For the same AEP, no depth shall be less than the depth for a shorter duration.
- (k) **NIH-DHAARA.** Its present-day values at the site are reported on Form 2-1 beside the interim values, for comparison only: in the State they are too high at 24 hours in the terai and Rohilkhand, too low at Prayagraj, Varanasi and Noida, and low at 1 hour everywhere (commentary). Its projected depths are not used under Clause 2.8.4; the ratio of its projected to its present-day depths may be reported as a check on the climate factors of Table 2.2, which apply.
- (l) **IMD Das et al. (2022).** The paper has no panel for any station in Uttar Pradesh, and its range for the Gangetic plain gives a 3-hour upper bound (14 cm) below its 1-hour upper bound (16 cm), which cannot hold at one place. The cross-check of Clause 2.3.3(a) is recorded on Form 2-1 as not available, and the paper is not used as a value, a check or a floor.
- (m) **Other clauses.** Where Clauses 2.3.2, 2.6.1, 2.7.1 and 2.13, Annexes 2A to 2C and Form 2-1 refer to the NIH-DHAARA value, the value under this clause is meant.

> **Commentary.** NIH-DHAARA is a national, publicly accessible product from a Government of India institution, and it can be queried at any point in the State. That makes it a reproducible default that an approving authority can check. NIH-DHAARA's sub-daily values are derived from hourly records, not disaggregated from daily totals. That makes it the only public source suitable for sizing drains, which depend on short-duration intensity. Its values should still be checked against the long IMD daily record at 24 hours and longer (Annex 2A). In Uttar Pradesh the platform does not yet meet that purpose. Its present-day values there come from IMDAA reanalysis (about 12 km), not from gauges, and they err in both directions. Its 50-year 24-hour depths are far above the CWC plates and the station records in the terai and Rohilkhand: 380 mm at Gorakhpur, where the highest day in more than a century of record is 284.5 mm; 500 mm at Bahraich against a plate value of about 320 mm; 390 mm at Bareilly, against a record of 267.2 mm; and 337 mm at Moradabad. They are below both at Prayagraj (265 mm, against a record of 335.3 mm), Varanasi (254 mm, against 349.5 mm at BHU and 322.0 mm at Babatpur), Noida (204 mm) and Ghaziabad (218 mm). Its 50-year 1-hour depths, 63–109 mm, are only 0.22–0.32 of its 24-hour depths, below every CWC ratio (0.31–0.35) and every station ratio (0.35–0.38); at Lucknow it gives 70.7 mm, against 106.0 mm from the station fit (NIH-DHAARA, queried 6 Nov 2026; IMD; Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra, 1987). A source that errs by these margins cannot be adopted, so Clause 2.3.6 uses the Lucknow station fit, the CWC reports and the long IMD station records until Annex 2A has been done, and uses NIH-DHAARA for comparison and as a check on the climate factors only. Uttar Pradesh differs from the coastal States in one respect. There the CWC sub-daily ratios give 1-hour depths above every hourly fall in the old recording-gauge records; here they give less than the Lucknow station fit, which is why Clause 2.3.6(h) sets floors at 1 and 3 hours. The interim rules for the more frequent AEPs, the 48- and 72-hour depths, the reading of the plates, the 1(d) area, durations below 1 hour, the Lucknow values at 10 and 25 years and the floors of (h) are set by this Manual. Several points are unresolved. The plate values were read by eye on scans, to about one contour, and the 1(e) and 1(b) plates near Meerut, Bareilly, Etawah and Agra need better copies [TBC]. The 1(f) ratios at 2, 4 and 5 hours were read from an OCR of the report's Fig. 10 and not checked against the page image [TBC]. The 1(d) report was not found [TBC]. The Lucknow fit is 40 years old, its record short, and its standard errors 10–12% at 50 years. The one storm-drain DPR read for this Manual, for the Taj East Drain in Agra, adopted a 2-year intensity of 28.20 mm/h from a daily series whose

printed values cannot be right, among them annual totals of 22.5–38.6 mm in several years and a 500 mm one-day maximum in a year of 500.5 mm, against an IMD annual normal of 693.6 mm and a station record day of 286.0 mm; that is why (a) asks for a checked record and excludes IDFs built from daily data by a fixed ratio.

2.4 Design return periods (summary)

2.4.1 Design AEPs are set in the chapters for each element. They are summarised here so that the correct rainfall is extracted at the start of design.

Table 2.1 — Design return periods (summary)

Element	Design AEP (return period)	Check event	Chapter
Minor drains: Lucknow, Kanpur, Varanasi, Prayagraj and Agra core and high-density areas	10% (10-yr)	1% (100-yr) overland path	6
Minor drains: other Class I urban areas	20% (5-yr)	1% overland path	6
Minor drains: other areas	50% (2-yr)	1% overland path	6
Arterial roads and crossings	2–4% (25–50-yr)	next higher AEP	6
Collector / local roads	4% / 10% (25 / 10-yr)	2% / 4% (50 / 25-yr), plus the 1% overland path	6
Major (overland) system	1% (100-yr)	—	6
Retention volume	Percentile daily rainfall (Clause 2.10)	—	4
Detention: standard catchments	50%, 10%, 1% (2, 10, 100-yr)	1% emergency spillway	4
Detention: flood-sensitive catchments	Mixed-frequency rule, Clause 2.11	1%	4
Building floor levels	1% + 0.5 m freeboard	—	6
Detention emergency spillway	1% with outlet blocked	0.2% (500-yr) where high hazard	4

Commentary. These values exceed the CPHEEO (2019) national advisory minimums of 5-yr (Class I cities) and 2-yr (other areas). CPHEEO allows a State to set higher values. The values are set in Chapters 4 and 6, and the table is reproduced here for convenience.

2.5 Design durations

2.5.1 **Conveyance elements** (pipes, open drains, inlets, culverts) shall be designed with the intensity for a duration equal to the time of concentration (Tc) of the contributing area (Chapter 3). The minimum duration is **10 minutes**.

2.5.2 **Storage elements** (detention, retention, tanks, pumped sumps) shall be checked for every duration in the set {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}. The largest required storage or water level governs. The 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms are **mandatory** checks at every site, whatever the critical-duration result.

2.5.3 **Tidally influenced outfalls.** For storage draining to a tidally influenced outfall (Chapter 5), the 48- and 72-hour storms shall also be run with the tailwater boundary of Clause 2.12.

> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh's worst floods have come when a long wet spell meets a full river. The highest levels on record at most sites on the Yamuna and the Ganga below Agra were set on 8–9 September 1978, at the end of a wet monsoon, those of the Gomti at Lucknow on 11 September 1971, and that of the Rapti at Gorakhpur on 23 August 1998 (CWC levels, as reported). The monthly records show how much rain a single month can bring: 1,116.0 mm at Bahraich in September 1982, 967.5 mm at Gorakhpur in July 1899 and 823.1 mm in June 1984, 914.7 mm at Allahabad in August 1953 and 804.7 mm at Lucknow in September 1915 (IMD). In September 2021 Lucknow received 228.6 mm in about 36 hours (as reported), and in mid-September 2022 Gorakhpur district recorded 20 cm in the 24 hours to 15 September and 22 cm at Chanderdeepghat two days later (IMD, 2022). Behind the embankments of the Gomti at Lucknow and of the Rapti at Gorakhpur, where the drains are closed and pumped when the river is high, storage is filled by the whole wet spell, not by its peak hour. A rule based only on critical duration, applied to a small site, picks a 1–2 hour storm and misses this failure mode. That is why the long-duration checks are mandatory.

2.6 Sub-daily rainfall

2.6.1 Where NIH-DHAARA or an approved station IDF provides values directly for the required duration, those values shall be used.

2.6.2 Where only daily (24-hour) depths are available for a duration below 24 hours, the sub-daily depth shall be derived using the **ratio set of Annex 2B**. These are duration-to-24-hour ratios calibrated to Uttar Pradesh recording gauges. They shall not be lower than the ratios of the CWC Flood Estimation Report for the subzone (1(e), 1(f), 1(c) or 1(b)). IMD Das et al. (2022) has no Uttar Pradesh station panel and is not used as a floor in Uttar Pradesh.

2.6.3 **Fixed-interval adjustment.** Depths from fixed observation windows (for example 08:30–08:30 IST daily data, or clock-hour data) shall be converted to sliding-window ("true interval") depths:

- 1.13 for a single fixed observation interval;
- 1.04 for 2 intervals;
- 1.02 for 3–4 intervals.

This adjustment does not apply where the approved source already gives true-interval values.

2.6.4 The empirical relationship P(t) = P(24)·(t/24)^(1/3) shall not be used for design unless Annex 2B confirms it for the zone concerned.

> Commentary. The one-third power rule is common in Indian project reports, but no primary IMD source for it was found during research for this Manual. It applies one fixed curve shape everywhere: P(1h)/P(24h) = 0.35, P(3h) = 0.50, P(6h) = 0.63 and P(12h) = 0.79. It cannot represent the difference between a short convective burst and a long SW monsoon soak, and it tends to understate short-duration depths in convective coastal storms. Annex 2B shall tabulate the NIH-DHAARA ratios P(t)/P(24h) against these values by zone. That comparison shows whether the rule is acceptable anywhere in the State and corrects older daily-based analyses. The fixed-interval factors are the standard WMO (Hershfield) values. The IMD 2022 study applies similar clock-hour to any-hour corrections.

2.7 Point, grid and areal rainfall

2.7.1 Design depths are point values. Where an approved source provides grid-average values (for example 0.25° cells), they shall be converted to point values with the grid-to-point factors in Annex 2C before use.

2.7.2 For catchments **≤ 10 km²**, ARF = 1.0.

2.7.3 For catchments **> 10 km²**, apply ARF as follows:

- for 25–5,000 km² in subzone 1(e), 1(f), 1(c) or 1(b): use the ARF curves of the applicable CWC Flood Estimation Report;
- for 10–25 km²: interpolate linearly between ARF = 1.0 at 10 km² and the CWC value at 25 km².

2.7.4 An ARF shall never be applied to storage design for a single development site.

> **Commentary.** Gridded and district-average return levels are much lower than point values. For example, NIH-DHAARA's IMDAA cell at Prayagraj gives a 50-year 24-hour depth of about 265 mm, while the Allahabad gauge has recorded 335.3 mm (20 August 1953), and its cell at Varanasi about 254 mm, while Varanasi (BHU) has recorded 349.5 mm (26 September 1943) and Babatpur 322.0 mm (2 July 2008) (NIH-DHAARA, queried 6 Nov 2026; IMD). In the terai the same product errs the other way, 380 mm at Gorakhpur against a station record of 284.5 mm in more than a century. Single storms are patchy at a scale that no cell of about 12 km can show: in the 24 hours to 08:30 on 16 September 2022, Fatehpur tehsil in Barabanki recorded 29 cm while Lucknow airport, about 30 km away, recorded 16 cm (IMD, 2022). Neither error can be corrected without the factors of Annex 2C. Using grid values as point values without correction would make site-level design unsafe.

2.8 Climate factor

2.8.1 Until a statewide future-climate rainfall product is adopted, present-day design depths shall be multiplied by the following interim climate factors:

Table 2.2 — Interim climate factors

Duration	Climate factor (CF)
≤ 6 h	**1.20**
> 6 h to 72 h	**1.10**

2.8.2 The CF applies to all elements with a design life of more than 25 years. For temporary works (design life ≤ 5 years), CF = 1.0.

2.8.3 The climate factor does not apply to the retention depth (Clause 2.10) or to the water quality volume depth (Chapter 8). Those depths are percentile or frequent-event statistics of everyday rainfall, not AEP design values.

2.8.4 Where NIH-DHAARA, or a product adopted on review under Clause 2.14, provides projected future-climate depths, those depths shall replace the interim factors.

> **Commentary.** CPHEEO (2019) considers a fixed climate factor "not feasible" nationally and recommends trend testing instead. That leaves designers without a usable number. The 1.20 short-duration factor matches the UK value cited by CPHEEO itself. It is at or below published projections for India: Ali and Mishra (2018) project 3-hourly 100-year maxima rising by about 20% at 1.5 °C and 25% at 2.0 °C of warming. No design uplift factor has

been adopted in Uttar Pradesh; the UDD guideline attributes the rise in short, heavy rain to climate change but gives no factor (UDD, 2024). Seasonal totals and extremes point different ways. IMD found significant decreasing trends in south-west monsoon and annual rainfall over the State for 1989–2018 (as reported in a Rajya Sabha reply of 9 February 2021), and the State action plan on climate change summarises a near-term fall in annual rainfall of about 4–5% (as reported). Recent extremes have not fallen: Baheri in Bareilly district recorded 460.6 mm on 8 July 2024 (IMD, 2024), Najibabad 425.0 mm on 22 July 2010, Varanasi (Babatpur) its record 322.0 mm on 2 July 2008, and Bareilly and Moradabad their records on 17 September 2005 (IMD). For Gorakhpur, a study projects the 24-hour intensity of severe storms to rise by 2–25% by the 2050s (ISET-International, 2014, summary read), a range that brackets the factors of Table 2.2. A study of hourly intensity trends over east and north Uttar Pradesh for 1969–2014 (Shashi Kant, 2018) was not read [TBC]. NIH-DHAARA offers a CMIP6 projection but no historical run of the same model, so no ratio of future to present depths can be formed; under Clause 2.3.6(k) it would serve only as a check. The factors of Table 2.2 are therefore interim values, not Uttar Pradesh estimates.

2.9 Temporal patterns (design hyetographs)

2.9.1 **Storms up to 24 hours.** Use the nested **alternating-block** method:

- construct the storm from the same IDF relationship (after the climate factor), at time steps no longer than Tc/3 and no longer than 15 minutes;
- place the peak block at **50%** of the storm duration.

2.9.2 **48- and 72-hour storms (SW monsoon pattern).** Construct as follows:

- (a) The total storm depth equals the design depth for the full duration (48 or 72 h).
- (b) The **final 24 hours** contain the 24-hour design depth for the same AEP, distributed by the alternating-block method of 2.9.1.
- (c) The remaining depth (total minus the 24-hour depth) is spread uniformly over the preceding 24 or 48 hours.

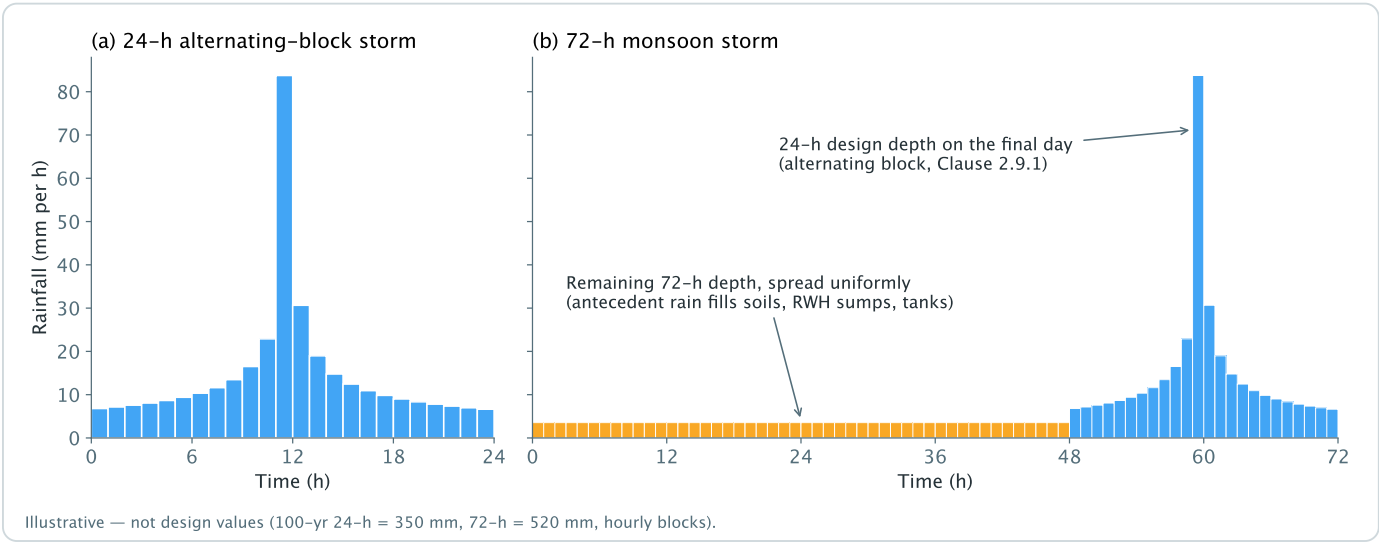


Figure 2.2 — (a) 24-hour alternating-block design storm; (b) 72-hour SW monsoon design storm with the 24-hour design depth on the final day. Illustrative depths only. Original drawing for this Manual. The alternating-block method follows Chow, Maidment & Mays, Applied Hydrology (1988), §14.4.

2.9.3 **Other temporal patterns.** Huff-type or mass-curve patterns derived from Uttar Pradesh storms may be used instead of 2.9.1 and 2.9.2 only after they are published in Annex 2D. SCS Type I, IA, II and III distributions shall not be used.

2.9.4 **Large catchments.** For catchments of 25–5,000 km², the CWC Flood Estimation Report time-distribution curves may be used, and a sensitivity run with 2.9.1 shall be reported.

> Commentary. The alternating-block storm embeds every shorter-duration design intensity in one hyetograph. That makes it conservative and consistent across durations. The 72-hour pattern puts the most intense day last. This reproduces the monsoon sequence of Uttar Pradesh: by the time the largest falls arrive in July–September, the water table in the khadar floodplains and the terai is near the surface, with wells in the terai flowing under artesian pressure (CGWB, as reported), the tals and ponds are full, and the Gomti, the Ganga, the Yamuna and the Rapti, fed by rain over their whole catchments, may already be closing the gates on the outfalls through their embankments. SCS distributions are excluded because they come from US convective and Gulf storm data and have no basis in Uttar Pradesh records.

2.10 Retention rainfall depth

2.10.1 The **retention design depth** is the 24-hour rainfall depth not exceeded on **90%** of days with rain (≥ 2.5 mm) in the long-term record, read from the zone value in Annex 2E.

2.10.2 The site must retain on site the runoff from this depth (Chapter 4). Retention earns a detention credit equal to the reduction in required detention storage found by routing with the retention in place (Clause 4.4.6). The credit is not the retained volume subtracted one-for-one.

> Commentary. This follows the Kansas City Metro APWA 5600 (2025.01) Required Retention Volume concept and Georgia's 1.0-inch runoff reduction standard. Both are based on percentile storms. A percentile depth is a statistic of everyday rainfall, not an AEP value, so it is computed from the daily record rather than from the frequency curves.

2.11 Design storms for pre- and post-development comparison

2.11.1 **Same storm for both scenarios.** Pre- and post-development runs shall use the same design storms:

- same AEP, duration, temporal pattern and climate factor;
- same antecedent moisture condition (Clause 2.11.4).

The two runs differ only in land surface parameters and Tc.

2.11.2 **Standard catchments.** For each of the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP storms and each duration in Clause 2.5.2:

> $Q_{post}(T) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T)$

2.11.3 **Flood-sensitive catchments** (as listed in Chapter 4: the catchments of Lucknow behind the Gomti embankments, including the Kukrail, of Gorakhpur behind the Rapti and Rohin embankments, of Prayagraj at the confluence, and of the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida, and any catchment notified by the authority). The **mixed-frequency rule** applies:

Q_post(1% AEP, 100-yr) ≤ Q_pre(10% AEP, 10-yr), and Q_post(50% AEP, 2-yr) ≤ Q_pre(50% AEP, 2-yr),

The post-development peak is checked for each duration in Clause 2.5.2. The caps are taken at the **pre-development critical duration**. The 10-yr cap is the largest pre-development 10-yr peak over all durations, and the 2-yr cap is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak over all durations. Each cap applies to every post-development duration.

2.11.4 **Antecedent moisture.** Use **AMC III** (wet conditions) for every design storm, whatever its duration, from 1 July to 30 September at a site in sub-area UP-C (North-east terai) or UP-D (Rohilkhand and western terai) of Annex 2A, or on floodplain or embanked low-lying land anywhere in the State, and in July and August at a site in sub-area UP-B (Central–east Ganga plain). In sub-areas UP-A (West doab and NCR) and UP-E (Bundelkhand and Vindhyan), use AMC III for a design storm that follows, or contains, a 5-day rainfall total of more than 53 mm. Use AMC II (average conditions) for every other storm, including those of June across the State. AMC I is not used for design.

2.11.5 **Pre-development condition.** Pre-development is defined in Chapter 3: greenfield, open land in good condition for the mapped hydrologic soil group. Existing impervious cover is not counted as pre-development.

Commentary. Matching each site's post-development peak to its own pre-development peak does not protect the catchment. Denver's analysis found that 100% matching at every site still produced 106% of historic peak downstream, which led to the 90% rule. The mixed-frequency rule is stricter. It caps the 100-yr post-development release at what the undeveloped site produced in a 10-yr storm. Malaysia (DID 2008: all ARIs ≤ pre-development 2-yr) is a tropical precedent for this kind of cap. AMC III for long storms reflects that SW monsoon extremes arrive after weeks of rain. In Uttar Pradesh the wetness of the ground differs across the State as much as the rainfall does. In the north-east terai and the terai of Rohilkhand (UP-C and UP-D) the water table is shallow, wells in the terai flow under artesian pressure (CGWB, as reported), June is already wet in the north-east, with normals of 180–190 mm at Gorakhpur and Bahraich, and about 260,000 ha of the Sharda Sahayak canal command is reported to be waterlogged (as reported). The khadar floodplains and the land behind the river embankments carry a high water table through the monsoon. In the central–east plain (UP-B) the July and August normals are about 238–283 mm a month at Lucknow, Prayagraj and Varanasi (IMD), while beneath Lucknow city the water table lay 7.65–45.6 m below ground before the 2023 monsoon (CGWB). In the west (UP-A), where the June normal is 46.4 mm at Agra, and on the rock and black soils of Bundelkhand (UP-E), the ground is wet only after a run of heavy days. This Manual therefore uses AMC III from 1 July to 30 September in UP-C and UP-D and on floodplain or embanked low-lying land, in July and August in UP-B, and in UP-A and UP-E only after a 5-day total of more than 53 mm, the NRCS growing-season threshold for AMC III; AMC II otherwise, including June across the State (Clause 2.11.4). These are interim choices set by this Manual; no study in the State has yet validated AMC classes against observed runoff.

Illustrative scale of the mixed-frequency rule. The values below are not design values. They assume a 2 ha site in the Kukrail catchment in north Lucknow with 24-h depths of 200 mm (10-yr) and 350 mm (100-yr), SCS-CN runoff with Ia = 0.2S, and CN 70 pre-development and CN 92 post-development:

Table 2.3 — Illustrative scale of the mixed-frequency rule (not design values)

Case	Runoff depth	Runoff volume (2 ha)
Pre-development, 10-yr 24 h	111 mm	2,210 m³
Post-development, 100-yr 24 h	325 mm	6,500 m³

The post-development 100-yr storm generates about three times the runoff volume of the pre-development 10-yr storm. A peak-rate cap at the pre-development 10-yr level means most of the difference must be stored and released slowly, so storage of the order of 0.2 m³ per m² of site may be needed. For this reason the rule applies only in flood-sensitive

catchments (Clause 2.11.3); elsewhere the 0.9 × Q_pre rule of Clause 2.11.2 applies.

2.12 Joint occurrence with tailwater

2.12.1 For outfalls under tidal or river backwater influence, the design rainfall of this chapter shall be combined with the tailwater conditions of Chapter 5 as follows. The more severe case governs.

- (a) Design rainfall (AEP as required) with a mean high water springs (MHWS) tailwater plus the sea-level allowance.
- (b) A 10% AEP (10-yr) 48-hour storm with the 1% AEP still-water level (tide plus surge) plus the sea-level allowance.

Uttar Pradesh has no coast, so no outfall in the State is tidal and cases (a) and (b) do not arise. The tailwater is the river into which a city drains, and the nalas and tals that local drains discharge into. For an outfall under river backwater, the site storm is combined with the river level under Clause 5.8.4, which pairs a design event on one side with a 10-yr event on the other in the same way as case (b). The river stage is read at the nearest CWC gauge. As reported from CWC's site data, the danger level and highest flood level (HFL) are 109.5 m and 110.85 m (11 September 1971) for the Gomti at Hanuman Setu in Lucknow, where another source gives a "normal high flood level" of 108.81 m; 74.98 m and 77.54 m (23 August 1998) for the Rapti at Birdghat in Gorakhpur; 114.0 m and 114.08 m (29 September 2010) for the Ganga at Kanpur; 84.734 m and 87.98 m (8 September 1978) for the Ganga at Phaphamau and 84.73 m and 87.99 m for the Yamuna at Naini, in Prayagraj; 71.262 m and 73.901 m (9 September 1978) for the Ganga at Varanasi; and 152.4 m and 154.76 m (9 September 1978) for the Yamuna at Agra. The Hindon at Noida reached 197.28 m on 26 July 2023, 1.81 m above its previous highest level (as reported). Most of these HFLs lie 1–3.3 m above the danger level, so an outfall below the HFL can be shut for days. When the river is high, the gates on the outfalls through the embankments are closed and runoff is stored or pumped, so storage and pumps are checked for the gates-shut condition, with the local storm falling before, during or after the river peak; the UDD guideline already asks for pumps that can operate above the HFL (UDD, 2024). No document found in research for this Manual sets a design river level for the outfalls of any city in the State [TBC], and Chapter 5 sets the interim rule. Every level is stated on a named datum, as Chapter 5 requires; the datum of the CWC gauge levels quoted here is to be confirmed [TBC].

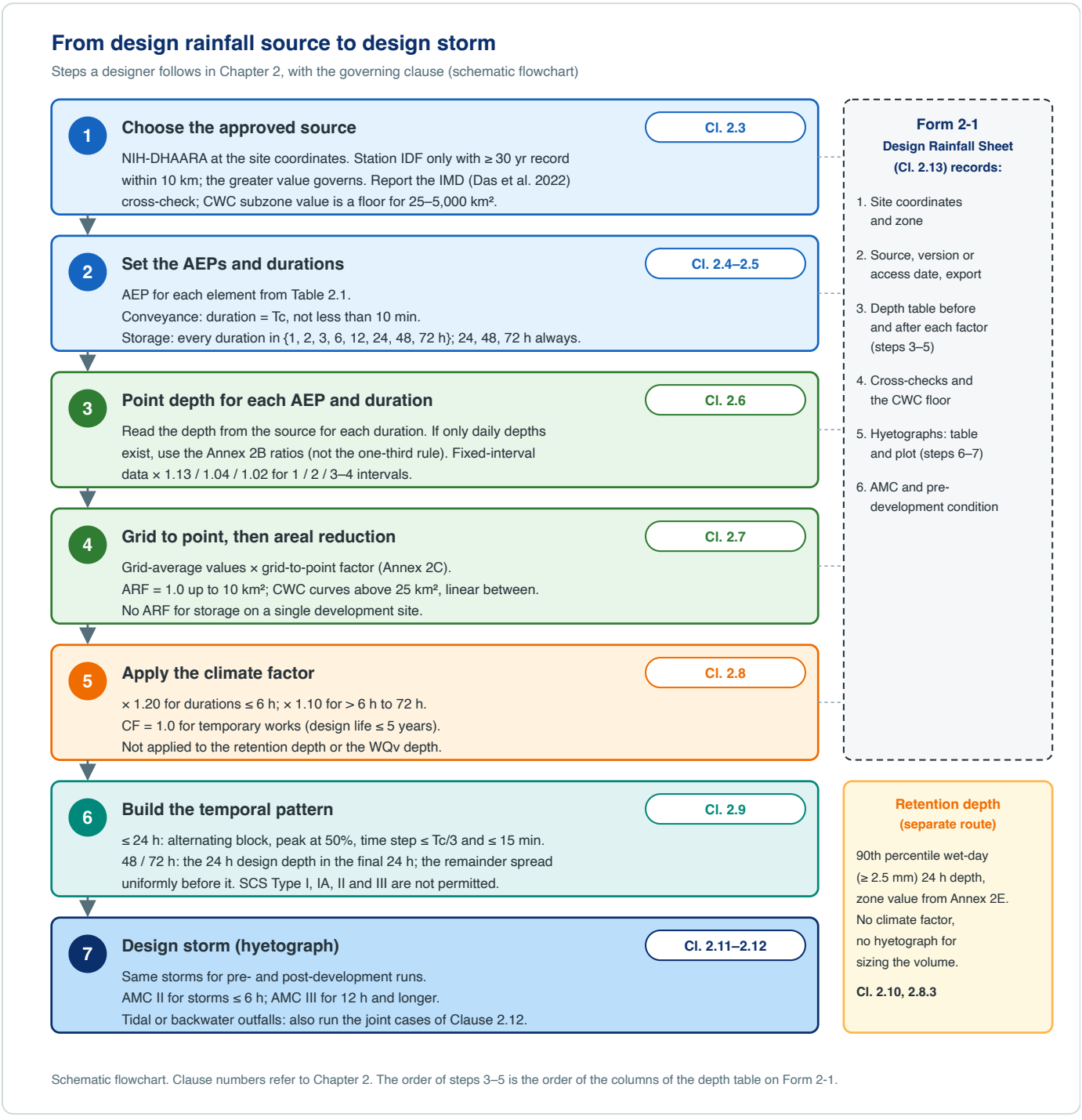
> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh has no coast, so no outfall is tidal and there is no storm surge; the coincident load is the stage of the rivers. The coincidence is on record. In September 1978 the Yamuna and the Ganga reached their highest recorded levels at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi on 8–9 September, more than 2 m above the danger level at each, at the end of a wet monsoon over their catchments (CWC levels, as reported). In August 2025 the Ganga ran above its danger level in 13 districts, at about 72.1 m at Varanasi against a danger level of 71.262 m (as reported). The rivers stay high for days, and their floods come largely from rain over catchments far upstream, so they give no warning of a local storm that falls while the gates are shut. Behind the embankments of the Gomti at Lucknow and of the Rapti at Gorakhpur, the drains cannot outfall by gravity while the river is high and depend on pumps. The levels of the sources are on different datums, which is why Chapter 5 requires every level to name its datum. Because rainfall and surge share a weather cause (in Uttar Pradesh, which has no coast, the counterpart of surge is the stage of the rivers, raised by the same monsoon systems that bring the heaviest rain to the cities and to the catchments above them: in September 1978 the Yamuna and the Ganga set their highest recorded levels at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi on 8–9 September, as reported), they cannot be treated as independent. Case (b) is a simple joint-probability surrogate until a statistical joint analysis is adopted.

2.13 Submittal requirements

Every hydrologic submittal shall include a **Design Rainfall Sheet** (Form 2-1) stating:

1. the site coordinates and zone;
2. the source (Clause 2.3), version or access date, and a screenshot or export of the values extracted;
3. a depth table for each AEP and duration used, before and after the fixed-interval factor, grid-to-point factor, ARF and climate factor;
4. the cross-check values of Clause 2.3.3 and the floor check;
5. the hyetographs used, as a table and a plot, for each design storm; and
6. the AMC and pre-development definition adopted.

Figure 2.3 shows the steps of this chapter in the order in which the sheet records them.



Schematic flowchart. Clause numbers refer to Chapter 2. The order of steps 3–5 is the order of the columns of the depth table on Form 2-1.

Figure 2.3 — From design rainfall source to design storm: the steps a designer follows (source, AEPs and durations, point depth, grid-to-point and areal reduction, climate factor, temporal pattern, design storm), the clause that governs each step, what Form 2-1 records, and the separate route for the retention depth. Schematic. Original drawing for this Manual.

2.14 Review and update

2.14.1 The approving authority shall review this chapter **every 10 years**. It shall also review it within 2 years of any event in which recorded rainfall exceeds the 1% AEP 24-hour or 72-hour design depth at two or more approved gauges in the State.

2.14.2 Updates to NIH-DHAARA take effect for new submittals **6 months** after release, unless the authority notifies otherwise.

References (chapter)

- National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee. NIH-DHAARA: Design Hydrology and Advanced Rainfall Analysis. http://www.nihdhaara.in/
- Das, S.K. et al. (2022). Isopluvial analysis and intensity–duration–frequency curves for different cities in India. *MAUSAM* 73(4), 887–898. https://metnet.imd.gov.in/docs/mausamdocs/173412_F.pdf
- Central Water Commission (1984). Flood Estimation Report for Upper Indo-Ganga Plains Subzone 1(e), approved at the 40th meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 23–24 Jul 1984 (Plates 9 and 10, the short-duration ratio table; read from the Wayback Machine capture of the cwc.gov.in copy; design-office report number not on the scanned pages [TBC]). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- Central Water Commission (1985). Flood Estimation Report for Middle Ganga Plains Subzone 1(f), Report No. GP/10/1984, Oct 1985, approved at the 41st meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 30 Jan 1985 (Plates 8 and 9, the SUH relationships, p. 32, the short-duration ratio table, p. 43, and Fig. 10, whose 2-, 4- and 5-hour ratios were read from an OCR and not checked against the page image [TBC]; Wayback Machine capture of the cwc.gov.in copy). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- Central Water Commission (1989). Flood Estimation Report for Betwa Subzone 1(c), Report No. B/17/1989, Jun 1989 (Plates 10 and 11, the SUH relationships and the short-duration ratios, and Table T-2 of IMD's daily falls of 300 mm and more; Wayback Machine capture of 12 Apr 2016; the year of approval is illegible on the scan, and the qp relation is printed in terms of L/S, without the root sign that the other reports use [TBC]). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- Central Water Commission (1988). Flood Estimation Report for Chambal Subzone 1(b), Report No. C/16/1988, Dec 1988 (the SUH relationships and the short-duration ratios; Wayback Machine capture of 12 Apr 2016; the coefficient of the qp relation is printed as 1.251 in the table and 1.215 in the text [TBC]). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- Central Water Commission. Flood Estimation Report for Sone Subzone 1(d) (not found on the CWC website or in the Wayback Machine index for this Manual [TBC]).
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A.
- Kathuria, S.N., Kaur, S. & Mehra, A.K. (1987). Rainfall intensity for local drainage design in Lucknow and its neighbouring area. *MAUSAM* 38(1), 85–88 (Tables 2–4). https://mausamjournal.imd.gov.in/index.php/MAUSAM/article/download/2654/2468
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012), stations of Uttar Pradesh. https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2022, 2023). Press releases of 15, 16 and 17 Sep 2022 and 11 Sep 2023 (heavy rainfall over Uttar Pradesh). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow (2024, 2025). Southwest Monsoon Report 2024 for Uttar Pradesh; Southwest Monsoon Report 2025 for Uttar Pradesh. https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/monsoon.pdf ; https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/swreport.pdf
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow. Climatological tables (normals 1991–2020) for Agra, Bahraich, Bareilly, Gorakhpur, Jhansi, Lucknow, Meerut, Prayagraj and Varanasi (BHU). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/rainfall.pdf
- National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee. NIH-DHAARA IDF Curve Tool (IMDAA reanalysis), queried at 14 cells in Uttar Pradesh on 6 Nov 2026. http://117.252.14.251:8080/
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines, Dec 2024, §1.1 and the DPR checklist, items 2.14 and 2.26. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf

- Agra Smart City Ltd. Improvements to Taj East Drain, Detailed Project Report, Chapter 9 (Tables 9 and 10). https://agrasmartcity.in/pdf/wc13581914%20Improvements%20to%20Taj%20East%20Drain.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board, Northern Region (2024). Submission on behalf of CGWA in NGT O.A. 594/2024 (groundwater levels in Lucknow city). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Documents%20on%20behalf%20of%20CGWA%20in%20OA%20ON%20594%20of%202024%20(NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20LUCKNOW%20ME%20PAANEE%20CHALA%20RASATAL%2010%20SAAL%20ME%20160%20FOOT%20NEECHE%20CHALA%20GAYA%20JALSTAR%20MEL%20RAHE%20KHATARNAK%20SANKET_0.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. State profile, Uttar Pradesh (hydrogeological units; seen only through a search summary). https://cgwb.gov.in/old_website/State-Profiles/Uttar%20pradesh.pdf
- Rajya Sabha (2021). Unstarred Question 837, 9 Feb 2021 (rainfall trends by State, 1989–2018; seen only through a search summary). https://rsdebate.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/717555/1/PQ_253_09022021_U837_p153_p164.pdf
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change. State Action Plan on Climate Change, Uttar Pradesh (state profile summary). https://napccindia.moef.gov.in/sapcc/state/uttar-pradesh
- ISET-International and CDKN (2014). Gorakhpur: Extreme Rainfall, Climate Change, and Flooding, technical report (landing-page summary read). https://cdkn.org/resource/gorakhpur-extreme-rainfall-technical-report
- Shashi Kant (2018). Trend and variability of hourly intensity of rainfall over eastern and northern part of Uttar Pradesh during 1969–2014. *MAUSAM* 69(4) (metadata only). https://doi.org/10.54302/mausam.v69i4.422
- Ali, H. & Mishra, V. (2018). Increase in subdaily precipitation extremes in India under 1.5 and 2.0 °C warming worlds. *Geophysical Research Letters* 45. https://repository.ias.ac.in/142345
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (compiled from CWC site data; secondary source). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/
- Press reports of the Lucknow rain of September 2021, the Gorakhpur rain of October 2021, the Ganga floods of August 2025 and the Hindon flood of July 2023 (secondary sources). https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-lucknow/20210917/281496459415986 ; https://www.dailypioneer.com/2021/india/gorakhpur-records-highest-october-rainfall-in-100-years.html ; https://www.businesstoday.in/india/story/flooding-in-13-up-districts-ganga-flows-above-danger-mark-in-varanasi-mirzapur-ghazipur-ballia-487669-2025-08-04 ; https://sandrp.in/2023/08/03/rivers-breaching-highest-flood-levels-in-july-2023/
- Chow, V.T., Maidment, D.R. & Mays, L.W. (1988). *Applied Hydrology*. McGraw-Hill (alternating-block method, §14.4).
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Mile High Flood District (Denver). Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual (90% release rationale).
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008, 2012). Urban Stormwater Management Manual (MSMA).

Annexes

Annex	Content
2A	NIH-DHAARA vs IMD station and IMD gridded checks at benchmark points; zone map
2B	Sub-daily ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone: NIH-DHAARA (hourly-based) vs the one-third rule
2C	Grid-to-point factors
2D	Uttar Pradesh temporal patterns (Huff curves)
2E	Retention percentile depths by zone
Form 2-1	Design Rainfall Sheet

CHAPTER 3

Hydrologic Methods

3.1 Purpose and scope

3.1.1 This chapter sets out how design rainfall from Chapter 2 is turned into runoff peaks, volumes and hydrographs for:

- (a) drain, inlet and culvert sizing (Chapter 6);
- (b) retention and detention sizing, and the pre- vs post-development comparison (Chapter 4);
- (c) downstream and tailwater analysis (Chapter 5); and
- (d) waterbody, tank (tal) and regional facility studies (Chapter 7).

3.1.2 It specifies:

- (a) which method may be used for which purpose and catchment size (Clause 3.4);
- (b) how the pre- and post-development land surfaces are defined (Clause 3.3);
- (c) the parameters of each method: runoff coefficients, time of concentration, soils, curve numbers, unit hydrographs and routing (Clauses 3.5–3.12);
- (d) when continuous simulation and model calibration are required (Clauses 3.13 and 3.15);
- (e) the step-by-step pre- vs post-development comparison (Clause 3.14); and
- (f) software acceptance and documentation (Clauses 3.16 and 3.17).

3.1.3 Rainfall inputs (depth, duration, areal reduction, climate factor, temporal pattern and antecedent moisture) are governed by Chapter 2 and shall not be varied in this chapter.

> **Commentary.** The CPHEEO (2019) Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems gives a full Rational Method procedure and names SWMM for hydrograph work, but it is a drain-sizing guide. It does not say how a regulator should define "pre-development" or which method must be used to test a development against it (CPHEEO Part A §4.4, §8.5.1). APWA Section 5600 does both: it limits the Rational Method, names baseline hydrograph methods, and fixes the land-use assumptions for existing and proposed conditions (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2–5602.3; Version 2025.01, §5603.4). This chapter follows that model.

3.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Pre-development condition	The reference land surface defined in Clause 3.3.2, against which post-development runoff is tested. It is not the existing condition.
Post-development condition	The land surface after the proposed works are complete, as defined in Clause 3.3.3.
Point of comparison (POC)	A location where site runoff leaves the site, at which pre- and post-development flows are compared (Clause 3.14).

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Time of concentration (Tc)	The time for runoff to travel from the hydraulically most distant point of the catchment to the point of interest.
Lag (tL)	The time from the centroid of rainfall excess to the peak of the runoff hydrograph.
Hydrologic soil group (HSG)	The NRCS classification (A, B, C, D) of a soil by its minimum infiltration rate when wet (USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 7).
Curve number (CN)	The NRCS parameter that combines soil group, land cover and antecedent moisture into a single runoff-potential index (USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 9–10).
Antecedent moisture condition (AMC)	The soil wetness at the start of a storm: AMC I (dry), II (average), III (wet).
Directly connected impervious area (DCIA)	Impervious surface that drains to a drain, pipe or channel without first flowing over a pervious surface.
Disconnected impervious area	Impervious surface whose runoff flows as sheet flow over a pervious surface before reaching the drainage system, and meets Clause 3.9.3.
Peak rate factor (PRF)	The constant in the unit hydrograph peak equation (484 in US customary units; 0.208 in the SI form of Clause 3.11.2).
Continuous simulation	A model run over a long rainfall record (years), with soil moisture, storage and tank levels carried forward between storms.
Tank cascade	A chain of tanks (tals) in which the surplus of one tank feeds the next.

3.3 Pre-development and post-development land surface

3.3.1 **Same site, same storm.** Pre- and post-development runs shall cover the same area draining to each POC, and use the same design storms (Clause 2.11.1). They shall differ only in the land-surface parameters of this clause, the resulting Tc, and the stormwater controls.

3.3.2 **Pre-development condition.** The pre-development land surface shall be **greenfield: open land in good condition for the mapped hydrologic soil group**, as follows:

- (a) All land within the site, including land that is now built on, paved, compacted or cultivated, is treated as open land (grass cover > 75%) in good condition. **Existing impervious cover shall not be counted.**
- (b) The curve number is the TR-55 value for "open space, good condition" for the HSG of Clause 3.7: **CN 39 (A), 61 (B), 74 (C), 80 (D)** at AMC II (Table 3.5).
- (c) The HSG is the natural HSG of Clause 3.7, including the dual-group rule for high water table (Clause 3.10.1). No HSG improvement for drainage works is allowed.
- (d) Tc is computed on the pre-development ground surface using unchannelled overland and shallow concentrated flow and natural channels only (Clause 3.6). Existing pipes, lined drains and kerbs are ignored.
- (e) Existing waterbodies, tank waterspreads up to the full tank level (FTL), natural channels and supply or surplus channels are kept as they are, and modelled as water surfaces or channels, not as open land.

3.3.3 **Post-development condition.** The post-development land surface shall represent the proposed works at full build-out:

- (a) Impervious areas shall be measured from the site plan, separately for roofs, paved surfaces, roads and other sealed surfaces, and classified as directly connected or disconnected (Clause 3.9). Lot-size residential rows of TR-55 shall not be used for the site itself.

- (b) Pervious areas disturbed by construction (graded, filled or trafficked) shall be assigned one HSG lower in infiltration capacity than the natural HSG (A to B, B to C, C to D), unless post-construction infiltration tests (Clause 3.7.3) show otherwise. Soil disturbed by construction shall never be classed as HSG A.
- (c) Rainwater harvesting (RWH) sumps shall be treated as full at the start of storms of 12 hours or more, and the roof area draining to them as directly connected for those storms (Chapter 4).
- (d) Retention and detention facilities shall be represented explicitly as storage (Clause 3.12), not by lowering CN.

3.3.4 **Redevelopment.** The pre-development condition of Clause 3.3.2 applies to redevelopment as well. A site that is already fully paved is tested against greenfield, not against its existing state. For the constrained-redevelopment route of Clause 4.5.6, the existing condition shall also be modelled, with existing impervious areas as surveyed, so that the 50% minimum can be checked.

3.3.5 **Off-site areas.**

- (a) For conveyance design (Chapter 6), areas upstream of the site shall be taken at their ultimate land use under the approved master plan or development plan. Where no plan exists, upstream undeveloped land shall be assumed to be at least 35% impervious.
- (b) For the pre- vs post-development comparison, off-site run-on shall be modelled identically in both runs, at its existing condition (Clause 3.14.2).

> **Commentary.** A greenfield reference stops each redevelopment from being judged against an already degraded baseline. The UK non-statutory standards and KC APWA take the same approach in different forms: APWA caps existing agricultural land at no more than "good condition pasture, grassland or range (C = 0.30, CN = 74)" for HSG C, and forbids disturbed soils from being classed as HSG A or B (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.3A and E). The TR-55 "open space, good condition" values used in (b) are identical to TR-55's "pasture, grassland or range, good" values (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Tables 2-2a and 2-2c), so this Manual's pre-development CN equals the APWA cap on HSG C soils. The one-class downgrade for disturbed soils in 3.3.3(b) is set by this Manual as a simpler, less strict version of the APWA rule, suited to the Ganga–Yamuna alluvium (khadar and bangar), usar soils, terai deposits and Bundelkhand rock of Uttar Pradesh, where an HSG A to C jump would be excessive. The 35% minimum imperviousness for unplanned upstream land in 3.3.5(a) is the APWA value (2011, §5602.3E.2). Using the master-plan land use for conveyance follows CPHEEO, which requires C to reflect "ultimate development of the catchment as per the master plan" (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.1.5).

3.4 Selection of method

3.4.1 The method shall be selected from Table 3.1 by purpose and catchment size. Figure 3.1 shows the same rules as a flowchart.

Table 3.1 — Permitted hydrologic methods

Purpose	Catchment / condition	Permitted method	Clause
Peak flow for one conveyance element (inlet, pipe reach, drain reach, culvert)	≤ 16 ha contributing, no upstream storage, no backwater	Rational Method	3.5
Peak flow for conveyance	> 16 ha, or any upstream storage, tank or pond	Hydrograph method (SCS-CN with SCS unit hydrograph, SWMM or HEC-HMS)	3.8–3.12
Retention, detention, any storage; pre- vs post-development comparison	Any size	Hydrograph method; **Rational Method not permitted**	3.8–3.12, 3.14

Purpose	Catchment / condition	Permitted method	Clause
Pipe or drain network with backwater, tidal or tank tailwater	Any size	Hydrograph method with dynamic-wave hydraulic routing	3.12.4; Chapter 5
Catchment-scale flows	25–5,000 km² in CWC subzone 1(e), 1(f), 1(c) or 1(b)	HEC-HMS or SWMM, benchmarked against the CWC synthetic unit hydrograph (SUH)	3.11.4
Regional facilities	Draining > 25 km²	Design-storm hydrograph method **plus** continuous simulation	3.13
Tank (tal) cascades	Any size	Design-storm hydrograph method **plus** continuous simulation	3.13
Tier B: small sites under Chapter 1	Within the limits of the design aid	Design aids issued under Chapter 4, which are themselves derived by the methods of this chapter	3.4.4
Small sites, any authority	≤ 1 ha, within the limits of Clause 4.14.3	Fixed-coefficient route of Chapter 4 (fixed release coefficients, rainfall-mass storage)	3.4.4; 4.14.3

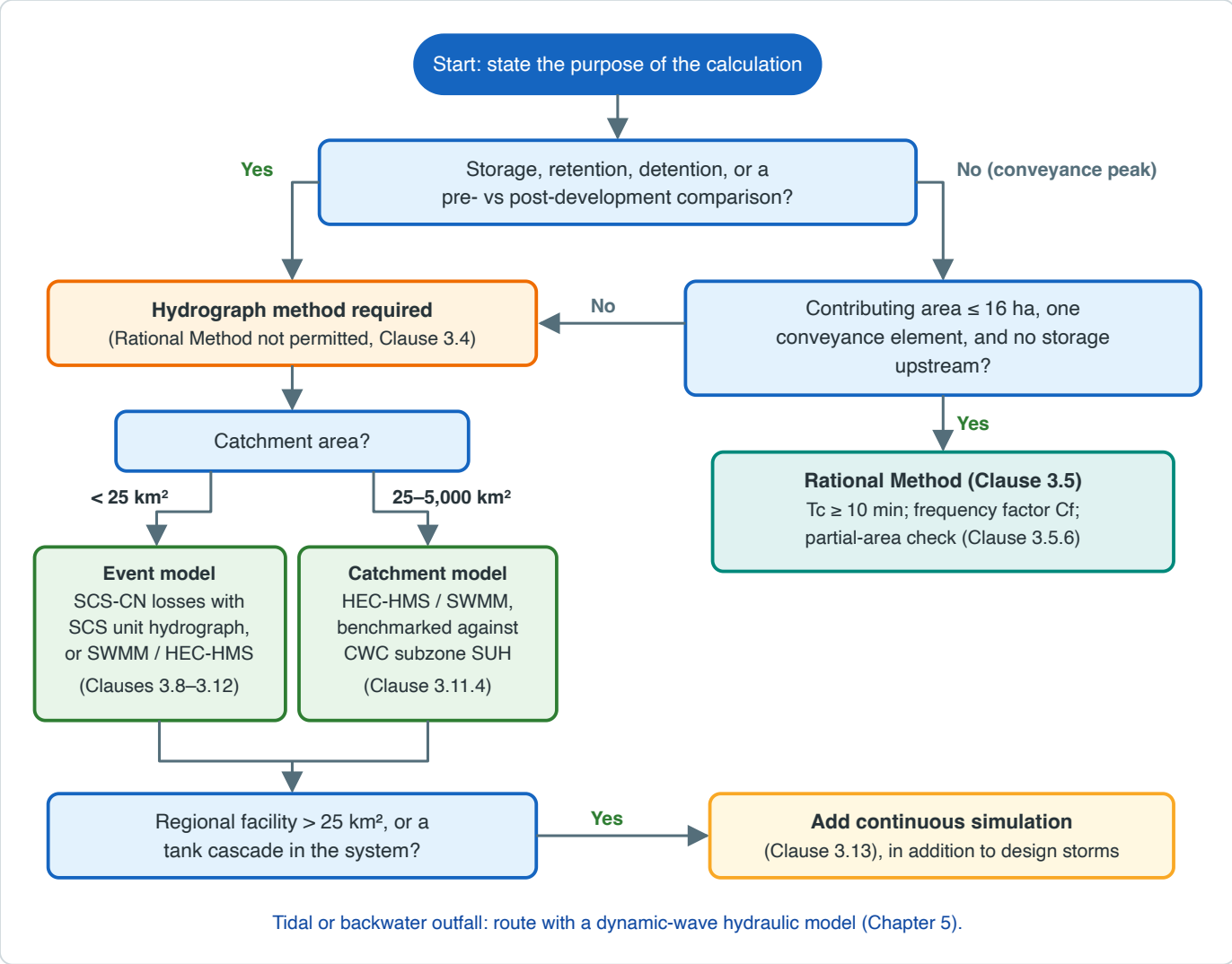


Figure 3.1 — Selection of hydrologic method. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from KC Metro APWA, Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, 2011 (§5602.2) and Version 2025.01 (§5603.4, Policy Supplement, 2025).

3.4.2 **Rational Method limits.** The Rational Method shall be used only for catchments of **16 ha or less** and only to compute the peak flow to a **single conveyance element**. It shall **never** be used to size retention, detention or any other storage, nor to derive a hydrograph or runoff volume.

3.4.3 **Hydrograph methods.** Above 16 ha, and for every storage calculation, a hydrograph method shall be used: SCS-CN losses with the SCS (NRCS) unit hydrograph, EPA SWMM, or HEC-HMS. For 25–5,000 km² the CWC synthetic unit hydrograph shall also be computed as a benchmark (Clause 3.11.4).

3.4.4 **Simplified routes.** In Tier B areas (Chapter 1), sites within the limits stated on a design aid issued under Chapter 4 may use that design aid in place of a site-specific hydrograph model. In any area, sites of 1 ha or less may use the fixed-coefficient route of Clause 4.14.3; it is the only exception to the rule in 3.4.2 that rainfall-based peak methods shall not be used for storage. The Rational Method remains available for conveyance under 3.4.2.

3.4.5 **Catchments above 5,000 km².** These are outside the scope of this Manual and require a basin study approved by the Irrigation and Water Resources Department (I&WRD).

> **Commentary.** The 16 ha limit and the single-element rule follow APWA 5600 Version 2025.01, which cut the Rational Method from 200 ac to 40 ac and restricted it to "a single pipe segment". The MARC Policy Supplement adds that it "cannot be used to size runoff reduction practices or determine retention volumes and detention volumes" (MARC, APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement, 2025). CPHEEO (2019, Part A §4.4.1.3) allows the Rational Method up to 8–10 km², which is too large for a method that assumes uniform rainfall intensity over the whole catchment for the whole of Tc and gives no volume. The Rational Method is excluded from storage design because it gives a peak, not a hydrograph, and storage depends on volume and timing.

3.5 Rational Method

3.5.1 **Equation.** The peak flow shall be computed as:

> $$Q = C \cdot Cf \cdot i \cdot A / 360$$

where Q is the peak flow (m³/s); C is the runoff coefficient (Table 3.2); Cf is the frequency factor (Table 3.3), with $C \cdot Cf \le 1.0$; i is the rainfall intensity (mm/h) for a duration equal to Tc, from Chapter 2 (with the climate factor of Clause 2.8); and A is the contributing area (ha).

> **Commentary.** This is the CPHEEO equation Qp = 10 C I A, with Qp in m³/h (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.1.1–4.4.1.3), converted to m³/s.

3.5.2 **Runoff coefficients.** C shall be taken from Table 3.2. Within a range, the designer shall use the upper half of the range unless site data justify a lower value.

Table 3.2 — Runoff coefficient C (for AEP of 10% or more frequent)

Surface or land use	C	Source
Commercial	0.70–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Industrial	0.60–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Institutional	0.70–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Residential, high density	0.60–0.75	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Residential, low density	0.40–0.60	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2

Surface or land use	C	Source
Recreational	0.10–0.25	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Asphalt	0.70–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Concrete	0.80–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Brick paving	0.70–0.85	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Roofs: tiles	0.80–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Roofs: metal	0.70–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Roofs: concrete	0.70–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Lawns, sandy soil, flat (≤ 2%)	0.05–0.10	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, sandy soil, average (2–7%)	0.10–0.15	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, sandy soil, steep (> 7%)	0.15–0.20	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, heavy (clay) soil, flat (≤ 2%)	0.13–0.17	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, heavy soil, average (2–7%)	0.18–0.22	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, heavy soil, steep (> 7%)	0.25–0.35	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Undeveloped land (maximum for any condition)	0.30	KC APWA 5600 (2011), §5602.3E

3.5.3 **Frequency factor.** For design AEPs rarer than 10%, C shall be multiplied by Cf from Table 3.3. The product C · Cf shall not exceed 1.0.

Table 3.3 — Frequency factor Cf

Design AEP (return period)	Cf
10% (10-yr) and more frequent	1.00
4% (25-yr)	1.10
2% (50-yr)	1.20
1% (100-yr)	1.25

3.5.4 **Composite C.** Where a catchment contains more than one surface, C shall be the area-weighted value $C = \Sigma(C_j \cdot A_j) / \Sigma A_j$, computed from the measured areas of each surface. Cf is applied to the composite C.

3.5.5 **Time of concentration and networks.**

- (a) Tc shall be computed by Clause 3.6 and shall not be less than **10 minutes**.
- (b) For each reach of a network within the 16 ha limit, the peak shall be computed with the cumulative $\Sigma(C \cdot A)$ upstream of that reach and the longest Tc to that reach. Peaks from upstream reaches shall not be added.

3.5.6 **Partial-area check.** Where a compact, highly impervious part of the catchment has a much shorter Tc than the whole, the peak shall also be computed for that part alone, using its own area, C and Tc. The larger peak governs.

> **Commentary.** The developed-surface coefficients in Table 3.2 are CPHEEO Table 4.2, which CPHEEO adapted from ASCE/WPCF (1969). CPHEEO keeps C constant for all return periods. Table 3.3 instead adopts the APWA antecedent-precipitation factors (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2A: K = 1.1, 1.2 and 1.25 for 4%, 2% and 1% storms, with C·K ≤ 1.0). These factors matter here because Uttar Pradesh's rare storms arrive on wet ground (Clause 2.11.4). The 10-minute minimum Tc matches the minimum design duration of Clause 2.5.1. APWA 2011

bounds inlet time between 5 and 15 minutes (§5602.7A). The partial-area check follows CPHEEO's treatment of "partial area effect" (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.1.7). This Manual requires the upper half of each range in 3.5.2 because Indian urban plots are typically more densely covered than the US land uses behind the ASCE ranges.

3.6 Time of concentration

3.6.1 **General.** Tc shall be computed separately for the pre- and post-development conditions, along the flow path that gives the longest travel time to the point of interest, as the sum of travel times in each flow segment. Tc shall not be less than **10 minutes** for either condition.

3.6.2 **NRCS velocity (segment) method.** The NRCS segment method is the default for all catchments. Tc = Tt(sheet) + Tt(shallow) + Tt(channel), where:

- (a) **Sheet flow:**

  > Tt = 0.091 (n · L)^0.8 / (P2^0.5 · S^0.4)

  where Tt is in hours; n is the sheet-flow roughness from Table 3.4; L is the sheet-flow length (m); P2 is the present-day 50% AEP (2-yr) 24-hour rainfall (mm) from Clause 2.3, without the climate factor; and S is the land slope (m/m).

- (b) **Sheet-flow length.** In urban areas, and for all post-development conditions, the sheet-flow length shall not exceed **30 m**. For pre-development greenfield surfaces, up to 90 m may be used only where survey shows unchannelled planar ground; otherwise 30 m applies.

- (c) **Shallow concentrated flow:** Tt = L / (3,600 V), with V = 4.918 S^0.5 (unpaved) or V = 6.196 S^0.5 (paved), V in m/s, L in m and S in m/m.

- (d) **Channel and pipe flow:** Tt = L / (3,600 V), with V from Manning's equation at bank-full or pipe-full flow.

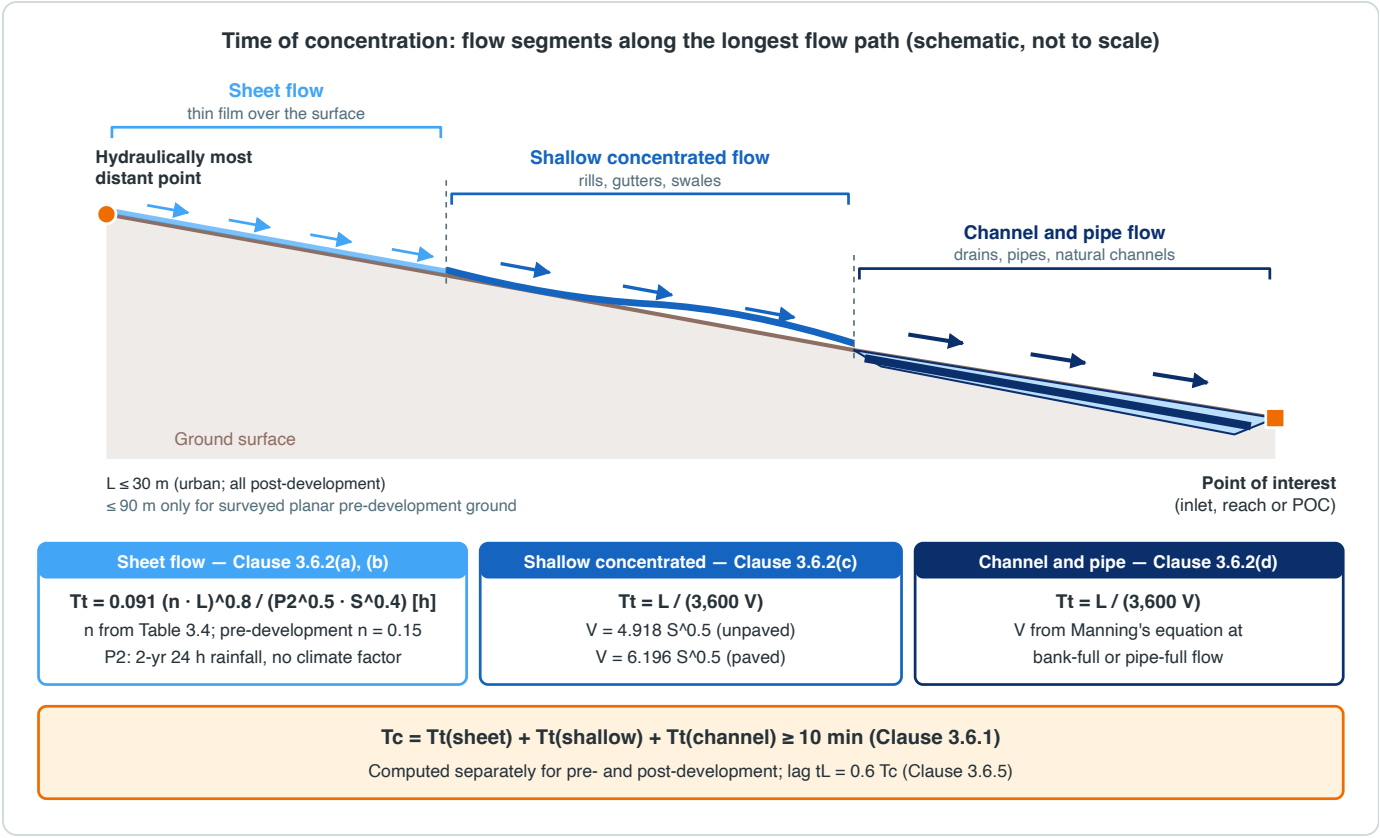


Figure 3.2 — Time of concentration by the NRCS segment method: sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow and channel or pipe flow along the longest flow path, with the travel-time equations and limits of Clause 3.6. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from USDA SCS TR-55 (1986), Ch. 3, and USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 15 (2010).

Table 3.4 — Manning's n for sheet flow (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Table 3-1)

Surface	n
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt, gravel, bare soil)	0.011
Fallow (no residue)	0.05
Cultivated, residue cover ≤ 20%	0.06
Cultivated, residue cover > 20%	0.17
Grass: short-grass prairie	0.15
Grass: dense grasses	0.24
Range (natural)	0.13
Woods: light underbrush	0.40
Woods: dense underbrush	0.80

3.6.3 **Pre-development roughness.** For the pre-development greenfield surface of Clause 3.3.2, sheet-flow n shall be **0.15** unless the designer justifies another Table 3.4 value from the natural vegetation of the area.

3.6.4 **Kirpich formula.** The Kirpich formula may be used only as a cross-check, or for pre-development rural catchments with a defined main channel:

> tc = 0.0195 L^0.77 S^−0.385

where tc is in minutes, L is the length of the main flow path (m) and S is its average slope (m/m). It shall not be used for urban or post-development catchments.

3.6.5 **Lag.** Where a unit hydrograph method requires lag, tL = 0.6 Tc.

3.6.6 **Check.** Post-development Tc shall normally be shorter than pre-development Tc. Where it is longer, the designer shall explain why in the submittal.

> Commentary. The segment method and its equations are from TR-55 (USDA SCS, 1986, Ch. 3) and NEH Part 630, Ch. 15 (USDA NRCS, 2010). The SI constants are direct conversions of the US equations: 0.007 becomes 0.091 with L in m and P2 in mm, and 16.1345 and 20.3282 ft/s become 4.918 and 6.196 m/s. TR-55 (1986) allowed sheet flow up to 300 ft (≈ 90 m). NEH 630 Ch. 15 states that sheet flow typically lasts no more than about 100 ft (≈ 30 m) before becoming shallow concentrated flow (citing Merkel, 2001), and many US agencies now cap it there. This Manual sets the 30 m urban limit in 3.6.2(b) on that basis: in Indian urban plots, flow reaches a drain, kerb or compound-wall weep hole within a few metres. The undisturbed P2 is used in the sheet-flow equation because P2 is a parameter of the travel-time relationship, not a design load. The default n = 0.15 for greenfield is the TR-55 short-grass value; this Manual adopts it to avoid long pre-development Tc values that would make Q_pre artificially low. The Kirpich formula is the SI form given by Chow, Maidment and Mays (1988, Table 15.1.2), from small agricultural catchments in Tennessee (Kirpich, 1940), so it does not suit urban surfaces. The lag ratio 0.6 is the NRCS value, also used by APWA (2011, §5602.7C).

3.7 Soils and hydrologic soil groups

3.7.1 **Mapping.** HSG shall be assigned from the soil series mapped by the National Bureau of Soil Survey and Land Use Planning (NBSS&LUP) or the Uttar Pradesh Department of Agriculture (soil survey) [TBC], using the soil-series-to-HSG lookup of Annex 3A. The source map and its scale shall be stated.

3.7.2 **Assignment rule.** Where Annex 3A is not yet available for a series, the HSG shall be assigned from the measured saturated hydraulic conductivity and depth to an impermeable layer or water table using the criteria of NEH Part 630, Ch. 7. Until Annex 3A is published, this Manual sets the following interim groups for Uttar Pradesh: the newer alluvium of the river floodplains (khadar), HSG A or B by texture, but HSG D for every design storm of July–September wherever the seasonal high water table is within 2 m of the surface, which over most of the khadar of the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Ghaghra and the Rapti is the case in those months; the older alluvium of the uplands (bangar), HSG B or C by texture, and HSG C where a kankar pan or a clay layer lies within 1 m of the surface; usar (sodic) soils, HSG D, with no infiltration credit unless site tests under Clause 3.7.3 show otherwise; the terai of the north-east and of Rohilkhand, HSG C or D, and HSG D wherever wells flow under artesian pressure or the seasonal high water table is within 0.6 m of the surface; the coarse bhabar fringe at the foot of the hills, HSG A or B; in Bundelkhand and the Vindhyan south, HSG D on granite-gneiss outcrop and thin red soils, HSG C on deeper red sandy loam, and HSG D on black soils; and made ground and fill, HSG C unless a field test shows otherwise. A field infiltration test is required on every site larger than the limits of the simplified method of Clause 4.14.1; on smaller sites, a soil that has not been tested shall be given the less permeable of the groups listed for it. Clause 3.10.1 applies to all of these groups.

3.7.3 **Site verification.** For every site that relies on retention by infiltration (Chapter 4), the mapped HSG shall be verified by site infiltration tests at the location and depth of each infiltration facility. Where the tests show a lower infiltration capacity than the mapped HSG, the test result governs for both the retention design and the post-development CN.

Where they show a higher capacity, the pre-development HSG shall not be changed without the approval of the authority.

3.7.4 **Disturbed and filled ground.** Clause 3.3.3(b) applies.

> Commentary. NBSS&LUP soil maps are typically at 1:250,000 to 1:50,000 scale and classify soils by series and taxonomy, not by HSG. A lookup table is therefore needed (Annex 3A). Site tests matter most in the khadar, where a sand that is HSG A or B by texture behaves as D once the monsoon has raised the water table (Clause 3.10); on usar land, where a soil that looks like a loam takes in water at millimetres a day rather than millimetres an hour; on the bangar, where a kankar pan can make a loam behave as HSG C; and in Bundelkhand, where the depth to granite-gneiss can change from a few centimetres to several metres within one site. No statewide HSG map of Uttar Pradesh was found during research for this Manual [TBC]. A district study of Bahraich derived HSG A–D areas and weighted curve numbers, and a study of the Gomti basin used the Ganga-basin soil map derived from NBSS&LUP data (both from search summaries). This Manual does not adopt one group for the whole State. A single group D would be conservative for peak flows, but it is unrealistic for the bangar of the central and western plain, where the water table is deep, and it would deny infiltration retention (Clause 4.4) exactly where Lucknow and the NCR cities most need recharge. The geology supports a split. The CWC report for subzone 1(f) records that the "major portion of the subzone has alluvial soils of recent origin excepting Tarai region", and that "The low lying flood plains adjacent to river banks are formed of new alluvium"; the report for 1(e) records "saline and alkaline soils … in some parts of the plains"; and the report for 1(c) describes alluvial soils in the north of Bundelkhand, mixed red and black soil in the centre, a belt of red sandy soil between them, and medium to deep black soil in the south. The CGWB divides the State into the bhabar, a recharge zone with deep water levels, the terai, of fine sediments with auto-flow conditions, the central Ganga plain, the marginal alluvial plain and the southern hard rock of granite, gneiss and Vindhyan sandstone, in which water is held only in the weathered and fractured zone (CGWB state profile, from a search summary [TBC]). Uttar Pradesh has the largest area of sodic (usar) soil of any State, about 1.35 million ha (ICAR, from a search summary [TBC]), and field trials on sodic soil near Lucknow are reported to give infiltration rates of about 4.6–19.3 mm per day across treatments (CSSRI, from a search summary; units to be confirmed [TBC]). No measured infiltration rates for the khadar sand, the bangar, the terai or the red soils of Bundelkhand were obtained [TBC]. The only regional measures of losses are the design loss rates of the CWC subzones, 3.0 mm/h in 1(e) and 1(f), 2.3 mm/h in 1(c) and 1.7 mm/h in 1(b) (Annex 3E). They are φ-indices fitted to the floods of whole rural catchments, which include the area under standing water and the land beside saturated channels, not the infiltration capacity of any soil, and they shall not be used to assign an HSG or to size an infiltration practice. The interim groups of Clause 3.7.2, the 2 m water-table threshold for the khadar, the 1 m depth to kankar or clay for the bangar, the treatment of usar and artesian terai land, and the rule for untested soil on small sites are set by this Manual pending a soil-series lookup for Uttar Pradesh.

3.8 SCS curve number (SCS-CN) loss method

3.8.1 **Runoff equation.** Runoff depth shall be computed by:

> $Q = (P - Ia)^2 / (P - Ia + S)$ for $P > Ia$; $Q = 0$ otherwise $S = 25{,}400 / CN - 254$

where Q is runoff depth (mm), P is the cumulative rainfall depth (mm), S is potential maximum retention (mm) and Ia is initial abstraction (mm). In hydrograph models the equation is applied to the cumulative rainfall at each time step to obtain incremental rainfall excess.

3.8.2 **Curve numbers.** CN at AMC II shall be taken from Table 3.5, for the HSG of Clause 3.7.

Table 3.5 — Runoff curve numbers, AMC II, Ia = 0.2S (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Tables 2-2a and 2-2c)

Cover type	HSG A	HSG B	HSG C	HSG D
Pre-development reference (Clause 3.3.2): open space, good condition (grass > 75%)	39	61	74	80
Open space, fair condition (grass 50–75%)	49	69	79	84
Open space, poor condition (grass < 50%)	68	79	86	89
Impervious: roofs, paved parking, driveways, paved roads with kerbs and drains	98	98	98	98
Paved roads with open ditches (including right-of-way)	83	89	92	93
Gravel roads (including right-of-way)	76	85	89	91
Dirt roads (including right-of-way)	72	82	87	89
Newly graded areas (pervious, no vegetation)	77	86	91	94
Fallow, bare soil	77	86	91	94
Meadow (continuous grass, protected from grazing)	30	58	71	78
Brush, good condition	30	48	65	73
Woods, good condition	30	55	70	77
Woods, fair condition	36	60	73	79
Woods, poor condition	45	66	77	83
Water surfaces, tank waterspreads, wet detention basins	Runoff = rainfall (no losses)			

3.8.3 **Use of Table 3.5.**

- (a) Post-development CN shall be built up from measured surfaces (Clause 3.9). The TR-55 urban district and residential lot-size rows shall not be used for the site.
- (b) Pervious areas in the post-development condition shall use "open space" in the condition the landscape plan will achieve. Where no landscape plan is submitted, fair condition applies.
- (c) Cultivated rows of TR-55 may be used for off-site existing conditions, but never for the pre-development reference of Clause 3.3.2.

3.8.4 **Antecedent moisture.** AMC shall follow Clause 2.11.4: AMC III for every design storm, whatever its duration, from 1 July to 30 September at a site in sub-area UP-C (North-east terai) or UP-D (Rohilkhand and western terai) of Annex 2A or on floodplain or embanked low-lying land anywhere in the State, and in July and August at a site in sub-area UP-B (Central–east Ganga plain); in sub-areas UP-A (West doab and NCR) and UP-E (Bundelkhand and Vindhyan), AMC III for a design storm that follows, or contains, a 5-day rainfall total of more than 53 mm; and AMC II for every other storm. CN for AMC I and III shall be obtained from AMC II by:

> $$CN(I) = \frac{4.2\,CN(II)}{10 - 0.058\,CN(II)} \qquad CN(III) = \frac{23\,CN(II)}{10 + 0.13\,CN(II)}$$

The conversion shall be applied **to the pervious component only**. Impervious surfaces stay at CN 98 for all AMC. Composite CNs shall not be converted directly.

Illustrative — not design values. Pre-development reference CNs at AMC III are: HSG A 59.5; HSG B 78.2; HSG C 86.7; HSG D 90.2.

3.8.5 **Initial abstraction.**

- (a) **Default:** Ia = 0.2S, with the CNs of Table 3.5.
- (b) **Sensitivity run (mandatory):** every storage design shall also be run with Ia = 0.05S. For this run, S shall be converted as S0.05 = 1.33 · S0.20^1.15 (S in inches), which in SI is:

  > S0.05 = 25.4 × 1.33 × (S0.20 / 25.4)^1.15 (mm)

- (c) The design shall be based on the default run. The sensitivity results shall be reported on Form 3-2. Where the sensitivity run increases the required retention volume or water quality volume, the larger value governs for that volume.

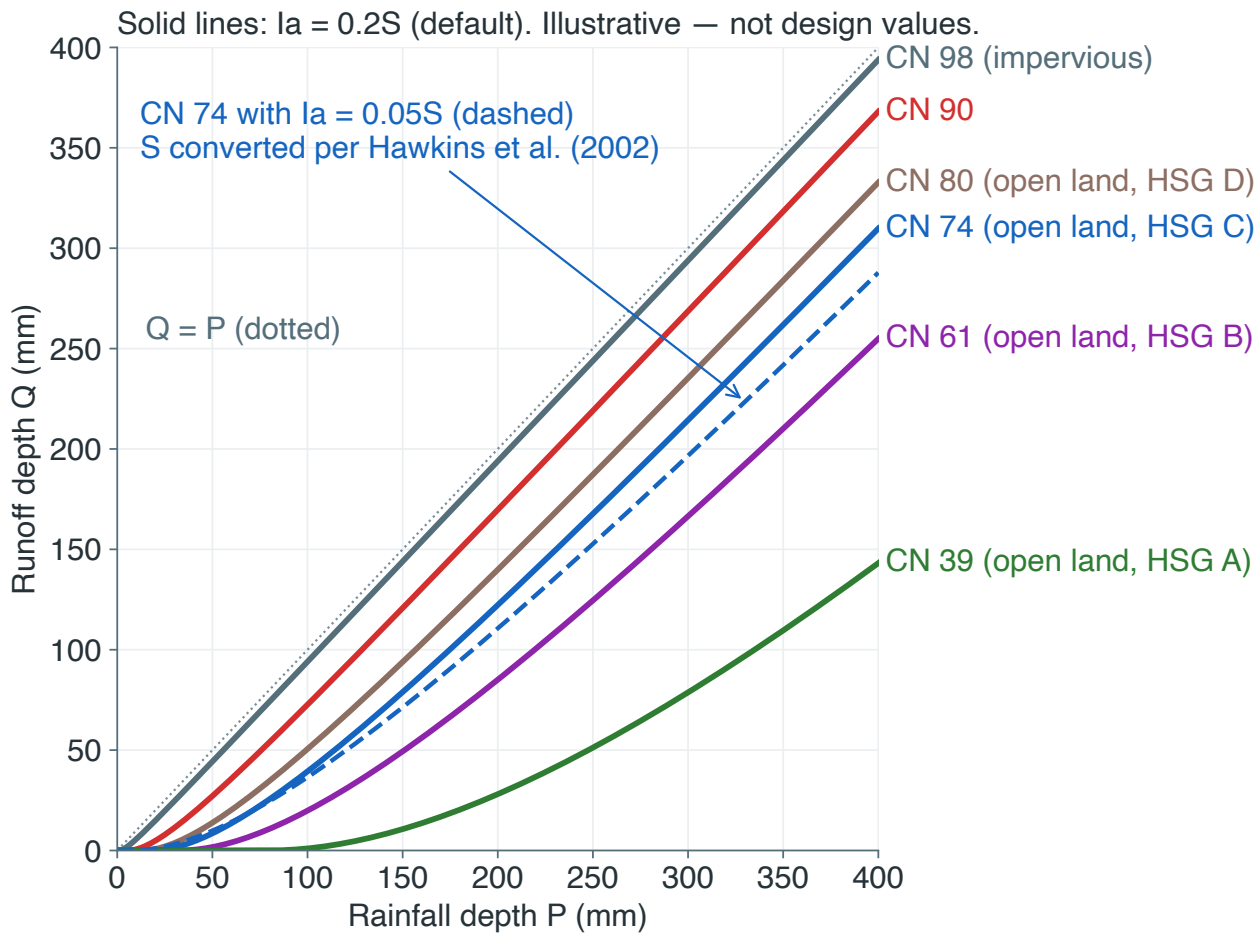


Figure 3.3 — SCS-CN runoff depth versus rainfall depth for selected curve numbers at Ia = 0.2S, with the Ia = 0.05S sensitivity case for CN 74. Original drawing for this Manual, computed from the runoff equation of USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 10 (2004) and USDA SCS TR-55 (1986), and the S-conversion of Hawkins et al. (2002). Illustrative — not design values.

Commentary. Table 3.5 reproduces standard NRCS TR-55 (1986) values. They were derived from US catchments and have not been calibrated in Uttar Pradesh. The AMC conversion equations are the standard NEH-4 relationships as given by Chow, Maidment and Mays (1988, §5.5). Converting only the pervious component follows APWA, which states that "direct conversion of composite antecedent moisture conditions is not appropriate" (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2C). Converting a composite CN would wrongly lower the CN of the impervious part.

Ia = 0.2S is the original NRCS ratio. Analysis of US rainfall–runoff data found that 0.05S fits better on average (Hawkins et al., 2002; Woodward et al., 2003), and gave the conversion of 3.8.5(b). NRCS has not formally replaced 0.2S, so this Manual keeps it as the default. Figure 3.3 shows why the sensitivity run is needed: for CN 74, the 0.05S case gives **more** runoff for small storms (about 2.0 mm vs 0.5 mm from 25 mm of rain) but **less** for large storms (about 242 mm vs 262 mm from 350 mm). *Illustrative — not design values.* The ratio therefore matters most for retention and water quality volumes, and the default 0.2S is the conservative choice for peak and detention design. The rule in 3.8.5(c) that the larger retention or water-quality volume governs has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because the 0.05S case gives more runoff from the small storms that set those volumes.

3.9 Impervious connectivity

3.9.1 **Classification.** Every impervious surface in the post-development condition shall be classified as directly connected (DCIA) or disconnected, and shown on the drainage plan.

3.9.2 **Preferred representation.** In hydrograph models, DCIA and pervious areas shall be modelled as separate sub-areas (or as the separate impervious and pervious fractions of a SWMM subcatchment), each with its own loss parameters. The runoff from disconnected impervious areas shall be routed onto the receiving pervious area.

3.9.3 **Disconnection criteria.** An impervious area may be classed as disconnected only if all of the following hold:

- (a) its runoff discharges as sheet flow onto a pervious area, without a pipe, channel or kerb;
- (b) the pervious flow path is at least as long as the impervious flow path draining to it;
- (c) the pervious area is not compacted, not HSG D, and is protected from paving by the approved plan; and
- (d) for storms of 12 hours or more, it does not drain to an RWH sump or tank (Clause 3.3.3(c)).

3.9.4 **Composite CN.** Where a single composite CN is used instead of 3.9.2, it shall be computed as:

- for directly connected impervious area: $CNc = CNp + (Pimp / 100)(98 - CNp)$;
- where total impervious area is below 30% and part of it is disconnected: $CNc = CNp + (Pimp / 100)(98 - CNp)(1 - 0.5\,R)$,

where CNp is the pervious CN, Pimp is the percentage of impervious area and R is the ratio of disconnected to total impervious area. The composite CN shall not be used for retention or water quality volumes.

Commentary. The composite equations are from TR-55 (USDA SCS, 1986, Ch. 2, Figures 2-3 and 2-4). This Manual prefers separate representation in 3.9.2 because a composite CN spreads the impervious response over the whole area, which suppresses runoff from small storms. For a site that is 50% directly connected impervious on HSG B open space (CNp 61), 25 mm of rain gives about 9.9 mm of runoff when the two parts are modelled separately, but only about 1.8 mm with the composite CN 79.5. At 200 mm the two methods agree (139.5 mm vs 138.4 mm). *Illustrative — not design values.* The error is largest for the frequent storms that set retention and

water-quality volumes. The disconnection criteria of 3.9.3 are set by this Manual, drawing on common practice in US runoff-reduction manuals. Criterion (d) follows the rule of Clause 3.3.3(c) that RWH sumps are full at the start of SW monsoon storms.

3.10 Groundwater, high water table and tank backwater

3.10.1 **High water table (dual HSG).** Where the seasonal high groundwater table is within 0.6 m of the ground surface, the soil shall be assigned HSG D for both the pre- and post-development runs, whatever its texture, unless it is permanently drained by works that are maintained under Chapter 10. This rule applies in every case to storms of 12 hours or more, which are run at AMC III (Clause 2.11.4).

3.10.2 **Water-table data.** The seasonal high water table shall be taken as the highest level recorded in the SW monsoon season (June–September), from site piezometers or trial pits, or from the nearest Central Ground Water Board (CGWB) or UP Ground Water Department observation well, adjusted for ground level.

3.10.3 **Infiltration-based losses.** Where Green–Ampt, Horton or soil-moisture-accounting losses are used instead of SCS-CN, the cumulative infiltration in any storm shall not exceed the storage available in the soil above the seasonal high water table.

3.10.4 **Tank and waterbody backwater.** Where a site or sub-catchment drains to a tank, tal, marsh or other waterbody:

- (a) the water level in the receiving waterbody shall be applied as the downstream boundary of the model, per Chapter 5 and Chapter 7;
- (b) land below the level of the receiving waterbody in the design event (including the tank foreshore below FTL) shall be modelled as water surface or storage, with no losses; and
- (c) where the outfall is submerged by the waterbody level, the routing shall use the dynamic-wave method of Clause 3.12.4.

Commentary. The dual-group rule follows NEH Part 630, Ch. 7 (USDA NRCS, 2009), which places wet soils with a water table within 60 cm (24 in) of the surface in group D in their undrained state, with a dual group (A/D, B/D, C/D) where drainage is feasible. This Manual applies the undrained group to long storms because over much of Uttar Pradesh the water table stands close to the surface in the SW monsoon, and whatever infiltration capacity the soil has in the dry season is gone when a July–September design storm arrives. The low-lying floodplains beside the rivers "are formed of new alluvium" (CWC Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(f), §1.6), the khadar, into which the rivers rise every monsoon. In the terai below the foothills the sediments are fine and wells show auto-flow (artesian) conditions, while the coarse bhabar above them is a recharge zone with deep water levels (CGWB state profile, from a search summary; the CGWB site could not be reached during research for this Manual [TBC]). In the Sharda Sahayak canal command about 260,000 ha are reported waterlogged and about 253,300 ha salt-affected (a 2024 Sentinel-2 study, from a search summary [TBC]), and section 33 of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019 makes the prevention of waterlogging a duty of the appropriate authorities. The cities of the central and western plain are the opposite case: in Lucknow the depth to water before the monsoon of 2023 was 7.65–45.6 m below ground, after a fall of 1.4–13.1 m in ten years, and the city is classed over-exploited (CGWB, submission in NGT O.A. 594/2024). Across the State the CGWB year book for 2023-24 reports water levels "from near ground level to about 44.43 m bgl" (from a search summary [TBC]). No monsoon water-table depths for individual sites, and no map of the water table of the khadar and the terai, were obtained [TBC]; Annex 3A is to supply them. Clause 3.10.4 reflects the State's receiving waters, which are mostly rivers held between embankments, with tals behind them. In Lucknow 33 of the city's 34 drains join the Gomti (Jal Kal, LMC, reply in NGT O.A. 403/2024, from a search summary), and outfalls inside the embankments are pumped when the river is high; the Gomti's highest flood level at Lucknow is 110.85 m (11 September 1971), against a danger level of 109.5 m (CWC values as compiled by SANDRP, as reported). At Gorakhpur the Rapti reached 77.54

> m at Birdghat on 23 August 1998, 2.56 m above its danger level of 74.98 m (as reported), and six named nalas of the city flow into Ramgarh Tal, a wetland of 742.245 ha notified on 7 December 2020, so that the city drains to a tal as well as to the river.

3.11 Unit hydrographs and runoff transformation

3.11.1 **Permitted transforms.**

- (a) SCS (NRCS) dimensionless unit hydrograph, curvilinear or triangular, for catchments below 25 km² and for any sub-area of a larger model;
- (b) the SWMM non-linear reservoir with kinematic overland flow;
- (c) Clark or ModClark unit hydrograph in HEC-HMS, where parameters are calibrated under Clause 3.15; and
- (d) the CWC synthetic unit hydrograph, for 25–5,000 km² (Clause 3.11.4).

3.11.2 **SCS unit hydrograph.** The peak and time to peak of the unit hydrograph shall be:

> $q_p = PRF' \cdot A \cdot Q / t_p$, with $PRF' = 0.208$ (SI form of the standard peak rate factor 484) $t_p = \Delta t / 2 + t_L$, $t_L = 0.6\, T_c$

where q_p is the peak flow (m³/s); A is the area (km²); Q is the runoff depth (mm), equal to 1 mm for the unit hydrograph; t_p is the time to peak (h); and Δt is the computation interval (h).

3.11.3 **Computation interval and sub-areas.**

- (a) Δt shall not exceed 0.133 T_c of the smallest sub-area, nor the hyetograph time step of Clause 2.9.1.
- (b) Sub-areas shall be reasonably uniform in HSG, land cover and slope. Pervious and directly connected impervious areas shall be separate sub-areas, per Clause 3.9.2.

3.11.4 **CWC synthetic unit hydrograph.** For catchments of 25–5,000 km² in CWC subzone 1(e) (Upper Indo-Ganga Plains), 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains), 1(c) (Betwa) or 1(b) (Chambal):

- (a) the SUH parameters, design storm duration, loss rate, base flow, areal reduction and time distribution shall be taken from the applicable CWC Flood Estimation Report, using the catchment's physiographic parameters measured from survey or a DEM;
- (b) the 24-hour design rainfall shall follow Clause 2.3.3(b) and Clause 2.7.3, and the climate factor of Clause 2.8 shall be applied;
- (c) the SUH result shall be reported alongside the HEC-HMS or SWMM result for the existing natural condition; and
- (d) where the hydrograph model gives a lower 1% AEP peak than the CWC SUH, the designer shall either justify the model by calibration under Clause 3.15 or adopt the CWC SUH peak.

3.11.5 **Peak rate factor for flat coastal land.** The standard factor (484; $PRF' = 0.208$) is the default. A lower factor may be used only:

- (a) for unchannelled, flat coastal-plain land without piped or lined drainage;
- (b) in the same way in both the pre- and post-development runs for any land that stays unchannelled; and
- (c) after the authority adopts calibrated values in Annex 3D.

Land drained by pipes, lined drains or kerbs in the post-development condition shall use the standard factor.

> **Commentary.** The SCS unit hydrograph, the 0.6 lag ratio and the 0.133 Tc interval are from NEH Part 630, Ch. 16 (USDA NRCS, 2007). The interval follows from the unit hydrograph geometry: with tp = Δt/2 + 0.6 Tc and Tc + Δt = 1.7 tp, Δt = 0.133 Tc. The SI constant 0.208 is the direct conversion of 484 (cfs, mi², in, h). APWA uses the SCS dimensionless unit hydrograph as its basis (2011, §5602.5). The CWC Flood Estimation Reports give regression equations for SUH parameters, a design storm duration, a constant loss rate and ARF and time-distribution curves for each subzone (CWC 1984, 1985, 1988 and 1989; see Chapter 2). They were derived from natural, mostly rural catchments with data that predate the reports of 1984 to 1989, so they represent pre-development conditions, not urbanised ones. That is why the SUH is used as a benchmark rather than as the post-development model. Clause 3.11.4(d) mirrors the floor principle of Clause 2.3.3. HEC-HMS has been calibrated against CWC subzone SUH responses in Indian studies, which shows the two can be linked.
>
> The lower-factor option of 3.11.5 is based on the NRCS Delmarva unit hydrograph, which uses a peak rate factor of 284 (PRF' ≈ 0.122) for flat, poorly channelled coastal-plain catchments on the Delmarva Peninsula (Welle et al., 1980, as adopted by NRCS; New Jersey Department of Agriculture, Delmarva bulletin, which uses 285). A lower factor gives a lower, later peak. Used only in the pre-development run, it would lower Q_pre and make the release cap stricter; used in a piped post-development run, it would understate Q_post. Clause 3.11.5(b) prevents both biases.

3.12 Routing

3.12.1 **Storage routing.** Routing through detention and retention facilities, tanks, ponds and any storage behind embankments shall use level-pool (modified Puls, storage-indication) routing with:

- (a) a stage–storage relationship from the design grading or survey;
- (b) a stage–discharge relationship for every outlet (orifices, weirs, surplus weirs, pumps), including the minimum orifice and trash screen of Chapter 4; and
- (c) the tailwater boundary of Chapter 5, where the tailwater affects the outlet rating.

3.12.2 **Channel routing.** Routing through channels and drains shall use the Muskingum–Cunge method, or the Muskingum method with parameters K and X that are derived from channel geometry or calibration. For the Muskingum method, the routing interval Δt shall satisfy $2KX \le \Delta t \le 2K(1 - X)$.

3.12.3 **Incidental storage.** Storage behind road embankments, culverts or boundary walls that is not part of an approved facility shall not be counted in the design unless the authority is satisfied that it will be maintained for the design life.

3.12.4 **Dynamic-wave routing.** Dynamic-wave (full Saint-Venant) routing, in SWMM or HEC-RAS unsteady flow, shall be used where:

- (a) the outfall is under tidal, river or tank backwater (Chapter 5, Clause 3.10.4);
- (b) flow can reverse, or the network has loops or overflow links; or
- (c) the network surcharges in the design event and the hydraulic grade line sets the design.

3.12.5 **Tank cascades.** Tanks in a cascade shall each be routed by Clause 3.12.1, with the surplus weir and sluice ratings and the documented operating rule of Chapter 7. The starting water level in each tank shall be FTL unless continuous simulation (Clause 3.13) supports a lower level.

> **Commentary.** Modified Puls routing for storage and Muskingum–Cunge for channels are the APWA requirements (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.8). APWA also excludes "incidental detention" behind embankments unless it will be maintained, which 3.12.3 adopts. CPHEEO's detention procedure uses the same three inputs as 3.12.1: an inflow hydrograph, a stage–storage curve and a stage–discharge curve (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §8.5.3). The

> Muskingum stability limits are standard (Chow, Maidment and Mays, 1988, §8.4). This Manual starts tals and lakes at FTL in 3.12.5 because Uttar Pradesh's heaviest rain falls in the middle and late monsoon, on water bodies that have taken the earlier rains and are not drawn down for drainage. Between 82% and 90% of the annual rainfall of the State's main stations falls in June–September, and July and August are the wettest months: 238.5 mm and 241.6 mm at Lucknow, and 353.5 mm and 330.8 mm at Gorakhpur (IMD normals 1991–2020). The stations' all-time 24-hour records fall in all four monsoon months, among them 311.7 mm at Lucknow on 17 July 1947, 335.3 mm at Allahabad on 20 August 1953 and 349.5 mm at Varanasi (BHU) on 26 September 1943 (IMD, *Extremes*). No tal or lake in the State was found to have a documented operating rule or a record of water levels [TBC]. The guideline of the Urban Development Department of December 2024 asks the city drainage master plans to set standard operating procedures for detention ponds, including their pre- and post-monsoon levels, but no such procedure had been published. Tals should therefore be assumed full from July and modelled below FTL only where a continuous simulation under Clause 3.13 or a notified operating rule supports it. The window of 1 July to 15 October in Clause 3.13.5(a) is set by this Manual. It starts after the monsoon normally covers the whole State, on 30 June (normal onset over the east, 20 June; IMD Meteorological Centre Lucknow), because the dry days of June in the west, where Agra's June normal is only 46.4 mm, would lower the starting level; in the north-east terai June is already wet (187.8 mm at Gorakhpur and 180.8 mm at Bahraich), so the tals there are likely to be fuller still by July. It ends on 15 October, the date to which this Manual keeps pumps on standby, because withdrawal normally completes on 10 October, came on 13 October in 2025, and heavy storms have fallen in October, such as 310.0 mm at Hardoi on 13 October 1985 (IMD, *Extremes*).

3.13 Continuous simulation

3.13.1 **When required.** Continuous simulation shall be carried out, in addition to the design-storm analysis, for:

- (a) regional facilities draining more than 25 km²; and
- (b) any system that includes a tank cascade whose storage is counted in the design (Chapter 7).

The authority may also require it for any facility where the starting storage level governs the design.

3.13.2 **Rainfall input.**

- (a) The longest available hourly record from IMD or another approved recording gauge representative of the catchment shall be used.
- (b) Where hourly data are shorter than 30 years, the record shall be extended with the IMD 0.25° gridded daily data. The full gridded record (1901 to present) should be used; at least the most recent 30 years shall be. The daily data shall be disaggregated to hourly by a method stated in the submittal and checked against the hourly gauge for the overlapping years. Grid values shall be converted to point values under Clause 2.7.1 where applicable.
- (c) A future-climate run shall scale the record by the climate factors of Clause 2.8.

3.13.3 **Model content.** The model shall include soil-moisture accounting with evaporation (IMD pan evaporation or equivalent), groundwater or base flow, tank storage with operating rules and irrigation withdrawals, and the tailwater series of Chapter 5 (predicted tides plus a surge allowance for coastal outfalls).

3.13.4 **Use of results.** Annual maxima of water level, storage and volume, and the duration of outfall closure, shall be extracted and fitted by frequency analysis. Results shall be compared with the design-storm results. The more severe result at each AEP governs. Peak flows in drains and channels with a response time of less than one day shall be taken from the design-storm analysis where the continuous record was disaggregated from daily data, because the disaggregated hourly peaks are synthetic.

3.13.5 **Two-step approach.** The continuous simulation need not use the full hydraulic model. It may use a simplified hydrologic and storage model, at a daily or hourly step, that represents the soil moisture, groundwater, tank storage, operating rules and tailwater of 3.13.3. Its results shall then be passed to the design-storm runs of the full hydraulic model as:

- (a) the **starting level of each tank**, taken as the level exceeded on 10% of the days from 1 July to 15 October over the record; and
- (b) the **antecedent soil-moisture condition**, taken from the same days and compared with the AMC rule of Clause 3.8.

The designer shall show that the simplified model reproduces the water balance of the full model for at least one recorded event.

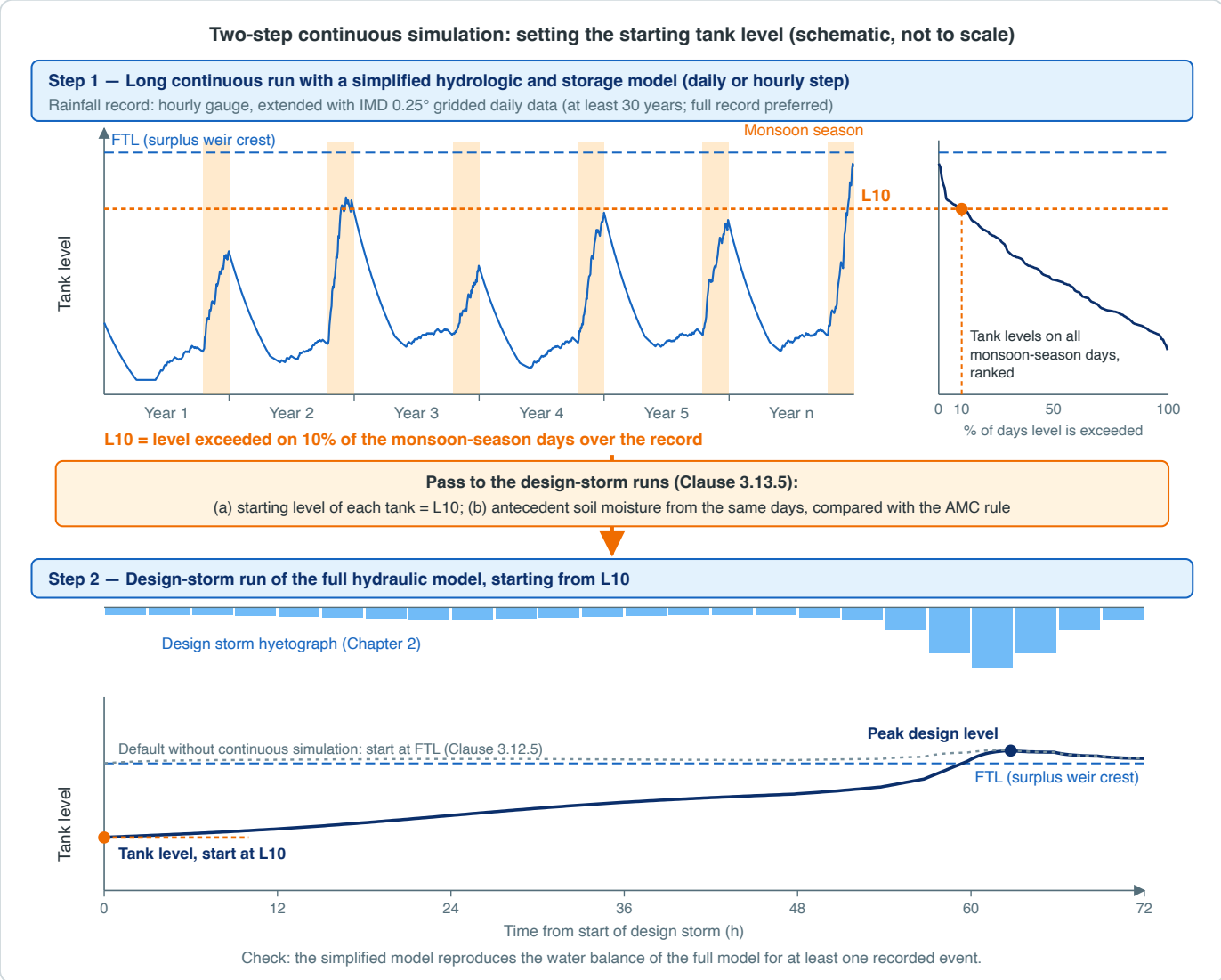


Figure 3.4 — Two-step approach of Clause 3.13.5. Step 1: a long continuous run with a simplified hydrologic and storage model gives the tank level exceeded on 10% of the days from 1 July to 15 October (L10). Step 2: the design storms are run in the full hydraulic model from that starting level, in place of the default start at FTL of Clause 3.12.5. Schematic, not real data. Original drawing for this Manual, illustrating the two-step approach set by this Manual in Clause 3.13.5.

> **Commentary.** Design storms assume one starting condition, but in a tank cascade the governing variable is how full the tanks are when the storm arrives, which depends on the weeks of rain before it. An Australian study of 20 real on-site detention systems found that designs based on one temporal pattern, or even an ensemble of ten,

"cannot reliably produce an OSD system design that will always be effective" under real rainfall, and continuous simulation showed frequent-event peaks exceeding pre-development levels (Water Science and Engineering, 2019). The 30-year minimum in 3.13.2(b) matches the station IDF rule of Clause 2.3.2; a longer record is better, and the IMD gridded daily record, which starts in 1901, is the practical long series for Uttar Pradesh. The record length matters less than what the simulation is for. Its main purpose here is to find how full the tanks and soils usually are when a south-west monsoon storm arrives, and how often heavy rain coincides with a closed outfall. A design storm cannot answer either question, because it starts from one assumed condition. It is not intended to replace design storms for the peak flow in urban drains. Clause 3.13.5 therefore allows the long run to be made with a simple storage model, which takes minutes, and passes the starting tank levels to the detailed hydraulic model, which is then run only for the design storms. Running a detailed 1D–2D city model continuously for decades is rarely practical and is not required. The 10% exceedance level in 3.13.5(a) is set by this Manual: it represents a wet but not exceptional monsoon, so that the design storm arrives on tanks that are already well filled, as they were in September 1982 at Bahraich, when 1,116.0 mm fell in the month and 463.3 mm on the 13th (IMD).

3.14 Pre- vs post-development comparison procedure

3.14.1 The comparison required by Clause 2.11 and Chapter 4 shall be carried out by the following steps. The results shall be recorded on Form 3-2.

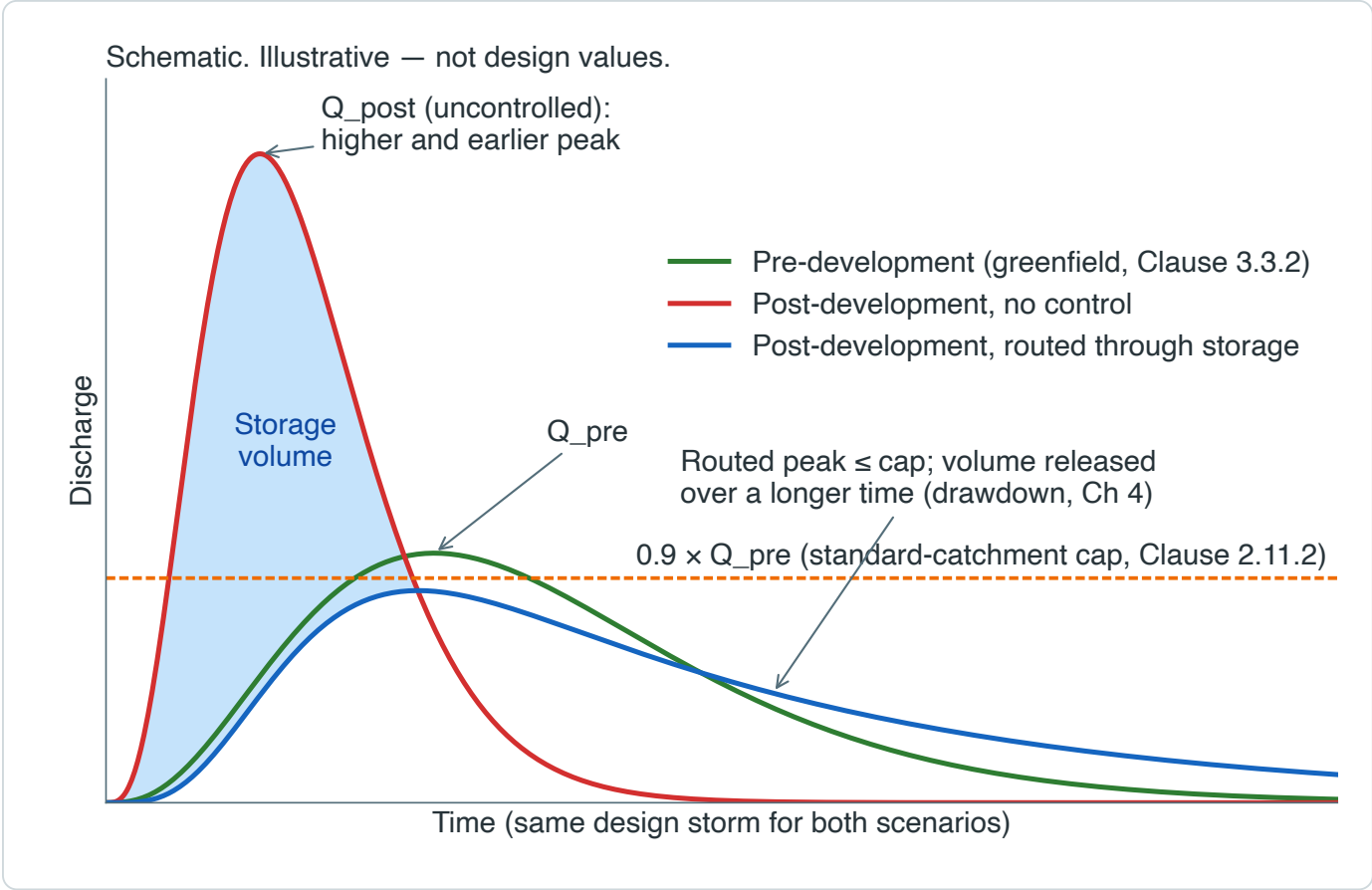


Figure 3.5 — Pre-development, uncontrolled post-development and routed post-development hydrographs for the same design storm. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the pre- vs post-development detention concept in CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A §8.5, 2019, and KC Metro APWA Section 5600, 2025.01. Schematic. Illustrative — not design values.

3.14.2 **Step 1 — Define the site, catchments and points of comparison.**

- (a) Delineate the site and every area that drains to it, from survey.
- (b) Identify each POC where runoff leaves the site. Each POC shall be tested separately. Runoff shall not be diverted from one natural catchment to another to meet the criterion.
- (c) Model off-site run-on identically in both runs, at its existing condition (Clause 3.3.5(b)). Where it passes through the site's storage, the criterion applies to the total outflow at the POC.

3.14.3 **Step 2 — Soils.** Map HSG (Clause 3.7), apply the high-water-table rule (Clause 3.10.1) and record the infiltration tests.

3.14.4 **Step 3 — Pre-development model.** Build the pre-development model per Clause 3.3.2: greenfield CN (Table 3.5), Tc (Clause 3.6, with n = 0.15), and existing waterbodies and channels. Compute CN at AMC II and AMC III.

3.14.5 **Step 4 — Post-development model.** Build the post-development model per Clause 3.3.3: measured impervious areas, connectivity (Clause 3.9), disturbed-soil HSG, CN, Tc, and the proposed retention, detention and outlets as storage (Clause 3.12.1).

3.14.6 **Step 5 — Design storms.** From Chapter 2, prepare for each required AEP (50%, 10% and 1%; 2-, 10- and 100-yr) and each duration in {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}:

- the depth with the climate factor (Clause 2.8), ARF = 1.0 for the site (Clause 2.7.4);
- the hyetograph (Clause 2.9); and
- the AMC (Clause 2.11.4).

The same storms shall be used in both runs (Clause 2.11.1).

3.14.7 **Step 6 — Run the pre-development model** for every storm and tabulate Q_pre(T, d). For flood-sensitive catchments, identify the largest 10% AEP pre-development peak over all durations; that value is the cap of Clause 2.11.3.

3.14.8 **Step 7 — Run the post-development model without controls** and tabulate Q_post(T, d) and runoff volumes. This shows the size of the problem and is reported, not tested.

3.14.9 **Step 8 — Add retention and detention.**

- (a) Represent the retention volume of Chapter 4 as storage that is lost to infiltration or reuse (not released to the POC) within the period verified under Chapter 4.
- (b) Route the remaining hydrograph through the detention storage and outlets (Clause 3.12.1).
- (c) Apply the tailwater of Chapter 5, including the joint cases of Clause 2.12, where the outfall is tidal or under backwater.
- (d) Adjust storage and outlets until Step 9 is met.

3.14.10 **Step 9 — Test the criterion** at each POC, for every AEP and every duration:

- (a) standard catchments: Q_post(T) ≤ 0.9 × Q_pre(T) for the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP (Clause 2.11.2);
- (b) flood-sensitive catchments: Q_post(1% AEP) ≤ Q_pre(10% AEP), and Q_post(50% AEP) ≤ Q_pre(50% AEP) (Clause 2.11.3).

The governing duration for storage is the one that needs the largest storage or gives the highest water level; the 24, 48 and 72 h runs are always reported (Clause 2.5.2).

3.14.11 **Step 10 — Sensitivity runs.** Repeat Steps 6–9 for the governing storms with Ia = 0.05S (Clause 3.8.5) and, where a lower peak rate factor is used, with the standard factor (Clause 3.11.5). Report the change in peaks and required storage.

3.14.12 **Step 11 — Associated checks.** Using the final routed model, check the drawdown times, minimum orifice and emergency spillway of Chapter 4, the outfall-closed storage check of Chapter 5, and the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.

3.14.13 **Step 12 — Document** the results on Forms 3-1 and 3-2 (Clause 3.17).

> Commentary. The step sequence follows the standard event-based workflow: delineate; set pre-development CN and Tc; set post-development CN and shorter Tc; run identical storms through a unit hydrograph or kinematic model; compare peaks and volumes; and size storage by modified Puls routing. It adds the Uttar Pradesh elements: the 48–72 h storms, AMC III, and tailwater. Figure 3.5 shows why the long-duration runs matter: the routed peak can meet the cap while the storage holds the volume difference between the post- and pre-development hydrographs, which must then drain within the Chapter 4 limits. The ban on diverting runoff between catchments in 3.14.2(b) stops a site meeting the rule at one POC by moving flow to a neighbour's drain.

3.15 Model calibration and validation

3.15.1 **When required.** Calibration and validation are required for:

- (a) catchment models of 25 km² or more;
- (b) regional facilities and continuous simulation under Clause 3.13;
- (c) city or basin drainage master plans; and
- (d) any model whose parameters differ from the defaults of this chapter (for example a Clark transform or a lower peak rate factor).

3.15.2 **Data.** Calibration shall use observed rainfall (gauges, and radar where available) and observed flows or water levels (I&WRD gauging sites, LMC or UPSDMA level sensors, tank gauges, or surveyed flood marks).

3.15.3 **Events.** At least three independent events shall be used for calibration and at least one further event for validation. At least one event shall be a long-duration SW monsoon or cyclone event (for example the Lucknow storm of 15–16 September 2022 (20 cm in 24 hours at Lucknow (hs) and Lucknow (Cr), IMD), the east Uttar Pradesh storm of 14–15 September 2022 (20 cm at Gorakhpur and 23 cm at Jaunpur, IMD), the rains of 10–11 September 2023 at Lucknow and Kanpur, or the Rapti flood of August 1998 at Gorakhpur, where data exist).

3.15.4 **Performance.** The submittal shall report, for each event, the observed and modelled peak, volume and time to peak, and for continuous models the Nash–Sutcliffe efficiency (NSE) and percent bias. As a guide, a calibrated model should reproduce event peaks and volumes within ±25%, and a continuous model should achieve NSE ≥ 0.5 and percent bias within ±25%.

3.15.5 **Limits on calibration.** Calibration shall not be used to justify design flows lower than those given by the default methods of this chapter, unless site-specific factors are thoroughly examined and documented and the authority agrees.

3.15.6 **Reasonableness check.** Design peak flows shall be plotted as discharge per unit area against catchment area and compared with the CWC SUH results, regional gauged estimates and known historical floods.

> Commentary. Clauses 3.15.5 and 3.15.6 follow APWA, which states that "model calibration shall not be used to justify discharge estimates that are lower than those provided by the baseline unit hydrograph method" and requires unit discharges to be plotted against tributary area and compared with regression, gauge and historical values (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.9). The event-count and performance values in 3.15.3 and 3.15.4 are

set by this Manual. The NSE ≥ 0.5 and ±25% bias thresholds are the "satisfactory" streamflow ratings of Moriasi et al. (2007), which were developed for monthly continuous simulation; their use for event peaks and volumes here is an extension.

3.16 Software acceptance

3.16.1 **Accepted software.** The following are accepted without further demonstration, in a version current at the time of submittal:

- (a) EPA Storm Water Management Model (SWMM 5.x);
- (b) USACE HEC-HMS and HEC-RAS;
- (c) USDA NRCS WinTR-55 and WinTR-20; and
- (d) spreadsheets for the Rational Method and single-area SCS-CN calculations, where every formula and input is shown.

3.16.2 **Other software.** Commercial packages built on the SWMM or HEC engines are accepted if the engine and version are stated. Any other method or software is accepted only if the designer reports, for every sub-area, the peak flow, lag, runoff volume and equivalent CN from both that method and a baseline method of 3.16.1, identifies every difference greater than 5%, and justifies every difference that gives a less conservative result.

3.16.3 **Benchmark problems.** The authority shall publish benchmark test problems (Annex 3C). Software not listed in 3.16.1 shall reproduce them within the stated tolerance.

3.16.4 **Model files.** Native model input and output files shall be submitted with every hydrograph-based design.

> Commentary. The 5% equivalence test is the APWA rule for alternative methods (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2D). APWA names TR-55, TR-20, HEC-1 and HEC-HMS as baseline methods (§5602.2B). CPHEEO names SWMM for hydrograph and continuous modelling (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.2). Submitting native model files lets the authority rerun the model and is the main safeguard against unreviewable black-box results.

3.17 Documentation

Every hydrologic submittal shall include:

1. **Form 3-1, Hydrologic Calculation Summary**, stating the method used and why (Table 3.1), the software and version, and the computation interval.
2. **Catchment maps** for the pre- and post-development conditions, showing sub-areas, flow paths used for Tc, POCs, and off-site run-on.
3. **Soils:** the HSG map and its source and scale (Clause 3.7), water-table data (Clause 3.10), and infiltration test results.
4. **Parameter tables** for each sub-area and condition: area, impervious area by type and connectivity, HSG, CN at AMC II and III (or C and Cf), Tc worksheets, and n values.
5. **Rainfall:** the Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) and the hyetographs used.
6. **Results:** hydrograph tables and plots for each storm; stage–storage and stage–discharge tables; routed outflows; and peak water levels.
7. **Form 3-2, Pre- vs Post-Development Comparison**, with Q_pre, Q_post (uncontrolled and routed) and the criterion for each POC, AEP and duration, and the sensitivity runs of Clause 3.14.11.
8. **Calibration report**, where Clause 3.15 applies.

9. **Model files** (Clause 3.16.4).
10. **A statement by the responsible engineer** that the methods and parameters of this chapter have been used, with any departures listed and justified.

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Volume I, Part A: Engineering Design. Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs, New Delhi. §4.4 (Rational Method, Table 4.2 runoff coefficients, time of concentration, partial area effect), §8.5 (detention).
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2011). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (Feb 16, 2011), §5602.2–5602.9.
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01, §5603.4. https://kcmetro.apwa.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/23/2026/01/APWA-Section-5600_Storm-Drainage-Systems-Facilities.pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement (Policy Supplement). https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- USDA Soil Conservation Service (1986). Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, Technical Release 55 (TR-55), 2nd ed. Tables 2-2a, 2-2c, 3-1; Figures 2-3, 2-4, 3-1.
- USDA NRCS. National Engineering Handbook, Part 630 Hydrology: Ch. 7 Hydrologic Soil Groups (2009); Ch. 9 Hydrologic Soil-Cover Complexes; Ch. 10 Estimation of Direct Runoff from Storm Rainfall (2004); Ch. 15 Time of Concentration (2010); Ch. 16 Hydrographs (2007). https://directives.nrcs.usda.gov/
- Hawkins, R.H., Jiang, R., Woodward, D.E., Hjelmfelt, A.T. and Van Mullem, J.A. (2002). Runoff curve number method: examination of the initial abstraction ratio. Proc. Second Federal Interagency Hydrologic Modeling Conference, Las Vegas.
- Woodward, D.E., Hawkins, R.H., Jiang, R., Hjelmfelt, A.T., Van Mullem, J.A. and Quan, Q.D. (2003). Runoff curve number method: examination of the initial abstraction ratio. World Water & Environmental Resources Congress, ASCE.
- Welle, P.I., Woodward, D.E. and Moody, H.F. (1980). A dimensionless unit hydrograph for the Delmarva Peninsula. American Society of Agricultural Engineers paper. See also New Jersey Department of Agriculture, Delmarva Unit Hydrograph bulletin. https://nj.gov/agriculture/divisions/anr/pdf/DelmarvaBulletin.pdf
- Chow, V.T., Maidment, D.R. and Mays, L.W. (1988). Applied Hydrology. McGraw-Hill. §5.5 (SCS method, AMC), §8.4 (Muskingum), Table 15.1.2 (Kirpich).
- Kirpich, Z.P. (1940). Time of concentration of small agricultural watersheds. Civil Engineering 10(6), 362.
- Merkel, W.H. (2001), as cited in USDA NRCS NEH Part 630, Ch. 15 (2010), on the length of sheet flow.
- ASCE and WPCF (1969). Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers. ASCE Manual of Practice No. 37.
- Texas Department of Transportation. Hydraulic Design Manual, Ch. 4, §12 Runoff Coefficients. https://www.txdot.gov/manuals/des/hyd/chapter-4--hydrology/section-12--rational-method/runoff-coefficients.html
- Central Water Commission (1984). Flood Estimation Report for Upper Indo-Ganga Plains Subzone 1(e). Approved at the 40th meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee, RDSO, Lucknow, 23–24 July 1984; the design-office report number is not on the scanned copy read for this Manual [TBC]. Read from the Internet Archive copy of 17 April 2016 (78 pages). http://web.archive.org/web/20160417155336/http://www.cwc.gov.in:80/main/downloads/Upper%20Indo-Ganga%20Plains%20subzone%201(e).Pdf
- Central Water Commission (1985). Flood Estimation Report for Middle Ganga Plains Subzone 1(f). Design Office Report No. GP/10/1984, October 1985, approved at the 41st meeting of the Flood Estimation Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 30 January 1985. https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report (read from the Internet Archive copy; the unit hydrograph relationships, the rainfall-ratio table and Plates 8 and 9 checked against the page images)
- Central Water Commission (1988). Flood Estimation Report for Chambal Subzone 1(b). Design Office Report No. C/16/1988, December 1988, placed before the Flood Estimation Planning and Co-ordination Committee at Bhopal in September 1988 (the day read as 16 September by optical character recognition; the Betwa report gives 18 September [TBC]). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report (read from the Internet Archive copy of 12 April 2016; the relationship table checked against the page image, the rest by optical character recognition)

- Central Water Commission (1989). Flood Estimation Report for Betwa Subzone 1(c). Design Office Report No. B/17/1989, June 1989, placed before the 18th meeting of the Flood Estimation Planning and Co-ordination Committee, Bhopal, 18 September 1988, and approved at its meeting of 27–28 April at RDSO, Lucknow (the year is not legible on the copy read [TBC]). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report (read from the Internet Archive copy of 12 April 2016; the relationship table and Plates 10 and 11 checked against the page images, the rest by optical character recognition)
- Moriasi, D.N. et al. (2007). Model evaluation guidelines for systematic quantification of accuracy in watershed simulations. Trans. ASABE 50(3), 885–900.
- "OSD for Australian development projects: does it meet frequent flow management objectives?" Water Science and Engineering (2019). https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1674237019300213
- Central Ground Water Board, Northern Region. Documents filed on behalf of the CGWA in NGT O.A. 594/2024 (depth to water and its decline in Lucknow city, 2014–2023; category of the city). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Documents%20on%20behalf%20of%20CGWA%20in%20OA%20ON%20594%20of%202024%20(NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20LUCKNOW%20ME%20PAANEE%20CHALA%20RASATAL%2010%20SAAL%20ME%20160%20FOOT%20NEECHE%20CHALA%20GAYA%20JALSTAR%20MEL%20RAHE%20KHATARNAK%20SANKET_0.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. Ground water information: Uttar Pradesh (state profile; cited from a search summary, the CGWB site being unreachable). https://cgwb.gov.in/old_website/State-Profiles/Uttar%20pradesh.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. Ground Water Year Book, Uttar Pradesh, 2023-24 (cited from a search summary; the CGWB data portal could not be reached). https://gwdata.cgwb.gov.in/download/Yearbook/Uttar%20Pradesh_GWYB%202023-24.pdf
- Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019), section 33 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf
- Study of salt-affected and waterlogged land in the Sharda Sahayak command from Sentinel-2 imagery (2024), AGRIS record (cited from a search summary). https://agris.fao.org/search/ar/records/66d9b981f995ef9c04259939
- ICAR. *Indian Farming*, article on sodic soils of Uttar Pradesh (cited from a search summary). https://epubs.icar.org.in/index.php/IndFarm/article/download/84418/34729/215648
- *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, article on infiltration in reclaimed sodic soil, CSSRI Lucknow field trials (cited from a search summary). https://epubs.icar.org.in/index.php/IJAgS/article/download/1296/405/2603
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012) (Uttar Pradesh stations, pp. M209–M224). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow. Climatological tables of stations, 1991–2020 normals (Agra, Bahraich, Gorakhpur, Lucknow and others). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/Lucknow.pdf
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow. Southwest Monsoon Report 2024 for Uttar Pradesh; Southwest Monsoon Report 2025 (normal dates of onset and withdrawal). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/monsoon.pdf ; https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/swreport.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 and 11 September 2023 (24-hour rainfall in Uttar Pradesh). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines (in Hindi), file of 24 December 2024, §3.3. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf

- Government of Uttar Pradesh (2020). Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018 of 7 December 2020, Ramgarh Taal Wetland, district Gorakhpur, as annexed to the response of CPCB in NGT O.A. 1057/2024. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (warning, danger and highest flood levels compiled from CWC). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/
- Jal Kal Vibhag, Nagar Nigam Lucknow. Reply in NGT O.A. 403/2024 (drains of Lucknow city; cited from a search summary, not read) [TBC].
- Studies using hydrologic soil groups in Uttar Pradesh: a district study of Bahraich (IJAS, 2024) and a SWAT study of the Gomti basin (*Current Science*, 2015) (both cited from search summaries; not read) [TBC].
- US EPA. Storm Water Management Model (SWMM 5). US Army Corps of Engineers, Hydrologic Engineering Center. HEC-HMS and HEC-RAS.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
3A	Uttar Pradesh soil series to HSG lookup; seasonal high water table map
3B	Uttar Pradesh CN calibration and supplementary land covers (khadar farmland, usar land, ravines, terai forest and grassland, Bundelkhand scrub and rock, tal beds)
3C	Benchmark test problems for software acceptance
3D	Peak rate factor study for flat coastal land
3E	CWC SUH parameters for subzones 1(e), 1(f), 1(c) and 1(b), with worked example
Form 3-1	Hydrologic Calculation Summary
Form 3-2	Pre- vs Post-Development Comparison

CHAPTER 4

Site Runoff Control: Retention and Detention

4.1 Purpose and scope

4.1.1 This chapter sets the performance standard that every regulated development shall meet for runoff leaving the site. It covers:

- (a) the order in which runoff-control measures are to be applied (Clause 4.3);
- (b) retention of frequent rainfall, and how retained volume is credited against detention (Clause 4.4);
- (c) release-rate criteria for standard and flood-sensitive catchments (Clause 4.5);
- (d) the procedure for sizing detention storage and outlets (Clauses 4.6 to 4.9);
- (e) facility types, rainwater harvesting (RWH) accounting, and high-groundwater sites (Clauses 4.10 to 4.12);
- (f) regional detention and fee-in-lieu (Clause 4.13);
- (g) simplified methods for small sites: the Tier B tables and the fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14); and
- (h) public safety (Clause 4.15).

4.1.2 This chapter applies to land disturbance of **0.1 ha or more**, or new or replaced impervious area of **500 m² or more**, as set in Chapter 1. Single dwellings below that threshold, and road resurfacing that adds no impervious area, are exempt. The existing RWH mandate of the building rules (rooftop rainwater harvesting on every plot of 300 m² and more, of all uses including group housing, where there is no collective recharge network, except in waterlogged areas, and recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the area of every layout of more than 4 ha, under clause 13.1.2 of the Byelaws 2025; the stipulations for rooftop rainwater harvesting that section 31(2) of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019 makes binding on every agency that sanctions building plans, with a combined recharge system for group housing and colonies; and, in Noida, Greater Noida and YEIDA, the provisions of their own building regulations [TBC]; the rules are discussed in the Commentary to Clause 4.11) continues to apply to every building it covers, whether or not this chapter applies.

4.1.3 Rainfall inputs come from Chapter 2. Hydrologic methods come from Chapter 3. Tailwater, downstream analysis and the outfall-closed check come from Chapter 5. Water quality volume (WQv) treatment comes from Chapter 8. Where this chapter and those chapters overlap, the more stringent requirement governs.

> Commentary. No Indian national rule or Uttar Pradesh rule found during research for this Manual limits the rate of discharge from a site, and none requires on-site detention or "zero run-off". The building rules of the development authorities are now the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025, approved with the Model Zoning Regulations 2025 by G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025 under sections 57 and 13(2) of the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973. They supersede the bye-laws of 2008, each development authority issues them in its own name, and their amendment of 21 November 2025 did not touch their drainage provisions. Noida, Greater Noida (GNIDA) and YEIDA keep their own building regulations of 2010, made under the UP Industrial Area Development Act 1976, which were not read for this Manual [TBC]. The drainage provisions of the Byelaws protect the building, the drain and the aquifer, not the catchment. Site and layout plans must show "the approximate location and size of any water body, flood affected areas", and building plans the drainage lines and the rooftop rainwater harvesting system (clause 2.3.2); drains "shall be an integral part of the road" with "sufficient slope so that water can drain automatically" (clause 3.1.3.5); the minimum plinth is 0.30 m above the surrounding ground (clause 3.3.1.21); rooftop rainwater harvesting is

required on plots of 300 m² and more, "except waterlogged areas", and layouts of more than 4 ha must build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of their area, no more than 2 m deep (clause 13.1.2; Commentary to Clause 4.11); for projects of 20,000 m² of built-up area and more, "The natural drain system shall be maintained", "No construction is allowed on wetland and water bodies" and sustainable urban drainage systems "are allowed for maintaining the drainage pattern" (clause 13.3); construction on land covered by ponds, reservoirs, rivers or drains identified in a Master Plan, Zonal Plan or layout plan or recorded in the revenue records cannot be compounded (clause 16.3.2(xi)); within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga only repair and renovation are permitted, and where a religious building is allowed there, "Drainage shall not be released directly into the river" (clause 2.11); and buildings with a green rating earn 3%, 5% or 7% of extra FAR (clause 9.3). None of these sets a design storm, a release rate, a storage volume or an overflow path. The guideline of the Urban Development Department for its Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme (December 2024; ₹1,000 crore in 2024-25, of which ₹100 crore for master plans) records the gap itself: there is at present no integrated plan for urban drainage in the State's urban areas, and existing drains are "usually designed for a 1–2 year" rainfall return period, which climate change has made inadequate. It requires an Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan, prepared by C&DS, UP Jal Nigam (Urban), to the CPHEEO manual of 2019 and approved by a State Level Apex Committee chaired by the Chief Secretary, with the Nagar Nigams eligible first; and its checklist for detailed project reports asks for 25–30 years of IMD autographic rainfall analysed into an IDF curve and for pumps that can operate above the high flood level. It sets no design return period of its own, and no approved master plan was found [TBC]. Basements are where the gap is sharpest. Clause 3.3.3.2(iv) of the Byelaws requires only that "Adequate arrangements shall have to be made to ensure that surface water does not enter the basement", and nothing in the Byelaws restricts basements in low-lying or flood-prone land or in a notified floodplain. This Manual's own requirements therefore apply to every basement in Uttar Pradesh in addition to the Byelaws: no detention storage in a habitable basement (Clause 4.10.1), the crest of every basement ramp and the sill of every basement opening at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level, with basement drainage pumped to the surface drain through a non-return valve (Clauses 6.11.1 and 6.11.4), and no basement in Zone 2 (Clause 7.5.2). This chapter is written so that it can supply, as a technical companion, the design storm, release rates and storage volumes that the master plans and project reports of the UDD scheme need and that the Byelaws leave open; it has not been adopted for either purpose. The Byelaws define a drain as a conduit or channel "for the carriage of storm water, sewage" and other water (definition 28), and in practice most city nalas carry sewage, which the State intercepts at their outfalls under Namami Gange (Clause 8.9). Retention and detention apply in full on every site whatever the drain carries: every litre a site releases at the peak of a storm takes up capacity in a drain that is already part-filled with sewage. The CPHEEO (2019) manual describes limiting outflow to the pre-development peak as typical practice, but it uses no "shall" and names no storm frequencies (CPHEEO Part A §8.5.1). This chapter turns that description into a development-control requirement.

4.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Retention	Permanent removal of runoff from the surface drainage system by infiltration, evapotranspiration or reuse, so that the water never reaches the outfall.
Retention depth	The 90th percentile wet-day 24-hour rainfall depth for the site's zone (Clause 2.10, Annex 2E).
Required retention volume (RRV)	The runoff volume from the retention depth over the post-development site (Clause 4.4.2).
Detention	Temporary storage of runoff, released through a controlled outlet at a rate set by Clause 4.5.
Retention credit	The reduction in required detention storage that results from retention practices, determined by routing under Clause 4.4.6. It is **not** the same as the retained volume.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Permissible site discharge (PSD)	The maximum rate at which a site may discharge for a stated AEP, in L/s or L/s/ha.
Site storage requirement (SSR)	The detention storage required per hectare of site under the simplified method of Clause 4.14.
Multi-stage outlet	An outlet structure with separate openings at different levels, each controlling a different AEP (Figure 4.2).
Drawdown time	Time from the peak stored volume until the stated fraction of that volume has been released.
Emergency spillway	A secondary overflow that passes flows above the primary outlet capacity, or all flow when the primary outlet is blocked, without overtopping the embankment.
Freeboard	Vertical distance between the maximum design water level and the embankment crest or other critical level.
Flood-sensitive catchment	A catchment listed in Clause 4.5.3 or notified under Clause 4.5.4.
Authority	The approving authority under Chapter 1 (the development authority or special area development authority constituted under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973 in its development area, under its own edition of the Byelaws 2025; the controlling authority of a regulated area; Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA or UPSIDA in its industrial development area, under its own building regulations; or, where it grants building or layout permission, the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat concerned, as applicable).
Tier A / Tier B	Adoption tiers defined in Chapter 1. Tier A: the Lucknow Municipal Corporation (LMC), every approving authority within the development area of LDA or of any other development authority constituted under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973, including the development authorities themselves and the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats in those areas, Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA and UPSIDA in their industrial development areas, and every other Nagar Nigam. Tier B: Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats.

4.3 Order of measures

4.3.1 Every site runoff-control design shall apply measures in the following order, and shall document in the submittal why each earlier step could not do more:

1. **Preserve.** Keep existing waterbodies, tals, natural drainage lines, wetlands, and permeable soils and vegetation. Avoid fill in flood storage (Chapter 7).
2. **Retain.** Retain the RRV on site by infiltration, reuse or evapotranspiration (Clause 4.4).
3. **Detain.** Detain the remaining runoff so that the release-rate criteria of Clause 4.5 are met for every design storm and duration (Clauses 4.6 to 4.9).
4. **Convey.** Convey the 1% AEP (100-yr) flow safely through the site to the receiving system on a defined overland path (Chapter 6), and check the receiving system downstream (Chapter 5).

4.3.2 Preservation and retention reduce the detention required (Clauses 4.4.6 and 4.4.7). They do not relieve the site of the release-rate criteria of Clause 4.5 or of the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.

> Commentary. This order follows the "layers of stormwater management" adopted in the Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 Version 2025.01: preserve or restore, retain, detain, convey, maintain (MARC factsheet; MARC Supplement, Nov 2025). Maintenance is the fifth layer and is set in Chapter 10. The 2025.01 manual credits retention and natural-area preservation against detention size (MARC Supplement, Nov 2025). Clause 4.4.6 adopts that credit, and defines it so that it cannot be claimed twice.

4.4 Retention

4.4.1 Requirement

The site shall retain the RRV. Retention shall be achieved by one or more of the following:

- infiltration practices (soakaways, infiltration trenches, permeable pavement with an infiltration base, bioretention);
- rainwater reuse that is drawn down by a demonstrated non-potable demand;
- green roofs and landscape areas that do not drain to the outfall in the retention-depth storm.

The limits of Clause 4.4.4 apply.

4.4.2 Computation of the RRV

> RRV (m³) = 10 × Q_R × A

where:

- Q_R (mm) is the runoff depth from the retention depth P_R (Annex 2E). It is computed with the SCS-CN method for the post-development cover of each sub-area, at AMC II, with Ia = 0.2S (Chapter 3); and
- A (ha) is the area of the site that drains to the outfall.

Q_R shall be computed for each sub-area separately and summed. An area-weighted CN shall not be used where impervious and pervious areas differ by more than 20 CN points.

The volumetric method RRV = 10 × P_R × Rv × A, with Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 × I (I = percent impervious), may be used for sites under 0.5 ha and under the Tier B method.

> **Commentary.** The Rv formula is the one used in the KC water quality volume (MARC BMP Manual 2012). It is simple to review for small sites. The SCS-CN form is required for larger sites so that the retention computation uses the same runoff model as the detention routing. That keeps the credit computation of Clause 4.4.6 consistent.

4.4.3 Verification

Retention by infiltration shall be supported by:

- (a) site infiltration tests at the location and depth of each practice, at the frequency set in Chapter 8;
- (b) a design infiltration rate of no more than **half** of the measured rate; and
- (c) groundwater evidence showing the seasonal high groundwater table at least **1.0 m** below the base of the practice (Chapter 8).

Retention by reuse shall be supported by a demand calculation showing that the RRV is drawn down within 72 hours by a continuous non-potable use, such as toilet flushing, cooling or irrigation.

> Commentary. The factor of 2 on measured infiltration rate has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it to allow for clogging and for the difference between a test pit and a full-scale practice. Chapter 8 may set a different factor; if it does, Chapter 8 governs.

4.4.4 Limits on retention

4.4.4.1 Infiltration practices shall not be used:

- where the seasonal high groundwater table is less than 1.0 m below the base (Chapter 8);
- on contaminated land;
- within the setbacks from foundations, wells and septic systems set in Chapter 8; or
- on fill, unless tested after placement.

4.4.4.2 Where the RRV cannot be fully retained, the shortfall shall be stated in the submittal. The shortfall shall be treated as WQv under Chapter 8 and shall get no retention credit.

4.4.5 Drawdown of retention

Retention storage shall be emptied by infiltration or reuse within **72 hours** of the end of the retention-depth storm, verified by the tests of Clause 4.4.3.

4.4.6 Retention credit: definition and computation

4.4.6.1 **What the credit is.** The retention credit is the reduction in required detention storage that results when the retention practices are included in the post-development routing. It is computed. It is not assumed equal to the RRV.

4.4.6.2 **Tier A method (routing).** For each design storm and duration of Clause 4.6.3:

- (a) model each retention practice explicitly as a storage that is **empty at the start of the storm**, unless Clause 4.11 says otherwise;
- (b) let the practice fill from the front of the storm, and let it lose water during the storm only at the design infiltration or reuse rate of Clause 4.4.3;
- (c) once it is full, route its overflow to the detention facility; and
- (d) size the detention for the residual hydrograph.

The required detention storage is the largest storage over all storms and durations. The credit is the difference between that storage and the storage required with no retention. No further deduction shall be made.

4.4.6.3 **Tier B method (simplified).** The detention storage required by Clause 4.14 may be reduced by:

> $V_{credit} = C_R \times RRV_{provided}$

where C_R is the retention credit factor from Annex 4B for the zone, soil group and drawdown rate. Until Annex 4B is published, **$C_R = 0$**.

4.4.6.4 Retention that is not verified under Clause 4.4.3 gets no credit.

> **Commentary.** "Credited against detention" (APWA 5600 2025.01) can be read in two ways. One reading subtracts the retained volume from the detention volume, cubic metre for cubic metre. The other routes the storms with retention in place and sees what detention is still needed. The two readings give very different answers in Uttar Pradesh, because the mandatory 48- and 72-hour storms (Clause 2.5.2) fill any retention practice on the first day, long before the peak arrives on the last day (Clause 2.9.2). Unless the practice keeps infiltrating during the storm, it is full at the peak and does nothing to reduce the peak storage.
>
> The illustrative example in Clause 4.6.7 shows the size of the effect. A 2 ha site with 552 m³ of retention (no infiltration during the storm) needs 138 m³ less detention for the 24-hour storm. That is a credit of about a quarter of the retained volume. For the 48- and 72-hour storms, which govern, the credit is close to zero. Subtracting the retained volume directly would have under-sized the detention by about 545 m³ (about 19%).
>
> This Manual therefore defines the credit as the result of routing. Retention on fast-draining sandy soils, which keeps infiltrating through a multi-day storm, will earn a real credit. Retention that only fills will earn little. Both outcomes are physically correct. Setting C_R = 0 until Annex 4B exists is a safe default for Tier B, not a judgement that retention has no value: retention is still required for water quality and recharge (Chapter 8).

4.4.7 Preservation credit

Areas of the site that are permanently preserved in natural cover may be modelled at their pre-development CN in the post-development condition, provided that:

- they are protected by a registered covenant or dedication; and
- their runoff is not concentrated onto impervious surfaces.

This lowers both the RRV and the detention required. No other preservation credit applies.

4.5 Release-rate criteria

4.5.1 General

4.5.1.1 Peak discharge from the site shall be computed by a hydrograph method (Chapter 3) for the pre-development and post-development conditions with identical design storms (Clause 2.11.1). The Rational Method shall not be used for any part of storage sizing.

4.5.1.2 Pre-development is greenfield: open land in good condition for the mapped HSG. Existing impervious cover is not counted (Clause 2.11.5, Chapter 3). This applies to redevelopment as well, subject only to the constrained-redevelopment route of Clause 4.5.6.

4.5.1.3 The criteria apply at each point where runoff leaves the site. Where a site drains to more than one outfall, the criteria apply to each outfall for the area draining to it. Runoff shall not be diverted between catchments.

4.5.2 Standard catchments

For each of the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP (2-, 10- and 100-yr) storms, and for every duration in {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}:

> $Q_{post}(T, d) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T, d)$

4.5.3 Flood-sensitive catchments

4.5.3.1 In the catchments listed below, the **mixed-frequency rule** of Clause 2.11.3 applies, for every duration in Clause 2.5.2:

> Q_post(1% AEP, 100-yr) ≤ Q_pre(10% AEP, 10-yr), and Q_post(50% AEP, 2-yr) ≤ Q_pre(50% AEP, 2-yr).

Each cap is the pre-development peak at the duration that maximises it: the 10-yr peak for the 100-yr check, and the 2-yr peak for the 2-yr check. The cap applies to every post-development duration (Clause 2.11.3).

4.5.3.2 The flood-sensitive catchments are:

- (a) **Lucknow behind the Gomti embankments**: the catchments of the drains of Lucknow that outfall to the Gomti through pumping stations, gates or regulators in its embankments, including the Kukrail, which cannot discharge to the river by gravity when it is high;
- (b) **Gorakhpur behind the Rapti and Rohin embankments**: the city of Gorakhpur, including the catchments of the nalas that drain to Ramgarh Tal and of the Goddhoia nala, whose outfalls are held up when the Rapti is high;
- (c) **Prayagraj at the confluence**: the catchments of the drains of Prayagraj that outfall to the Ganga and the Yamuna, including the low-lying wards of George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh;
- (d) **the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida**: the low-lying land of Ghaziabad and Gautam Buddh Nagar beside the Hindon, including Karhera, whose drains outfall to the Hindon; and
- (e) any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4.

The boundaries shall be those mapped in Annex 4A.

4.5.4 Notification of further flood-sensitive catchments

4.5.4.1 The Authority may propose that a catchment be notified as flood-sensitive where one or more of the following is documented:

- (a) buildings or arterial roads flooded in an event of 1% AEP or more frequent, on at least two occasions in the previous 20 years;
- (b) receiving drains or channels with capacity below the 10% AEP flow under existing conditions;
- (c) an outfall that is closed by a gate, regulator or flap gate in a river embankment when the river is high, that depends on pumping, as along the embanked Gomti at Lucknow and the Rapti at Gorakhpur, or that is held up by a river in flood, such as the Ganga at Kanpur, Prayagraj and Varanasi, the Yamuna at Prayagraj and Agra or the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida, for part of the SW monsoon (Chapter 5);
- (d) loss of more than a quarter of the mapped tank and tal storage in the catchment since the earliest available survey; or
- (e) a basin master plan that relies on limiting site discharge.

4.5.4.2 The procedure shall be:

1. The Authority prepares a technical note with the catchment boundary in GIS form and the evidence for 4.5.4.1.
2. The State-level technical committee constituted under Chapter 1 reviews the note.
3. The draft notification and map are published for public comment for at least 60 days.
4. The Government notifies the catchment and the map is added to Annex 4A.
5. The rule applies to applications received **6 months** or more after notification. Applications received earlier are assessed under Clause 4.5.2.

4.5.4.3 A notified catchment may be de-notified only by the same procedure, and only after a basin study shows that the downstream system meets Chapter 5 with all development under Clause 4.5.2.

Commentary. The 0.9 factor is derived from the Denver (MHFD) analysis. In that analysis, ten basins each releasing 100% of the historic 100-yr peak still produced 106% of the historic peak at the outlet; releasing 90% at each gave 97% (UDFCD Full Spectrum Detention Release Rate Memorandum, 2012). The mixed-frequency rule has no direct precedent; the nearest is the Malaysian DID (2008) checklist, which required post-development 2-, 10-, 50- and 100-yr peaks below the pre-development 2-yr peak. The specific "100-yr post ≤ 10-yr pre" form appears in a New Berlin, Wisconsin planning discussion (not an adopted rule). The Lucknow entry follows the way the city drains. Thirty-three of its 34 drains join the Gomti (Jal Kal, LMC, reply in NGT O.A. 403/2024, from a search summary), the river is held between embankments through the city, and outfalls inside them are pumped when it is high; an inspection report found that "at Kukrail pumping station, only half the pumps" were working and that "in Wazirganj, all pumps were non-functional" (search summary of an undated report [TBC]), and LDA has proposed 12 more pumping stations along the embanked river between IIM Road and Kisan Path (as reported). The Gomti's highest flood level at Lucknow is 110.85 m (11 September 1971), against a danger level of 109.5 m (CWC values as compiled by SANDRP, as reported; another report gives a "normal high flood level" of 108.81 m [TBC]). The city's storms are heavy: 20 cm fell at Lucknow in the 24 hours to 16 September 2022 and 14 cm in the 24 hours to 11 September 2023 (IMD), and the UDD guideline of December 2024 cites "Lucknow 2023" as a flash flood. In May 2024 the Supreme Court agreed with the High Court that the Akbar Nagar colony on the Kukrail stood on its floodplain (as reported). The Gorakhpur entry follows August 1998, when the Rapti reached 77.54 m at Birdghat, 2.56 m above its danger level, with 13 breaches of embankments in the district (as reported); it reached 77.27 m in 2020 (as reported). Wards such as Mehewa flood "after relatively small amounts of rain" (ISET and CDKN 2014, from its summary), and six nalas of the city flow into Ramgarh Tal, whose notification of 7 December 2020 gives it a 50 m zone of influence. The Prayagraj entry follows the river levels and August 2026. The Ganga at Phaphamau and the Yamuna at Naini reached 87.98 m and 87.99 m on 8 September 1978, about 3.25 m above their danger levels (as reported). On 17 August 2026 only 73.4 mm fell at Prayagraj in 24 hours, yet George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh were waterlogged, and the Allahabad High Court took suo motu cognizance and ordered the water pumped out within 24 hours (as reported): the failure was of drainage, not of rainfall. The Hindon entry follows July 2023, when the Hindon at Noida reached 197.28 m on 26 July, 1.81 m above its earlier highest level, Karhera in Ghaziabad was evacuated and about 350 cars in a yard on the floodplain at Ecotech-3 were submerged (as reported). The Hindon floodplain had still not been demarcated in May 2026, when I&WRD gave its 100-year flood levels as 205.39 m at km 49 and 205.20 m at km 110 of its reach (I&WRD progress report in NGT O.A. 569/2023). The catchments of the Varuna and the Assi at Varanasi, where the Ganga's highest level of 73.901 m (1978) is 2.64 m above its danger level of 71.262 m (as reported), and the drains of Kanpur to the Ganga are candidates for notification under Clause 4.5.4. The notification triggers in 4.5.4.1 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 6-month lead time follows the update rule of Clause 2.14.2. Clause 4.16 explains why releases below pre-development are needed at all.

4.5.5 Minimum outlet and short-duration 2-yr checks

4.5.5.1 Where the PSD for any AEP and duration is less than the discharge of a **50 mm** orifice (Clause 4.8.2) at the corresponding stage, the 50 mm orifice is deemed to comply for that AEP and duration.

4.5.5.2 Where meeting the 2-yr criterion at a duration of 3 hours or less would require a low-flow orifice so small that the drawdown requirement of Clause 4.7 cannot be met, the designer shall:

- size the low-flow orifice as the smallest opening that meets Clause 4.7; and
- report the resulting 2-yr exceedance for those durations.

The Authority may accept the design if the exceedance is below the discharge of the 50 mm orifice at the 2-yr stage, or if the downstream analysis of Chapter 5 shows no adverse effect.

> Commentary. Under AMC II, a greenfield site produces almost no runoff in a 1- or 2-hour, 2-yr storm, because most of the rain is lost to initial abstraction. A pre-development peak of a few litres per second, compared duration by duration, then forces a very small low-flow orifice. That orifice cannot release the 10-yr volume within 48 hours. Checked as if it were outside a flood-sensitive catchment, the illustrative example of Clause 4.6.7 would need a low-flow orifice of about 75 mm to match the 1-hour, 2-yr pre-development peak. 90% drawdown of the 10-yr volume would then take about 84 hours even with a clean orifice, against the 48-hour limit. The 170 mm orifice that meets drawdown with 50% blockage exceeds the 1-hour, 2-yr pre-development peak by about 11 L/s. Clause 4.5.5.2 resolves that conflict in favour of drawdown, because a basin that is still partly full when the next SW monsoon storm arrives fails in the event that matters more. KC APWA 5600 (2006) used a 75 mm (3 in) minimum orifice with trash racks. This Manual sets a 50 mm minimum (Clause 4.8.2).

4.5.6 Constrained redevelopment sites

4.5.6.1 **Eligibility.** The relief route of this clause is available only for **redevelopment** where all of the following hold:

- (a) the existing site is at least **60% impervious**, as surveyed before demolition;
- (b) the site is **1 ha or less**; and
- (c) the designer shows, in a Constraint Statement submitted with Form 4-1, that the greenfield criteria of Clauses 4.5.2 or 4.5.3 cannot be met on the site. The statement must show that every storage option of Clause 4.10 has been assessed: rooftop and podium storage, tanks under parking or landscape, permeable paving with sub-base storage, and landscape depressions. It must also give the storage each option can provide.

New development on undeveloped land is never eligible.

4.5.6.2 **Minimum on-site performance.** An eligible site shall provide all of the following on site:

- (a) the full retention volume (Clause 4.4) and the WQv treatment (Chapter 8), with no relief;
- (b) post-development peak discharge no more than **50% of the existing-condition peak** for the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP storms, at each duration of Clause 2.5.2. The existing condition is modelled under Clause 3.3.4; and
- (c) no increase in the 1% AEP water level at any building or road downstream (Chapter 5).

4.5.6.3 **Shortfall.** The shortfall is the detention storage required to meet the greenfield criteria (Clause 4.6) minus the storage provided on site under 4.5.6.2. The applicant shall pay for the shortfall as a fee-in-lieu at the unit rate of Clause 4.13.3. The fee shall be:

- (a) paid into the ring-fenced account of the basin in which the site lies;
- (b) spent only on regional detention or on restoring tal or tank flood storage identified in the basin stormwater master plan (Chapter 11); and
- (c) recorded in the public ledger of Clause 4.13.4, which shall show the volume owed and the volume delivered in each basin.

Where no basin master plan has yet been approved, the fee shall be held for up to **5 years**. If no plan is approved in that time, it shall be spent on restoring tank flood storage in the same basin, with I&WRD agreement.

4.5.6.4 **Flood-sensitive catchments.** In the catchments of Clause 4.5.3, the route is available under the same conditions. The Authority may, however, refuse it where the downstream analysis of Chapter 5 shows existing flooding of buildings in the 10% AEP event within the analysis extent.

> Commentary. Greenfield is the target for all redevelopment, because a dense city only reduces its runoff as it rebuilds. On small, fully built plots in areas such as the old city of Lucknow, the old cores of Kanpur and Prayagraj, or the lanes behind the ghats of Varanasi, there is often no space for the full greenfield storage. A rule that cannot be met invites variances and non-compliance, which help no one downstream. This clause follows the approach

> of the UK Non-statutory Technical Standards for Sustainable Drainage (Defra, 2015, S2–S3). For previously developed sites, those standards require peak runoff "as close as reasonably practicable to the greenfield runoff rate" and never above the pre-redevelopment rate. The fixed 50% minimum reduction has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it to give reviewers a clear number in place of a "reasonably practicable" judgement. The fee-in-lieu turns the shortfall into regional storage in the same basin, so the basin still receives greenfield-equivalent control in total. Retention and water quality get no relief, because they are small volumes that almost every site can hold.

4.6 Detention sizing procedure

4.6.1 Method

Detention shall be sized by hydrograph routing through the stage–storage–discharge relationship of the facility, by level-pool (Modified Puls) or an equivalent numerical method (SWMM, HEC-HMS). Fixed-ratio and Rational-based storage formulae shall not be used. The simplified methods of Clause 4.14 (the Tier B tables and the fixed-coefficient route) are the only exceptions.

4.6.2 Steps

1. Delineate the site and sub-areas. Map HSG and confirm by testing (Chapter 3).
2. Extract design rainfall for 50%, 10% and 1% AEP and every duration in Clause 2.5.2, with the climate factor (Chapter 2, Form 2-1).
3. Build design hyetographs: alternating block for ≤ 24 h; the "peak day last" pattern for 48 and 72 h (Clause 2.9).
4. Compute pre-development hydrographs (greenfield CN; AMC III for storms of every duration in July–September in sub-areas UP-C and UP-D and on floodplain or embanked low-lying land, and in July–August in UP-B, and in UP-A and UP-E after a 5-day total of more than 53 mm, AMC II otherwise).
5. Compute the release caps for each AEP and duration under Clause 4.5.2 or 4.5.3.
6. Compute post-development hydrographs with the same storms and AMC, including retention practices (Clause 4.4.6).
7. Choose a trial facility geometry (stage–storage) and a multi-stage outlet (Clause 4.6.5).
8. Route every storm and duration. Use a time step of no more than **5 minutes**, and no more than Tc/3 of the post-development catchment.
9. Check every release against its cap, and check drawdown (Clause 4.7). Adjust the outlet and storage and repeat.
10. Check the tailwater condition of Clause 4.6.6 and the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.
11. Size the emergency spillway and set freeboard (Clause 4.9).
12. Report the governing storm for storage, for each outlet stage, and for the spillway (Clause 4.17).

4.6.3 Storms to be routed

Every facility shall be routed for the full matrix:

Table 4.1 — Design storms to be routed for detention sizing

AEP	Durations (h)	AMC
50% (2-yr)	1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72	II for ≤ 6 h; III for ≥ 12 h
10% (10-yr)	1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72	II for ≤ 6 h; III for ≥ 12 h
1% (100-yr)	1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72	II for ≤ 6 h; III for ≥ 12 h

The 24-, 48- and 72-hour runs are mandatory whatever the critical-duration result (Clause 2.5.2). Where Ia = 0.05S sensitivity is required by Chapter 3, it shall be run for the governing storage case.

4.6.4 Initial conditions

Each run shall start with:

- detention storage empty, down to the invert of the lowest outlet;
- any permanent pool full;
- retention practices empty, except as limited by Clause 4.11; and
- RWH storage full (Clause 4.11).

The 48- and 72-hour storms already contain their antecedent rain, so no further pre-filling is applied.

4.6.5 Multi-stage outlet design

4.6.5.1 The outlet shall have a separate control for each criterion, normally stacked as in Figure 4.2:

- **Stage 1**, at the invert: the low-flow orifice. It releases the WQv over 24–48 h (Chapter 8) and controls the 2-yr release.
- **Stage 2**: an orifice or slot set at or near the maximum 2-yr level. It controls the 10-yr release.
- **Stage 3**: a weir, riser crest or larger orifice set at or near the maximum 10-yr level. It controls the 100-yr release.
- **Emergency spillway**: separate from the primary outlet (Clause 4.9).

Stages may be combined where routing shows that every cap is met.

4.6.5.2 Orifices shall be computed with a discharge coefficient of 0.60 unless a rated device is used. Weirs shall use a coefficient appropriate to their shape. Submerged-outlet and tailwater effects shall be included (Clause 4.6.6).

4.6.5.3 Vortex flow controls and other proprietary devices may be used where the supplier provides a certified head–discharge curve and the minimum clear opening is at least 50 mm.

4.6.6 Tailwater on the outlet

The outlet shall be routed against the tailwater of the receiving system, not free outfall, wherever the receiving water level can rise above the outlet invert. The tailwater shall be:

- for a receiving drain: its water level in the same storm, from the Chapter 5 analysis or, for Tier B, the drain obvert;
- for tidal or backwater-affected outfalls: the levels and joint cases of Clause 2.12 and Chapter 5, including the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10).

Where tailwater governs, a flap gate shall be fitted to the outlet (Clause 5.11). The storage below the tailwater level shall not be counted as available unless the routing includes the gate closure.

4.6.7 Illustrative example

Illustrative — not design values. This example shows the procedure and the sizes it produces. The inputs are invented to be plausible for the Kukrail catchment in north Lucknow. They are not NIH-DHAARA values and must not be used for design.

Inputs:

- Site: 2.0 ha, flood-sensitive catchment (Clause 4.5.3).

- Land cover: pre-development all pervious, CN 70. Post-development as two sub-areas (Clause 3.9.2): 1.57 ha of directly connected impervious surface at CN 98, never converted for AMC, and 0.43 ha of pervious open space at CN 70, on the same soil as pre-development; the area-weighted CN at AMC II is 92. For storms of 12 h and longer the pervious CN only is converted to AMC III: CN_III = 23·CN / (10 + 0.13·CN) = 84.3 (Clause 3.8.4).
- Time of concentration (Tc): 45 min pre-development, 15 min post-development (used for both sub-areas). SCS triangular unit hydrograph; 5-minute time step.
- 24-h depths: 110, 200 and 350 mm for 2-, 10- and 100-yr (the same 10- and 100-yr values as Clause 2.11).
- Shorter durations: P(t) = P24·(t/24)^0.40, an assumed ratio set and not Annex 2B.
- Longer durations: 48-h and 72-h depths taken as 1.25 and 1.40 × P24, laid out per Clause 2.9.2.
- Storage: vertical-walled, 2,500 m² plan area.
- Outlet, sized so that drawdown is met with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked (Clause 4.8.3). Annex 4C shows the trial outlet that failed this check.
    - Stage 1: 170 mm orifice at the invert.
    - Stage 2: 460 mm orifice with its invert 0.53 m above the floor.
    - Stage 3: none needed, because the 100-yr cap is met by Stages 1 and 2.

Results (discharges in L/s; storage in m³):

Table 4.2 — Illustrative example: peak discharges and storage used, by duration (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	2-yr pre	2-yr post, detained	10-yr pre	10-yr post, detained	100-yr post, uncontrolled	100-yr post, detained	100-yr storage used	10-yr drawdown, 50% blocked (h)
1	4	15	51	28	922	42	1,426	31.3
2	14	20	84	34	961	79	1,911	32.1
3	19	22	104	37	981	139	1,999	32.8
6	32	25	150	41	1,010	194	2,154	34.2
12	127	30	302	46	1,074	276	2,512	39.0
24	149	32	327	49	1,081	320	2,766	**45.3**
48	173	34	349	82	1,087	343	**2,913**	44.8
72	180	34	356	84	1,089	343	2,911	44.7

How to read it:

- **100-yr cap.** The cap is the largest pre-development 10-yr peak, 356 L/s (72 h). Every 100-yr detained peak is at or below it; the largest is 343 L/s.
- **2-yr cap.** The site is flood-sensitive, so the 2-yr cap is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak, 180 L/s (72 h; Clause 4.5.3.1). The largest 2-yr detained peak is 34 L/s. At 1, 2 and 3 hours the detained 2-yr peak is above the pre-development peak of the same duration (15 against 4 L/s, 20 against 14 L/s, and 22 against 19 L/s). That comparison is not required here. It would be for a site under Clause 4.5.2, and Clause 4.5.5.2 would then apply.
- **Governing storage.** Storage is governed by the **48- and 72-hour** storms: 2,913 m³, which is 0.146 m³ per m² of site, at a maximum depth of 1.17 m. A design that checked only the critical-duration peak storm (1–3 h here) would have provided about 2,000 m³, roughly two-thirds of what is needed.
- **Drawdown.** With the low-flow orifice 50% blocked (Clause 4.8.3), 90% of the 10-yr storage drains in at most 45.3 h (the 24-hour storm), within the 48 hours of Clause 4.7. A 120 mm orifice would drain it in about 42 h when clean but 54 to 75 h when half blocked, so it fails. Annex 4C shows that trial and the routing step by step.
- **Retention credit.** With an illustrative retention depth of 40 mm, RRV = 552 m³, computed for each sub-area (Clause 3.9.4). Modelled as filling from the start of the storm with no infiltration during it, the retention reduces the 24-hour storage by 138 m³ and the 48- and 72-hour storage by 7 m³ or less. The credit under Clause 4.4.6 is therefore effectively zero for this site.

The order of magnitude, about 0.15 m³ per m² of site, is consistent with the indication in Clause 2.11.

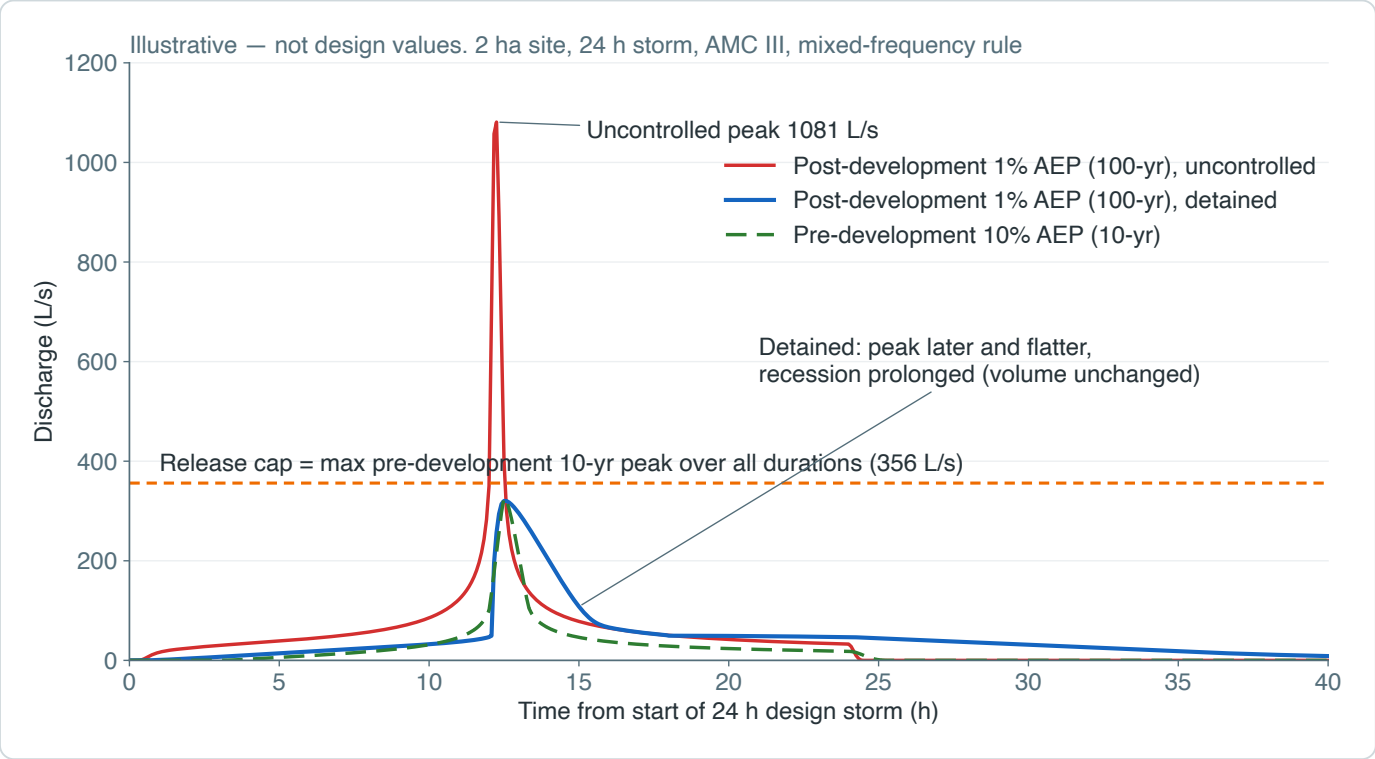


Figure 4.1 — Pre-development 10-yr, post-development 100-yr uncontrolled and detained hydrographs for the 24-hour storm of the illustrative example (Clause 4.6.7). Illustrative — not design values. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the pre/post-development hydrograph concept in MARC/KC APWA Section 5600 and the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016).

> **Commentary.** Figure 4.1 shows what detention does and does not do. It cuts and delays the peak. It does not reduce the volume: the area under the detained curve equals the area under the uncontrolled curve, more than twice the pre-development 10-yr volume. The extra volume leaves the site over many hours after the storm. That prolonged release can coincide with the peak of the larger catchment downstream (Clause 4.16), and it must still drain when the outfall is tide-locked (Chapter 5).

4.7 Drawdown

4.7.1 **Detention.** At least **90%** of the maximum volume stored in the 10% AEP (10-yr) storm of each duration shall be released within **48 hours** of the time of maximum storage, by gravity, with the tailwater of Clause 4.6.6.

4.7.2 **Water quality volume.** The WQv shall be released over not less than 24 hours and not more than 48 hours (Chapter 8).

4.7.3 **Retention.** Retention storage shall be emptied within 72 hours by infiltration or reuse (Clause 4.4.5).

4.7.4 **Tidal outfalls.** Where gravity drawdown is prevented by tide for part of each cycle, the 48-hour limit applies with the tidal tailwater modelled. Where it cannot be met by gravity, pumped drawdown shall be provided under Clause 5.12.

> Commentary. KC APWA 5600 (2006) required dry basins to release at least 80% of storage within 24 hours of the inflow peak and to empty within 72 hours. Singapore PUB requires detention to be restored within 4 hours. The 48-hour, 90% rule is longer than PUB's because Uttar Pradesh storage must hold multi-day volumes. It is still short enough that a basin filled by one SW monsoon depression will have most of its volume back before the next, which in mid-September 2022 in Gorakhpur district (20 cm at Gorakhpur in the 24 hours to 08:30 on 15 September and 22 cm at Chanderdeepghat two days later, IMD) followed within days.

4.8 Outlet structures

4.8.1 **General.** Primary outlets shall be:

- unattended, with no moving parts, valves or pumps, except where Clause 5.12 permits pumped drawdown;
- accessible for inspection and cleaning from the surface without confined-space entry, where practicable; and
- built of durable materials. In coastal areas these shall be corrosion-resistant (Clause 4.12.5).

4.8.2 **Minimum orifice.** No control orifice shall be smaller than **50 mm** in diameter, or 50 mm in least dimension for a slot.

4.8.3 **Trash racks and screens.** Every orifice and weir shall be protected by a trash rack or screen. The rack shall:

- have a clear bar spacing no greater than half the smallest opening it protects, and not less than 25 mm;
- have a clear open area at least **10 times** the area of the opening it protects;
- be inclined, or set as a cage around the riser, so that debris rises with the water and does not pin against the bars;
- be removable or hinged for cleaning; and
- for routing, be assumed **50% blocked** at the low-flow orifice when checking drawdown.

4.8.4 **Anti-vortex devices.** Riser crests and orifices that may run under more than 1.5 times their diameter of head shall have an anti-vortex plate or hood (Figure 4.2).

4.8.5 **Outlet barrels.** Outlet barrels through embankments shall:

- be at least 300 mm in diameter (Chapter 6);
- have watertight joints;
- have a filter diaphragm or seepage collars over the length within the embankment; and
- have an energy-dissipating outfall (Chapter 9).

4.8.6 **Isolation.** Facilities serving more than 1 ha shall have a means of isolating the outlet for maintenance, such as a stop-log slot or penstock. In normal service it shall be left fully open.

> Commentary. The 50 mm minimum is smaller than the 75 mm (3 in) of KC APWA 5600 (2006), so the trash-rack requirements are correspondingly stricter. The ratios in 4.8.3 (bar spacing at half the opening, open area 10 times the opening, 50% blockage for the drawdown check) have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The blockage factor matches the 50% grate clogging factor for sag inlets in Chapter 6. Indian urban drains carry heavy loads of solid waste, so a low-flow orifice without an effective rack will block within one season.

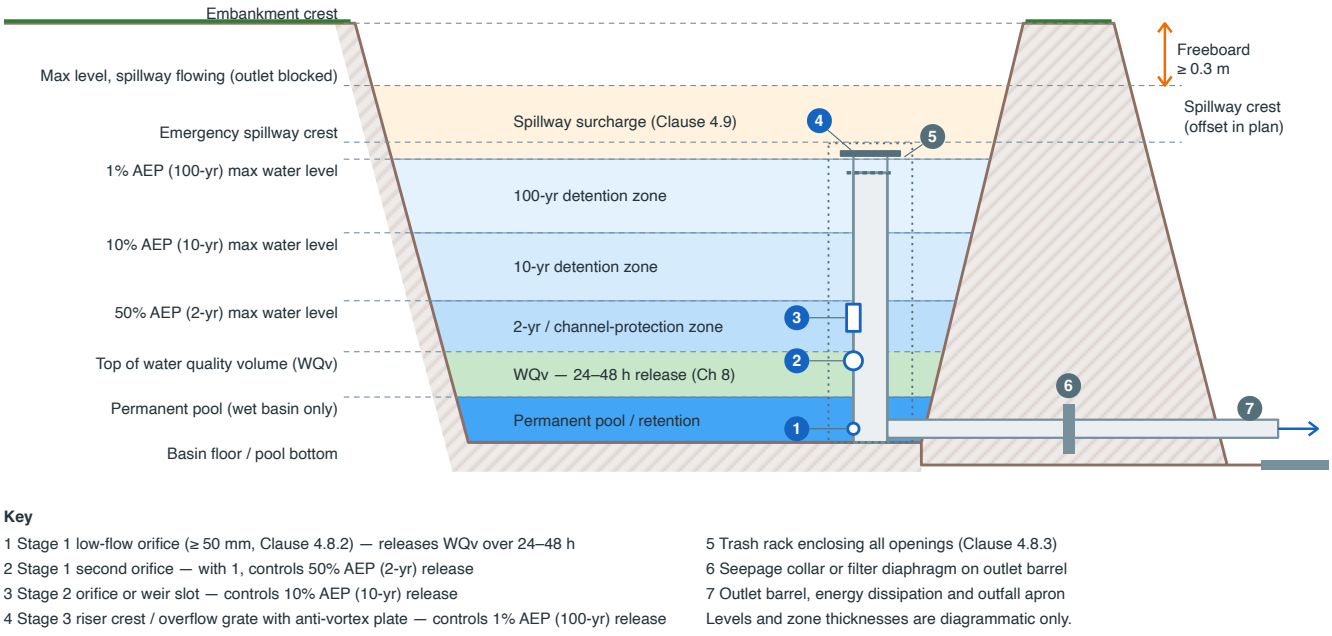


Figure 4.2 — Detention storage stack (permanent pool, WQv, 2-yr, 10-yr and 100-yr zones, spillway surcharge and freeboard) and multi-stage riser outlet. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the multi-stage outlet and storage-zone concepts in MARC/KC APWA Section 5600 (2006, 2025.01) and the Mile High Flood District Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 2 (full-spectrum detention).

4.9 Emergency spillway, freeboard and embankment safety

4.9.1 **Spillway capacity.** Every detention facility formed wholly or partly by an embankment, or whose overflow would reach buildings, shall have an emergency spillway that passes the **1% AEP (100-yr) peak inflow**:

- with the primary outlet assumed fully blocked;
- with the facility full to the spillway crest at the start of the storm; and
- with at least **0.3 m freeboard** from the maximum water level to the embankment crest.

4.9.2 **High-hazard facilities.** A facility is high-hazard if its failure or overflow could:

- endanger life;
- flood a habitable building or critical facility; or
- close an arterial road.

High-hazard facilities shall also be checked for the **0.2% AEP (500-yr)** peak inflow under the conditions of 4.9.1, with the embankment not overtopped.

4.9.3 **Spillway crest.** The spillway crest shall be at or above the 1% AEP maximum water level from routing with the primary outlet working. The recommended clearance is 0.15 m.

4.9.4 **Spillway location.** The spillway shall be:

- on natural ground or a reinforced section, not on fill, unless protected against erosion for the full design flow;
- discharging to the 1% AEP overland flow path of Chapter 6; and

- placed so that its flow does not reach a building.

4.9.5 **Underground and enclosed facilities.** Tanks, vaults and podium storage shall have an overflow route that operates when the outlet is blocked. The route shall carry the 1% AEP inflow to the overland path without surcharging any building, basement or lift pit.

4.9.6 **Embankments.**

- (a) Embankments more than **2 m** high (measured from the downstream toe to the crest) shall be designed by a qualified geotechnical engineer. The design shall include stability, seepage and settlement analysis.
- (b) Side slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V on any face that is mown or accessible to the public. Slopes shall be flatter where Clause 4.15 requires.
- (c) Embankments shall have:
  - a crest width of at least 3 m;
  - compacted, engineered fill with a core or cut-off where required by the seepage analysis; and
  - no trees or large shrubs.
- (d) An embankment structure that falls within the Dam Safety Act, 2021 is subject to that Act in addition to this Manual.

4.9.7 **Excavated facilities.** Facilities wholly below the surrounding ground, with no embankment, need not meet 4.9.6. They shall still meet 4.9.1, with the overflow route treated as the spillway.

> **Commentary.** The spillway criterion (1% inflow, outlet blocked, basin full, 0.3 m freeboard; 0.2% for high hazard) follows the KC APWA 5600 (2006) rule: the spillway passes the 1% storm with 1 ft (0.3 m) freeboard to the top of the dam, assuming zero storage and a clogged primary outlet, with the crest at least 0.5 ft (0.15 m) above the 1% maximum water surface. KC designed dams above 10 ft (3 m) to SCS TR-60 Class C. The 2 m embankment trigger, the 3H:1V slope (KC wet ponds), and the 3 m crest width have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

4.10 Facility types

4.10.1 **General.** Any storage that meets Clauses 4.5 to 4.9 may be used. Surface storage that is visible and can be inspected without confined-space entry is preferred. Storage shall not be placed in a habitable basement or in any space whose flooding would endanger life.

4.10.2 **Underground tanks and vaults.**

- (a) Gravity outlet is required where the receiving drain allows it. Pumped outlets are permitted only under Clause 5.12, with a registered maintenance declaration (Chapter 10).
- (b) Access openings shall be provided over the outlet chamber and over every inlet. In tanks over 500 m², they shall be no more than 30 m apart.
- (c) The floor shall fall at least 1% to a sump at the outlet, with a sediment pocket below the low-flow orifice invert.
- (d) The tank shall be ventilated.
- (e) Inlets shall pass through a silt trap or gross pollutant trap (Chapter 8).
- (f) Flotation and groundwater ingress shall be checked under Clause 4.12.

4.10.3 **Rooftop detention.**

- (a) It is permitted on flat roofs designed for the full ponded load with the outlet blocked. The ponding depth shall not exceed **150 mm** unless a structural engineer certifies a greater depth.
- (b) Each roof outlet shall have a flow-control ring or weir with a certified rating, and every roof area shall have at least one overflow scupper, independent of the controlled outlets, that passes the 1% AEP inflow.

- (c) Roofs used for RWH collection may also provide rooftop detention. The detained volume is released through the control, not into the RWH sump.

4.10.4 **Podium and landscape-deck detention.**

- (a) It is permitted above ground level or above a basement car park, provided the structure is designed for full saturation and ponding, and waterproofed.
- (b) The release, overflow and safety rules for rooftop detention (4.10.3) apply.

4.10.5 **Parking-lot detention.**

- (a) It is permitted only on surface parking. Ponding depth shall not exceed:
  - **200 mm** in the 10% AEP storm and **300 mm** in the 1% AEP storm at any parking bay;
  - zero on accessible routes, ramps and pedestrian crossings; and
  - zero in the 10% AEP storm on fire-tender access routes.
- (b) Signs shall warn that the area floods.
- (c) Ponding shall not reach a building wall unless the wall is waterproofed above the 1% level plus freeboard (Chapter 6).

4.10.6 **Multi-use detention (parks, playfields, open space reservation).**

- (a) Open space land may be used for detention, provided its primary use remains available in at least the 50% AEP storm.
- (b) The storage areas shall be graded to drain fully within the times of Clause 4.7.
- (c) A low-flow channel or underdrain shall carry dry-weather and frequent flows, so that the park is not waterlogged.
- (d) The depth and slope limits of Clause 4.15 apply.
- (e) Play equipment and seating shall be placed above the 10% AEP level.

4.10.7 **Ponds and wet basins.**

- (a) A permanent pool shall be at least 1.2 m deep over most of its area to discourage weed growth and mosquito breeding, with a vegetated safety bench at the edge (Clause 4.15).
- (b) Only storage above the permanent pool counts as detention.

> Commentary.
>
> - The rooftop depth (150 mm) and parking depths (200 and 300 mm) have no direct precedent. This Manual sets them so that a blocked outlet is noticed before it becomes dangerous.
> - The 1.2 m pool depth equals the 4 ft minimum permanent pool of KC APWA 5600 (2006). This Manual adopts it mainly for weed and mosquito control.
> - Pumped detention tanks need maintenance declarations in Singapore (PUB Addendum No. 3, April 2025). This Manual adopts the same approach through Chapter 10.
> - Using open space for multi-use detention fits the Byelaws 2025. All public open spaces and recreational areas "shall make provisions for rainwater harvesting"; concrete construction in parks is limited to 5% of their area, with permeable or semi-permeable blocks (clause 13.1.2); where parking is built under up to 70% of a park or open area, the remaining 30% "shall allow seepage of rainwater for ground water recharge" (clause 3.1.2.3); road margins are kept "as unpaved as possible" (clause 3.1.3.6); and the recharge reservoir of a layout of more than 4 ha, with its recharge pit or shaft in one corner of the park, already puts storage in open space (clause 13.1.2). A detention area graded into the open space below the level of the road keeps it pervious and usable, which is what 4.10.6 requires. Two kinds of land are not open space for this purpose. A tal, pond or other water body on the land is preserved under step 1 of Clause 4.3.1 and modelled as a water surface (Clause 3.3.2(e)) that starts at its full level (Clause 3.12.5), so only its flood storage above that level can count, and only as Chapter 7 allows; a pond recorded in the revenue records may not

be built on at all (UP Revenue Code 2006, sections 61 and 77(1)(i); Byelaws clause 16.3.2(xi)). And the strip within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga in which the Byelaws allow only repair and renovation (clause 2.11), the floodplain zones of the Ganga and the Yamuna notified on the 1-in-100-year flood, the 50 m zone of influence of a notified wetland such as Ramgarh Tal, and land in the hydraulic corridor of a nala, tal or river under Chapter 7 are corridor or flood land already: water reaches them first, so they are not counted as detention for the development beside them (Chapter 7).

4.11 Rainwater harvesting versus detention accounting

4.11.1 **No double counting.** RWH storage (sumps, tanks, recharge pits and wells provided under the RWH mandate) shall **not** be counted as detention.

4.11.2 **RWH sumps assumed full.** For all routing under this chapter, RWH sumps and tanks shall be assumed **full at the start of every storm**, in every season. Their overflow shall be routed to the detention facility, or directly to the outfall if it bypasses detention. In the latter case the bypass flow counts against the PSD.

4.11.3 **Combined tanks.** A single tank may provide both RWH and detention only if:

- (a) the detention zone lies wholly **above** the RWH overflow level;
- (b) the detention zone is drained by its own gravity control orifice set at the RWH overflow level, meeting Clauses 4.7 and 4.8;
- (c) no pump, valve or user action can hold water in the detention zone; and
- (d) the two zones and the orifice level are shown on the drawings and in the maintenance declaration.

Only the volume between the RWH overflow level and the detention overflow level counts as detention.

4.11.4 **Recharge structures.** Recharge pits, trenches, shafts and wells may count as **retention** (not detention) if they meet Clauses 4.4.3 to 4.4.5. In particular, the seasonal high groundwater table shall be at least 1.0 m below their base. In the routing they are treated under Clause 4.4.6 with the groundwater level for the SW monsoon season.

4.11.5 **RWH remains mandatory.** Nothing in this chapter reduces the RWH requirement of clause 13.1.2 of the Byelaws 2025, section 31(2) of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019 and any notification made under it, the building regulations of Noida, GNIDA or YEIDA, or any rainwater harvesting rule of an approving authority.

Commentary. RWH in Uttar Pradesh is required by the Byelaws 2025 and by the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019, and neither sets a volume. Clause 13.1.2 of the Byelaws requires, where there is no collective recharge network, a rooftop rainwater harvesting system "in plots of all uses of 300 square meters and more area (including group housing) except waterlogged areas"; on plots of 100–300 m² in new schemes an individual system is not required if the roof water flows into the scheme's collective recharge network. Layouts of more than 4 ha must build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the scheme area, with a maximum depth of 2 m, into which "only the 'surface-run-off' of that scheme" is led, with a recharge pit or shaft in one corner of the park; and projects that need environmental clearance must provide at least one recharge bore per 5,000 m² of built-up area, limit recharge "to shallow aquifer" and keep at least 20% of the open space pervious. "Ground water recharging system should not be adopted in areas with water logging problem", where roof water may be collected for use instead. Section 31(2) of the Act requires the Municipal Water Management Committee to impose the rooftop rainwater harvesting conditions that the State notifies, makes them "binding on concerned Government agencies sanctioning or approving building plans", and makes a "Combined Recharge System for group housing/colonies" mandatory under the bye-laws; no notification under it was found [TBC]. Section 39(4) penalises an owner who fails to install the system as sanctioned. Two more sections bear on design. Section 28 forbids rain falling on "open land, ground, roads (paved/unpaved), agricultural farms" from being recharged directly into the aquifer "through recharge well, bore well, recharge shaft, injection well etc."; rooftop water is

excepted. Section 33 requires the authorities to "discourage and prevent such activities that are likely to lead to potential water logging". The Chief Minister was reported in October 2025 to have directed that RWH be made mandatory in buildings of more than 100 m² (as reported); no Government Order giving effect to it was found [TBC], and the 300 m² of the Byelaws is the rule this Manual cites. Nothing in any of these rules requires a tank to be empty before a storm. This Manual credits these structures against its own retention requirement (Clause 4.4) as follows:

- An RWH storage tank or sump is RWH storage. It is not detention (Clause 4.11.1), and it is assumed full at the start of every storm (Clause 4.11.2), because after the July rains it is full. A tank may also provide detention only if it is built as a combined tank under Clause 4.11.3, with a detention zone above its RWH overflow level that drains through its own orifice; only that zone counts.
- An RWH tank counts toward the **retention** requirement of Clause 4.4 only to the extent that it is emptied within 72 hours by a continuous non-potable use, such as toilet flushing, demonstrated under Clause 4.4.3; it is then modelled under Clause 4.4.6 like any other retention practice. In the khadar, the north-east terai and the waterlogged canal commands, where the Byelaws themselves rule out recharge, reuse is the practical way to earn retention.
- The recharge pits, trenches, shafts and bores of the Byelaws and of section 31(2) count as retention only where they meet Clause 4.11.4: they are credited only to the extent that they drain within 72 hours at half the rate measured in a site test (Clauses 4.4.3 and 4.4.5), with their base at least 1.0 m above the seasonal high water table, and the credit is found by routing under Clause 4.4.6, not by deducting their volume. Over the deep water table of Lucknow, where the depth to water before the monsoon of 2023 was 7.65–45.6 m below ground and the city is classed over-exploited (CGWB, in NGT O.A. 594/2024), and of the NCR cities and Agra, the separation is easily met, and recharge through the bangar, with pre-treatment, is the best retention these cities have. Under section 28 only roof water may go to a recharge well, bore or shaft. Runoff from roads, paving and open land is retained in surface systems, such as basins, swales and permeable pavement that infiltrate through their own floors, and never passes directly to a recharge well or shaft (Chapter 8). In the khadar, the terai, the waterlogged canal commands and on usar land, a recharge structure gets no retention credit; the Byelaws do not require one in waterlogged areas, and section 33 is the basis on which the Authority may refuse one there.
- The layout recharge reservoir of clause 13.1.2 is a shallow basin fed by surface runoff. It counts as retention only for the volume that infiltrates within 72 hours, routed under Clause 4.4.6, and as detention only for a zone above that volume that drains through an outlet meeting Clauses 4.7 and 4.8.
- The pervious open space of the environmental conditions is pervious area. It enters the post-development run as pervious land under Clause 3.9.2, or as permeable pavement under Clause 4.4.1 where it is built with an infiltration base, and gets no further credit as retention or detention.

In the khadar and the terai, a recharge pit drains slowly or not at all in the SW monsoon. Treating RWH as detention would therefore credit storage that does not exist when it is needed. That is why this Manual assumes RWH sumps are full at the start of every storm. Applying the assumption to every season keeps one simple rule. The combined-tank provision (4.11.3) lets an owner build one structure, as long as the detention part is empty when the storm arrives.

4.12 High-groundwater and sandy coastal sites

4.12.1 **Design groundwater level.** Each site in the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna and their tributaries, the north-east terai, the waterlogged canal commands such as that of the Sharda Sahayak, and the low-lying land behind the embankments of the Gomti at Lucknow and the Rapti at Gorakhpur, or any area where the groundwater table lies within 3 m of the surface at any time of year shall establish a design groundwater level (DGWL) for the facility. The DGWL is the seasonal high level during or after the SW monsoon, from:

- (a) site piezometer readings over at least one full June–November season; or

- (b) where (a) is not available, the higher of the CGWB or UP Ground Water Department record for the nearest observation well, plus **0.5 m**, and the design flood level of any adjacent river, nala or tal.

For the flotation check of 4.12.3 at sites in the khadar floodplains and the north-east terai, where (a) is not available, the DGWL shall be taken as existing ground level.

4.12.2 **Lined storage.** Where the DGWL is less than 1.0 m below the base of a storage facility:

- (a) the facility shall be watertight (lined or of watertight concrete), and no infiltration credit applies (Clause 4.4.4); or
- (b) if unlined, the volume below the DGWL shall not be counted as detention, and groundwater inflow shall be added to the routed inflow.

4.12.3 **Uplift and flotation.** Every below-ground tank, vault, lined pond or chamber shall be checked for flotation:

- with the facility empty;
- with groundwater at the DGWL; and
- for coastal sites, with groundwater also at the major-system tailwater level of Chapter 5, where that is higher.

The factor of safety against uplift, counting only permanent dead loads and ignoring wall friction unless supported by geotechnical design, shall be at least **1.2**. Anchoring by ballast, toe extensions or tension piles may be used.

4.12.4 **Shallow and above-ground storage preferred.** On sites where the DGWL is within 1.5 m of ground, storage should be provided above ground where possible: rooftop, podium, landscape or surface storage. Deep tanks should be avoided.

4.12.5 **Durability.** Concrete and metal parts in contact with saline or brackish groundwater or tidal water shall be designed for the exposure class appropriate to coastal conditions under IS 456:2000. Outlet fittings, trash racks and gates shall be of stainless steel, HDPE, FRP or another corrosion-resistant material.

4.12.6 **Sandy soils with deep groundwater.** Where the DGWL is 1.0 m or more below the base, infiltration retention in sandy soils is encouraged. The design infiltration rate of Clause 4.4.3 applies, and the Chapter 8 requirements on pollution of shallow aquifers shall be met.

> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh is landlocked, so the coastal provisions of this clause, the tidal water levels of 4.12.1 and 4.12.3, do not apply in the State. The exposure provisions of 4.12.5 apply only where groundwater at a site is shown to be saline or brackish; groundwater quality, including salinity, fluoride, nitrate and the arsenic of the east of the State, was not researched for this Manual [TBC]. The State's groundwater runs to both extremes. In Lucknow the depth to water before the monsoon of 2023 was 7.65–45.6 m below ground, after a fall of 1.4–13.1 m since 2014, and the city was classed over-exploited in the assessments of 2017, 2020, 2022 and 2023 (CGWB, in NGT O.A. 594/2024); in the 2024 assessment 59 of the State's 836 assessment units were over-exploited, 46 critical and 165 semi-critical (CGWB, from a search summary [TBC]); and in the NCR the depth before the monsoon was 3.35–14.40 m below ground in Gautam Buddh Nagar in May 2007 and about 22.8 m in Ghaziabad in 2006 (a CGWB district profile and other reports, from search summaries; current values were not obtained [TBC]). There, infiltration is the best retention and should be used, with pre-treatment, subject to the 1.0 m separation of Clause 4.4.3, to section 28 of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019, which allows only roof water to go directly to a recharge well, bore or shaft, and to Chapter 8. The khadar, the north-east terai and the waterlogged canal commands are the opposite case. There the water table is within a metre or two of the surface in the monsoon, and in the terai wells flow under artesian pressure (CGWB state profile, from a search summary [TBC]), so an unlined tank fills with groundwater before the storm, and an empty lined tank can float, especially when a river in flood raises the water table of the floodplain beside it. The design groundwater level of 4.12.1(b) therefore takes the design flood level of the adjacent river, nala or tal where that is higher than the well record. The June–November monitoring season of 4.12.1(a) is set by this Manual to cover the SW monsoon and the post-monsoon high that the CGWB measures in November. The factor of 1.2, the 0.5 m

allowance and the "ground level" default for the khadar floodplains and the north-east terai have no direct precedent; this Manual sets them because no published site-scale seasonal groundwater depths for Uttar Pradesh were found during research.

4.13 Regional detention and fee-in-lieu

4.13.1 **Where permitted.** In a basin covered by a Basin Stormwater Master Plan approved under Chapter 11, a development may meet all or part of its detention requirement through:

- (a) a regional detention facility identified in the plan; or
- (b) a fee-in-lieu paid toward restoration of tal or tank storage identified in the plan.

4.13.2 **Conditions.** Regional detention or fee-in-lieu shall be accepted only where:

- (a) the regional facility or restored tank is operational, or is funded and scheduled to be operational within **3 years**. Until then, interim on-site detention is required.
- (b) the conveyance from the site to the facility carries the 1% AEP post-development flow without increasing water levels at buildings or roads between them (Chapter 5);
- (c) the storage credited at a tank is the **flood storage** only. This is the volume between full tank level (FTL) and the maximum water level the bund and surplus weir can safely hold, plus any volume below FTL that a notified operating rule commits to empty before the SW monsoon. Storage below FTL that is held for irrigation or supply through June to September shall not be credited.
- (d) the tank meets Chapter 7: surveyed FTL, a documented operating rule, and a maintained surplus weir;
- (e) the site still provides **retention** (Clause 4.4) and **WQv** treatment (Chapter 8) on site; and
- (f) in flood-sensitive catchments, the regional facility meets the mixed-frequency rule for its whole contributing area.

4.13.3 **Fee.** The fee-in-lieu shall be computed as:

> Fee = (detention volume required on site under Clause 4.6, m³) × (unit rate, ₹/m³, notified by the Authority)

The unit rate shall include land, construction and 10 years of maintenance. Fees shall be held in a ring-fenced basin account and spent only on the facilities named in the plan.

4.13.4 **Ledger.** The Authority shall keep a public ledger of:

- detention volume credited to each regional facility;
- volume delivered; and
- fees received and spent.

> Commentary. The Malaysian DID (2008) checklist favoured community ponds over on-site detention for sites above 0.1 ha. Studies of on-site detention show that its benefit depends on location and fades with distance downstream (Colorado State University thesis; McEnroe for Kansas City), and that a pond low in the catchment can synchronise with the main-stem peak (*Water* 2016). Regional storage therefore has to be sited by basin modelling, not simply aggregated.
>
> Uttar Pradesh has no tank Act, and no tal in its cities was found to be operated as part of a cascade with a documented rule [TBC]; the old tanks and bandhs of Bundelkhand were not researched for this Manual [TBC]. Its regional storage is of three kinds: the tals, ponds and lakes, the river floodplains, and the drains and

embankments of I&WRD. The tals are protected by revenue law and the courts rather than by a drainage rule. The UP Revenue Code 2006 vests the beds of "rivers, streams, nallas, lakes, ponds and tanks" in the State (section 54), reserves a village tank of 0.5 acre or less "for public use by the inhabitants of the village", the term "tank" including "talab, pond, pokhar and other land covered with water" (section 61), and allows no bhumidhari rights in land "covered by a pond, tank or lake" (section 77(1)(i)). The Supreme Court held that where "a pond exists and the area covered by it varies in rainy season … no part of it could have been allotted", and directed the State to restore the pond (*Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, 2001). The Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017 bar permanent construction within 50 m of the mean high flood level of a notified wetland, and Ramgarh Tal at Gorakhpur, 742.245 ha, was notified on 7 December 2020 with a 50 m zone of influence and its six inflow nalas. The UDD guideline of December 2024 asks the city drainage master plans to integrate existing detention ponds and lakes, to rejuvenate the storage ponds inside the city, and to set their pre- and post-monsoon levels. Three points follow:

- A pond on the record may not be a working tal. About 16,630 Amrit Sarovars, which are village ponds, were reported complete by March 2025 (as reported), but no inventory of the ponds and tals within the Nagar Nigams was found [TBC]. A tal is credited only after a survey shows its bed, bund and outlet, and only for the storage above its full level.
- The river floodplain is not spare capacity for a site. It is the river's own flood land, now notified by coordinates on the 1-in-100-year flood for the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia (G.O. of I&WRD of 29 January 2025) and reported to be notified for the Yamuna in 17 districts (January 2025; as reported). Storage on it is a matter for the basin master plan of Chapter 11, not for a site.
- A drain or embankment of I&WRD is not regional storage. Storm water spilled to a river through its embankment, or to a drain of a canal command, uses capacity that the river or drain needs for its whole basin, and the outfall can be shut by its gate when the river is high; it can be relied on only with the written agreement of I&WRD, for a stated flow and level. No rule dividing the natural drains of I&WRD from the nalas of the Nagar Nigams was found [TBC]; until one is made, this Manual treats rivers, floodplains, embankments, canals and canal-command drains as I&WRD's, and the nalas and road drains within the limits of an urban local body as that body's.

The first point is the basis of condition 4.13.2(c) in Uttar Pradesh. A tal gives flood storage only above its full level, unless a notified operating rule commits it to be lowered before the SW monsoon. The 3-year operational limit and the 10-year maintenance allowance have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

4.14 Simplified methods for small sites

4.14.1 **Applicability.** Tier B local bodies may permit the simplified method for sites of **2 ha or less** outside flood-sensitive catchments. In flood-sensitive catchments, it may be used for sites of **0.5 ha or less**. All other sites shall use Clause 4.6. Until Table 4.3 (Annex 4B) is published, all Tier B sites shall also use Clause 4.6.

4.14.2 **Method.**

1. Read the PSD (L/s/ha) and SSR (m³/ha) for the site's zone, HSG and post-development imperviousness from **Table 4.3** (Annex 4B).
2. Required storage: V = SSR × A − V_credit (Clause 4.4.6.3).
3. Permissible discharges: Q_PSD,T = PSD_T × A for the 2-yr and 100-yr stages.
4. Select the low-flow orifice and upper control from the standard outlet table in Annex 4B (orifice sizes for the PSD at the stated depths), subject to the 50 mm minimum.
5. Provide a spillway or overflow under Clause 4.9, the RWH accounting of Clause 4.11, and the safety provisions of Clause 4.15.
6. Complete Form 4-2 (Tier B site sheet).

Table 4.3 — Tier B permissible site discharge and site storage requirement (template)

Zone (Annex 2A)	HSG	Imperviousness	PSD 2-yr (L/s/ha)	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), standard	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), flood-sensitive	SSR (m³/ha), standard	SSR (m³/ha), flood-sensitive
UP-Z1 West: UP-A West doab and NCR	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand: UP-B Central–east Ganga plain	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand: UP-E Bundelkhand and Vindhyan	C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand: UP-C North-east terai	C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand: UP-D Rohilkhand and western terai	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]

Worked example (illustrative — not design values).

A 0.4 ha residential layout in a Tier B Municipality, in a flood-sensitive catchment, with about 80% directly connected impervious area (area-weighted post-development CN about 92). Suppose Table 4.3 had been computed and gave the per-hectare equivalent of the Clause 4.6.7 example:

- PSD 100-yr = 356 / 2.0 = 178 L/s/ha
- SSR = 2,913 / 2.0 ≈ 1,460 m³/ha
- PSD 2-yr ≈ 17 L/s/ha

Then:

- Storage: V = 1,460 × 0.4 = **584 m³**. C_R = 0, so there is no retention credit.
- 100-yr release: 178 × 0.4 = **71 L/s**.
- 2-yr release: 17 × 0.4 = **7 L/s**. At about 1 m head this needs a low-flow orifice of about 60 mm, above the 50 mm minimum (Clause 4.8.2).
- Layout options:
  - a 400 m² underground tank 1.5 m deep; or
  - 250 m² of podium storage at 0.3 m (75 m³) plus a 350 m² tank 1.5 m deep (525 m³).
  - Rooftop storage at 150 mm over 1,200 m² of roof (180 m³) could replace part of the tank.
- RWH sumps are additional, and are assumed full (Clause 4.11).

> **Commentary.** Australian councils use permissible site discharge and site storage requirement tables in the same way (Sydney Water OSD guide; the Upper Parramatta River Catchment Trust handbook listed SSR of about 455 m³/ha). The illustrative SSR here, about 1,460 m³/ha, is much larger. That is the expected effect of combining a mixed-frequency cap with mandatory 48–72-hour storms at AMC III. MSMA 2 in Malaysia offers a similar simplified OSD method for sites under 5 ha. The MARC policy supplement offers smaller Kansas City municipalities adoptable alternatives within the regional standard; Clause 4.14 follows that model for Tier B.

4.14.3 **Fixed-coefficient route.** As an alternative to Clauses 4.6 and 4.14.2, the designer of any site of **1 ha or less**, under any Approving Authority and in any catchment, may size detention by Clauses 4.14.4 to 4.14.7. The route shall not be used where:

- (a) the site counts tank or waterbody storage in its design (Chapter 7);
- (b) any part of the site lies within a waterbody setback (Chapter 7); or
- (c) the site drains to a tank cascade whose storage is counted in a downstream design.

The route sets the release caps by fixed coefficients and does not need Table 4.3. It may therefore be used before Annex 4B is published. Retention (Clause 4.4), drawdown (Clause 4.7), outlets (Clause 4.8), the spillway (Clause 4.9), the downstream and tailwater checks (Chapter 5) and water quality (Chapter 8) still apply.

4.14.4 **Release caps.** Two caps apply at each point where runoff leaves the site:

$Q_{cap,10} = 2.78 \times C_{10} \times i_{10} \times A$ and $Q_{cap,2} = 2.78 \times C_2 \times i_2 \times A$

where Q_{cap} is in L/s; A is the site area (ha); i_{10} and i_2 are the 10% AEP (10-yr) and 50% AEP (2-yr) rainfall intensities (mm/h) for a **15-minute** duration at the site, from the sources of Chapter 2, with the climate factor of Clause 2.8; and C_{10} and C_2 are the fixed coefficients of Table 4.3A for the site's hydrologic soil group (Clause 3.7). For a site with more than one soil group, the coefficients are area-weighted.

Table 4.3A — Fixed release coefficients (provisional)

Hydrologic soil group	C_{10}	C_2
A (sandy, well drained)	0.05	0.02
B	0.08	0.03
C	0.15	0.08
D (clay, poorly drained)	0.25	0.15

$Q_{cap,10}$ is the maximum release for **every storm up to and including the 1% AEP (100-yr) storm**, in every catchment. $Q_{cap,2}$ is the maximum release for the 50% AEP (2-yr) storm. Where a cap is smaller than the discharge of a 50 mm orifice at the corresponding stage, the 50 mm orifice is deemed to comply (Clause 4.5.5.1).

4.14.5 **Storage.** The detention storage V (m³) is the larger of V_{100} and V_2, each the largest over the durations d of Clause 2.5.2 (1 to 72 hours):

$V_{100} = \max_d [\, 10 \times C_v \times P_{100}(d) \times A - 1.8 \times Q_{cap,10} \times d \,]$

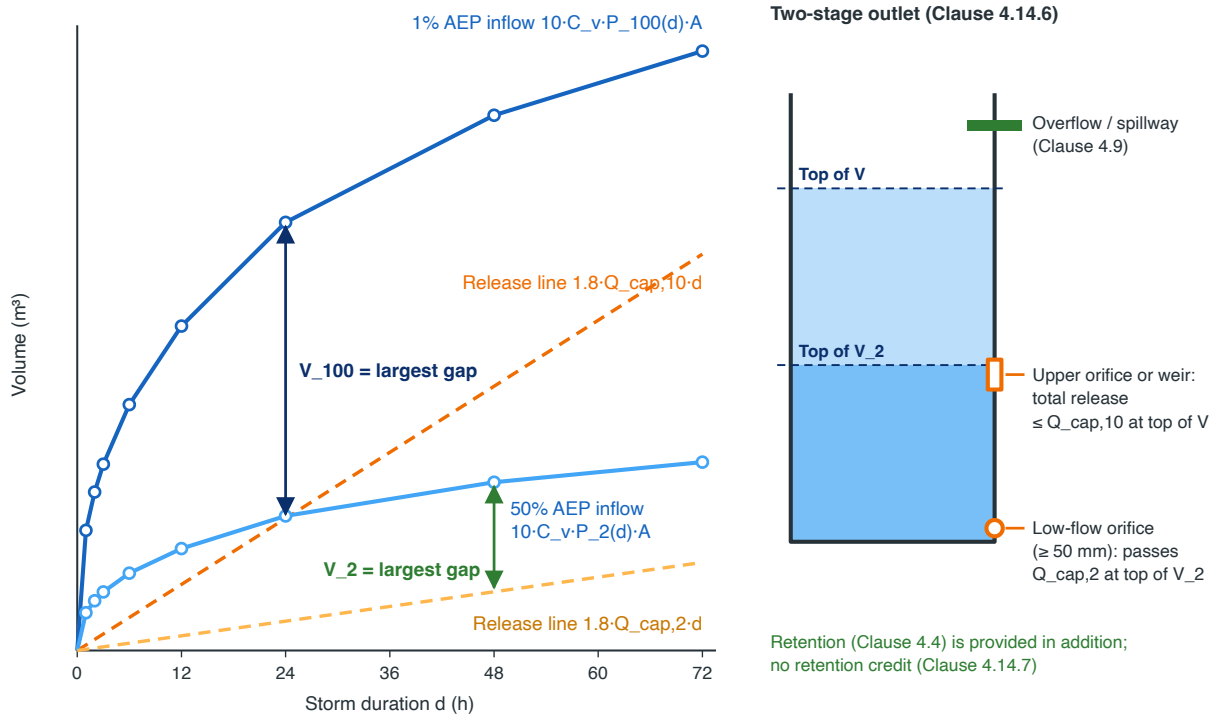
$V_2 = \max_d [\, 10 \times C_v \times P_2(d) \times A - 1.8 \times Q_{cap,2} \times d \,]$

where $P_{100}(d)$ and $P_2(d)$ are the 1% and 50% AEP rainfall depths (mm) for duration d (hours), with the climate factor; and C_v is the post-development volumetric coefficient: the composite C of Table 3.2 (upper half of each range), multiplied by Cf of Table 3.3 for the 1% AEP. For durations of 12 hours or more, C for every pervious surface shall be taken as not less than **0.50**. The factor 1.8 assumes an average release of half the cap over the storm (3.6 × 0.5).

4.14.6 **Outlet.** The outlet shall be a two-stage control: a low-flow orifice that passes $Q_{cap,2}$ when the storage holding V_2 is full, and an upper orifice or weir that limits the total release to $Q_{cap,10}$ at the top of V. The outlet table of Annex 4B may be used once it is published.

4.14.7 **Retention.** The retention volume of Clause 4.4 is provided in addition to V. No retention credit (Clause 4.4.6) is taken under this route.

Fixed-coefficient route for sites of 1 ha or less (Clauses 4.14.3–4.14.7) — schematic, not to scale



Dots: durations of Clause 2.5.2 (1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h). Pervious C ≥ 0.50 for d ≥ 12 h.

$Q_{cap,10} = 2.78 \times C_{10} \times i_{10} \times A$; $Q_{cap,2} = 2.78 \times C_2 \times i_2 \times A$; (L/s; A in ha; i in mm/h)

C_{10}, C_2 from Table 4.3A by soil group; i_{10}, i_2 for a 15-minute duration with the climate factor (Clause 2.8)

$V = \max(V_{100}, V_2)$; $V_T = \max$ over d of $[\ 10 \times C_v \times P_T(d) \times A - 1.8 \times Q_{cap} \times d\ ]$ (m^3) ; 1.8 = 3.6 × 0.5 (average release of half the cap)

Figure 4.3 — Fixed-coefficient route for sites of 1 ha or less (Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7): the release caps Q_cap,10 and Q_cap,2 from Table 4.3A; the storage V as the largest gap, over the durations of Clause 2.5.2, between the cumulative inflow 10·C_v·P(d)·A and the release line 1.8·Q_cap·d, for the 1% and 50% AEP storms; and the two-stage outlet that passes Q_cap,2 at the top of V_2 and Q_cap,10 at the top of V. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the rainfall mass-curve (inflow minus outflow) storage concept and the single-coefficient peak cap of the PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed. (cl. 7.1.5).

Commentary. The fixed-coefficient route follows Singapore, which caps the peak runoff from every development of 0.2 ha or more with one runoff coefficient, C = 0.55, applied to the 10-yr storm (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., cl. 7.1.5, Addendum No. 3, 2025). It is quick to apply and quick to check: the cap needs only the site area, the soil group and two intensities. PUB's 0.55 is not used here, because Singapore's baseline is the existing urban drainage system, while this Manual's baseline is greenfield land (Clause 4.5.1.2). The coefficients of Table 4.3A are set by this Manual from the greenfield curve numbers of Clause 3.3 (CN 39, 61, 74 and 80 for soil groups A to D). They are the ratios of runoff to rainfall that those curve numbers give for 1-hour depths typical of the Ganga plain, rounded down. They are therefore **provisional**. The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall confirm or revise them against NIH-DHAARA values for each zone when it issues Annex 4B.

The route is deliberately **stricter** than the full method, so that simplicity costs the developer storage rather than costing the people downstream. The 100-yr release is held to about the greenfield 10-yr peak everywhere, which is the flood-sensitive rule of Clause 4.5.3; the storage assumes the outlet releases only half the cap on average; pervious ground is assumed wet in long storms; and no retention credit is taken. A designer who wants a smaller tank can use the full method of Clause 4.6. The storage formula is the rainfall-mass (inflow minus outflow)

method. Clause 3.4.2 otherwise forbids rainfall-based peak methods for storage, because they ignore the shape of the hydrograph; this route is a stated exception because its conservative assumptions cover that error for small sites, and the 24- to 72-hour durations are always checked.

4.15 Safety, fencing and multi-use

4.15.1 **Depth limits for publicly accessible storage.** Where the public has access to a storage area (parks, playfields, open space, school grounds):

- (a) maximum depth in the 10% AEP storm: **0.45 m**;
- (b) maximum depth in the 1% AEP storm: **1.2 m**, except in a fenced zone under 4.15.3;
- (c) side slopes: no steeper than **4H:1V**, with at least a quarter of the perimeter at **6H:1V** or flatter for escape; and
- (d) no vertical drop greater than **0.3 m** within the storage area or at its edge.

4.15.2 **Wet basins.** Permanent pools shall have:

- a safety bench at least 3 m wide, no more than 0.3 m below the normal water level; and
- an emergent planting fringe that deters entry.

4.15.3 **Fencing.** A fence at least **1.2 m** high, of a non-climbable design with a lockable gate, is required around any part of a storage that:

- has a vertical wall or headwall drop greater than **0.6 m**;
- exceeds 1.2 m depth in the 1% AEP storm with slopes steeper than 4H:1V; or
- contains an outlet structure with an opening larger than 300 mm that is not grated.

4.15.4 **Outlets.** Every inlet and outlet opening larger than 300 mm accessible to the public shall be fitted with a grate or rack. The grate shall be designed so that a person pinned against it can escape: low approach velocity, inclined, with a large open area.

4.15.5 **Signs and depth markers.** Every publicly accessible storage shall have signs in Hindi and English stating that the area floods during rain, and a depth marker at the deepest point.

4.15.6 **Confined spaces.** Underground tanks shall have lockable covers. They shall be marked as confined spaces, and the maintenance declaration (Chapter 10) shall state the entry procedure.

4.15.7 **Vector control.** Dry storage shall drain completely (Clause 4.7) and have no low points that pond for more than 72 hours. Wet basins shall meet Clause 4.10.7.

> **Commentary.** The numeric limits in Clause 4.15 have no single direct precedent. They are drawn from common international practice, for example KC APWA 5600 (2006), which required at least a quarter of a dry-pond perimeter at 5:1 or flatter, a 20 ft (6 m) clearance from property lines and a 15 ft (4.6 m) maintenance strip. They are made somewhat stricter here because multi-use storage on open space land and in schools will be used by children during the monsoon. Standing water in dry basins is a mosquito-breeding risk, so complete drainage (Clause 4.15.7) is a public-health requirement, not an amenity.

4.16 Basis: why peak matching alone fails

Commentary. This section has no requirements. It records why this chapter requires release **below** pre-development rates, retention, long-duration checks and a downstream analysis, rather than simple peak matching.

1. **Timing.** Detention lowers a site's peak but stretches its hydrograph (Figure 4.1). Downstream, the stretched releases from many sites overlap with each other and with the main-stem peak. In Denver's study, ten basins each releasing 100% of the historic 100-yr peak produced 106% of the historic peak at the outlet. Only releasing 90% at each site brought it to 97% (UDFCD memo, 2012). A Colorado State University thesis found that location-blind on-site detention "can actually increase peak flows above post-development peaks". An optimisation study found that a downstream pond performed worse than upstream ponds because its outflow synchronised with the main stem (Water 2016, 8(7):290).
2. **Volume.** Detention does not remove volume. In the illustrative example, the post-development 100-yr storm produces about three times the runoff volume of the pre-development 10-yr storm (Clause 2.11). Only retention, or storage that empties to somewhere other than the receiving drain, reduces volume.
3. **Scale.** Kansas City modelling (McEnroe, 2005) found that uniform 3 cfs/ac control reduced Q100 by 36% in a 200-ac watershed. With the same control everywhere, Q100 still rose by 40% at 14 sq mi, and the benefit faded beyond about 1–2 sq mi. The KC committee concluded that "'match existing' can harm streams" (MARC Evolution deck). Georgia makes a ten-percent downstream analysis mandatory for the same reason: "Due to peak flow timing and runoff volume effects, some structural practices fail to reduce discharge peaks to pre-development levels downstream" (GSMM 2016).
4. **Design-storm dependence.** An Australian study of 20 real on-site detention systems found that designs using even ten temporal patterns "cannot reliably produce an OSD system design that will always be effective" under real rainfall (Water Science and Engineering, 2019). This is why Clause 4.6.3 routes the full duration matrix rather than one critical storm.
5. **Closed outfalls.** In Uttar Pradesh, the governing failure is volume with no outlet when the river is high. Most large cities drain to a river that is embanked through the city or that stands above their outfalls for days in a flood. At Lucknow 33 of the 34 drains join the Gomti, and outfalls inside its embankments are pumped when the river is high; Gorakhpur lies behind the embankments of the Rapti and the Rohin; and at Prayagraj, Varanasi and Agra the drains discharge to the Ganga or the Yamuna, whose highest recorded levels stand 2.4–3.3 m above their danger levels: 87.98 m against 84.734 m on the Ganga at Phaphamau, 73.901 m against 71.262 m at Varanasi and 154.76 m against 152.4 m on the Yamuna at Agra, all in September 1978 (CWC values as compiled by SANDRP, as reported). No hourly record of how long a river in Uttar Pradesh stays above a city's outfalls was obtained [TBC]. The UDD guideline of December 2024 already asks that pumps be able to operate above the high flood level, and that outfalls whose invert is below the normal level of the receiving water, or between it and the high flood level, be given their own pumping provision; it gives no duration of closure. The Hindon showed in July 2023 how far a river can exceed its record: it reached 197.28 m at Noida on 26 July, 1.81 m above its earlier highest level (as reported). A perfectly orificed basin behind a closed outfall simply fills. No release-rate rule can fix that; it is handled by the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

The response in this Manual is layered:

- release below pre-development (Clause 4.5);
- retain the frequent storms (Clause 4.4);
- route long SW monsoon storms (Clause 4.6.3);
- prefer regional storage in the tal system (Clause 4.13); and
- check downstream and at the outfall (Chapter 5).

Kansas City's own history shows the price. On a test site, peak matching needed 3.0 ac-ft of storage and the 2011 comprehensive criteria needed 4.9 ac-ft (MARC Evolution deck). Over-detention costs more storage. That is the cost of protecting the catchment rather than only the site boundary.

4.17 Submittal requirements

Every site runoff-control submittal shall include a **Site Runoff Control Report** (Form 4-1) containing:

1. the Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) and the hydrology inputs (Chapter 3);
2. the evidence for the order of measures under Clause 4.3.1;
3. the RRV computation, infiltration tests, groundwater evidence and drawdown calculation (Clause 4.4);
4. the retention credit computation (Clause 4.4.6);
5. the release-rate criterion applied, standard or flood-sensitive, with the Annex 4A map extract (Clause 4.5);
6. a results table in the format of Clause 4.6.7 for every AEP and duration, with the governing case highlighted;
7. stage–storage and stage–discharge tables and plots, and inflow/outflow hydrographs for the governing cases;
8. the drawdown calculation (Clause 4.7);
9. outlet details, including orifice sizes and levels, trash racks and anti-vortex devices (Clause 4.8);
10. the spillway or overflow calculation, freeboard and hazard classification, and the geotechnical report where required (Clause 4.9);
11. the RWH and detention accounting, with tank sections showing zone levels (Clause 4.11);
12. the design groundwater level and flotation check (Clause 4.12);
13. the downstream and tailwater report (Chapter 5, Form 5-1); and
14. the safety provisions (Clause 4.15) and the draft maintenance declaration (Chapter 10).

Tier B sites using Clause 4.14.2 shall submit Form 4-2 in place of items 6 and 7. Sites using the fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14.3) shall submit Form 4-3 in place of items 6 and 7.

References (chapter)

- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01 (approved 10 Dec 2025). https://kcmetro.apwa.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/23/2026/01/APWA-Section-5600_Storm-Drainage-Systems-Facilities.pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA 5600 Stormwater Standards Policy Supplement (7 Nov 2025); APWA 5600 Manual factsheet. https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement ; https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-5600-manual-factsheet
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (5601.8, 5608.4). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- MARC / APWA (2012). Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality. https://www.marc.org/sites/default/files/2022-05/Best_Management_Practices_for_Stormwater_Quality.pdf
- MARC. The Evolution of Regional Stormwater Design Standards (presentation; McEnroe 2005 results). https://www.marc2.org/Assets/Environment/WQEC/The_Evolution_of_Regional_Strormwater_Design_Standards.pdf
- Atlanta Regional Commission / Georgia EPD (2016). Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, Volume 1. https://documents.atlantaregional.com/gastormwater/GSMM_2016%20EDITION_FINAL_V1.pdf
- Urban Drainage and Flood Control District (now MHFD) (2012). Full Spectrum Detention Release Rate Memorandum. https://mhfd.specialdistrict.org/files/23cb85ce8/UDFCD_Full_Spectrum_Detention_Release_Rate_Memorandum.pdf
- Mile High Flood District. Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 2 (Storage).
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management. https://www.water.gov.my/jps/resources/auto%20download%20images/5844dfbba8fc1.pdf
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2012). Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA), 2nd ed.
- PUB Singapore (2024). On-site Detention Tank Technical Guide, Rev. 3; Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., Addendum No. 3 (16 Apr 2025). https://www.pub.gov.sg/-/media/PUB/PDF/detentionTank.pdf
- Sydney Water (2020). On-site Stormwater Detention Guide (SW201). https://www.sydneywater.com.au/content/dam/sydneywater/documents/on-site-stormwater-detention-guide.pdf
- Upper Parramatta River Catchment Trust (2005). On-site Stormwater Detention Handbook, 4th ed.
- "On-site stormwater detention for Australian development projects: does it meet frequent flow management objectives?" *Water Science and Engineering* (2019). https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1674237019300213
- Optimisation of urban detention (2016). *Water* 8(7):290. https://doi.org/10.3390/w8070290
- Colorado State University. Spatially Dependent On-Site Detention Policies (thesis). https://mountainscholar.org/bitstreams/f4dbec4e-a44f-4933-8d54-a097e741f44a/download
- Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006, sections 54, 61 and 77, text updated to 5 March 2021 (LBSNAA copy). https://www.lbsnaa.gov.in/storage/uploads/pdf_data/1742473203_Uttar%20Pradesh%20Revenue%20Code%202006%20updated%20till%2005.03.2021.pdf
- Supreme Court of India. *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, judgment of 25 July 2001, AIR 2001 SC 3215 (UNEP LEAP copy). https://leap.unep.org/sites/default/files/court-case/COU-156224.pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh (2020). Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018 of 7 December 2020, Ramgarh Taal Wetland, district Gorakhpur, and rule 4(2)(vi) of the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017, as annexed to and quoted in the response of CPCB in NGT O.A. 1057/2024. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf

- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ)(NGT)/2023 of 29 January 2025 (Ganga floodplain zone, Unnao to Ballia), as Annexure-1 to the Irrigation Department's report of 2 April 2025 in NGT O.A. 341/2022. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPORT%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20UP%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20341%20of%202022%20%20Deepak%20Awasthi%20Vs.%20State%20of%20U.P..pdf
- Report on the Yamuna floodplain notification of January 2025 (ThePrint, 4 February 2025). https://theprint.in/india/over-5000-buildings-in-agra-face-risk-of-demolition-after-up-govt-demarcates-yamuna-floodplain/2478998
- Reports on Amrit Sarovars in Uttar Pradesh (Drishti IAS; Free Press Journal). https://www.drishtiias.com/state-pcs-current-affairs/up-ranks-1st-in-amrit-sarovar-construction/print_manually ; https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/yogi-government-completes-nearly-20000-amrit-sarovars-across-uttar-pradesh
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A (§8.5).
- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025, approving the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and the Model Zoning Regulations 2025 under sections 57 and 13(2) of the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973; English text (Annexure-2), Version PRF3 of 3 July 2025: definition 28 and clauses 2.3.2, 2.11, 3.1.2.3, 3.1.3.5, 3.1.3.6, 3.3.1.21, 3.3.3.2, 9.3, 13.1.2, 13.3 and 16.3.2, and the environmental conditions for building projects. https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). Notification No. 57/2025/I/1150135/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of 21 November 2025, amending clauses 1.6, 2.1.2 and 2.1.3 of the Byelaws 2025 (cited from a summary by TeamLease RegTech; not read). https://teamleaseregtech.com/updates/article/49758/u-p-govt-issued-amendments-in-the-uttar-pradesh-development-authority-building-construction-and-development-byelaws-2025/
- Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019), sections 28, 31, 33 and 39 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines (in Hindi, with an English checklist for detailed project reports), file of 24 December 2024, §§1.1, 2.1, 2.2, 3.2 and 3.3 and Annexure 2. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Report on the Chief Minister's direction on rainwater harvesting in buildings of more than 100 m² (Amar Ujala, 4 October 2025). https://www.amarujala.com/lucknow/up-cm-yogi-orders-rainwater-harvesting-to-be-mandatory-in-buildings-larger-than-100-square-meters-potters-ex-2025-10-04
- Centre for Science and Environment (2017). Mainstreaming Rainwater Harvesting in Noida (Noida Building Regulation and Directions 2006). https://www.cseindia.org/content/downloadreports/7991
- Central Ground Water Board, Northern Region. Documents filed on behalf of the CGWA in NGT O.A. 594/2024 (Lucknow city). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Documents%20on%20behalf%20of%20CGWA%20in%20OA%20ON%20594%20of%202024%20(NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20LUCKNOW%20ME%20PAANEE%20CHALA%20RASATAL%2010%20SAAL%20ME%20160%20FOOT%20NEECHE%20CHALA%20GAYA%20JALSTAR%20MEL%20RAHE%20KHATARNAK%20SANKET_0.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. Dynamic ground water resources of Uttar Pradesh, 2024 assessment (cited from a search summary; the download failed). https://www.cgwb.gov.in/cgwbpnm/public/uploads/documents/17422948445512851 54file.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. Ground water information: Uttar Pradesh (state profile; cited from a search summary). https://cgwb.gov.in/old_website/State-Profiles/Uttar%20pradesh.pdf
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (warning, danger and highest flood levels compiled from CWC). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/

- SANDRP (2023). Rivers breaching highest flood levels in July 2023 (the Hindon at Noida). https://sandrp.in/2023/08/03/rivers-breaching-highest-flood-levels-in-july-2023/
- Irrigation Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2026). Progress report of 23 May 2026 in NGT O.A. 569/2023, *Alok Kumar v. Union of India* (Hindon floodplain; 100-year flood levels). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Progress%20Report%20By%20Irrigation%20Department,%20State%20of%20Uttar%20Pradesh%20DATED%2023-05-2026%20in%20OA%20569%20of%202023%20Alok%20Kumar%20Vs%20UOI%20and%20Ors.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 and 11 September 2023 (24-hour rainfall in Uttar Pradesh). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Press release No. 1824 of September 2022 (24-hour rainfall to 17 September 2022, including Chanderdeepghat, Gorakhpur) (not re-read for this Manual [TBC]).
- Reports on the pumping stations and embankments of the Gomti at Lucknow (Down To Earth). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/urbanisation/lucknows-floods-are-man-made-encroached-river-space-and-blocked-drains-turn-even-moderate-rain-into-flooding
- Reports on the Supreme Court's decision on the Akbar Nagar demolitions, May 2024 (LiveLaw). https://www.livelaw.in/top-stories/supreme-court-lucknow-akbarnagar-demolitions-eviction-upheld-slum-dwellers-alternative-accommodation-257604
- Reports on the Rapti flood of 1998 at Gorakhpur (Down To Earth, "Waters of woe"). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/news/waters-of-woe-22412
- ISET-International and CDKN (2014). Gorakhpur: Extreme Rainfall, Climate Change and Flooding, technical report (landing-page summary). https://cdkn.org/resource/gorakhpur-extreme-rainfall-technical-report
- Reports on the waterlogging of Prayagraj of 17–18 August 2026 and the Allahabad High Court's order of 20 August 2026 (LiveLaw). https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/prayagraj-waterlogging-allahabad-hc-pumps-24-hours-municipal-corporation-546731
- Reports on the Hindon flood of July 2023 (The Tribune). https://www.tribuneindia.com/news/delhi/about-350-cars-at-ola-dump-yard-submerged-by-overflowing-hindon-529226
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 456:2000 Plain and Reinforced Concrete — Code of Practice.
- Government of India. Dam Safety Act, 2021.
- Chow, V.T., Maidment, D.R. and Mays, L.W. (1988). *Applied Hydrology*. McGraw-Hill (AMC conversion).

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
4A	Flood-sensitive catchment boundaries (GIS); shallow-groundwater zone map
4B	Tier B tables: PSD and SSR (Table 4.3), retention credit factor C_R, standard outlet sizes; confirmed fixed release coefficients (Table 4.3A)
4C	Worked example (Tier A) with full routing tables
Form 4-1	Site Runoff Control Report
Form 4-2	Tier B Site Sheet
Form 4-3	Fixed-coefficient Route Sheet (Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7)

CHAPTER 5

Downstream and Tailwater Analysis

5.1 Purpose and scope

5.1.1 This chapter sets two checks that every regulated development and every public drainage project must pass.

- **The downstream analysis** (Clauses 5.3 to 5.5) confirms that the project does not make flooding worse below its outfall.
- **The tailwater analysis** (Clauses 5.6 to 5.13) sets the water level the system discharges into, including tide, storm surge, sea-level rise, river backwater and sand-bar closure. It also requires the system to cope when its outfall is closed.

5.1.2 This chapter applies to:

- (a) every site to which Chapter 4 applies;
- (b) every minor- and major-system drainage project under Chapter 6; and
- (c) every regional detention or tank restoration project under Clause 4.13 and Chapter 7.

5.1.3 Rainfall and joint-occurrence inputs come from Chapter 2, in particular Clauses 2.5.3 and 2.12. Hydrologic methods come from Chapter 3. Site release criteria come from Chapter 4. Hydraulic design of gates, culverts and pumps follows Chapter 9.

5.1.4 **No tidal outfalls in Uttar Pradesh.** Uttar Pradesh is landlocked: it has no coast, no tide and no Coastal Regulation Zone. No outfall in the State discharges to the sea, a tidal creek or an estuary, so the provisions of this chapter that depend on tide, storm surge, sea-level rise or a river mouth do not apply in Uttar Pradesh: Clause 5.7 and Annex 5A, cases J1 to J3 of Table 5.2, the tidal lock windows of Clause 5.10.3, the seawater requirement of Clause 5.11.3(a) (gates and seats shall still be of corrosion-resistant materials), and Clause 5.13. They are kept so that the clause numbers of this Manual match its other State editions. In Uttar Pradesh the receiving water is a river, reached directly, through a gate in an embankment or through a pumping station; a drain or canal of I&WRD; a nala of a Nagar Nigam, a development authority or another drain-owning body; a pumped sump behind a river embankment; or a tal or other water body, and:

- (a) its tailwater is set by Clauses 5.6 and 5.8, including Clause 5.8.5;
- (b) where Clauses 5.10 to 5.12, Form 5-1 or Chapter 6 refer to the J1 tailwater or the J1 tidal curve, the minor-system tailwater of Clause 5.6.2 or 5.8.5 applies, as a time series where the receiving level varies; where they refer to the J2 tailwater or to HAT + surge + SLA, the major-system tailwater applies: the design-AEP river level of Clause 5.8.4(b), or the major-system tailwater of Clause 5.8.5, whichever is higher at the outfall; and
- (c) the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 applies where an outfall is closed by a river or by a receiving drain, with the river lock of Clause 5.8.5(a) in place of the tidal lock windows.

> Commentary. The drains of Uttar Pradesh's large cities fail in places that site design does not see, because almost every one of those cities stands on a river that decides when its drains can discharge. Lucknow lies on both banks of the Gomti, which runs between embankments through the city: 33 of the city's 34 drains outfall to the river, and the outfalls inside the embankments are pumped when it is high (as reported). Kanpur, Prayagraj and Varanasi stand on the Ganga, and Prayagraj also on the Yamuna at the Sangam; Agra and Mathura stand on

the Yamuna, Gorakhpur behind the embankments of the Rapti and the Rohin, and Noida and Ghaziabad on the Hindon and the Yamuna. The reported highest flood levels at the CWC gauges of these cities stand 1–3.3 m above their danger levels, and in July 2023 the Hindon at Noida rose 1.81 m above its old highest flood level (as reported), so an outfall set below the highest flood level is closed by the river for days, not hours. The outfalls also belong to one body while the drains above them belong to others: the embankments are I&WRD's, while the nalas and the pumps behind them are those of the Nagar Nigam, a development authority or UP Jal Nigam. The UDD guideline (Dec 2024) states that "currently there is no integrated plan for urban drainage" in the State's urban areas, and its DPR checklist requires pumps to remain operable above the high flood level and a separate pumping arrangement wherever the outfall invert lies below the normal river level, or between the normal river level and the high flood level (UDD, 2024). No document found during research sets a design river level for any outfall. A detention basin that meets every release rate in Chapter 4 still fails if the drain below it is already full, or if the river it drains to stands above its outfall for days. This chapter makes both failure modes part of the design. Uttar Pradesh has no tidal outfall, so Clause 5.1.4 says which of the chapter's coastal provisions fall away and what takes their place.

5.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Analysis point	A location on the downstream system where pre- and post-project conditions are compared (Clause 5.3.3).
Contributing catchment	The whole area draining to an analysis point, on and off site.
Major drain	A channel listed as a major drain in the basin plan or Annex 5B, or any river, I&WRD canal, the Kukrail and the other nalas that outfall to the Gomti in Lucknow, including the Qila Mohammadi nala, the nalas that outfall to the Ganga at Kanpur, including the Sisamau nala, the nalas that outfall to the Ganga and the Yamuna at Prayagraj, the Varuna and the Assi at Varanasi, the Taj East Drain and the other nalas that outfall to the Yamuna at Agra and Mathura, the Hindon and the drains that outfall to it or to the Yamuna in Ghaziabad and Noida, the nalas that outfall to the Rapti and the Rohin at Gorakhpur and the six inflow nalas of Ramgarh Tal, any drain of I&WRD, any drain maintained by a Nagar Nigam, a development authority, an industrial development authority or UP Jal Nigam with an internal width of 1.0 m or more, any irrigation canal that receives storm water, or a tidal creek.
Chart datum (CD)	The datum of the published tide tables and nautical charts, to which tidal heights are referred.
Mean sea level (MSL)	Average sea level over a long period at a tide gauge.
MHWS	Mean high water springs: the average of high waters at spring tides.
HAT	Highest astronomical tide: the highest level predicted under average meteorological conditions over a full tidal cycle (18.6 years).
Storm surge	The rise in sea level above the astronomical tide caused by wind and low pressure, mainly during cyclones.
Still-water level	Astronomical tide plus surge, excluding individual waves.
Sea-level allowance (SLA)	The allowance added to present-day tidal levels for sea-level rise over the design life (Clause 5.7.4).
Tailwater	The water level at the downstream end of a drain, outlet or storage.
Tide-lock	The condition in which the tailwater is at or above the upstream water level, so a gravity outfall cannot discharge.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Lock window	A period during which the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 sets gravity discharge to zero.
Sand bar	A bar of beach sand that partly or fully closes a river mouth or creek inlet.
Project datum	The levelling datum used on the project drawings. It must be tied to a Survey of India benchmark (Clause 5.7.2).

5.3 Extent of the downstream analysis

5.3.1 The downstream analysis shall start at each site or project outfall. It shall continue downstream to the **first** of:

- (a) the point at which the project area is **10% or less** of the contributing catchment;
- (b) the next **tank, tal** or other waterbody with a surplus weir or controlled outlet; or
- (c) the next **major drain**, or the sea.

The end point itself shall be analysed (Figure 5.1).

5.3.2 Where the analysis ends at a tank or tal under 5.3.1(b), it shall report:

- the change in the tank's maximum water level; and
- the change in surplus-weir discharge, for the AEPs and durations of Clause 5.4.3.

If the maximum water level rises, the analysis shall continue below the surplus weir to the next end point.

5.3.3 Analysis points shall be set at least at:

- (a) each site outfall;
- (b) each confluence with a drain or channel whose contributing catchment is at least half that of the receiving drain at that point;
- (c) each culvert, bridge or road crossing;
- (d) each location recorded as flood-prone by the local body, LMC, UPSDMA or I&WRD; and
- (e) each building or road segment lying within the 1% AEP flood extent along the route. Representative points may be used where buildings are closely spaced.

5.3.4 **Small sites.** For sites of less than **0.5 ha**, the Authority may accept a simplified downstream statement (Form 5-2) in place of the full analysis, where all of the following hold:

- the receiving public drain has documented capacity for its minor-system design flow (Chapter 6);
- no flood-prone location is recorded within 500 m downstream; and
- the site does not drain to a tidal or backwater-affected outfall.

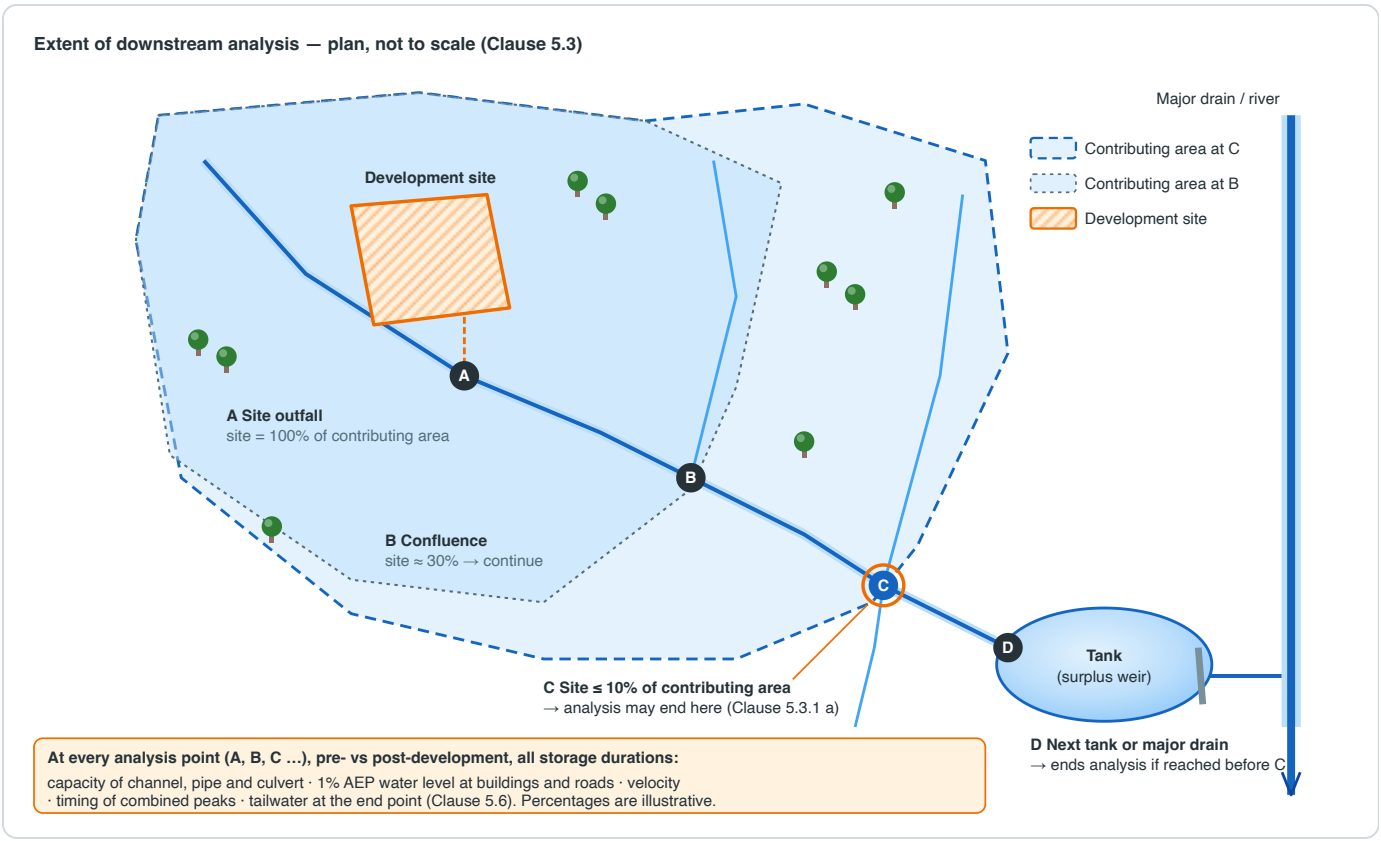


Figure 5.1 — Extent of downstream analysis: analysis points A–D, the contributing area at each point, the 10% point, and the next tal or major drain as an alternative end point. Schematic; percentages are illustrative. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the ten-percent rule in the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016, Vol. 2 §3.1.9) and KC APWA Section 5600 (2006, 5601.5).

> **Commentary.** The 10% rule has established precedent. KC APWA 5600 (2006) required the downstream system to be analysed "to the point the development's land mass is less than 10% of the total watershed". The Georgia manual makes the ten-percent analysis a mandatory standard (GSMM 2016, Standard #8). The tank or major-drain end point has no direct precedent; this Manual adds it for Uttar Pradesh. In Lucknow, where 33 of the city's 34 drains end in the Gomti and the Kukrail alone gathers about 75 drains on its way to the river (as reported), and in Gorakhpur, where six named nalas and the other streams of the city end in Ramgarh Tal (Ramgarh Taal wetland notification, 2020), the 10% point can lie many kilometres downstream, across several tanks. A tank with a working surplus weir changes the hydrograph completely, so the analysis is better ended there and the tank level reported. Clause 5.3.2 prevents that end point from hiding a rise in the tank level. The small-site statement (5.3.4) and its 500 m distance have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

5.4 What the analysis must check

5.4.1 **Scenarios.** Each analysis shall compare:

- (a) **Existing**: the present downstream system and present land use of the whole contributing catchment, with the project site at its pre-project state; and
- (b) **With project**: the same, with the project and all its controls (Chapter 4) in place.

Where the Authority's basin plan defines future land use, the Authority may also require:

- (c) **Future**: the catchment fully developed under the plan, all to Chapter 4 standards, with and without the project.

5.4.2 **Quantities to be checked at every analysis point:**

- (a) **Capacity**: peak flow against the capacity of every channel, pipe, culvert and crossing, for the minor-system AEP of that element (Chapter 6) and for 1% AEP;
- (b) **Flood levels**: 1% AEP maximum water level at buildings (at the lowest opening) and on roads (at the crown and at the deepest point);
- (c) **Velocities**: peak velocity for 50%, 10% and 1% AEP;
- (d) **Timing of combined peaks**: the hydrograph at each confluence, showing the time to peak of the project outflow and of the receiving drain; and
- (e) **Duration of inundation**: on roads and at buildings, the time above the Chapter 6 depth limits.

5.4.3 **Storms.** The analysis shall use:

- 50%, 10% and 1% AEP;
- the duration set of Clause 2.5.2, at least the durations that give the highest level at each analysis point (these will usually be longer than at the site); and
- the 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms in every case.

The AMC rule of Clause 2.11.4 applies. Areal reduction follows Clause 2.7, applied to the contributing catchment at each analysis point and never to the site storage.

5.4.4 **Method.** The analysis shall:

- use a hydrograph method that combines hydrographs at confluences (SWMM, HEC-HMS, or an equivalent);
- include a hydraulic model with backwater (SWMM dynamic wave, HEC-RAS, or equivalent) wherever tailwater or backwater affects any analysis point; and
- not use the Rational Method at any analysis point, because it cannot represent timing.

Off-site areas shall be modelled at their present land use. Upstream detention shall be included only where it is built, maintained and documented.

5.4.5 **Tailwater.** The downstream end of the model shall use the tailwater of Clauses 5.6 to 5.9 and the sand-bar condition of Clause 5.13 where applicable.

> **Commentary.** Clause 5.4.2(d) exists because detention changes when the site's water arrives, not only how much arrives (Clause 4.16). A Colorado State University thesis and a *Water* (2016) optimisation study both found that delayed site releases can coincide with the main-stem peak and raise it. Georgia's manual states the result directly: some structural practices "fail to reduce discharge peaks to pre-development levels downstream" because of "peak flow timing and runoff volume effects" (GSMM 2016). The duration-of-inundation check (5.4.2(e)) matters in the river-locked cities of Uttar Pradesh, whose outfalls lie behind embankments or below the highest flood levels of the rivers they drain to, and where the rivers stand high for days: the reported highest flood levels are 1–3.3 m above the danger levels (the Gomti at Lucknow 110.85 m against 109.5 m; the Ganga at Phaphamau, Prayagraj, 87.98 m against 84.734 m), roads and railways around Gorakhpur were cut for more than 72 hours in the Rapti flood of August 1998, and the Hindon at Noida rose 1.81 m above its old highest flood level on 26 July 2023 (all as reported). Detention that prolongs releases can lengthen that time even when it lowers the peak.

5.5 Acceptance criteria

5.5.1 The project is acceptable if, at every analysis point and for every AEP and duration of Clause 5.4.3, comparing "with project" to "existing":

- (a) the 1% AEP maximum water level does not rise by more than **10 mm** at any habitable building, at any building's lowest opening, or on any road carriageway;
- (b) no building that is not flooded in the existing case is flooded with the project, and no building or road that meets the Chapter 6 freeboard or depth limits in the existing case fails them;
- (c) peak flow does not exceed the existing peak at the minor-system AEP of each element, or at 1% AEP;
- (d) peak velocity in lined channels stays within the permissible velocity for the lining (Chapter 6: 3.0 m/s maximum); and
- (e) in unlined or natural channels, peak velocity for 50% and 10% AEP does not increase by more than **10%**, unless protection is provided under Chapter 9.

5.5.2 The duration of inundation under 5.4.2(e) shall be reported. The Authority may refuse a project that increases the duration of road closure on an arterial or emergency route.

5.5.3 **Where the criteria are not met**, the project shall do one or more of the following:

- (a) reduce release rates or increase storage (Chapter 4);
- (b) build downstream improvements, with the consent of the owner of the downstream system. These shall not transfer the problem further downstream, and shall be re-analysed under this chapter;
- (c) contribute to a regional facility under Clause 4.13; or
- (d) under Clause 5.5.4, change the release strategy.

5.5.4 **Timing exception.** Where the analysis shows that detention raises downstream levels because of timing, the Authority may vary the site release-rate criteria of Clause 4.5. This applies only where the site discharges within the lower tenth of the contributing catchment, directly to a major drain, tidal creek or the sea, and only on the following conditions:

- (a) the varied strategy meets 5.5.1;
- (b) the retention requirement (Clause 4.4) and WQv treatment (Chapter 8) are met in full; and
- (c) the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10) is met.

> **Commentary.** The 10 mm tolerance (5.5.1(a)) has no direct precedent. It is meant to be at or below the numerical precision of a typical one-dimensional model, so that "no increase" can be tested without arguing over rounding. The 10% velocity tolerance is likewise set by this Manual. The timing exception in 5.5.4 follows the Georgia manual, where the downstream analysis can show "that peak controls are not needed" and allow them to be waived (GSMM 2016, Standard #8). It is limited here to sites low in the catchment, which is where synchronisation with the main-stem peak is most likely (*Water* 2016, 8(7):290). It is not available above that, because the evidence on scale (Clause 4.16) shows that early release from many upstream sites raises peaks.

5.6 Tailwater: general and non-tidal outfalls

5.6.1 Every drain, outlet and storage shall be designed against a stated tailwater. A free outfall shall be assumed only where the outlet invert is above the maximum receiving water level for the case being checked.

5.6.2 **Minor-system tailwater, non-tidal.** The tailwater is the receiving system's water level at the time of the minor-system peak, from the downstream model. Where no model exists, use:

- for a receiving pipe, its obvert; or
- for a receiving open drain, its full-bank level less freeboard (Chapter 6).

5.6.3 **Major-system tailwater, non-tidal.** The tailwater is the receiving system's 1% AEP water level, unless Clause 5.8 allows a coincident lower level.

5.6.4 **Tidal and backwater outfalls.** Clauses 5.7 to 5.13 apply in addition.

5.6.5 **Storage elements.** Detention, tanks and pumped sumps shall be routed with a time-varying tailwater (Clause 4.6.6), not a constant level, wherever the tailwater varies with tide or with the receiving system's hydrograph.

5.7 Tidal tailwater: datums, surge and sea-level allowance

5.7.1 **Design tailwater levels.** For outfalls to the sea, tidal creeks, estuaries, backwaters and tidal reaches of rivers and canals:

Table 5.1 — Design tailwater levels for tidal outfalls

Design case	Tailwater
Minor-system design (Chapter 6)	**MHWS + SLA**
Major-system design and storage design	**HAT + surge + SLA**, with the surge term defined in Clause 5.7.3
Joint case (Clause 2.12(b))	1% AEP still-water level + SLA

The SLA is **+0.3 m minimum** (Clause 5.7.4). The cases to be run are listed in Clause 5.9.

5.7.2 **Sources and datums.**

- (a) **Tidal levels.** MHWS, HAT and MSL shall be taken from the current edition of the Indian tide tables published by the National Hydrographic Office (NHO) or by the Survey of India, for the nearest standard or secondary port, or from the port authority's published tidal levels. The edition and port shall be stated.
- (b) **Datum conversion.** Tide-table heights are referred to chart datum. They shall be converted to the project datum through a documented connection between chart datum, the tide gauge zero and a Survey of India benchmark. The offset and its source shall be stated on Form 5-1.
- (c) **Estuaries, creeks and canals.** For outfalls inside estuaries, creeks, backwaters or tidal canals (for example the estuaries of the coastal States; there is none in Uttar Pradesh, Clause 5.1.4), tidal levels may differ from the open coast. Open-coast levels shall be used unless measured levels over at least one spring–neap cycle, or a calibrated hydrodynamic model, justify a different value. No reduction below open-coast levels shall be taken without such evidence.
- (d) **Interim.** Until Annex 5A is published, the designer shall obtain the values directly from the sources in (a) and record them.

5.7.3 **Storm surge.**

- (a) **Major-system and storage design.** The surge term in "HAT + surge" is the **10% AEP (10-yr) storm surge** for the coastal segment, given in Annex 5A. The 1% AEP surge is used only in the joint case of Clause 2.12(b), with the 10-yr 48-hour storm. That keeps the two cases symmetric, so that a rare rainfall is never paired with a rare surge.
- (b) **Joint case.** The 1% AEP still-water level for Clause 2.12(b) is taken from Annex 5A.
- (c) Until Annex 5A is published, both values shall be taken from a site-specific study using INCOIS, IMD or NCCR surge hindcasts or return-level analyses. The study shall state its source, method and record length.

- (d) Wave set-up shall be added where the outfall faces the open sea without a protected entrance.

5.7.4 **Sea-level allowance.** The SLA shall be:

- (a) **+0.3 m** minimum for every element;
- (b) greater than 0.3 m where the State, LDA or the Authority adopts a higher projection for the planning area; and
- (c) assessed for the design life of the element. For elements with a design life of more than 50 years, the designer shall report the effect of a sea-level rise of twice the SLA as a sensitivity run.

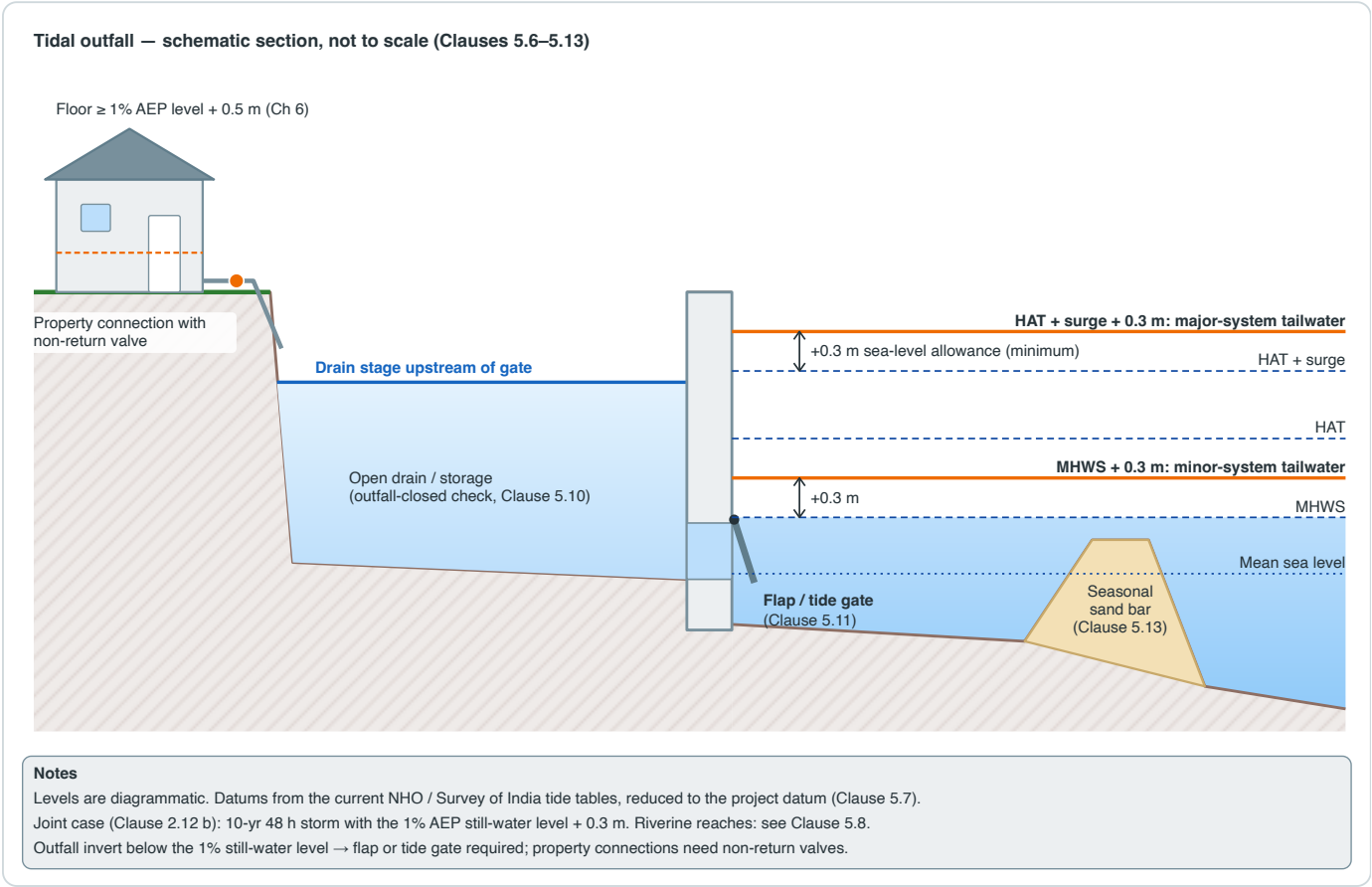


Figure 5.2 — Tidal outfall: flap gate, property non-return valve, and the design tailwater levels (MHWS + 0.3 m for the minor system; HAT + surge + 0.3 m for the major system), with a seasonal sand bar at the mouth. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the tidal tailwater table in MoHUA/CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Part A, Table 6.2.

Commentary. CPHEEO (2019) Table 6.2 sets the design tailwater for coastal outfalls as:

- MHWN to MHWS for a minor storm (more frequent than 1 in 5 years);
- MHWS to HAT for a major storm; and
- "Effect of climate change: additional 0.3 m".

CPHEEO also says the joint probability of storm, tide and surge "should" be considered, with the state maritime board consulted. This Manual takes the upper end of each CPHEEO range, adds surge for the major system, and makes the joint case explicit (Clause 2.12). CPHEEO does not require surge to be added; this Manual adds it because the surge records of the coastal States showed why it is needed there; Uttar Pradesh has no coast, and the surge term does not arise in the State.

Indian tide tables have been published by the Survey of India since the nineteenth century (Survey of India, Tidal Predictions). Current Indian tidal predictions also appear in the NHO's tide tables. One port document describes the current edition as covering 95 Indian ports, based on NHO observations and on data from civil ports, NIO and

> INCOIS (Adani Ports, Dahej tide table 2025, citing NHO INP-12). INCOIS runs coastal tide gauges and issues storm-surge and swell-surge warnings. None of these is used for design in Uttar Pradesh, which has no coast, and Annex 5A is not prepared for the State (Clause 5.1.4).

5.8 Riverine backwater

5.8.1 **Where it applies.** Outfalls to rivers and canals whose water level in a storm can exceed the outfall invert shall be designed with riverine backwater. This includes:

- the **Gomti** through **Lucknow**, between its embankments, with the **Gomti barrage**, the **Kukrail** confluence, and the gated and pumped outfalls of the city's drains, including the **Kukrail** and **Wazirganj** pumping stations (Clause 5.8.5(a) and (b));
- the **Ganga** and the **Yamuna** at **Prayagraj**, from **Phaphamau** on the Ganga and **Naini** on the Yamuna to and below the **Sangam**, and the outfalls of the drains that discharge to either river there (Clause 5.8.5(c));
- the **Ganga** at **Kanpur**, and at **Varanasi** with the **Varuna** and the **Assi** and the outfalls to them, which are under the Ganga's backwater when it is high (Clause 5.8.5(d));
- the **Hindon** through **Ghaziabad** and **Noida** to its confluence with the **Yamuna**, and the **Yamuna** along Noida below the **Okhla** barrage, with the releases of **Hathnikund** (Clauses 5.8.3 and 5.8.5(e));
- the **Yamuna** at **Agra** and **Mathura**, including the outfall of the **Taj East Drain** (Clause 5.8.5(a));
- the **Rapti** and the **Rohin** at **Gorakhpur**, with the embanked city behind them, its pumped outfalls and **Ramgarh Tal** (Clause 5.8.5(f));
- any drain or canal of **I&WRD**, and any irrigation canal that receives storm water (Clause 5.8.5(g)); and
- elsewhere: any river or I&WRD channel listed in Annex 5B.

5.8.2 **River levels.** River water levels shall be taken from:

- (a) I&WRD design flood levels or recorded highest flood levels for the reach, where published; or
- (b) a hydraulic model (HEC-RAS or equivalent) of the river reach. The model shall use:
  - the river design flood from a hydrograph method (Chapter 3), with continuous simulation where Chapter 3 requires it;
  - the tidal boundary of Clause 5.7 at the mouth; and
  - the sand-bar condition of Clause 5.13.

5.8.3 **Reservoir and tank releases.** Where a reservoir or tank upstream can release to the river (for example the Hathnikund barrage on the Yamuna in Haryana, whose releases reach Noida through Delhi, the Okhla barrage at the head of the Yamuna's reach past Noida, and the Gomti barrage in Lucknow), the river level shall include the release given by the reservoir's operating rule for the storm being checked. Where there is no published rule, it shall include the largest recorded release.

5.8.4 **Coincidence of site storm and river flood.** Unless a joint-probability study is accepted by the Authority, the more severe of the following governs:

- (a) the site design storm (AEP as required), with the river at its **10% AEP (10-yr)** level; and
- (b) the site **10% AEP** storm, with the river at its design-AEP level (1% AEP for the major system).

The two storms in each pair shall have the same duration and timing where they are generated by the same rainfall event.

5.8.5 **River-locked outfalls, the Gomti through Lucknow, the Sangam reach at Prayagraj, the Ganga at Kanpur and Varanasi, the Hindon and the Yamuna at Noida and Ghaziabad, the Rapti at Gorakhpur, and discharges to I&WRD drains and irrigation canals.**

- (a) **River-locked outfalls.** For an outfall to a river directly, through a gate or sluice in an embankment or through a pumping station, or into a drain that itself discharges in one of those ways, the designer shall identify the body that operates each gate, sluice and pumping station, and obtain the sill of each gate, the crest of the embankment, the installed pumping capacity and the operating levels. Every level shall state its datum and its connection to the gauge datum of the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge.
    - **Design river level.** The river level of Clause 5.8.2 at the outfall shall be, for the major-system cases (Clause 5.8.4(b)), the **1% AEP river level at the outfall**: the 1-in-100-year flood level on which I&WRD has notified the floodplain of the reach, where it gives a level at the outfall, or a level from a hydraulic model under Clause 5.8.2(b). It shall in no case be less than the **highest recorded level** at the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge on the same river, transferred to the outfall. The reported highest levels (Table 5B.1) are: the Gomti at Lucknow (Hanuman Setu) **110.85 m** (11 September 1971); the Ganga at Kanpur **114.08 m** (29 September 2010); the Ganga at Phaphamau **87.98 m** and the Yamuna at Naini **87.99 m** (8 September 1978), at Prayagraj; the Ganga at Varanasi **73.901 m** (9 September 1978); the Yamuna at Agra **154.76 m** (9 September 1978; 154.87 m is reported for the Poiyaghat gauge at Agra) and at Mathura **169.73 m** (8 September 1978); the Rapti at Birdghat, Gorakhpur, **77.54 m** (23 August 1998); and the Hindon at Noida **197.28 m** (26 July 2023). Where two values are reported for the same gauge, the higher applies until CWC confirms the level [TBC]. The recorded level shall be transferred along the river with the water-surface slope of the flood that set it, from the CWC and I&WRD gauge records, or from the model. Until either is available, the recorded level of the nearest gauge upstream applies unchanged at the outfall, and an outfall upstream of every gauge on its reach shall not be designed without a profile [TBC]. For the cases with the river at its 10% AEP level (Clause 5.8.4(a)), the level shall be taken from the same model or a frequency analysis of the gauge record, and not less than the **danger level** at the nearest gauge, transferred in the same way: 109.5 m on the Gomti at Lucknow, 114.0 m at Kanpur, 84.734 m at Phaphamau and 84.73 m at Naini, 71.262 m at Varanasi, 152.4 m at Agra, 166.0 m at Mathura and 74.98 m at Birdghat (as reported); no danger level was found for the Hindon gauge at Noida [TBC] (all set by this Manual).
    - **Tailwater.** The tailwater at the outfall shall be the higher of that river level beyond the gate or embankment, and the maximum level in the drain behind it, computed by routing the drain as a closed storage for as long as the river stands above the level behind it, with the inflow of the whole catchment that drains to it, its storage as surveyed in its present condition, net of silt, encroachment and vegetation, and an outflow of no more than the pumping capacity that the operator confirms in writing is available in a storm, and in no case more than the installed capacity of the permanent pumps less the largest pump (set by this Manual), with gravity discharge through the gate only while the river is lower than the level behind it. Pumps shall deliver against the design river level of this item, and every pump, panel and control shall remain operable with the river at that level (Clause 5.12.5).
    - **River lock.** Portable dewatering pumps brought in for an event, and capacity that has been sanctioned or proposed but not commissioned, shall not be counted. The outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 applies with a single lock that lasts for as long as the river stays above the outfall invert, taken from the river model or from the stage record of the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge in the flood that set the highest recorded level (1971 for the Gomti, 1978 for the Ganga below Kanpur and the Yamuna, 2010 for the Ganga at Kanpur, 1998 for the Rapti and 2023 for the Hindon) or in a comparable flood, and **not less than 7 days (168 hours)**, covering the whole of the 48- and 72-hour storms of Clause 5.10.2, so that storage and pumping handle the full storm volume (Clause 5.9.4) and the drawdown of Clause 5.10.5 is met by pumping until the lock ends (set by this Manual). A shorter lock may be used only where the outfall invert is above the 1% AEP river level of this item, or where a gauge analysis under Clause 5.10.6 shows it and the Authority approves it. Floor levels and pumped outfalls behind a gate or embankment shall also be checked for the failure of the gate and for a breach of the embankment, with the land and drains behind it filled to the river level beyond it.

- (b) **The Gomti through Lucknow.** For an outfall to the Gomti in Lucknow, or to a drain that ends in it:
    - the outfalls inside the embankments shall be taken as river-locked under item (a), with the pumping stations behind them, such as those at Kukrail and Wazirganj, credited only with the pumps that the operator confirms in writing are working, and the pumping stations proposed by LDA, or any other that is not commissioned, not counted;
    - the river level shall take the Gomti barrage's gates as operated in the largest recorded event, and not assume that any gate opens fully or early unless the operator's records show it, until I&WRD publishes an operating rule for the barrage [TBC];
    - an outfall to the Kukrail, or to another tributary that joins the Gomti in the city, shall take as tailwater the higher of the tributary's own level and the Gomti level at the confluence, carried up the tributary as a level surface until a model of both gives the profile; and
    - the conflict between the reported levels of the Gomti at Lucknow (danger 109.5 m and highest flood level 110.85 m in one compilation of CWC data; warning 108.50 m and a "normal high flood level" of 108.81 m in another report) shall be resolved from CWC records before a design is approved, and until then the higher values govern [TBC].
- (c) **The Sangam reach at Prayagraj.** For an outfall to the Ganga or the Yamuna at Prayagraj, the river level shall be the higher of the two rivers' levels at the outfall, with both rivers in flood together as they were on 8 September 1978, when the Ganga at Phaphamau and the Yamuna at Naini set their highest recorded levels on the same day, unless a model of the confluence shows a lower coincident level. An outfall above the confluence on either river shall include the backwater of the other. Interception and treatment works at an outfall, such as the geotube units on the drains to the rivers, shall be included in the routing of item (a) as obstructions, at their present condition (Clause 8.9.5).
- (d) **The Ganga at Kanpur and Varanasi.** For an outfall to the Ganga at Kanpur or Varanasi, the river level shall be that of item (a). An outfall to the Varuna or the Assi at Varanasi, or to another tributary that joins the Ganga in a city, shall take as tailwater the higher of the tributary's own level and the Ganga level at the confluence, carried up the tributary as a level surface until a model of both gives the profile (set by this Manual).
- (e) **The Hindon and the Yamuna at Noida and Ghaziabad.** For an outfall to the Hindon, to the Yamuna along Noida, or to a drain that ends in either:
    - the major-system river level on the Hindon shall be not less than 197.28 m at the Noida gauge (26 July 2023), transferred under item (a), and not less than the 100-year flood level that I&WRD has computed for the reach (196.367–205.390 m between its km 0 and km 49, and 205.20 m at km 110). Those levels were derived from discharge data from 1973, and the floodplain of the Hindon had not been demarcated when research was done, so where they lie below the recorded level, the recorded level governs;
    - the Yamuna level along Noida shall include the releases of Clause 5.8.3 from the Hathnikund barrage in Haryana, routed through Delhi, and the flow of the catchment below it, combined as they occurred in the largest recorded event, and the Okhla barrage, which is reported to be operated by I&WRD, shall be taken with its gates as operated in that event, and not assumed to open fully unless the operator's records show it, until an operating rule is published [TBC];
    - an outfall to the Hindon near its confluence shall include the backwater of the Yamuna, and an outfall to the Yamuna near the confluence the inflow of the Hindon, as they occurred together in the largest recorded event; and
    - drains that enter Uttar Pradesh from Delhi carry flow from beyond the State boundary, which shall be taken as the largest recorded inflow until the owner publishes a design inflow; they were not researched for this Manual [TBC].
- (f) **The Rapti at Gorakhpur.** Behind the embankments of the Rapti and the Rohin, an outfall to a drain that is pumped or gated to the river shall have as tailwater the routed level of the drain and its sump under item (a), with the permanent pumps less the largest one and no portable pumps. Mobile pumping from one drain into another shall not be counted, and a project's pumped discharge into another drain shall be included in that drain's level (Clause 5.12.3). No storage shall be credited in Ramgarh Tal, or in any other tal or low ground behind the embankments, unless the operator's records show the storage available at the start of a storm; an outflow

control for the Tal was not found during research [TBC], and any hydrological intervention in the notified wetland needs the permission of the UP State Wetland Authority (Chapter 7). Floor levels and pumped outfalls behind the embankments shall also be checked for a breach of the embankment under item (a).

- (g) **I&WRD drains and irrigation canals.** Storm water shall not be discharged to a drain or canal of I&WRD, or to another irrigation canal, without the consent of I&WRD or of the channel's owner. Where consent is given:
    - the discharge shall not exceed the rate the consent allows;
    - the tailwater is the higher of the channel's design water level as I&WRD or the owner states it and its level in the coincident case of Clause 5.8.4, computed from all the storm water it receives, including the nalas of other bodies, and with its downstream boundary at the river level of item (a); until I&WRD publishes a design water level for a channel, the computed level governs [TBC];
    - the channel shall be taken in its present condition, net of silt, encroachment and obstruction by crossing services, and a widening, remodelling or diversion that has been proposed but not completed, including the works of an Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan or a scheme DPR that are not yet built, shall not be counted; and
    - the outfall shall have a flap gate (Clause 5.11) where the design water level or the computed level is above the outfall invert.

No pump, gate, sluice or barrage operation that helps drainage, such as pumping a drain down before a storm, closing a gate late or opening barrage gates early, shall be assumed unless the operator's written records show it. Where the outfall invert is below the tailwater of this clause, the outfall shall have its own flap gate (Clause 5.11) and, where the outfall-closed check requires it, pumping (Clause 5.12), with the pumped volume included in the routing of the drain or the river (Clause 5.12.3).

> **Commentary.** In large continental river basins, a site storm and a river flood are usually treated as roughly independent. That is the basis of tables of coincident frequencies such as FHWA HEC-22 Table 7.3. Uttar Pradesh's rivers break that assumption. The Gomti is a plains river whose whole basin lies in the State, so the monsoon systems that flood Lucknow also raise the river through the city: its highest recorded level at Lucknow, 110.85 m, was set on 11 September 1971 in a September flood (as reported), and Lucknow received 20 cm in 24 hours on 15–16 September 2022 and 14 cm on 10–11 September 2023 (IMD). The Ganga and the Yamuna bring water from far upstream, but the same monsoon spells fall on the cities they pass: in September 1978 the two rivers set their highest recorded levels at Mathura and Prayagraj on 8 September and at Agra and Varanasi on 9 September (as reported), and they stay high for days. Gorakhpur received 20 cm in 24 hours on 14–15 September 2022 (IMD), and the Rapti, whose catchment extends into Nepal, rises with the same monsoon systems. The two cannot be treated as independent, and a local storm can fall before, during or after the river peak. Clause 5.8.4 therefore pairs a design event on one side with a 10-yr event on the other, in the same way as Clause 2.12(b). This pairing has no direct precedent. It is more severe than an independence assumption would give.
>
> Clause 5.8.3 reflects the barrages above and within the State's cities. The Yamuna reaches Noida below the Hathnikund barrage in Haryana, whose releases are reported to take about 48–50 hours to reach Delhi, and below the Okhla barrage, which is reported to be controlled by Uttar Pradesh (press reports, 2025). In Lucknow the Gomti passes the Gomti barrage and the Lakshman Mela regulator. No published operating rule or release record was found during research for the Gomti barrage, the Lakshman Mela regulator or the Okhla barrage, and the CWC hourly stage records at Lucknow, Kanpur, Prayagraj, Varanasi, Agra, Birdghat and Noida, and the I&WRD flood-control orders, were not obtained [TBC]. Until they are, the largest recorded release applies, with the flow of the catchment below the barrage as it occurred in the same event (Clause 5.8.5(e)), and the danger and highest flood levels used in this Manual are those of a compilation of CWC site data and press reports, to be confirmed from CWC [TBC].
>
> Clause 5.8.5 is set by this Manual. In Uttar Pradesh the tailwater at a city outfall is set not by the tide but by a river that stands high for days, by an embankment and its gates, by a barrage, or by a pump behind an embankment, and no document found during research gives a design river level for any of them. The UDD guideline (Dec 2024)

comes closest: its DPR checklist requires pumps that remain operable above the high flood level, and separate pumping arrangements where the outfall invert lies below the normal river level or between the normal river level and the high flood level (UDD, 2024), but it does not say which flood level, at which gauge, or for how long.

The first is the river lock. Clause 5.8.5(a) asks for a 1% AEP level, which is the return period on which I&WRD now notifies floodplains, by coordinates, under the River Ganga Authorities Order 2016: the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia (G.O. of 29 January 2025) and the Yamuna (January 2025, as reported); the Hindon had not been demarcated (I&WRD, 2025 and 2026). Until a level is available at the outfall, the highest recorded level is the floor. The reported levels come from a compilation of CWC site data (SANDRP, 2018), because the CWC pages could not be read during research, and some historical highest flood levels are reported to rest on local recollection rather than gauge records (SANDRP, 2026), so every value is to be confirmed from CWC [TBC]. The floor is not an estimate of the 1% AEP level, which may be higher: the Hindon at Noida set a new record of 197.28 m on 26 July 2023, 1.81 m above its old highest flood level (SANDRP, 2023), which is also why item (e) lets the recorded level override I&WRD's 100-year levels where they are lower. For the Gomti at Lucknow the sources conflict, 109.5 m and 110.85 m for the danger and highest flood levels in the CWC compilation against 108.50 m and 108.81 m in a press report, so the higher values are used until CWC settles it. Carrying a gauge level unchanged downstream is conservative, because the river falls downstream; upstream of the gauge it would not be, so an outfall upstream of every gauge needs a profile. The danger level is used as the floor of the 10% AEP river level because the highest recorded levels stand 1–3.3 m above the danger levels and the rivers have crossed their danger levels in many recent years, the Ganga at Varanasi in August 2022 and August 2025 and the Rapti at Birdghat in 2020, when it reached 77.27 m, 2.3 m above danger (as reported), so a level reached about once in ten years is unlikely to lie below it; it is to be replaced by a frequency analysis of the CWC record [TBC].

A river flood also lasts. No hourly hydrograph for any gauge in the State was obtained during research [TBC]. In the Rapti flood of August 1998, roads and railways around Gorakhpur were cut for more than 72 hours (as reported); upstream of Noida, the Yamuna at Delhi was reported still near its danger level on 24 July 2023, eleven days after its record peak (press reports); and a river that peaks 1–3 m above its danger level must fall all of that before an outfall set at the danger level can open. A tide lock opens again within hours; a river lock lasts as long as the flood. The single lock of at least 7 days is therefore a floor, to be lengthened from the gauge record of the flood that set the highest recorded level on each river. It also covers the whole design storm, so that a site behind an embankment stores or pumps its whole storm, which is what Clause 5.9.4 already requires when the tailwater stays above the outfall. It counts only the permanent pumps less the largest one, for the same reason that Clause 5.12.2(b) requires a standby pump; portable pumps brought in for an event are not a design capacity. The gate-failure and embankment-breach checks follow Gorakhpur in 1998, when the embankments in the district were reported breached in 13 places.

The second is Lucknow. The Gomti runs between embankments through the city, and the outfalls inside them are pumped when it is high; an inspection found only half the pumps at the Kukrail pumping station working and none at Wazirganj (as reported; undated). LDA has proposed 12 more pumping stations between IIM Road and Kisan Path (press reports), which is why item (b) counts only commissioned pumps that the operator confirms. No pumping-station inventory or capacity, and no operating rule for the Gomti barrage or the Lakshman Mela regulator, was found [TBC]. The Kukrail, which the Supreme Court in May 2024 treated as a river with a floodplain rather than as a nala (press reports), joins the Gomti within the city, and its outfalls are under the Gomti's backwater when the river is high.

The third is the confluences. At Prayagraj the Ganga at Phaphamau and the Yamuna at Naini set their highest recorded levels, 87.98 m and 87.99 m, on the same day in 1978 (SANDRP, 2018), so item (c) takes them as coincident. At Varanasi the Varuna and the Assi are expected to outfall under the Ganga's backwater whenever the river is high, although no record of their levels was found [TBC], and item (d) carries the Ganga level up each tributary until a model gives the profile. At Noida the Hindon meets the Yamuna below the Okhla barrage, which is reported to be operated by Uttar Pradesh although it lies in Delhi (press report, July 2025), and the Yamuna brings the releases of Hathnikund in Haryana, which take about 48–50 hours to reach Delhi (press reports).

The fourth is Gorakhpur. The city lies behind the embankments of the Rapti and the Rohin, and Ramgarh Tal, a notified wetland of 742.245 ha with six named inflow nalas (Ramgarh Taal wetland notification, 2020), lies within it. The Rapti at Birdghat reached 77.54 m in 1998 and 77.27 m in 2020 (as reported), and wards such as Mehewa flood "after relatively small amounts of rain" (ISET/CDKN, 2014, as summarised). Item (f) treats the city as a polder, with an embankment that can breach, counts no mobile pump, and gives the Tal no storage credit unless records show it, because no outflow control for it was found.

The fifth is the drain that another body owns. No rule dividing the natural drains of I&WRD from the nalas of the Nagar Nigams was found during research (Chapter 6, Clause 6.9). I&WRD runs the embankments, canals and flood works, while the UDD guideline makes the Nagar Nigam the regulator of the city's drainage master plan (UDD, 2024). In Lucknow, a tender of 2026 was reported for diverting the Geetapalli nala to the Haider canal (as reported), which would make the canal's level the nala's tailwater. No I&WRD design water level was found for any drain or canal, and no Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan had been approved. Item (g) asks for the owner's consent and design water level and, until the level is published, computes it from the channel's present condition, without counting works that are not built.

5.9 Joint-probability cases

5.9.1 Every element draining to a tidal or backwater-affected outfall shall be checked for the cases below. The most severe governs each design quantity: storage, water level, pipe size and pump capacity.

Table 5.2 — Joint-probability cases for tidal and riverine outfalls

Case	Rainfall	Tailwater	Applies to	Basis
J1	Minor-system design AEP, Tc to 24 h	MHWS + SLA (tidal curve)	Minor system	Clause 2.12(a); Clause 5.7.1
J2	1% AEP, all durations of Clause 2.5.2	HAT + surge + SLA	Major system, detention, tanks, pumped systems	Clause 5.7.1
J3	10% AEP, **48 h**	1% AEP still-water level + SLA	Major system, detention, tanks, pumped systems	Clause 2.12(b)
J4	Design AEP, **48 h** (72 h reported)	Tidal curve per J1 with two **6 h lock windows** (Clause 5.10)	All storage and every gated or tide-affected outfall	Clause 5.10
R1	Site design AEP	River at 10% AEP level	Riverine outfalls	Clause 5.8.4(a)
R2	Site 10% AEP	River at design-AEP level	Riverine outfalls	Clause 5.8.4(b)

5.9.2 For storage elements, the 48- and 72-hour storms shall be run with the J2 and J3 tailwaters (Clause 2.5.3).

5.9.3 For tidally influenced riverine outfalls, R1 and R2 shall be run with the river model's downstream boundary at the J1 tidal curve. The Authority may also require them at J2.

5.9.4 Where tailwater is constant at a level above the outfall invert for the whole storm, the case is treated as a fully closed outfall. Storage and pumps shall then handle the full storm volume.

Commentary. Clause 2.12 sets two joint cases. Case (a) is design rainfall with MHWS plus the sea-level allowance. Case (b) is the 10-yr, 48-hour storm with the 1% still-water level. This Manual adds HAT plus surge for major-system design (Clause 5.7.1). Case J2 combines these. J4 is the outfall-closed check, which tests the

> timing of tide against the storm rather than a single level. Rainfall and surge share a cyclone cause, so they cannot be treated as independent (Clause 2.12 commentary). These cases are simple surrogates, to be replaced when a statistical joint analysis of IMD rainfall and tide-gauge records is adopted.

5.10 Outfall-closed (tide-locked) storage check

5.10.1 **Where it applies.** The check applies to:

- every storage facility;
- every minor- and major-system element; and
- every pumped system

whose outfall invert is below HAT + surge + SLA, or which drains to a reach subject to tide-lock or sand-bar closure (Clause 5.13).

5.10.2 **Storm.** Use the 48-hour design storm built per Clause 2.9.2 (peak day last), at:

- the AEP of the element: 1% AEP for detention, tanks and the major system; the minor-system AEP for minor drains; and
- AMC III.

The 72-hour storm shall also be run and reported.

5.10.3 **Lock windows.** Unless a site study under 5.10.6 gives otherwise:

- (a) the outfall is closed for **two consecutive lock windows of 6 hours each**, centred on two consecutive high tides of the local tidal curve. For a semi-diurnal tide, the window starts are therefore about 12.4 hours apart.
- (b) During each lock window, gravity discharge is **zero**.
- (c) Between lock windows, gravity discharge is computed against the J1 tidal curve, including the head loss of the flap gate and any non-return valve.
- (d) The first lock window shall be placed so that it is centred on the peak 1-hour block of the final 24 hours of the storm. A second run with the first window **starting** at that peak block shall also be made. The more severe governs.

5.10.4 **Requirement.** Storage plus pumping (where provided) shall hold the inflow so that, throughout the check:

- (a) the maximum stage in any detention facility stays below its emergency spillway crest, so the spillway does not operate. Where the outfall-closed stage is higher than the 1% AEP maximum water level of the free-outfall design, it becomes the facility's 1% AEP maximum water level for Clause 4.9.3, and the spillway crest, freeboard and wall height are set from it;
- (b) the maximum stage in the minor and major systems meets the Chapter 6 limits: building floor levels, and street depths of no more than 150 mm at the crown and no more than 350 mm at the deepest point; and
- (c) no property connection surcharges above the lowest opening it serves, or a non-return valve is fitted under Clause 5.11.

In volume terms, over each lock window and the full storm:

> $V_{inflow} \le V_{storage\ available} + V_{pumped} + V_{gravity\ (between\ locks)}$

This shall be demonstrated by routing, not by a single volume balance. The release from each facility after a lock window ends may exceed the release caps of Chapter 4, because the facility is emptying into a drain that has just reopened. That release shall be included in the downstream analysis (Clauses 5.4 and 5.9).

5.10.5 **Drawdown after the storm.** After the second lock window, the storage shall drain under the J1 tidal curve. The drawdown requirement of Clause 4.7 shall be met, with pumping where gravity cannot meet it (Clause 5.12).

5.10.6 **Site study.** A longer or shorter lock may be used where a site study gives a time series of still-water level for the design case. The study may use a calibrated hydrodynamic model, gauge records of past events, or a surge hindcast. Locks shorter than the default require the Authority's approval. A longer lock shall be used where:

- sand-bar closure (Clause 5.13) or river backwater (Clause 5.8) keeps the outfall closed for longer; or
- the gauge record shows tailwater above the outfall invert for more than 6 hours per tide in comparable past events.

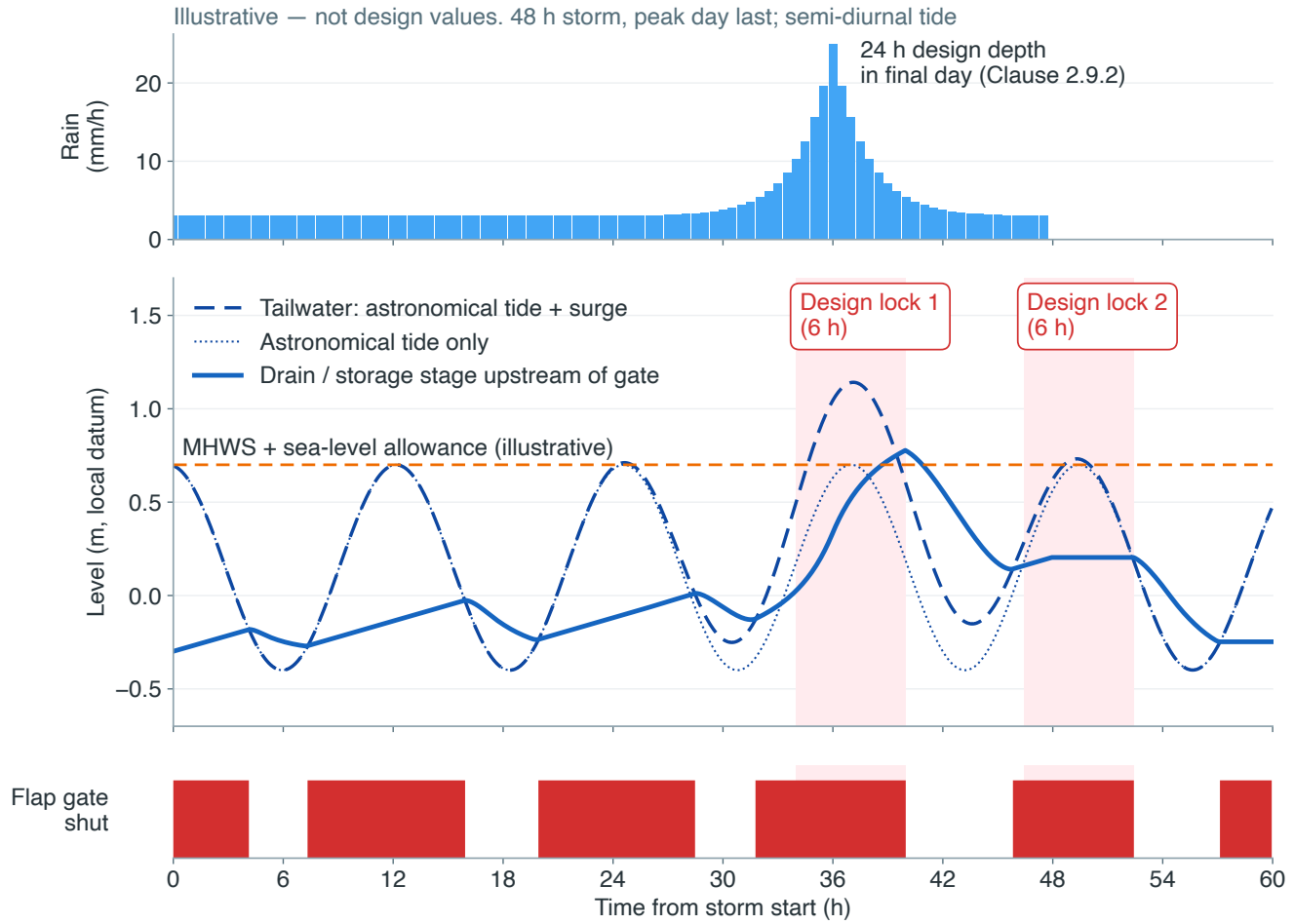


Figure 5.3 — Outfall-closed check: 48-hour storm with the peak day last (Clause 2.9.2), tailwater of astronomical tide plus surge, two 6-hour design lock windows, and the resulting stage upstream of the flap gate. Illustrative — not design values. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the tidal tailwater and joint-probability concepts of MoHUA/CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Part A, §6.3.6.

Commentary. The outfall-closed check is the distinctive Uttar Pradesh requirement in this Manual. In Uttar Pradesh it applies where an outfall is shut not by the tide but by a river. The outfalls of Lucknow's drains inside the Gomti embankments are pumped when the river is high, and an inspection is reported to have found only half the pumps at the Kukrail pumping station working and all the pumps at Wazirganj out of order (as reported; undated). Behind the embankments of the Rapti, roads and railways around Gorakhpur were cut for more than 72 hours in

August 1998 (as reported). A river flood lasts for days, not hours, which is why Clause 5.8.5(a) replaces the two 6-hour windows described below with a single lock of at least 7 days. A rate rule cannot help when there is no outlet: an orificed basin behind a closed gate simply fills.

The default of two consecutive 6-hour locks has no direct precedent. It represents gravity outfalls failing to discharge for about half of each tidal cycle around the two high tides nearest the storm peak. Figure 5.3 shows why both windows matter. The first lock catches the storm peak. The second arrives before the storage has drained, so the stage rises again.

Placing the first window on the rainfall peak is deliberately unfavourable. Cyclone rainfall and surge share a cause, and Clause 2.12 already treats them as dependent. The check replaces neither the J2 and J3 level checks nor the downstream analysis; it adds a test of timing and volume.

5.11 Flap gates, tide gates and non-return valves

5.11.1 **Where required.** A flap gate, tide gate or equivalent non-return device is required on every outfall whose invert is below the **1% AEP still-water level** (Clause 5.7.3). It is also required on outfalls into irrigation channels under Clause 5.8.5.

5.11.2 **Hydraulics.** The design shall include:

- the gate's head loss and opening head, from the manufacturer's certified head–discharge curve; and
- the reduction in effective outfall capacity when the gate is partly open.

Gates shall not be assumed to seal perfectly in the outfall-closed check unless they are tested.

5.11.3 **Construction.**

- (a) Gates, hinges and seats shall be of corrosion-resistant materials suitable for seawater (Clause 4.12.5).
- (b) The gate shall be set so that sand, silt or debris on the downstream side cannot hold it shut or open. Where the bed is mobile, the gate invert shall be raised above the bed, or the approach shall be protected.
- (c) A trash screen shall be provided upstream where the gate could be jammed by debris.
- (d) A stop-log slot or penstock shall be provided upstream for maintenance isolation on outfalls larger than 600 mm.
- (e) The gate chamber shall be accessible at all tides, with its access above HAT + surge + SLA.

5.11.4 **Non-return valves on property connections.** A non-return valve, or a backwater valve with an accessible cleaning eye, is required on every property drainage connection where the lowest opening served is below:

- the major-system tailwater (J2) at the point of connection; or
- the maximum stage in the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10).

Basement drainage shall in addition be pumped to a level above both, with its own non-return valve.

5.11.5 **Inspection.** Gates and valves shall be inspected and operated:

- before **15 June** each year;
- after every event in which they closed against a storm flow; and
- as set in the maintenance plan (Chapter 10).

Commentary. The requirement for gates below the 1% still-water level is set by this Manual. The construction details follow common coastal-drainage practice. A gate that is jammed open by debris lets the tide into the drain. A gate held shut by a sand bank turns a gravity outfall into a dead end. In Uttar Pradesh the outfalls do not cross a

> beach, but the gates and pumps on the outfalls through the river embankments are the cities' defence against the rivers, and the rivers carry silt in flood. An inspection of Lucknow's pumping stations on the Gomti is reported to have found that "at Kukrail pumping station, only half the pumps … working … in Wazirganj, all pumps were non-functional" (as reported; undated), and in the Rapti flood of August 1998 the embankments in Gorakhpur district were reported breached in 13 places. The outfall gates are usually on I&WRD embankments, while the drains and pumps behind them belong to the Nagar Nigam, a development authority or UP Jal Nigam, so a gate and the pumps behind it can belong to different bodies. The 15 June inspection date is set ahead of the SW monsoon.

5.12 Pumped outfalls

5.12.1 **When required.** Pumping shall be provided where gravity discharge cannot meet:

- the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10;
- the drawdown requirement of Clause 4.7; or
- the J2 and J3 cases.

Pumping shall not be used where a gravity solution meets these requirements.

5.12.2 **Capacity.**

- (a) The duty pumps together, with the storage provided, shall pass every case of Clause 5.9 (including J4), demonstrated by routing.
- (b) **Standby** capacity at least equal to the largest duty pump shall be installed (duty + 1 standby as a minimum).
- (c) Pump capacity shall be stated at the static head for the **J2** tailwater, not at mean tide.

5.12.3 **Effect on the receiving water.** Pumped discharge to a river, canal or creek shall be included in the river or creek level analysis of Clause 5.8. Pumping that raises the receiving water level above the acceptance criteria of Clause 5.5 elsewhere is not permitted.

5.12.4 **Power supply.** Pumping stations shall have either:

- two independent power supplies; or
- standby generation for 100% of the duty capacity, with on-site fuel for at least **72 hours** of duty operation.

Changeover shall be automatic.

5.12.5 **Flood immunity.** Electrical panels, control equipment, generators and fuel storage shall be set above the higher of:

- the 1% AEP flood level + 0.5 m; and
- HAT + surge + SLA + 0.5 m.

Access to the station shall remain usable in the 1% AEP event.

5.12.6 **Discharge arrangement.** Rising mains shall discharge:

- over a level above the J2 tailwater; or
- through a non-return valve and a flap gate.

The arrangement shall prevent back-siphoning.

5.12.7 **Controls and monitoring.** Each station shall have:

- automatic level control;
- remote alarms for high level, pump failure and power failure, sent to the operator; and

- a level and run-time log kept for at least 5 years.

Wet wells shall be sized to keep pump starts within the manufacturer's limits.

5.12.8 **Screens.** Inlet screens shall be provided with a cleaning method that works during a storm (a mechanical rake, or duplicate screens).

5.12.9 **Testing.** Every pumped outfall shall be test-run at full duty, including on standby power, before **15 June** each year. Private pumped systems shall be covered by a registered maintenance declaration (Chapter 10).

> Commentary. Duty + standby, 72 hours of fuel and flood-immune electrics have no single direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 72-hour fuel figure matches the longest mandatory design storm (Clause 2.5.2). A pump station that depends only on grid power can stop exactly when it is needed, because supply to flooded areas is often switched off for safety. Singapore's April 2025 amendments added annual maintenance declarations for pumped detention tanks (PUB Addendum No. 3). Clause 5.12.9 and Chapter 10 adopt the same approach. Clause 5.12.3 prevents pumping that simply moves water from one tide-locked drain into a tide-locked river.

5.13 Sand-bar closure of river mouths

5.13.1 **Where it applies.** This clause applies to outfalls into any river or creek whose mouth is subject to seasonal sand-bar closure. That includes the mouths of the coastal States (there is none in Uttar Pradesh: Clause 5.1.4), and any other mouth listed in Annex 5B.

5.13.2 **Assumption at the start of the SW monsoon.** The mouth shall be assumed **closed** by a bar at the start of the June–September season, at the crest level of the most recent pre-monsoon survey. This applies unless I&WRD certifies that:

- a mouth-maintenance programme (dredging, bar cutting or training walls) has kept the mouth open at the start of each of the previous three SW monsoon seasons; and
- the programme is funded for the current season.

5.13.3 **Tailwater with a closed mouth.** With the mouth closed, the tailwater at the outfall shall be the higher of:

- (a) the tidal tailwater of Clause 5.7; and
- (b) the level in the river reach behind the bar, computed with the bar as a weir at its surveyed crest level. That level shall include the river flow of Clause 5.8 and the head needed to pass the flow over or through the bar.

5.13.4 **No credit for emergency cutting.** Bar cutting or breaching during the storm shall not be assumed in design, unless I&WRD has a documented operating procedure, with equipment stationed for it. Where it does, the bar may be assumed lowered to the procedure's target level only after the time the procedure states.

5.13.5 **Outfall-closed check.** Where the closed-mouth level of 5.13.3(b) exceeds the outfall invert for longer than the default lock windows, the lock duration of Clause 5.10 shall be extended to that period.

> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh has no coast and no river mouth, so Clause 5.13 does not apply in the State (Clause 5.1.4). Its nearest inland counterparts are silt and a tal. Silt deposited by a river in flood at a drain's outfall can hold a flap gate shut or open, and a tal whose outlet is uncontrolled or obstructed, such as Ramgarh Tal at Gorakhpur, whose outflow control was not found during research [TBC], limits what can leave the nalas that end in

> it. Clause 5.8.5 deals with both by giving no credit for a gate operation or a storage that the operator's records do not show. Clause 5.13.2 has no direct precedent. It puts the burden of proof on showing that the mouth is open rather than assuming it.

5.14 Documentation

Every project subject to this chapter shall submit a **Downstream and Tailwater Report** (Form 5-1). It shall contain:

1. a plan of the analysis extent showing:
    - the site;
    - each analysis point with its contributing catchment area and the site's percentage of it; and
    - the end point and the reason it was chosen (Clause 5.3);
2. the model description:
    - software and version;
    - the network schematic, with survey sources for the drains and crossings;
    - land use and CN for off-site areas;
    - any upstream detention included; and
    - calibration or validation evidence where available;
3. for each analysis point, AEP and duration, the existing and with-project:
    - peak flow;
    - time to peak;
    - maximum water level and velocity; and
    - duration of inundation (Clause 5.4);
4. the comparison against Clause 5.5, with each failure identified and the remedy adopted;
5. the tailwater derivation:
    - tide-table edition and port;
    - MHWS, HAT and MSL relative to chart datum;
    - the datum connection to the Survey of India benchmark and the project datum;
    - surge source and value;
    - SLA; and
    - river levels and their sources (Clauses 5.6 to 5.8);
6. the joint-case table of Clause 5.9 with results;
7. the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10):
    - storm and lock alignment;
    - stage hydrographs; and
    - the volume balance for each lock window;
8. a schedule of flap gates, tide gates and non-return valves, with certified head–discharge data (Clause 5.11);
9. pumped outfall design, power supply, flood immunity and controls, where provided (Clause 5.12);
10. the sand-bar assumption and supporting I&WRD certification, where relevant (Clause 5.13); and
11. inspection and maintenance requirements for Chapter 10.

Small sites under Clause 5.3.4 shall submit Form 5-2 (Simplified Downstream Statement) instead.

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A, §6.3.6 and Table 6.2 (coastal tailwater; +0.3 m climate allowance). https://web.archive.org/web/2024/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/VolumeI-Part%20A-Engineering-Design.pdf
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2013). Manual on Sewerage and Sewage Treatment Systems (pumping stations).
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (5601.5, ten-percent downstream analysis). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Atlanta Regional Commission / Georgia EPD (2016). Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, Vol. 1 (Standard #8) and Vol. 2 §3.1.9. https://documents.atlantaregional.com/gastormwater/GSMM_2016%20EDITION_FINAL_V1.pdf
- MARC. The Evolution of Regional Stormwater Design Standards. https://www.marc2.org/Assets/Environment/WQEC/The_Evolution_of_Regional_Strormwater_Design_Standards.pdf
- Optimisation of urban detention (2016). *Water* 8(7):290. https://doi.org/10.3390/w8070290
- Colorado State University. Spatially Dependent On-Site Detention Policies (thesis). https://mountainscholar.org/bitstreams/f4dbec4e-a44f-4933-8d54-a097e741f44a/download
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). *Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines* (in Hindi), file dated 24 December 2024 (no integrated urban drainage plan; DPR checklist: pumps operable above the high flood level, separate pumping where the outfall invert is below the normal river level or between it and the high flood level). https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ)(NGT)/2023, 29 January 2025 (Ganga floodplain zone, Unnao to Ballia, on the 100-year return period flood), annexed to the Department's report of 2 April 2025 in NGT O.A. 341/2022, *Deepak Awasthi v. State of U.P.* https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPORT%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20UP%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20341%20of%202022%20%20Deepak%20Awasthi%20Vs.%20State%20of%20U.P..pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. Progress report of 23 May 2026 in NGT O.A. 569/2023, *Alok Kumar v. Union of India* (Hindon: discharge data since 1973; 100-year flood levels by chainage; demarcation pending). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Progress%20Report%20By%20Irrigation%20Department,%20State%20of%20Uttar%20Pradesh%20DATED%2023-05-2026%20in%20OA%20569%20of%202023%20Alok%20Kumar%20Vs%20UOI%20and%20Ors.pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh. Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018, 7 December 2020, Ramgarh Taal Wetland, district Gorakhpur (742.245 ha; inflow nalas; prohibited and regulated activities), as annexed to CPCB's response in NGT O.A. 1057/2024. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). *Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India* (warning, danger and highest flood levels, compiled from CWC). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/
- SANDRP (2023). *Rivers breaching highest flood levels in July 2023* (the Hindon at Noida, 197.28 m). https://sandrp.in/2023/08/03/rivers-breaching-highest-flood-levels-in-july-2023/
- India Meteorological Department. Press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 and 11 September 2023 (24-hour rainfall at Gorakhpur and Lucknow). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf

- ISET-International / CDKN (2014). *Gorakhpur: Extreme Rainfall, Climate Change, and Flooding* (landing-page summary). https://cdkn.org/resource/gorakhpur-extreme-rainfall-technical-report
- Press reports on the Rapti flood of August 1998 at Gorakhpur (Down To Earth, "Waters of woe"), https://www.downtoearth.org.in/news/waters-of-woe-22412 ; on the Hindon flood of July 2023 at Noida (The Tribune), https://www.tribuneindia.com/news/delhi/about-350-cars-at-ola-dump-yard-submerged-by-overflowing-hindon-529226 ; on the Yamuna near its danger level at Delhi on 24 July 2023 (Business Standard/PTI), https://business-standard.com/amp/india-news/yamuna-s-water-level-in-delhi-declines-marginally-old-railway-bridge-shut-123072400776_1.html ; on the Hathnikund travel time (PTI via The Week, 1 September 2025), https://www.theweek.in/wire-updates/national/2025/09/01/des22-dl-yamuna-level.html ; on control of the Okhla barrage (PTI via The Week, 23 July 2025), https://www.theweek.in/wire-updates/national/2025/07/23/des48-dl-ito-barrage.html ; on the Ganga above its danger level at Varanasi and Prayagraj in August 2025 (Business Today), https://www.businesstoday.in/india/story/flooding-in-13-up-districts-ganga-flows-above-danger-mark-in-varanasi-mirzapur-ghazipur-ballia-487669-2025-08-04 ; and on the Akbar Nagar demolitions on the Kukrail floodplain (LiveLaw, May 2024), https://www.livelaw.in/top-stories/supreme-court-lucknow-akbarnagar-demolitions-eviction-upheld-slum-dwellers-alternative-accommodation-257604
- Survey of India. Tidal Predictions: Geodetic and Research Branch. https://www.geographyandyou.com/survey-of-india/tidal-predictions-geodetic-and-research-branch-survey-of-india
- GLOSS. India national report (tide-gauge network and datums). https://gloss-sealevel.org/gloss/gloss/sites/gloss/files/publications/documents/india_ge9.pdf
- Adani Ports (2025). Tide Table 2025, Dahej (notes on NHO INP-12 coverage and data sources). https://www.adaniports.com/-/media/Project/Ports/PortsAndTerminals/Dahej-Port/Marine-Documents/Tide-Table-2025-Dahej.pdf
- INCOIS. Storm-surge and swell-surge warning services. https://incois.gov.in/
- FHWA. HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (current edition), Table 7.3 (coincident frequencies).
- Purdue University JTRP (2023). Development of a Multiple Water Course Joint Probability Analysis Procedure for Indiana Watersheds, FHWA/IN/JTRP-2023/09. https://docs.lib.purdue.edu/jtrp/1820
- PUB Singapore (2025). Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., Addendum No. 3. https://info.corenet.gov.sg/docs/default-source/pub-circulars/pub-circular_cop-7th-ed-addendum-no-3_16-apr-2025.pdf?sfvrsn=5a2c1e1a_2

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
5A	Tidal datums (MSL, MHWS, HAT vs CD and Survey of India datum), surge allowances and 1% still-water levels by coastal segment
5B	Major drains, riverine outfall reaches, and river mouths subject to sand-bar closure; map
5C	Worked example: outfall-closed check for a site behind the Gomti embankment in Lucknow
Form 5-1	Downstream and Tailwater Report
Form 5-2	Simplified Downstream Statement (small sites)

CHAPTER 6

Minor and Major Drainage Systems

6.1 Purpose and scope

6.1.1 This chapter sets the level of service and the hydraulic criteria for the conveyance system that carries runoff from a development, a road or a public drainage scheme to a receiving waterway, tank or outfall. It covers:

- (a) the dual drainage concept: a minor system and a major system (Clause 6.3);
- (b) design return periods by land use and road class (Clause 6.4);
- (c) street hydraulics: spread, depth and flow hazard (Clause 6.5);
- (d) inlets, including clogging (Clause 6.6);
- (e) pipes and open and covered drains (Clause 6.7);
- (f) hydraulic grade line analysis (Clause 6.8);
- (g) overland flow paths, ponding at sags and building floor levels (Clauses 6.9 to 6.11);
- (h) culverts and road crossings (Clause 6.12); and
- (i) Uttar Pradesh construction-practice requirements for covered drains, silt, solid waste, utilities and desilting access (Clause 6.13).

6.1.2 The detailed hydraulic design of individual structures (culverts, channels, energy dissipators, screens, pumps, gates, manholes) is in Chapter 9. Rainfall is in Chapter 2, runoff methods in Chapter 3, on-site storage in Chapter 4, tailwater in Chapter 5, waterbodies in Chapter 7 and water quality in Chapter 8.

6.1.3 This chapter applies to all public drains, all roads with kerbs or roadside drains, and all private drainage systems in developments that meet the applicability thresholds of Chapter 1. In Tier B local bodies, the simplified procedures and design aids referred to in Chapter 1 may be used for elements serving ≤ 16 ha, but the criteria of this chapter still apply.

> **Commentary.** Uttar Pradesh's drains have been designed with no stated level of service and no plan for floods larger than the drain. The UDD guideline of December 2024 states that "currently there is no integrated plan for urban drainage" in the State's urban areas, that small nalas and nalis have been built piecemeal, and that urban drains are "usually designed for a 1–2 year rainfall return period", which it calls inadequate; it requires an Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan for each Nagar Nigam, to be prepared by the Construction and Design Services of UP Jal Nigam (Urban) under the CPHEEO (2019) manual, but sets no return period of its own (UDD, 2024). No design storm was found for any city in the State. The one scheme DPR read for this Manual, for the Taj East Drain at Agra, adopted a 2-year intensity of 28.2 mm/h from a daily rainfall series whose printed values are implausible (Agra Smart City, DPR). Recent storms are beyond any 1–2-year drain: Lucknow received 20 cm in 24 hours on 15–16 September 2022 and 14 cm on 10–11 September 2023, and Gorakhpur 20 cm on 14–15 September 2022 (IMD), and the UDD guideline cites the Lucknow event of 2023 as a flash flood. Where the drains overflow, the water runs along the roads: in September 2023 Gomti Nagar, Ashiana, Jankipuram, Aliganj and Hazratganj in Lucknow were waterlogged (press reports), and in August 2026, after 73.4 mm in 24 hours at Prayagraj, the Allahabad High Court took up the waterlogging of George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh of its own motion and ordered the areas pumped out within 24 hours (press reports). The drains are also divided among owners: the Nagar Nigams, the development authorities, the industrial development authorities, I&WRD and UP Jal Nigam all build or run drains in the same city, and no rule divides them (see the Commentary to Clause 6.9). Fixing the rainfall (Chapter 2) is only half the answer. The other half is a second, surface-level system that

carries the flows the pipes cannot, without flooding buildings. That is the dual drainage concept of this chapter, taken from Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 (5601.8, Levels of Service), which requires every element to have a 1% AEP overflow path.

6.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Minor system	Inlets, pipes, covered drains and open drains that carry runoff up to the minor design AEP of Table 6.1 without surcharge above the limits of Clause 6.8.
Major system	The surface flow paths (streets, overland flow paths, open channels, floodways and storage) that carry flow above the capacity of the minor system, up to the 1% AEP (100-yr) event.
Overland flow path	A defined surface route, in public land or a recorded easement, that carries major-system flow to a receiving waterway.
Spread (T)	Width of flow in the gutter and carriageway, measured from the face of the kerb.
Sag	A low point on a road or flow path from which water can leave only through an inlet or by ponding to an overflow level. A trapped sag has no surface overflow route.
Clogging factor	The fraction of an inlet's clean hydraulic capacity assumed lost to debris (Clause 6.6.3).
Hydraulic grade line (HGL)	The line joining the free-surface levels in a conduit system, or the piezometric levels where the system is under pressure.
Covered drain	A rectangular drain, usually beside a road, closed by cast-in-situ or precast cover slabs that form a footpath.
Sediment allowance	The depth or area of a drain or pipe assumed filled with silt when its design capacity is computed (Clause 6.7.8).
Check event	An AEP rarer than the design AEP at which the combined minor and major system must still meet the limits of Table 6.2.
High-density area	An area notified as such by the approving authority under Clause 6.4.4.
Class I area	An urban local body with a population of 1 lakh or more (the CPHEEO definition).

6.3 The dual drainage concept

6.3.1 Every drainage system shall be designed as two systems that work together:

- (a) a **minor system** that carries the minor design flow of Table 6.1 below ground or in drains, keeping streets usable and spread within Table 6.2; and
- (b) a **major system** that carries all flow above the minor-system capacity, up to the 1% AEP (100-yr) flow, on the surface without entering buildings and within the depth and hazard limits of Clause 6.5.

6.3.2 **Every element has a 1% path.** Every inlet, sag, pipe, drain, culvert and storage element shall have an identified 1% AEP overland flow path to a receiving waterway, tank or outfall. The path shall be shown on the drainage plan (Clause 6.15).

6.3.3 **Major-system design flow.** The major system at any point shall carry the 1% AEP peak flow less the minor-system capacity at that point. The minor-system capacity used in this subtraction is the capacity of the inlets after the clogging factors of Clause 6.6.3, or the pipe capacity, whichever is less. At sags and at any location used to set building floor levels, the major system shall also be checked with the minor system **fully blocked** (Clause 6.10.3).

6.3.4 **Rainfall and method.** Design flows shall use the rainfall of Chapter 2 (including the climate factor of Clause 2.8) and the methods of Chapter 3:

- (a) the Rational Method only for catchments ≤ 16 ha and a single conveyance element. It shall not be used to accumulate flows down a network whose total catchment exceeds 16 ha;
- (b) a hydrograph method with hydraulic routing (for example SWMM, HEC-HMS with a hydraulic model, or an equivalent 1D/2D model) for networks above 16 ha and for any network with storage, pumping or a tidal outfall;
- (c) a minimum time of concentration of 10 minutes.

6.3.5 **No transfer between catchments.** Neither the minor nor the major system shall divert flow from one natural catchment to another unless the approving authority accepts a catchment-wide study showing no adverse effect.

> **Commentary.** The CPHEEO (2019) manual defines major and minor systems in its glossary but gives no return period for the major system. APWA 5600 (2006, 5601.8) requires the system to convey the 1% peak and, where in-system capacity is less, an overflow system to carry the remainder. Clause 6.3.3 subtracts only the *clogged* inlet capacity, not the full pipe capacity, because in practice the pipes cannot take more water than the inlets admit. The fully-blocked check at sags has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because of the Lucknow experience that drains under footpaths are often silted or blocked by solid waste when the heaviest rain arrives (CPHEEO 2019 Part A, Ch 1 and 2, Figures 1.2 and 2.1 on solid waste dumping in drains). The prohibition on inter-catchment transfer follows the DID Malaysia 2008 submission checklist, which prohibits inter-catchment diversion.

6.4 Design return periods

6.4.1 The minor system, roads and crossings shall be designed for the AEPs of Table 6.1. Where both a land-use row and a road-class row apply to an element, the **rarer** AEP (longer return period) governs.

Table 6.1 — Design AEPs for conveyance (matches Clause 2.4)

Element	Design AEP (return period)	Check event	Basis
Minor system: Lucknow, Kanpur, Varanasi, Prayagraj and Agra core and other high-density areas	10% (10-yr)	1% (100-yr) overland path	This Manual (see Commentary)
Minor system: other Class I areas	20% (5-yr)	1% overland path	This Manual; CPHEEO Table 4.1
Minor system: other areas	50% (2-yr)	1% overland path	This Manual; CPHEEO Table 4.1
Arterial road drainage and crossings	2% (50-yr) for arterials that are notified evacuation or emergency routes; 4% (25-yr) for other arterials	Next higher AEP: 1% for a 2% design; 2% for a 4% design	This Manual (25–50-yr); split set by this Manual
Collector road drainage and crossings	4% (25-yr)	2% (50-yr)	This Manual
Local road drainage and crossings	10% (10-yr)	4% (25-yr)	This Manual
Road underpasses and other trapped sags on public roads	2% (50-yr)	1% (100-yr)	This Manual (Clause 6.10.5)
Airports, railway stations, power stations and other critical infrastructure	1% (100-yr) in Class I areas; 2% (50-yr) elsewhere	—	CPHEEO 2019 Table 4.1
Major (overland) system, every element	1% (100-yr)	—	This Manual

Element	Design AEP (return period)	Check event	Basis
Building floor levels	1% level + 0.5 m freeboard	—	This Manual (Clause 6.11)

6.4.2 **Check events.** At the check event of Table 6.1, the combined minor and major system shall carry the check-event flow within the 1% AEP limits of Table 6.2 and without water entering any building. The 1% overland path requirement of Clause 6.3.2 applies in addition to the check event.

6.4.3 **Higher standards.** An approving authority may adopt a rarer AEP for any element, including through the high-powered committee route in Note 2 of CPHEEO Table 4.1. It shall not adopt a more frequent AEP than Table 6.1.

6.4.4 **High-density areas.** The approving authority shall notify, by map, the high-density areas to which the 10% AEP minor-system standard applies. Until it does, the 10% AEP standard applies to:

- (a) the old cities of Lucknow, Kanpur, Varanasi, Prayagraj and Agra: the older, densely built city within the Nagar Nigam's area that the applicable Master Plan under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973 identifies as the old city, core or heritage area, with the boundary of each to be confirmed by the Nagar Nigam and the development authority [TBC];
- (b) in every other Nagar Nigam, the area that the applicable Master Plan identifies as the old city or the central business district, and the old abadi of the villages that have been taken into the built-up area; and
- (c) any area in a Tier A body where the master plan permits a floor space index above the base value for the zone.

6.4.5 **Retrofit.** Where an existing drain cannot practicably be enlarged to the Table 6.1 AEP, the shortfall shall be made good by upstream storage (Chapter 4), regional storage (Chapter 7) or an improved major-system path. The approving authority shall record the residual level of service.

> Commentary. The values in Table 6.1 match the Clause 2.4 summary and add rows for underpasses and critical infrastructure. They exceed the CPHEEO (2019) national advisory minimums of 5-yr for Class I cities and 2-yr elsewhere (CPHEEO Part A, Table 4.1). Note 2 of that table allows a State committee to adopt higher values. The 10-yr tier for high-density areas follows Gupta (IIT Bombay), who recommends "1 in 10 year for residential-high density", and Malaysia's MSMA 2, which uses 10-yr minor and 100-yr major systems for link houses, apartments, commercial and industrial land. The road values resolve a conflict in Indian codes. IRC:SP:50-2013 recommends 1–2 years for urban road drains. IRC:SP:42-2014 suggests 25 years for urban roadside drains and a check flood at the next higher return period. APWA 5600 (2006) uses 50-yr for arterial, 25-yr for collector and 10-yr for residential street crossings. Table 6.1 adopts the APWA tiers and the IRC:SP:42 check-flood concept. Splitting arterials into 50-yr evacuation routes and 25-yr others has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual. The 50-yr standard for underpasses is likewise set by this Manual, because an underpass is a trapped sag where the failure mode is deep water on a live carriageway. The default high-density areas in Clause 6.4.4 are set by this Manual and apply until the approving authority notifies a map.

6.5 Street hydraulics: spread, depth and flow hazard

6.5.1 **Gutter flow.** Flow in a triangular kerb-and-gutter section shall be computed with the modified Manning (Izzard) equation:

> Q = (Ku / n) · Sx^(5/3) · SL^(1/2) · T^(8/3)

where Q is the gutter flow (m³/s), Ku = 0.376 (SI), n is the Manning roughness of the gutter (Table 6.6), Sx is the cross slope (m/m), SL is the longitudinal slope (m/m) and T is the spread (m). Composite and depressed gutter sections shall be analysed by the methods of FHWA HEC-22 (4th edition, 2024).

6.5.2 **Spread and depth limits.** Street flow shall not exceed the limits of Table 6.2.

Table 6.2 — Street flow limits

Road class	Minor design event (Table 6.1)	Check event and 1% AEP event
Arterial	Spread shall leave at least one through lane in each direction clear of water. No flow across the crown.	Depth ≤ 150 mm at the crown and ≤ 350 mm at the deepest point; hazard limits of Clause 6.5.3
Collector	Spread T ≤ 3 m. No flow across the crown except at a sag intersection.	As above
Local	Spread T ≤ 3 m. Flow shall not overtop the kerb.	As above
All classes, at intersections	Cross-flow over the crown ≤ 0.03 m³/s at sag intersections and superelevation transitions; none at mid-block sags.	As above

6.5.3 **Flow hazard limits.** In the check event and the 1% AEP event, the product of depth (D, m) and velocity (V, m/s) of street and overland flow shall not exceed the limits of Table 6.3.

Table 6.3 — Flow hazard limits for streets and overland flow paths

Location	Required hazard class (Table 6.4)	Limits
Carriageways of all roads	H2 or better	D·V ≤ 0.6 m²/s; D ≤ 0.35 m (Table 6.2); V ≤ 2.0 m/s
Footpaths, pedestrian crossings, school, hospital and transit-stop frontages	H1	D·V ≤ 0.3 m²/s; D ≤ 0.3 m; V ≤ 2.0 m/s
Notified evacuation and emergency routes	H1	D·V ≤ 0.3 m²/s; D ≤ 0.3 m; V ≤ 2.0 m/s
Overland flow paths in public open space or easements, away from roads	H3 or better, with warning signs	D·V ≤ 0.6 m²/s; D ≤ 1.2 m; V ≤ 2.0 m/s

Table 6.4 — Combined flood hazard vulnerability classes (reproduced for reference)

Class	Description	D·V limit (m²/s)	Depth limit D (m)	Velocity limit V (m/s)
H1	Generally safe for vehicles, people and buildings	≤ 0.3	0.3	2.0
H2	Unsafe for small vehicles	≤ 0.6	0.5	2.0
H3	Unsafe for vehicles, children and the elderly	≤ 0.6	1.2	2.0
H4	Unsafe for vehicles and people	≤ 1.0	2.0	2.0
H5	Unsafe for vehicles and people; buildings vulnerable to structural damage	≤ 4.0	4.0	4.0
H6	Unsafe for vehicles and people; all buildings vulnerable to failure	> 4.0	—	—

Source: AIDR Guideline 7-3, *Technical flood risk management guideline: Flood hazard* (2014), Tables 1 and 2, modelled after Smith and Wasko (2012).

6.5.4 Depth and velocity for Clause 6.5.3 shall be taken from the gutter-flow calculation for simple sections, or from a 1D or 2D hydraulic model where flow leaves the kerb-and-gutter section.

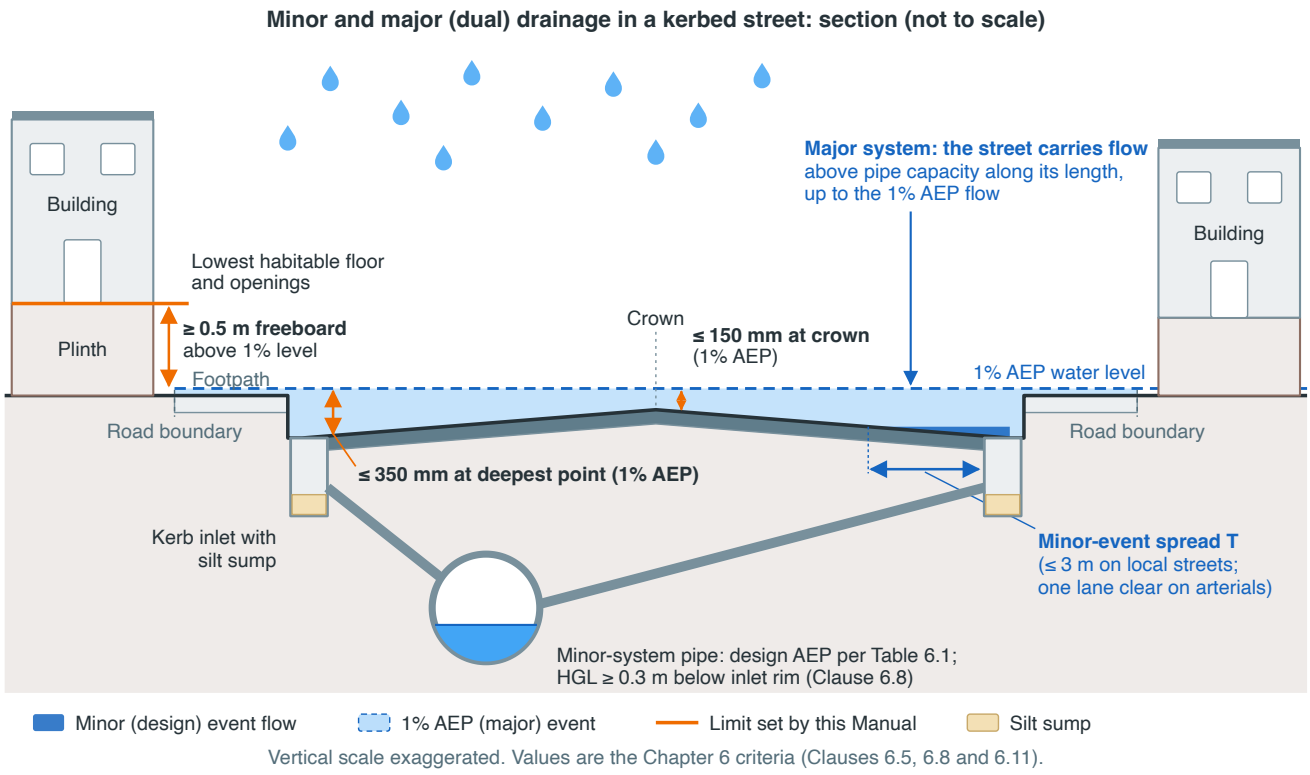


Figure 6.1 — Minor and major drainage in a kerbed street. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Kansas City Metro APWA, Section 5600 (2006, 5601.8) and FHWA, HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (4th ed., 2024).

Commentary. The Izzard form of Manning's equation with Ku = 0.376 is used both in FHWA HEC-22 and in the CPHEEO (2019) manual (Part A, Example 5.5, where the constant is written Kc = 0.376). The arterial spread rule (one lane clear) and the 3 m spread for local and collector streets are close to the APWA 5600 (2006, 5604.2) limit of 12 ft (3.66 m) from the back of kerb in each outside lane. The cross-flow limit of 0.03 m³/s is the SI equivalent of the APWA limit of 1.0 cfs at intersection sumps and superelevation transitions, with no cross-flow at mid-block sumps. The 150 mm and 350 mm depth limits are close to the APWA 5600 limits for 1% overflow at road crossings (7 in, about 180 mm, at the crown; 14 in, about 360 mm, at the deepest point). Mumbai's criterion of no flooding above 15 cm (IRC:SP:50-2013, §6.4.1) is a local precedent for the 150 mm crown value.

The hazard classes of Table 6.4 are the combined hazard curves published by the Australian Institute for Disaster Resilience (AIDR Guideline 7-3, 2014), which are modelled after Smith and Wasko (2012). Requiring H2 or better on carriageways means the 1% depth limit of 350 mm (Table 6.2) governs the depth, and the D·V product controls fast, shallow flow on steep streets. H2 is described as "unsafe for small vehicles". Two-wheelers are the dominant vehicles on Uttar Pradesh streets, so the 1% event must be treated as a road-closure event on all roads except notified evacuation routes, which must meet H1. The assignment of hazard classes to locations in Table 6.3 has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual.

6.6 Inlets

6.6.1 **Inlet types.** Inlets may be kerb-opening inlets, grate inlets, combination inlets (a grate with a kerb opening) or slotted and trench drains. On public streets:

- (a) kerb-opening or combination inlets shall be used, unless the approving authority accepts grate-only inlets for a specific location;
- (b) inlet openings shall be set at road level, with a gutter depression where practicable, so that water is not held on the carriageway by a raised kerb or footpath;
- (c) grates in carriageways, cycle lanes and footpaths shall be of a bicycle- and pedestrian-safe pattern (Chapter 9, Clause 9.11).

6.6.2 **Inlet capacity.** The clean capacity of inlets on grade and in sags shall be computed by the methods of FHWA HEC-22 (4th edition, 2024), or from tested ratings published by the manufacturer for the exact grate and kerb-opening geometry. The empirical kerb-inlet equations of CPHEEO (2019) Part A §5.6.2 may be used as a cross-check only.

6.6.3 **Clogging factors.** The design capacity of every inlet shall be its clean capacity reduced by the clogging factors of Table 6.5:

Table 6.5 — Inlet clogging factors (share of clean capacity assumed lost)

Inlet type	On grade	In a sag
Grate	50%	50%
Kerb opening	10%	20%
Combination	Apply the grate and kerb factors to each part separately	Apply the grate and kerb factors to each part separately

Design capacity = (1 − clogging factor) × clean capacity.

6.6.4 **Inlet spacing.** Inlets shall be located by a sequential calculation that starts at the top of each gutter run. At each inlet, the intercepted flow is computed, and the bypass flow is added to the gutter flow arriving at the next inlet. Spacing shall be such that the spread limits of Table 6.2 are met everywhere in the minor design event. In addition:

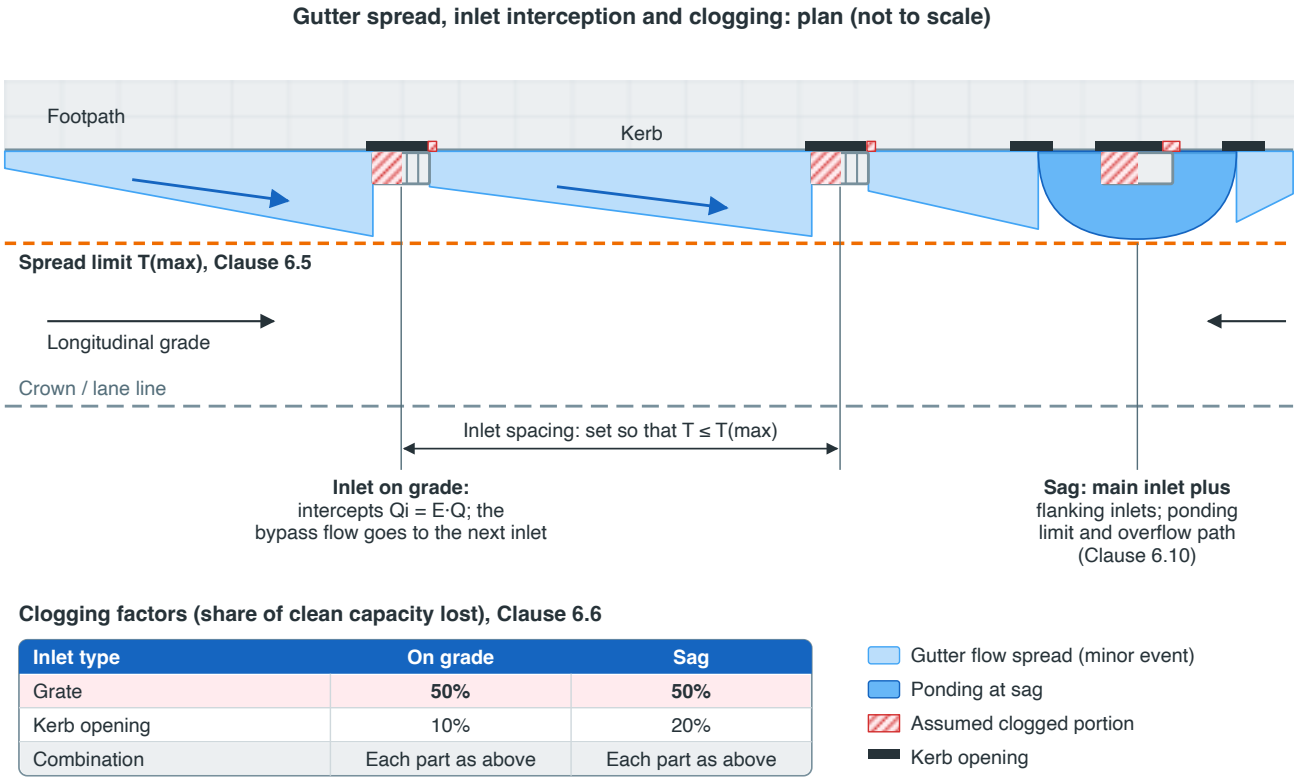
- (a) inlet spacing shall not exceed 30 m on kerbed roads, whatever the calculation gives;
- (b) inlets shall be provided at every sag, immediately upstream of pedestrian crossings and intersections, upstream of bridge decks and superelevation transitions, and at the end of every gutter run;
- (c) bypass flow from the last inlet of a run shall not be passed onto a road of a higher class or into private land.

6.6.5 **Sag inlets.** At a sag on a kerbed road:

- (a) the sag inlet's design capacity (after clogging) shall be not less than the total minor design flow arriving at the sag;
- (b) flanking inlets shall be placed on each side of a sag on any road where ponding could spread beyond the Table 6.2 limits, and at every underpass;
- (c) the ponding at the sag shall comply with Clause 6.10.

6.6.6 **Inlet connections.** The pipe connecting an inlet to the main drain shall have a diameter of at least 300 mm and shall be laid at a gradient that gives at least 0.9 m/s at the inlet's design flow.

6.6.7 **Silt sumps.** Every inlet chamber on a public road shall have a silt sump at least 300 mm deep below the invert of its outlet pipe, accessible for cleaning from the surface.



Inlet type	On grade	Sag
Grate	**50%**	**50%**
Kerb opening	10%	20%
Combination	Each part as above	Each part as above

Figure 6.2 — Gutter spread, inlet interception and clogging. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (3rd ed., 2009; 4th ed., 2024) and CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019).

> Commentary. The clogging factors are more severe than the APWA 5600 (2006, 5604.2) rating of sump inlets at 80% of theoretical capacity (a 20% reduction), because grates in Uttar Pradesh streets are routinely blinded by plastic and leaves. CPHEEO (2019) Part A shows solid waste dumped in drains as a primary cause of drain failure (Figures 1.2 and 2.1). APWA 5600 (2006) allows only kerb-opening inlets on public streets; Clause 6.6.1(a) is less strict because combination inlets are useful on flat roads. The 30 m maximum spacing and the treatment of combination inlets in Table 6.5 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Roads on the Ganga–Yamuna plain are very flat, which shortens the calculated spacing anyway. A fixed cap stops a single blocked inlet from leaving a long dry gutter run. The 300 mm silt sump is set by this Manual. It matches the 0.3 m sump shown on the CPHEEO catch-basin detail (CPHEEO 2019, Figure 5.9).

6.7 Pipes and open and covered drains

6.7.1 **Uniform flow.** Pipe and drain capacity shall be computed with Manning's equation:

> V = (1/n) · R^(2/3) · S^(1/2); Q = A · V

where V is the mean velocity (m/s), n is the Manning roughness (Table 6.6), R is the hydraulic radius (m), S is the friction slope (m/m), A is the flow area (m²) and Q is the discharge (m³/s). Where backwater from a tailwater, a junction or a structure affects the water level, a gradually varied flow (standard step) or hydraulic network model shall be used,

and the HGL requirements of Clause 6.8 apply.

6.7.2 **Manning roughness.** Design values of n shall be taken from Table 6.6. For concrete pipes and masonry or concrete drains, the design value shall be not less than the "fair" or "rough" condition value listed, to allow for sediment, biofilm and ageing.

Table 6.6 — Manning's n for design (from CPHEEO 2019)

Material	Condition	n (CPHEEO)	Minimum design n in this Manual
Cement concrete pipe (collar joints)	Good / fair	0.013 / 0.015	0.015
Spun concrete pipe (RCC, PSC) with S/S joints	Manufacturer's design value	0.011	0.013
HDPE / uPVC pipe	—	0.010	0.011
Plastic (smooth), asbestos cement	—	0.011	0.011
Concrete drain, steel trowelled / wood trowelled	—	0.014 / 0.015	0.015
Sand and cement plaster	—	0.015	0.015
Brick masonry	Good / rough	0.015 / 0.017	0.017
Masonry	Bad condition	0.020	0.020
Rubble set in cement	—	0.017	0.017
Earth channel	Regular, good / ordinary	0.020 / 0.025	0.025
Earth channel	With stones and weeds / poor	0.030 / 0.035	0.035
Earth channel	Partly obstructed by debris or weeds	0.050	0.050
Gutter: concrete	—	0.013	0.013
Gutter: hot-mix asphalt	—	0.015	0.015
Gutter: sprayed seal	—	0.018	0.018

Source of the CPHEEO column: CPHEEO (2019) Part A, Table 5.1 (itself from the CPHEEO Manual on Sewerage and Sewage Treatment Systems, 2013) and Table 5.8 (gutters).

6.7.3 **Velocity limits.** At the minor design flow:

- (a) minimum (self-cleansing) velocity: **0.6 m/s** in open and covered drains and **0.9 m/s** in pipes;
- (b) maximum velocity: **3.0 m/s** in lined drains and in pipes, unless the drain or pipe is designed as a chute under Chapter 9. CPHEEO permits up to 6.0 m/s in plastic or plastic-lined pipes in hilly regions; this may be used in the towns of the Vindhyan plateau in the Mirzapur and Sonbhadra districts and other hill towns with the approving authority's agreement;
- (c) maximum velocity in unlined and vegetated channels: Chapter 9, Table 9.2;
- (d) the Froude number of flow in open and covered drains shall not exceed 0.8 at the design flow, unless the drain is designed for supercritical flow under Chapter 9.

6.7.4 **Gradient.** Each pipe and drain shall be laid at a gradient that achieves Clause 6.7.3(a). Where flat terrain or a fixed outfall level makes this impossible, the designer shall:

- (a) report the velocity achieved;
- (b) double the sediment allowance of Clause 6.7.8; and
- (c) provide access for mechanical desilting at the spacing of Clause 6.13.2.

6.7.5 **Pipe flow condition.** Pipes shall be sized so that the minor design flow does not exceed the pipe-full capacity. The greater discharge that a circular pipe carries at about 0.95 of its depth shall not be relied on.

6.7.6 **Minimum sizes.**

- (a) Pipes: 300 mm internal diameter; **450 mm** for public mains.
- (b) Open drains: bed width 0.3 m.
- (c) Covered public drains (drains closed by cover slabs): clear internal width **0.6 m** and clear internal depth **0.6 m**.

6.7.7 **Cover to pipes.** Pipes shall have at least 0.6 m of cover to finished level, and at least 0.9 m under carriageways unless a structural design for the traffic load is submitted. Where the seasonal high groundwater table is within 1 m of the pipe crown, the pipe shall be checked for flotation with the pipe empty (CPHEEO 2019, Table 11.2) and anchored where necessary.

6.7.8 **Sediment allowance.** The design capacity of open drains, covered drains and pipes of 600 mm diameter or more shall be computed with the following depth of sediment at the invert:

- (a) open and covered drains: the greater of **75 mm** and **10%** of the clear internal depth;
- (b) pipes of 600 mm diameter or more: **5%** of the internal diameter;
- (c) pipes below 600 mm: no allowance, but Clause 6.7.3(a) shall be met.

The Manning n for the reduced section shall be that of the drain material in Table 6.6.

6.7.9 **Freeboard in open and covered drains.** At the minor design flow, the water surface (computed with the sediment allowance) shall be below the top of the drain wall, or below the soffit of the cover slab in a covered drain, by at least the freeboard of Table 6.7.

Table 6.7 — Minimum freeboard in open and covered drains

Drain	Minimum freeboard	Source
Bed width up to 300 mm	100 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.3 (from IRC:SP:50-2013)
Bed width 300–900 mm	150 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.3
Bed width 900–1,500 mm	300 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.3
Wider drains and engineered channels, Q < 3 m³/s	450 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.12 (from IS 7784 (Part 1): 1993)
Q 3 to < 30 m³/s	600 mm	As above
Q 30 to < 300 m³/s	900 mm	As above
Q 300 to < 3,000 m³/s	1,200 mm	As above
Q ≥ 3,000 m³/s	1,500 mm	As above
Any roadside drain	Not less than 150 mm	IRC:SP:42-2014
Steep (supercritical) channels	Equal to the flow depth	CPHEEO 2019 §5.3.2

At bends, the freeboard shall be measured from the water level on the outside of the bend, including the superelevation $\Delta y = V^2 T / (2\,g\,r_c)$, where T is the top width and r_c the centreline radius (CPHEEO 2019, Eq. 5.29).

6.7.10 **Bends and junctions.**

- (a) The centreline radius of a bend in a drain shall be at least 3 times the drain width (CPHEEO 2019 §5.3.3). In engineered channels it shall be at least 2 times the top width and not less than 30 m (CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11).
- (b) Where drains meet, a junction sump shall be provided with an internal width of at least twice the width of the outgoing drain. Incoming drains shall enter at less than a right angle to the outgoing flow, and the outgoing invert shall be below the sump floor so that water does not stand in the sump (CPHEEO 2019 §5.3.4).

6.7.11 **Manholes and access chambers on pipes.** Manholes shall be provided at every junction, change of size, alignment or gradient, and at the head of every pipe. Spacing on straight runs shall not exceed Table 6.8.

Table 6.8 — Maximum spacing of manholes on straight pipe runs

Pipe diameter	Maximum spacing
300–600 mm	40 m
700–1,000 mm	100 m
1,050–1,400 mm	150 m
1,500 mm and above	300 m

Source: CPHEEO 2019 Table 11.5. Manhole sizes, drops and covers: Chapter 9, Clause 9.12.

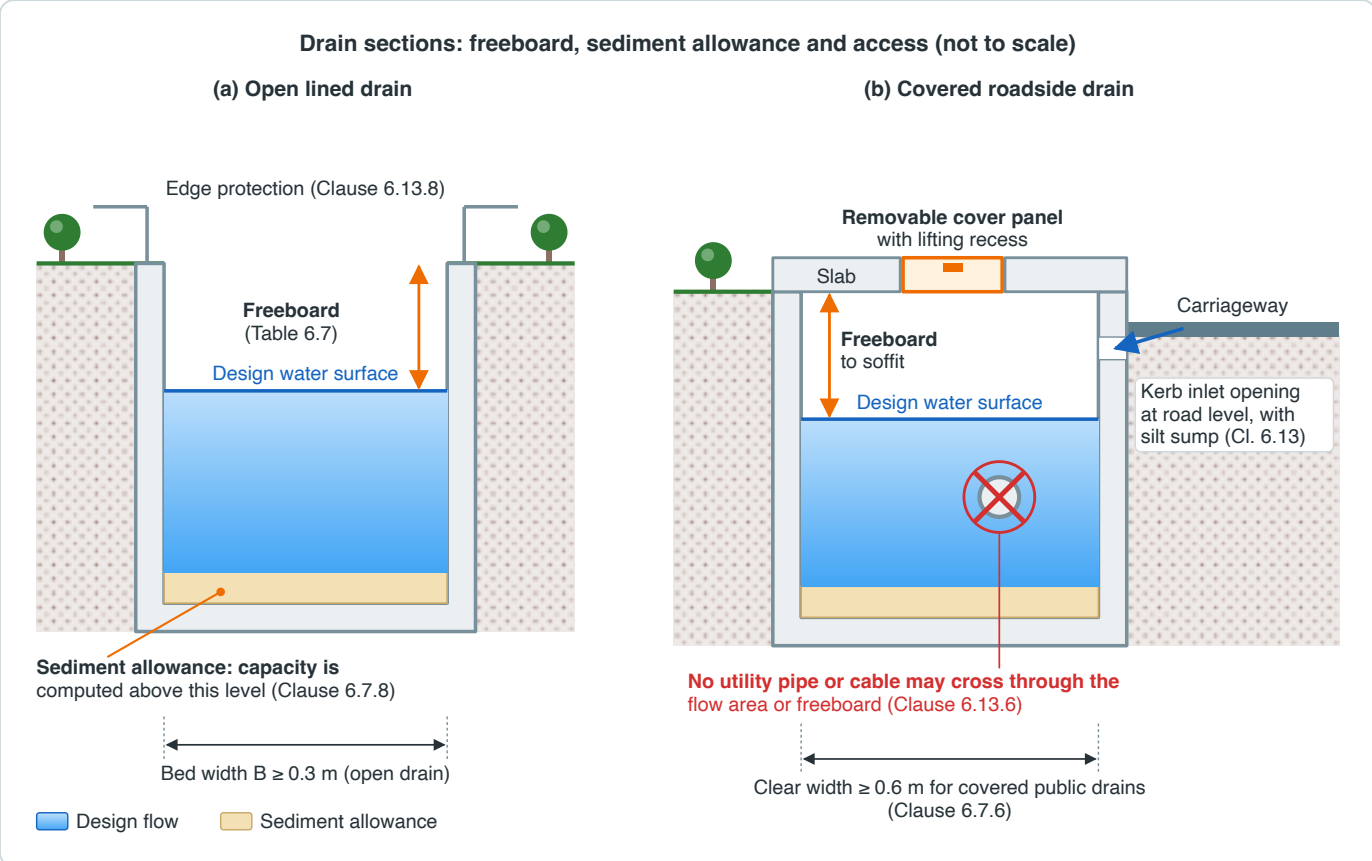


Figure 6.3 — Drain sections: freeboard, sediment allowance and access. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Tables 5.3 and 5.12, and IRC:SP:50-2013.

> **Commentary.** The n values are those of CPHEEO (2019) Table 5.1. The higher minimum design values have no direct precedent; this Manual sets them because CPHEEO notes that the 0.011 value for spun pipes "may be taken as given by the manufacturer". That is a clean-pipe value, and Uttar Pradesh drains carry heavy silt and solid

waste. The 0.6 m/s minimum velocity is CPHEEO's (Table 5.2), based on carrying 0.09 mm sand (§5.3.1). The 0.9 m/s value for pipes is stricter, because a silted pipe cannot be cleaned as easily as an open drain. The 3.0 m/s maximum is from CPHEEO Table 5.2 (WPCF/ASCE 1982). The Froude limit of 0.8 is from CPHEEO §5.3, which advises avoiding critical flow because the water surface becomes unstable.

The 0.6 m × 0.6 m minimum for covered drains has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual. A covered drain narrower than this cannot be desilted by hand or by small machines through a cover opening, and silted, inaccessible drains were a recurring finding after the waterlogging of Prayagraj in August 2026, when only 73.4 mm fell in 24 hours and the Allahabad High Court, acting of its own motion, ordered the waterlogged areas to be pumped out within 24 hours (press reports), and in Lucknow, where the water supply DPR of the Lucknow Municipal Corporation records that LMC "has only one Qila Mohammadi drain to fall back upon" and that it is "blocked at several places" (LMC, AMRUT DPR, 2018). The 0.6 m minimum cover is the value used in the CPHEEO (2019) worked pipe-design computation sheet (Part A, Chapter 5). The 0.9 m cover under carriageways is set by this Manual.

The sediment allowance values (75 mm or 10% for drains, 5% for large pipes) are set by this Manual. No Indian standard sets a sediment allowance for design. Lucknow's experience is that drains run partly full of silt for much of the year, so a capacity computed for a clean section overstates the real capacity.

The CPHEEO freeboard table (Table 5.3) prints the first row as "Beyond 300 mm bed width". Read with the second row ("Beyond 300 mm & up to 900 mm"), the first row must mean "up to 300 mm"; Table 6.7 is written that way. The CPHEEO manhole spacing table (Table 11.5) gives overlapping ranges (700–1,050 mm and 1,000–1,400 mm); Table 6.8 removes the overlap by assigning 1,050 mm to the 150 m class.

6.8 Hydraulic grade line

6.8.1 **HGL analysis.** For every pipe and covered-drain network, the designer shall compute the HGL for the minor design event and for the check event, starting at the outfall and working upstream. The analysis shall include friction losses and losses at junctions, manholes, bends, inlets, outlets and gates.

6.8.2 **Starting water level.** The starting (tailwater) level at the outfall shall be the higher of:

- (a) the tailwater level of Chapter 5: mean high water springs (MHWS) plus the sea-level allowance of +0.3 m for minor-system design at tidal outfalls, and the level in the receiving drain, river or tank for the coincident event at other outfalls; and
- (b) the level computed at the outlet pipe from the critical depth and the pipe diameter, (dc + D)/2, where the receiving water is lower.

6.8.3 **Minor-event limit.** In the minor design event, the HGL shall be at least **0.3 m below** the rim of every inlet and the cover level of every manhole and access chamber.

6.8.4 **Check-event and 1% limit.** In the check event and the 1% AEP event, the HGL may rise above the inlet rims. Water that leaves the minor system shall then be carried by the major system within the limits of Table 6.2 and shall not enter any building. Manholes that can surcharge above ground in these events shall have bolted or locked covers (Chapter 9, Clause 9.12).

6.8.5 **Structure losses.** Losses at manholes and junctions shall be computed by the energy-based access-hole method of FHWA HEC-22 (2009 or 2024 edition), or by an equivalent method in an approved hydraulic model. A simplified loss-coefficient method ($h = K V^2/2g$) with coefficients from HEC-22 may be used for Tier B networks below 16 ha.

6.8.6 **Invert and soffit levels.** Where pipe size increases at a manhole, the soffits (crowns) of the incoming and outgoing pipes shall be matched, or the outgoing soffit set lower. The outgoing invert shall not be higher than the lowest incoming invert. Vertical drops in manholes shall follow Chapter 9, Clause 9.12.

6.8.7 **Gates and valves.** The head loss through flap gates and non-return valves in the open position shall be included in the HGL (Chapter 9, Clause 9.10).

6.8.8 **Private connections.** Building drainage that connects to a public drain whose 1% HGL is above the building's lowest drainage fitting shall have a non-return valve.

> Commentary. The 0.3 m clearance between the minor-event HGL and the inlet rim is set by this Manual. It keeps a margin for losses that a model underestimates, and it stops water from bubbling out of inlets in the event the system is designed for. In Uttar Pradesh most city drains end at a river that can stand above the outfall for days, through a gate or a pump in an embankment: the outfalls inside the Gomti embankments in Lucknow are pumped when the river is high, and at Varanasi the Varuna and the Assi are under the Ganga's backwater when it rises (Clause 5.8.5). Within the city the levels are not continuous: the water supply DPR of the Lucknow Municipal Corporation records that LMC "has only one Qila Mohammadi drain to fall back upon" in the south of the city, and that it is "blocked at several places as the level of drain is lower than that of culverts near Bijnore" (LMC, 2018). A drain whose HGL is started from a free outfall, or computed one length at a time without the culverts and the river, fails in exactly that way. An HGL computed from the outfall, with the tidal tailwater of Chapter 5, exposes those errors at design stage. The MHWS plus 0.3 m starting level is from CPHEEO (2019) Table 6.2. The access-hole method is described in HEC-22 from the 2009 edition onward.

6.9 Major system: overland flow paths, easements and drainage reserves

6.9.1 **Streets as the primary major system.** Streets shall be graded so that the 1% AEP major-system flow is carried along the road reserve to a receiving waterway without being trapped, except at sags designed under Clause 6.10.

6.9.2 **Overland flow paths outside streets.** Where a major-system path leaves the road reserve, it shall be:

- (a) in public land, in the open space of a layout, or in an easement recorded on the layout approval and the title;
- (b) at least as wide as the 1% AEP flow top width plus 0.5 m on each side, and not less than 3.0 m;
- (c) kept free of buildings, compound walls, fences, fill, stored materials and planting that would obstruct flow;
- (d) graded to a continuous fall with no sag that lacks an outlet; and
- (e) within the hazard limits of Table 6.3.

6.9.3 **Compound walls.** A compound wall or fence shall not be built across a mapped overland flow path. Where a wall must cross one, it shall have openings with a total area that passes the 1% AEP flow with a 50% blockage, without raising the upstream water level above the limits of this chapter.

6.9.4 **Access along open drains.** Open drains with a top width of 2 m or more shall have a maintenance access strip at least 3.5 m wide along one bank, connected to a public road at intervals of not more than 500 m.

6.9.5 **Supply channels, surplus courses and tanks.** Tank supply channels and surplus courses are part of the major system and shall be protected under Chapter 7.

6.9.6 **Drainage reserves.** A drainage reserve is a strip of land, including the drain, kept free of buildings so that the drain can be maintained, widened and used as a flood path. A drainage reserve shall be provided:

- (a) along every public drain or channel with an internal width of 1.0 m or more that runs through or along a layout or site being developed or redeveloped;

- (b) along every drain or channel shown in an adopted Basin Stormwater Master Plan (Chapter 11), at the width of the future drain in that plan; and
- (c) along every new public drain with an internal width of 1.0 m or more built by a public body.

6.9.7 **Width.** The reserve shall be not less than the width in Table 6.9, measured from the drain's internal width W. The width is based on the **required** drain size (for a planned drain, the size in the master plan), not the existing size. Where the access strip of Clause 6.9.4 is wider than the margin in Table 6.9, the wider governs.

Table 6.9 — Minimum drainage reserve width (adopted from PUB Singapore)

Internal width of drain, W	Open drain	Closed (covered) drain
1.0 m to 1.2 m	3.0 m	W + 0.6 m
more than 1.2 m to 3.0 m	W + 2.6 m	W + 1.6 m
more than 3.0 m to 4.5 m	W + 3.5 m	W + 1.6 m
more than 4.5 m to 6.0 m	W + 4.5 m	W + 3.0 m
more than 6.0 m to 9.0 m	W + 6.0 m	W + 3.0 m
more than 9.0 m to 25.0 m	W + 7.5 m	W + 3.0 m
more than 25.0 m	W + 12.0 m	W + 3.0 m

For an open drain, the larger part of the margin shall be on the side used for maintenance access.

6.9.8 **Use and protection.**

- (a) The reserve shall be shown as a separate plot on the layout or site plan and transferred to the Approving Authority free of cost, as roads and open space reservations are. Where the drain is an I&WRD channel, the reserve is transferred to I&WRD.
- (b) No building, compound wall, fence, ramp, step, fill or other structure shall be built in the reserve. Compound walls and boundary fences shall stand outside it.
- (c) The access strip in the reserve shall be level and continuous, and connected to a public road. Bollards or posts and chains may be used at entrances to keep out vehicles other than maintenance vehicles.
- (d) Where the reserve is not fenced off, its edge shall be marked with concrete markers at not more than 50 m spacing.
- (e) Services shall cross under the drain, with at least 1.0 m clearance below the invert, or over it on an approved structure. Services shall not run along the reserve inside the drain section.
- (f) A structure within 2 m of the edge of the reserve shall be designed to remain stable when the drain is excavated to 1.0 m below its invert. The design shall be signed by a qualified structural engineer.
- (g) The reserve counts toward the site's open space requirements only where the Approving Authority's rules allow it; it does not reduce any setback required by Chapter 7.

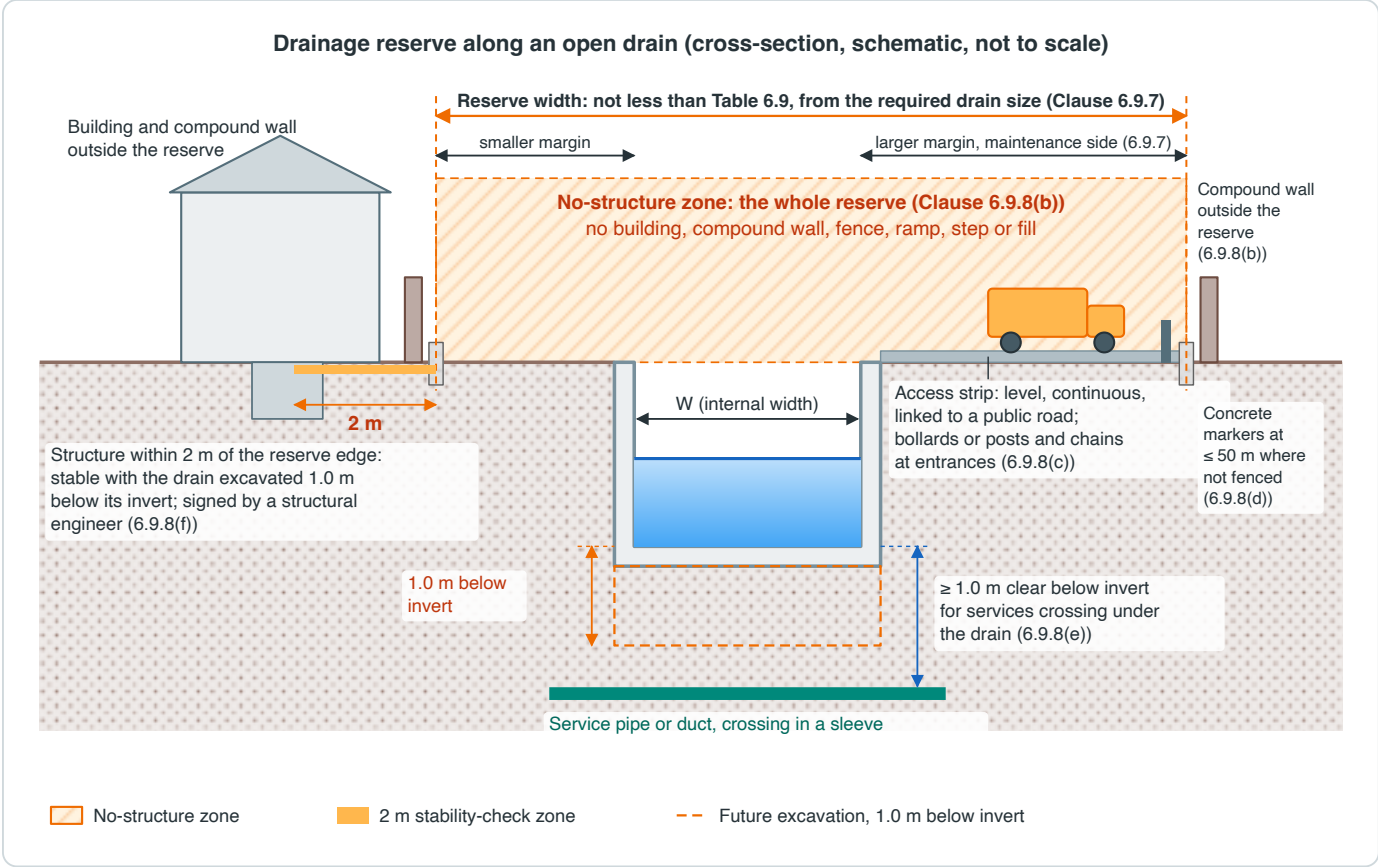


Figure 6.4 — Drainage reserve along an open drain: reserve width from Table 6.9, no-structure zone, access strip on the maintenance side, the 1.0 m service clearance below the invert and the 2 m stability-check zone (Clauses 6.9.6 to 6.9.8). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from PUB Singapore, Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage (7th ed., with Addendum No. 3, 2025), clauses 5.1, 5.3, 9.6 and 9.7 and Appendix 1.

Commentary. Drainage reserves follow Singapore, where "the width of a drainage reserve is based on the required drain size" and the reserve is set aside as a separate plot, "kept free of all encumbrances" (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed. with Addendum No. 3, 2025, cl. 1.1). Table 6.9 reproduces PUB's Appendix 1 widths. Clauses 6.9.8(b) to (f) follow PUB clauses 5.1 (no structure within a drain or drainage reserve), 5.3 and 5.3.1 (stability for excavation 1.0 m below the invert; engineer's calculations within 2 m of the reserve), 9.6 (level, continuous access, with bollards or posts and chains) and 9.7 (markers at a maximum of 50 m). The 1.0 m clearance for services crossing under a drain is from PUB's development-plan guidance. In Uttar Pradesh, buildings and compound walls are often built up to the edge of a drain, so it cannot be widened or desilted by machine. Reserving the land when a plot is developed or redeveloped is the cheapest time to secure it, because widening later needs land acquisition. Basing the width on the master-plan drain size (6.9.6(b)) protects the land a future drain will need. Uttar Pradesh has no statutory width for a reserve along a nala in the rules read for this Manual. The Byelaws 2025 make "Construction done on land covered by ponds/reservoirs, river, drain, etc, identified in Master Plan/Zonal Plan/ Lay-out Plan or recorded in the revenue records" an offence that shall not be compounded (16.3.2(xi)), require the site plan of a layout to show water bodies, flood-affected areas and nalas (2.3.2), require projects of 20,000 m² or more of built-up area to maintain the natural drainage through the site, with "No construction ... on wetland and water bodies" (13.3), and permit only repair and renovation within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga (2.11). None of these gives a width along a nala. The UP Revenue Code 2006 vests the beds of nalas, ponds and tanks in the State (s.54). The only metre values found are for rivers and wetlands: the 200 m of the Byelaws 2025 along the Ganga, the court distances at Prayagraj and along the Gomti, 50 m from the mean high flood level of a notified wetland (Wetlands Rules 2017, r.4(2)(vi)), and the 1-in-100-year floodplains notified by I&WRD along the Ganga and the Yamuna (Chapter 7). This Manual therefore gives the reserve a width, as its own proposal and not as a statutory width: a **hydraulic corridor** made up of the reserve of Table 6.9, based on the drain size needed to carry the design flow (Clause 6.9.7), the access strip of Clause 6.9.4 on the access

bank, and, along a natural drain or a drain of I&WRD that drains 8 ha or more, the setbacks of Clause 7.4 measured from its top of bank, with a Zone 1 of at least 15 m; where a 1% AEP flood extent has been mapped, or I&WRD has notified a 1-in-100-year floodplain, it governs Zone 2. The corridor is set by this Manual. It should be shown in the Master Plans and Zonal Plans made under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973 and in layout plans, so that the bar of the Byelaws 2025 on building over a drain identified in those plans applies to it, rather than made a new NOC.

The reserve matters because the drains of Uttar Pradesh's cities are divided among owners, and no rule divides them. No rule assigning the natural drains to I&WRD and the nalas to the urban local bodies was found during research. For the purposes of this Manual, and until the State issues such a rule [TBC], the drains are assigned as follows: rivers, floodplains, embankments, canals and the drains of canal commands to I&WRD; the nalas and road drains within the limits of an urban local body to its Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat; the internal drains of a colony that has not been handed over to the local body to the development authority or the UP Awas Evam Vikas Parishad that developed it; trunk sewers, interceptors and the tapping of drains to UP Jal Nigam (Urban) or UP Jal Nigam (Rural); highway drains to PWD or NHAI; and the drains of industrial areas to Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA or UPSIDA (set by this Manual). Under Clause 6.9.8(a), the reserve along an I&WRD drain is transferred to I&WRD. Where a channel's status is disputed, the corridor follows the channel and not its name: in Lucknow, the Supreme Court in May 2024 agreed with the High Court that the Akbar Nagar colony stood on the floodplain of the Kukrail, rejecting the plea that the Kukrail is a nala and not a river (press reports). The UDD guideline (Dec 2024) requires every agency working in an urban area to carry out drainage projects only in conformity with the approved Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan, regulated by the Nagar Nigam under the UP Municipal Corporations Act 1959 and the UP Municipalities Act 1916, but no approved master plan was found during research. Until a Basin Stormwater Master Plan is adopted (Clause 6.9.6(b)), the required drain size of Clause 6.9.7 is the size computed by the designer under this chapter. This Manual does not prescribe a lined or an unlined section. It requires the section to meet the velocity limits of Clause 6.7.3 and Chapter 9, and a reserve wide enough for an unlined or vegetated section is a reserve that keeps both options open.

Commentary. Requirements 6.9.2(b)–(e), 6.9.3 and 6.9.4 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Compound walls around individual plots are almost universal in Uttar Pradesh and are one of the most common ways that overland flow paths get blocked. The 50% blockage assumption for wall openings is set to match the grate clogging factor of Clause 6.6.3. The 3.5 m access width is set by this Manual, sized for a small excavator or desilting vehicle. For comparison, APWA 5600 (2006, 5608.4) requires a 15 ft (about 4.6 m) maintenance access strip for detention facilities.

6.10 Ponding at sags and low points

6.10.1 **Minor event.** At every sag, the minor design flow shall be removed by inlets (after clogging) with ponded spread within Table 6.2.

6.10.2 **1% AEP event.** At every sag:

- (a) the ponded depth shall not exceed 350 mm at the deepest point of the carriageway;
- (b) a surface overflow route shall be provided (for example over a lowered kerb and footpath into a designated overland flow path), so that the ponding level cannot rise above the overflow level; and
- (c) building floor levels around the sag shall comply with Clause 6.11.

6.10.3 **Fully-blocked check.** At sags, the 1% AEP ponding level shall also be computed with the minor system fully blocked and all flow leaving by the surface overflow route. Floor levels around the sag shall be set from the higher of the two ponding levels.

6.10.4 **Trapped sags.** Where a sag has no surface overflow route, the inlets and conduits (after clogging) shall carry the 1% AEP flow, and the approving authority shall agree the arrangement.

6.10.5 **Road underpasses.** Underpasses and other trapped sags on public roads shall:

- (a) be drained by a minor system (with pumping under Chapter 9, Clause 9.9, where gravity drainage is not possible) designed for the 2% AEP (50-yr) flow, checked at the 1% AEP flow;
- (b) have flanking inlets at both approaches to intercept flow before it reaches the low point;
- (c) be protected from inflow from surrounding streets by raised approach crests where practicable; and
- (d) have depth markers and automatic warning or closure signals that operate at 150 mm depth on the carriageway.

> Commentary. The fully-blocked check, the trapped-sag rule and the underpass requirements have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Clause 6.10.5(d) links the 150 mm crown depth limit of Table 6.2 to the point at which traffic should stop.

6.11 Building floor levels

6.11.1 The lowest habitable floor, and every opening through which water could enter a building (doors, ventilators, basement ramps, lift pits and service entries), shall be at least **0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level**.

6.11.2 The 1% AEP flood level is the highest of:

- (a) the 1% AEP major-system water level in the street or overland flow path next to the building (Clauses 6.9 and 6.10, including the fully-blocked check at sags);
- (b) the 1% AEP flood level of any river, channel, tank or waterbody (Chapter 7); and
- (c) the 1% AEP level with the tailwater of Chapter 5; and
- (d) where the Approving Authority has adopted a 1% AEP flood depth map under Clause 7.3.4, the ground level at the plot plus the mapped 1% AEP depth.

6.11.3 **Default where no level has been computed.** For a plot below the Chapter 1 thresholds, or where no 1% AEP level has been computed for the plot, the lowest habitable floor and openings shall be at least the higher of:

- (a) **0.65 m above the highest crown level of the road on which the plot fronts**; and
- (b) where an adopted 1% AEP flood depth map covers the plot, **the ground level plus the mapped 1% AEP depth plus 0.5 m**.

The Approving Authority may adopt a regional map, such as a State-approved map or a published national map of modelled 1% AEP flood depth (for example the India Flood Atlas), until a local study replaces it. A map that does not model storm surge shall not be used in place of Clause 6.11.6.

6.11.4 **Basements.** The crest of every basement ramp and the sill of every basement opening shall meet Clause 6.11.1. Basement drainage shall be pumped to the surface drain through a non-return valve.

6.11.5 **Services.** Electrical panels, transformers, standby generators, lift machinery and pumps that serve a building shall meet Clause 6.11.1.

6.11.6 **Coastal band.** The coastal band is the land within **500 m** landward of the High Tide Line along the sea front, as defined by the CRZ Notification, 2019, with the High Tide Line as demarcated in the approved Coastal Zone Management Plan. Where the Survey of India Hazard Line lies further inland than 500 m, the band extends to the Hazard Line. Within the coastal band, in addition to Clauses 6.11.1 to 6.11.5:

- (a) the lowest habitable floor and every opening shall also be at least **0.5 m above the coastal flood level**, which is the 1% AEP still-water level (Clause 5.7.3(b), Annex 5A) plus **twice** the sea-level allowance of Clause 5.7.4 (so at least 0.6 m), because buildings have a design life of more than 50 years (Clause 5.7.4(c));
- (b) where the plot fronts the open beach, the coastal flood level shall include wave set-up from a site study;
- (c) no habitable room, electrical service room or plant listed in Clause 6.11.5 shall be placed in a basement; and
- (d) every basement opening, ramp crest and ventilation opening shall meet Clause 6.11.6(a).

Clause 6.11.6 does not authorise any construction that the CRZ Notification prohibits. Where both apply, the stricter governs.

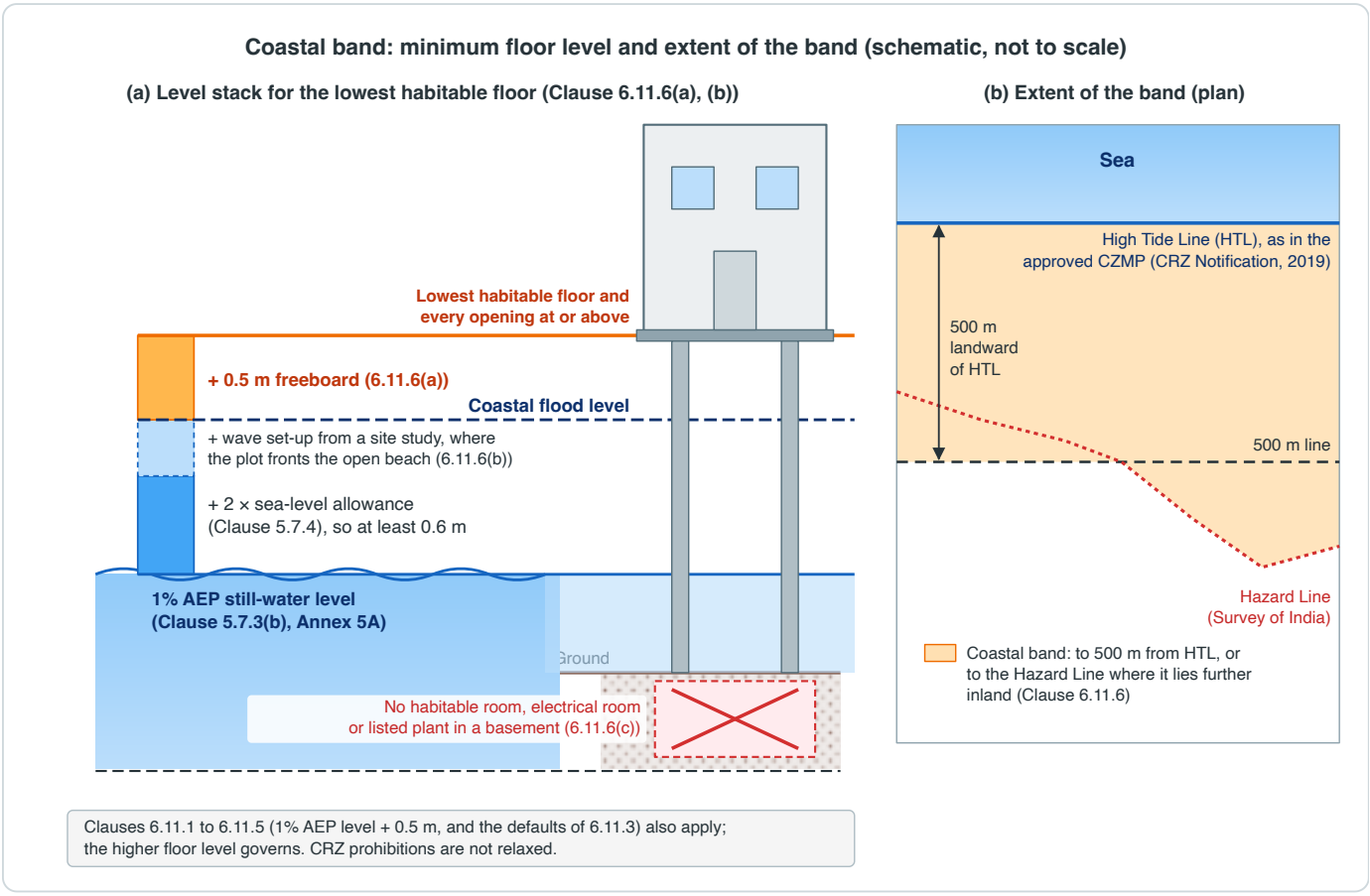


Figure 6.5 — Coastal band: the minimum floor level built up from the 1% AEP still-water level, twice the sea-level allowance, wave set-up where the plot fronts the open beach and 0.5 m freeboard; and the extent of the band, to 500 m from the High Tide Line or to the Hazard Line where it lies further inland (Clause 6.11.6). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the CRZ Notification, 2019 (para 1(i) and Annexure IV) and PUB Singapore, Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage (7th ed.), cl. 2.1.1.

Commentary. The 0.5 m freeboard above the 1% AEP level follows the DID Malaysia 2008 checklist (platform and lowest floor at 100-yr ARI + 0.5 m). It is more than the APWA 5600 (2006, 5601.8 A2) requirement of 1 ft (about 0.3 m) above the 1% stage. The 0.65 m default in Clause 6.11.3 is derived from the other limits of this chapter, not separately sourced: the 1% water level at the crown may be up to 150 mm (Table 6.2), plus the 0.5 m freeboard. It has no direct precedent and applies to plots where no flood level exists. URDPFI (2015) also links minimum plinth levels to flood frequency in its flood-plain zoning, which is covered in Chapter 7.

Clause 6.11.3(b) lets a small plot use a mapped 1% AEP depth where no local study exists, instead of guessing from the road level alone. Modelled national maps are coarse (about 30 m), and most model rainfall and river flooding but not storm surge, which is why 6.11.3 keeps the road-crown check and Clause 6.11.6 sets a separate coastal rule.

The coastal band of Clause 6.11.6 uses the 500 m line of the CRZ Notification, 2019 (G.S.R. 37(E), para 1(i): "the land area from High Tide Line ... to 500 meters on the landward side"), because every coastal authority already maps it and it needs no new survey. The Hazard Line, demarcated by the Survey of India to show the extent of flooding and shoreline change, extends the band where it lies further inland (CRZ Notification, 2019, Annexure IV). The band takes the coastal level from the joint-case still-water level of Chapter 5 rather than from the rainfall map. The higher standard reflects the setting: a coastal flood rises with the sea, cannot be drained while the tide is up, and will rise further with the sea. Singapore takes the same approach with a fixed minimum platform level of 4.0 m above datum on its southern coast and 4.5 m on its northern coast, whatever the rainfall flood level (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., cl. 2.1.1). Each coastal State's tide and surge levels vary too much along its coast for one fixed level, so this Manual uses the computed still-water level instead. Using twice the sea-level allowance applies the sensitivity case of Clause 5.7.4(c) as the design case, because a building, unlike a drain, cannot easily be raised later. The basement restriction in 6.11.6(c) is set by this Manual: a basement in the coastal band fills from the sea as well as from rain, and cannot be pumped out to a tide-locked outfall. Uttar Pradesh has no coast, no High Tide Line and no Coastal Regulation Zone, so the coastal band is empty in the State and Clause 6.11.6 does not apply there. Clauses 6.11.3 and 6.11.4 matter instead. The Byelaws 2025 set a minimum plinth of 0.30 m above the surrounding ground (3.3.1.21), and for basements require only that "surface water does not enter the basement" (3.3.3.2(iv)); they do not restrict basements in flood-affected areas, although a layout's site plan must show those areas (2.3.2). Clause 6.11.3, which sets the lowest habitable floor and every opening 0.65 m above the road crown where no flood level has been computed, and Clause 6.11.4, which applies the same level, or 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level, to the crest of every basement ramp and the sill of every basement opening, are set by this Manual and are stricter than the Byelaws 2025. The building regulations of Noida, Greater Noida and YEIDA, made under the UP Industrial Area Development Act 1976, were not read for this Manual [TBC].

6.12 Culverts and road crossings

6.12.1 **Design AEP.** A culvert or bridge that carries a road over a drain or waterway shall pass the design AEP flow of Table 6.1 for that road class without overtopping the road, and with the headwater limits of Chapter 9, Clause 9.4. Where the waterway is a State highway or national highway crossing, the design AEP shall also be not less than that of IRC:SP:42-2014 §7.1.4 for the span. The rarer AEP governs.

6.12.2 **Check event and 1% AEP.** At the check event and at the 1% AEP event, the crossing and the road together shall pass the flow:

- (a) with overtopping depth ≤ 150 mm at the road crown and ≤ 350 mm at the deepest point of the road;
- (b) within the hazard limits of Table 6.3;
- (c) with no overtopping at all of arterial roads that are notified evacuation routes; and
- (d) without raising the 1% AEP flood level at any upstream building or property boundary above the level for the existing condition, unless the affected owners and the approving authority agree.

6.12.3 **Where overtopping is not permitted.** Overtopping in the 1% AEP event is permitted only where the structure span is less than 6 m **and** the 1% AEP peak flow is not more than 7 m^3/s, unless a guard rail is installed downstream of the overtopping section. Otherwise, the crossing shall pass the 1% AEP flow without overtopping.

6.12.4 **Blockage check.** The 1% AEP check shall be repeated with a blocked inlet:

- (a) 50% of the inlet area blocked for culverts with a span or diameter below 1.5 m; and

- (b) 20% blocked for larger culverts.

The results of this check shall meet Clause 6.12.2(a) and (d).

6.12.5 **Minimum size.** Culverts under public roads shall be at least 900 mm in diameter, or 900 mm × 900 mm for box culverts.

6.12.6 **Hydraulic design.** Culvert hydraulics, including inlet and outlet control, tailwater, road overtopping and outlet protection, shall follow Chapter 9, Clauses 9.4 and 9.6.

> Commentary. The design AEPs are those of Table 6.1. The overtopping limits are the street-depth limits of Table 6.2. The span and flow threshold in Clause 6.12.3 is the SI conversion of APWA 5600 (2006): overtopping allowed only where the structure span is under 20 ft and the 1% peak is 250 cfs or less, unless a downstream guard fence is installed. IRC:SP:42-2014 (§7.1.4) sets 25-yr for NH/SH culverts up to 2 m span and 50-yr for 2–6 m spans. The blockage percentages in Clause 6.12.4 and the 900 mm minimum size have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 50% value matches the grate clogging factor.

6.13 Uttar Pradesh construction-practice requirements

6.13.1 **Covered roadside drains.** Where a roadside drain is covered by slabs that form a footpath:

- (a) it shall be designed as an open channel with the freeboard of Table 6.7 measured to the soffit of the cover slab, and its HGL shall meet Clause 6.8 measured to the footpath and inlet levels;
- (b) road runoff shall enter through openings in the drain wall at road level (Clause 6.6.1(b)), each with a silt sump (Clause 6.6.7), at the spacing of Clause 6.6.4;
- (c) footpath runoff shall enter through slots or grated openings in the cover, not by ponding on the footpath; and
- (d) the clear section shall meet Clause 6.7.6(c).

6.13.2 **Removable covers and access openings.** Covered drains shall have:

- (a) removable cover panels at not more than **10 m** centres, each at least 0.6 m long and spanning the full clear width, with recessed lifting points, liftable by two workers or by a hand-operated lifting device, and flush with the footpath;
- (b) access chambers with a clear opening of at least 0.6 m × 0.6 m at every junction, bend and change of section, and at not more than **30 m** centres on straight runs; and
- (c) covers rated for the traffic or pedestrian load at their location (Chapter 9, Clause 9.11).

6.13.3 **Silt traps.** In addition to the inlet sumps of Clause 6.6.7, silt trap chambers shall be provided:

- (a) upstream of every culvert under an arterial road;
- (b) upstream of every pump station and detention facility; and
- (c) at every outfall to a tank, river or other waterbody (with the gross pollutant trap required by Chapter 8).

Each silt trap shall be sized to hold the sediment expected between scheduled cleanings, using the sediment yield in Annex 6B, and shall be reachable by a desilting vehicle.

6.13.4 **Garbage and gross pollutant screens.** Screens shall be provided where an open drain enters a covered drain, a pipe or a culvert, and at outfalls under Chapter 8. Each screen shall:

- (a) be designed under Chapter 9, Clause 9.8;
- (b) have a bypass or overflow, so that a fully blinded screen does not flood properties or the road beyond the limits of this chapter; and

- (c) be checked hydraulically with 50% of its area blocked.

6.13.5 **No building over drains.** No structure other than an approved crossing or a removable cover shall be built over a public drain. Shop frontages, ramps and steps that cross a drain shall be removable or shall leave access openings that meet Clause 6.13.2.

6.13.6 **Utilities.** No water main, sewer, power or telecom cable, gas pipe or duct shall be laid along, or pass through, the flow area or freeboard of any drain. A utility that must cross a drain shall:

- (a) cross above the cover soffit or below the drain invert, inside a sleeve; and
- (b) be shown on the drainage plan with its level.

Where an existing utility crossing obstructs a drain, its area shall be deducted from the drain section, with a 50% blockage allowance for the debris it traps, until the utility is relocated. The utility owner shall relocate it when the drain is rebuilt.

6.13.7 **Sewage.** No sewage connection is permitted to a storm drain (Chapter 8). Covered drains shall be built with sealed joints where they run next to sewers.

6.13.8 **Edge protection.** Open drains deeper than 1.0 m beside a footpath, a carriageway or a public open space shall have railings or barriers. Open drains of any depth shall not be left uncovered across a footpath.

6.13.9 **As-built levels.** The as-built invert levels of every public drain, pipe and manhole shall be surveyed and submitted (Chapter 10). Inverts shall be within ±15 mm of design. An HGL re-check shall be submitted where they are not.

6.13.10 **Desilting.** Public drains shall be desilted before the south-west monsoon each year, as set out in Chapter 10.

> Commentary. Clause 6.13 has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it on the basis of Uttar Pradesh practice. Most urban drains in the State are covered roadside drains under footpaths. They are often built with continuous cast-in-situ slabs and few openings, so they cannot be cleaned and fill with silt and solid waste within a season. CPHEEO (2019) notes that uncovered channels "are prone to the dumping of garbage" (Part A, Ch 2), which is why the drains are covered. Covering without access openings simply moves the problem out of sight. NDMA (2010) recommends that pre-monsoon desilting be complete by 31 March. In Uttar Pradesh the south-west monsoon normally reaches the east of the State on 20 June and covers it by 30 June, and normally withdraws by 10 October (IMD); in 2025 it set in on 18 June and withdrew on 13 October. June is already wet in the north-east terai, with June normals of about 188 mm at Gorakhpur and 181 mm at Bahraich, and very large storms have fallen at or before onset, such as 487.2 mm at Gonda on 12 June 1984 (IMD). So Clause 6.13.10 refers to the south-west monsoon, Chapter 10 sets the 31 May deadline, the gates, pumps and standby generators are checked by 15 June (Clauses 5.11.5 and 5.12.9), the date by which I&WRD is reported to complete its flood-protection works, and pumps stay on standby until 15 October, the end of the period in which I&WRD's flood control rooms are reported to operate (press reports). No desilting deadline of UDD or of any Nagar Nigam was found during research [TBC], so the 31 May date is set by this Manual.
>
> The Byelaws 2025 require that "drains shall be an integral part of the road" with "sufficient slope so that water can drain automatically" (3.1.3.5), and roof drainage pipes may be connected to a drain or road gutter (3.3.1.7). Natural drains and the drains of I&WRD are open channels with a drainage reserve (Clause 6.9), and should not be covered, decked or built over; the Byelaws 2025 already make construction on a drain identified in a plan or recorded in the revenue records non-compoundable (16.3.2(xi)). Where a drain is covered, Clause 6.13.2 applies to it in full.
>
> Clause 6.13.7 is not yet the practice. Most city nalas in Uttar Pradesh carry sewage, and the State's main response has been to intercept them at the outfall under Namami Gange: at Prayagraj 39 of 81 drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna were reported untapped before the Kumbh of 2025, and in Lucknow 28 of 45 drains to the

> Gomti were reported untapped or partly tapped (press reports). Clause 8.9 sets how dry-weather flow in storm drains is surveyed and intercepted until the connections are removed, including the rule that interception shall not reduce the capacity of the drain (Clause 8.9.5(b)).
>
> The 10 m and 30 m spacings and the ±15 mm tolerance have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Clause 6.13.6 responds to the common sight of water mains and cables running through drains. Each one traps debris and reduces the section. Mechanical cleaning through cover openings, rather than manual entry, is assumed throughout, consistent with the Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013.

6.14 Outfalls

6.14.1 Outfalls shall be designed for the tailwater conditions of Chapter 5. Outfalls below the 1% AEP still-water level shall have flap or tide gates or non-return valves (Chapter 5 and Chapter 9, Clause 9.10).

6.14.2 Outfall protection and energy dissipation shall be designed under Chapter 9, Clause 9.6. Outfalls to tanks and waterbodies shall also meet Chapters 7 and 8.

6.15 Submittal requirements

Every conveyance submittal shall include a **Conveyance Design Report** (Form 6-1) containing:

1. a catchment plan showing sub-catchments, the minor system, inlet locations and the major-system overland flow paths for the 1% AEP event (Clause 6.3.2);
2. the land-use and road-class AEP adopted for each element (Table 6.1), and the high-density area status;
3. design flows, with the rainfall sheet of Chapter 2 and the method of Chapter 3;
4. gutter spread, depth and D·V checks for the minor, check and 1% events (Tables 6.2 and 6.3);
5. an inlet schedule with clean capacity, clogging factor, design capacity and bypass flow (Clause 6.6);
6. pipe and drain design tables with n, velocity, sediment allowance and freeboard (Clause 6.7);
7. HGL profiles for the minor and check events, with the tailwater used (Clause 6.8);
8. sag ponding levels, including the fully-blocked check (Clause 6.10);
9. a floor-level schedule for every building (Clause 6.11);
10. culvert and crossing calculations (Clause 6.12 and Chapter 9); and
11. a utilities-crossing schedule and access-opening layout for covered drains (Clause 6.13).

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems*, Volume I, Part A: Engineering Design. Tables 4.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.8, 5.11, 5.12, 6.2, 11.2, 11.5; §5.3, §5.6.2, Fig. 5.9. https://www.mohua.gov.in/static/uploads/2025/10/8a2456c722036d78c72a698898ef846d.pdf
- PUB Singapore (2018, with Addendum No. 3, April 2025). *Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage*, 7th edition. Clauses 1.1, 2.1.1, 5.1, 5.3, 9.6, 9.7 and Appendix 1 (Drainage Reserve Requirements). https://www.pub.gov.sg/-/media/PUB/PDF/Code-of-Practices-and-Submission-Guidelines/Surface-Water-Drainage/Code-of-Practice-on-Surface-Water-Drainage.pdf
- Indian Roads Congress (2013). IRC:SP:50-2013, *Guidelines on Urban Drainage* (First Revision). https://law.resource.org/pub/in/bis/irc/irc.gov.in.sp.050.2013.pdf
- Indian Roads Congress (2014). IRC:SP:42-2014, *Guidelines on Road Drainage* (First Revision). https://law.resource.org/pub/in/bis/irc/irc.gov.in.sp.042.2014.pdf
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 7784 (Part 1): 1993, *Code of practice for design of cross drainage works, Part 1: General features* (as cited in CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.12).
- Federal Highway Administration (2024). *Urban Drainage Design Manual*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 22, 4th edition, FHWA-HIF-24-006. (3rd edition 2009, FHWA-NHI-10-009.)
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). *Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities* (5601.8, 5604.2, 5608.4). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf ; and Version 2025.01 (Dec 2025).
- Australian Institute for Disaster Resilience (2014). *Australian Disaster Resilience Guideline 7-3: Technical flood risk management guideline: Flood hazard*. Tables 1 and 2. https://knowledge.aidr.org.au/media/1891/guideline-7-3-technical-flood-risk-management.pdf
- Smith, G.P. and Wasko, C.D. (2012). *Australian Rainfall and Runoff Revision Project 15: Two-dimensional modelling in urban and rural floodplains*. Engineers Australia.
- Ball, J. et al. (eds) (2019). *Australian Rainfall and Runoff: A Guide to Flood Estimation*, Book 6 (Chapters 6 and 7). Commonwealth of Australia (Geoscience Australia).
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). *Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management*; and (2012) *Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA)*, 2nd edition.
- Gupta, K. *Return Period and Rainfall Intensity for Drainage Design in India*. IIT Bombay. https://www.civil.iitb.ac.in/~kgupta/drainagedesign.pdf
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). *Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines* (in Hindi), file dated 24 December 2024 (no integrated urban drainage plan; drains designed for a 1–2-year return period; Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plans; regulation by the Nagar Nigam). https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Agra Smart City. *Improvements to Taj East Drain*, Detailed Project Report, Chapter 9 (design rainfall). https://agrasmartcity.in/pdf/wc13581914%20Improvements%20to%20Taj%20East%20Drain.pdf
- Lucknow Municipal Corporation (2018). *AMRUT Detailed Project Report*, 22 May 2018, §2.1.7 (the Qila Mohammadi drain; a water supply DPR, not a drainage plan). https://lmc.up.nic.in/pdf/amrut/DPRLucknow22052018.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 and 11 September 2023 (24-hour rainfall at Gorakhpur and Lucknow). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow (2025). *Southwest Monsoon Report 2025 for Uttar Pradesh* (normal onset and withdrawal; 2025 dates). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/swreport.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. *Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012)*, Uttar Pradesh pages (Gonda, 12 June 1984). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf

- Press reports on the Prayagraj waterlogging of August 2026 and the Allahabad High Court's suo motu order (LiveLaw), https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/prayagraj-waterlogging-allahabad-hc-pumps-24-hours-municipal-corporation-546731 ; on the Akbar Nagar demolitions on the Kukrail floodplain (LiveLaw, May 2024), https://www.livelaw.in/top-stories/supreme-court-lucknow-akbarnagar-demolitions-eviction-upheld-slum-dwellers-alternative-accommodation-257604 ; on I&WRD's 15 June deadline for flood-protection works (PTI via The Week, 16 May 2025), https://www.theweek.in/wire-updates/national/2025/05/16/des87-up-adityanath-flood-prep.html ; on the flood control rooms of 15 June to 15 October (Free Press Journal, 2026), https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/up-govt-strengthens-4000-km-embankments-ahead-of-monsoon-to-prevent-flood-damage ; on the drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna at Prayagraj before the Kumbh of 2025 (The Statesman), https://www.thestatesman.com/india/up-jal-nigam-adopts-geotube-technology-to-treat-drains-ahead-of-maha-kumbh-2025-1503376493.html ; and on the drains to the Gomti in Lucknow (Free Press Journal), https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/up-plans-45-drain-sewage-control-network-to-clean-gomti-river-in-lucknow-under-namami-gange
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). *National Guidelines: Management of Urban Flooding*.
- MoHUA / TCPO (2015). *URDPFI Guidelines*, Volume I.
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (2019). *Coastal Regulation Zone Notification, 2019*, G.S.R. 37(E), 18 January 2019. Para 1(i) and Annexure IV. https://crz.elaw.in/crz2019.html
- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025, July 2025, approving the *Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025* and the Model Zoning Regulations 2025 under ss.57 and 13(2) of the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973 (English text: *Model Building Construction and Development Byelaws and Model Zoning Regulations for Development Authorities of Uttar Pradesh, 2025*), 2.3.2, 2.11, 3.1.3.5, 3.3.1.7, 3.3.1.21, 3.3.3.2, 13.3 and 16.3.2. https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- *Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006*, s.54 (text updated to 5 March 2021). https://www.lbsnaa.gov.in/storage/uploads/pdf_data/1742473203_Uttar%20Pradesh%20Revenue%20Code%202006%20updated%20till%2005.03.2021.pdf
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (2017). *Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017*, r.4(2)(vi), as quoted by CPCB in NGT O.A. 1057/2024. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf
- Government of India. *The Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013*.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
6A	Standard inlet types for Uttar Pradesh with capacity curves (on grade and sag)
6B	Sediment yield for silt-trap sizing and calibration of the sediment allowance
6C	Standard drawings: covered roadside drain with removable covers, access chamber, inlet with silt sump
Form 6-1	Conveyance Design Report checklist

CHAPTER 7

Waterbodies, Tals (Ponds) and Setbacks

7.1 Purpose and scope

7.1.1 This chapter treats waterbodies as part of the drainage system. It sets the rules for:

- (a) identifying and mapping every waterbody that a development or public work affects;
- (b) the setback zones around waterbodies, and the uses allowed in each zone;
- (c) fill in flood-prone land, and the compensatory storage needed where fill is allowed;
- (d) counting tank (tal) storage, including tank cascades, as design storage;
- (e) restoring and desilting tanks and ponds;
- (f) protecting supply channels, surplus courses, inlets and outlets;
- (g) wetlands, marshes and estuaries, which in Uttar Pradesh, with no coast and no tidal water, means the wetlands notified under the 2017 Rules, such as Ramgarh Tal in Gorakhpur, the large tals and jheels, the marshy low land (kachhar) and depressions of the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Rapti, the Ghaghra and the Hindon, and the tals, talabs and pokhars recorded in the Revenue records;
- (h) the interface with encroachment and its removal;
- (i) fee-in-lieu contributions to regional tank storage (with Chapter 4); and
- (j) the safety of tank bunds and other embankments.

7.1.2 This chapter applies to every development and public work to which this Manual applies under Chapter 1 and that:

- (a) adjoins a waterbody or lies wholly or partly within its setback (Clause 7.4);
- (b) discharges to a waterbody, directly or through a drain, within the downstream analysis extent of Chapter 5; or
- (c) alters a waterbody, its bund, sluice, surplus weir, supply channel or surplus course.

7.1.3 Where a statute or statutory rule sets a wider setback or a stricter restriction, the statute governs (Clause 1.3.3). Nothing in this chapter authorises any work that the UP Revenue Code, 2006 (sections 54, 61, 67 and 77), the UP Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973 and the Byelaws 2025 made under it, the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019, the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, or any other law, prohibits.

> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh has no Act for the protection of tanks or ponds as such. Its tals, talabs and pokhars are protected instead by the land-revenue law, the courts and the planning rules. The UP Revenue Code, 2006 vests "the bed of rivers, streams, nallas, lakes, ponds and tanks" and "all standing and flowing water" in the State (s. 54); lets tanks and ponds be entrusted to the Gram Panchayat (s. 59); reserves every village tank of 0.5 acre or less "for public use by the inhabitants of the village", where "the term 'tank', includes talab, pond, pokhar and other land covered with water" (s. 61); bars any bhumidhari right in "land covered by a pond, tank or lake, or forming part of an embankment, bandh or bhita" (s. 77(1)(i)), whose class may be changed only "in exceptional cases" with equivalent land reserved nearby (s. 77(2)); and provides for eviction and compensation from those who occupy Gram Panchayat land (s. 67). In *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi* (2001) the Supreme Court held that where "a pond exists and the area covered by it varies in rainy season … no part of it could have been allotted to anybody for construction", called tanks and ponds "nature's bounty" that "need to be protected", and directed the State to "restore the pond". The Allahabad High Court identifies ponds from the revenue record of 1 July 1952, the date of

vesting (*Iqbal Ahmad*, 2007, as cited), and in October 2025 ordered action across the State against encroachment on ponds and public land, with a warning of contempt to Pradhans, Lekhpals and Tahsildars (as reported). The Byelaws 2025 make construction on "ponds/reservoirs, river, drain, etc" identified in a Master Plan, Zonal Plan or layout plan, or recorded in the revenue records, a non-compoundable offence (cl. 16.3.2(xi)), and for large projects add that "No construction is allowed on wetland and water bodies" (cl. 13.3). The UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 bars polluting ponds (s. 29) and directs that ponds be revived (s. 34); the Urban Development Department's storm water drainage guideline (December 2024) asks each city drainage master plan to integrate "existing detention ponds, lakes" and to rejuvenate them; and the State has built more Amrit Sarovars than any other (16,630 completed by March 2025, as reported). Wetlands notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 are regulated by the **UP State Wetland Authority**. This chapter gives the design rules that protect waterbody storage and conveyance. It does not replace the revenue, planning, wetland and floodplain procedures that record and protect waterbodies in law, or the directions of the Allahabad High Court, the National Green Tribunal and the Supreme Court.

7.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Waterbody	A river (such as the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Rapti and the Hindon), natural drain or nala, canal, lake or jheel (jhil), tal or pond (tal, talab, pokhar, johad), Amrit Sarovar or other excavated pond, marsh or low wet land, floodplain wetland or depression (in the khadar or kachhar), recharge reservoir of a layout, abandoned quarry or borrow pit, supply channel or surplus course, perennial or seasonal (as in Chapter 1).
Tank (tal)	A waterbody impounded by an earthen bund, fed by its own catchment and/or a supply channel, with a surplus weir and one or more sluices.
Tank cascade	A chain of tanks in which the surplus or sluice outflow of one tank feeds the next (as in Chapter 3).
Full tank level (FTL)	The crest level of the surplus weir (overflow, outlet or spillway) of a tank, or the permanent crest of its regulating structure. The tank holds water up to FTL without spilling.
Maximum water level (MWL)	The highest water level in a tank when the surplus weir passes the tank's design flood. For this Manual, it is the greater of the level recorded by the I&WRD and the level computed for the 1% AEP (100-yr) inflow with the climate factor of Clause 2.8 (Clause 7.7.4).
Top bund level (TBL)	The crest level of the tank bund.
Waterspread	The area of a tank submerged at FTL.
Foreshore	The land around a tank between the FTL contour and the MWL contour. Foreshore land is flooded whenever the tank surpluses, and is part of the tank's flood storage.
Supply channel (feeder channel, nala or canal)	A channel that brings water from a river, anicut or upstream tank into a tank.
Surplus course	The channel that carries the overflow of a surplus weir to the next tank, a river, a drain or the sea.
Sluice (sluice, regulator or flap gate)	A controlled outlet through a tank bund, usually to an irrigation channel.
Top of bank	For a channel, the break in slope at the edge of the channel. Where it cannot be identified, the edge of the water surface at the 50% AEP (2-yr) flow.
1% AEP flood extent	The land flooded by the 1% AEP (100-yr) flood with the climate factor of Clause 2.8, from a hydraulic model that meets Chapter 3 and Chapter 5, or from a map adopted by the Authority under Clause 7.3.4.
Floodway	The waterbody and the adjoining land that must be kept free of obstruction to pass the 1% AEP flood without raising the 1% AEP water level by more than **0.1 m** at any point (Clause 7.6.1). For a tank, all land below MWL.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Flood fringe	The part of the 1% AEP flood extent outside the floodway.
Zone 1 (waterbody protection zone)	The inner setback zone defined in Clause 7.4.3.
Zone 2 (flood fringe setback)	The outer setback zone defined in Clause 7.4.4.
Setback	Zone 1 and Zone 2 together.
Compensatory storage	Excavated storage that replaces flood storage lost to fill, under Clause 7.6.4.
Flood cushion	Storage below FTL kept empty, under a documented operating rule, to absorb a flood (Clause 7.8).

Uttar Pradesh terms. The following terms are used in this chapter in addition to those above (see also Annex 7E):

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Tal (ताल; talab, pokhar)	A natural or excavated depression that stores rainfall runoff: in the Hindi Shabdasagara, low ground or a long, wide hollow in which rainwater collects (Annex 7E). Talab and pokhar are synonyms, and all three are a "tank" under section 61 of the UP Revenue Code, 2006. A tal is a tank or pond under Clause 7.2. Most tals have no surplus weir or sluice; where a tal has none, its FTL is the level at which it spills to a nali, a nala or low ground, found by survey.
Monsoon water line	The outer edge of a tal's water in the monsoon: the larger of the edge shown by dated imagery or survey of the monsoon (July to September) in recent years and the edge recorded in the Revenue records, and where neither is available, the MWL contour. Because "the area covered by it varies in rainy season" and no part of that area may be allotted for building (*Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, Supreme Court, 2001), the boundary of a tal under Clauses 7.3.3 and 7.13.1 is the largest of its Revenue record boundary, its surveyed FTL and its monsoon water line; setbacks are measured from that boundary. This definition is set by this Manual.
Jheel (jhil)	A shallow lake, marsh or swamp (Annex 7E). A jheel is a lake or a wetland for this chapter; where it is a wetland, Clause 7.12 also applies.
Amrit Sarovar	A pond excavated or revived under the national Amrit Sarovar mission. It is a tal for this chapter. Its storage is counted only under Clause 7.7.
Layout recharge reservoir	The reservoir of at least 1% of the scheme area and not more than 2 m deep that the Byelaws 2025 require in layouts of more than 4 ha, fed only by surface runoff (cl. 13.1.2(b)). It is a waterbody for this chapter once built. Its storage is recharge storage; it counts as detention only under Chapter 4.
Nala; nali	A nala is a watercourse or drain, natural or cut (Annex 7E), such as the Qila Mohammadi nala in Lucknow or the Godhoiya nala in Gorakhpur; a nali is a small street or house drain. Every nala that drains 8 ha or more is a natural channel under Clause 7.4.1(b), whoever maintains it. No rule dividing natural drains (I&WRD) from municipal nalas was found; the definition, not the owner or the name, decides which clauses apply.
Khadar; bangar	Khadar is the low floodplain land along a river; bangar (written "bhangar" in geography texts) is the older alluvial upland above it, never submerged (Annex 7E). Khadar land is floodplain for this chapter.
Notified floodplain	The floodplain of the Ganga or a tributary defined by "a flood of frequency once in hundred years" (River Ganga Authorities Order, 2016, cl. 3(l)) and notified by the I&WRD by coordinates: for the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia in 13 districts (G.O. of 29 January 2025) and for the Yamuna in 17 districts (January 2025, as reported); the Hindon had not been demarcated by May 2026. It is a wider statutory line under Clause 7.4.5 for the uses the Order restricts in it. It is not the design extent: the 1% AEP extent of Clause 7.3.4, with the climate factor, sets Zone 2 wherever it is wider.
River-locked outfall	A drain or nala outfall through a river embankment, or to a drain whose own outfall is shut, that cannot discharge by gravity while the river is high, such as the outfalls of Lucknow to the Gomti and of Gorakhpur to the Rapti (Figure 7.3). Its regulator or flap gate is a controllable outlet under Clause 7.8 only where it is operated to a written rule; its tailwater is the river stage (Chapter 5).

7.3 Inventory and mapping of waterbodies

7.3.1 **Statewide inventory.** The Authority, with the I&WRD and the Revenue Department, shall maintain a GIS layer of every waterbody in its area (Annex 7A). For each waterbody it shall record:

- (a) its type (Clause 7.2), name and survey numbers;
- (b) its custodian (the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat, a development authority constituted under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, the UP Awas Evam Vikas Parishad, an industrial development authority (Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA or UPSIDA), the I&WRD (for its rivers, embankments, canals and drains), the Gram Panchayat or its Bhumi Prabandhak Samiti (for a village tank under sections 59 and 61 of the UP Revenue Code, 2006), the Revenue Department (through the Collector and the Tehsildar), the UP State Wetland Authority (for a notified wetland), a private owner, or another body);
- (c) its boundary as recorded in Revenue records;
- (d) for tanks: FTL, MWL, TBL, the surplus weir crest length and type, sluices, the supply channel and the surplus course, each with its datum;
- (e) its position in any tank cascade, with the upstream and downstream tanks;
- (f) the 1% AEP flood extent, where mapped; and
- (g) known encroachments, with the date recorded.

7.3.2 **Project mapping.** Every drainage report shall include a Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1) showing all waterbodies:

- (a) within the site;
- (b) within 100 m of the site boundary; and
- (c) downstream, to the extent of the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.

The sheet shall show, on a plan at a scale of 1:1,000 or larger for (a) and (b):

- the Revenue record boundary;
- the surveyed FTL or top of bank;
- the MWL contour (tanks) and the 1% AEP flood extent;
- Zone 1 and Zone 2 (Clause 7.4); and
- every supply channel, surplus course, sluice and surplus weir.

7.3.3 **Sources.** Waterbodies shall be identified from all of the following. Where they conflict, the larger waterbody extent governs:

- (a) Revenue records and village maps of the Revenue Department, in which tanks, talabs, ponds and pokhars, nalas, land covered by water and embankments (bandh) are recorded and vest in the State or the Gram Panchayat under the UP Revenue Code, 2006 (sections 54, 59, 61 and 77), read back to the record of 1 July 1952 where the Allahabad High Court's line of pond cases applies; land shown as a pond, reservoir, river, drain or nala in a Master Plan, Zonal Plan or layout plan under the 1973 Act, which the Byelaws 2025 protect (cl. 16.3.2(xi)); the floodplain coordinates notified by the I&WRD on the 1-in-100-year flood, for the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia (G.O. of 29 January 2025) and for the Yamuna (January 2025, as reported); the boundary and zone of influence of every wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, such as Ramgarh Tal; and the lists of Amrit Sarovars;
- (b) I&WRD and Gram Panchayat tank registers and records of FTL and MWL;
- (c) the Authority's inventory (Clause 7.3.1) and any list published under court directions;
- (d) historical topographic maps and satellite imagery, including the ISRO National Wetland Inventory and Assessment; and
- (e) a site survey by a licensed surveyor, levelled to the datum stated in Clause 7.3.5.

7.3.4 **Flood extent maps.** The Authority may adopt 1% AEP flood extent or flood depth maps for its area. A depth map adopted under this clause also sets floor levels under Clause 6.11. Where a map has been adopted, it shall be used unless a site hydraulic study under Chapters 3 and 5 shows a larger extent. Where no map has been adopted, the

Applicant shall determine the 1% AEP extent by a hydraulic study for:

- (a) any site in a flood-sensitive catchment (Chapter 1);
- (b) any site of 1 ha or more adjoining a waterbody; and
- (c) any site where the Authority so requires.

For other sites, the fixed-width setback of Clause 7.4.6 may be used.

7.3.5 **Datum.** All levels in this chapter shall be stated to one datum, stated on every drawing. Where I&WRD records use a local or older datum, the conversion to the project datum shall be surveyed and stated.

> Commentary. No 1% AEP flood map of any Uttar Pradesh city was found, and the Urban Development Department records that "currently there is no integrated plan for urban drainage" in the State's urban areas (storm water drainage guideline, December 2024); its city drainage master plans are to include an inundation analysis for rainfall above the design storm and hydraulic models of the hotspots. Along the rivers, Uttar Pradesh does have statutory flood lines. The River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016 defines the floodplain by "a flood of frequency once in hundred years" (cl. 3(l), as quoted by the I&WRD and NMCG), and the I&WRD has notified it by coordinates, river by river, under orders of the National Green Tribunal: for the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia in 13 districts "on the basis of the 100-year return period flood" (G.O. of 29 January 2025), with boundary pillars on about 200 of the 250 km at Prayagraj by May 2026; and for the Yamuna in 17 districts (January 2025, as reported). The Hindon in Ghaziabad and Gautam Buddh Nagar had not been demarcated by May 2026: its 100-year flood level, computed by the Log Pearson method, is 205.39 m at km 49 and 205.20 m at km 110, but the Survey of India's 1 m contours proved unusable on parts of the reach (I&WRD, report to the Tribunal of 23 May 2026). An amendment of the Ganga Order in 2026 is reported to divide the floodplain into active, regulatory and warning zones on the 5-, 25- and 100-year floods (as reported); its Gazette text was not read for this Manual. The Byelaws 2025 require layout plans to show "the approximate location and size of any water body, flood affected areas", with contours at 0.3 m where the slope is steeper than 1 in 20 (cl. 2.3.2). Clause 7.3.4 lets the Authority adopt flood maps once they are issued; until then the Applicant must produce the 1% AEP extent for larger and flood-sensitive sites, and along a notified river the notified 1-in-100-year line is a minimum that the 1% AEP extent of this Manual, with the climate factor, may exceed but never reduce. Clause 7.3.3 makes the larger of the recorded and surveyed extents govern, because the Revenue boundary and the surveyed water edge often differ, and either may have been reduced by encroachment. The 100 m search band in Clause 7.3.2 is set by this Manual.

7.4 Setbacks

7.4.1 **Waterbodies to which setbacks apply.** Setbacks apply to:

- (a) every waterbody recorded under Clause 7.3.1 or found under Clause 7.3.3, whatever its size; and
- (b) every natural channel, whether recorded or not, that drains **8 ha** or more at the site.

7.4.2 **Two zones.** The setback has two zones, shown in Figure 7.1:

- **Zone 1 (waterbody protection zone)**, next to the waterbody; and
- **Zone 2 (flood fringe setback)**, outside Zone 1.

7.4.3 **Zone 1 width.** Zone 1 is measured outward from the FTL contour (tanks, lakes and ponds) or from the top of bank (channels). Where both apply, use whichever gives the wider zone. Zone 1 extends to the **greatest** of:

- (a) **15 m**, the minimum set by this Manual (no Uttar Pradesh statute, rule or bye-law read for this Manual sets a setback in metres from nalas or tals: the 50 m of the Wetlands Rules, 2017 applies only around notified wetlands, and the Byelaws 2025 set a distance only along the Ganga; see the Disclosure below);

- (b) the outer edge of the floodway (Clause 7.6.1); and
- (c) for a tank, the MWL contour.

7.4.4 **Zone 2 width.** Zone 2 extends from the outer edge of Zone 1 to the **1% AEP flood extent plus 10 m**. Where the 1% AEP flood extent lies inside Zone 1, Zone 2 is 10 m wide.

7.4.5 **Statutory and approval setbacks.** Where a statute, a statutory rule, a condition of planning permission or the approval or NOC of the I&WRD for a work on or next to one of its rivers, embankments, canals or drains (including the Irrigation / Ground Water Department NOC listed in the Byelaws 2025), the permission of the UP State Wetland Authority for a regulated activity in the zone of influence of a notified wetland, or a direction of the Allahabad High Court or the National Green Tribunal sets a setback wider than Zone 1 or Zone 2, the wider setback governs for the uses it restricts.

7.4.6 **Fixed-width setback where no 1% AEP extent is available.** Where Clause 7.3.4 does not require a hydraulic study and no map has been adopted, the setback (Zone 1 plus Zone 2) shall be not less than the following, measured as in Clause 7.4.3:

Table 7.1 — Fixed-width setback where no 1% AEP extent is available

Waterbody	Total setback (Zone 1 + Zone 2)	Of which Zone 1
Channel draining 8 ha to 65 ha	25 m	15 m
Channel draining 65 ha to 20 km²	40 m	15 m
Channel draining more than 20 km², and rivers	50 m	20 m
Tank, lake or pond	MWL contour + 25 m	to MWL contour, and not less than 15 m from FTL
Marsh, estuary or backwater	as notified by the Authority, and not less than 50 m	15 m

This table is the alternative S-3 of the Policy Supplement (Annex 1C) and may be adopted under Clause 1.7.

7.4.7 **Minimum in all cases.** No setback under this chapter, and no variance under Clause 1.10, shall reduce Zone 1 below 15 m (Clause 1.10.3(c)).

> **Commentary.** The 15 m minimum is set by this Manual. The Byelaws 2025 set no distance from a nala, tal, talab or pokhar: they make construction on ponds, reservoirs, rivers and drains identified in a plan or recorded in the Revenue records non-compoundable (cl. 16.3.2(xi)), and set a distance only along the Ganga, where only repair and renovation are permitted within 200 m of the riverbank (cl. 2.11). The only general distance in metres is the 50 m from the mean high flood level of a wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 (rule 4(2)(vi)). This Manual's 15 m gives every nala and tal a hydraulic corridor, and is this Manual's proposal, not a statutory width (see the Disclosure below). Extending the setback to the mapped 1% AEP extent plus a margin follows the Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 (2025.01) two-zone structure:
>
> - APWA Zone 1 (streamside) is measured from top of bank, and only utility and road crossings are allowed in it.
> - APWA Zone 2 is the 1% AEP flood extent plus 10 ft (about 3 m), for streams draining 20–40 acres.
> - APWA lowered the trigger for stream setbacks from 40 acres to 20 acres (about 8 ha) in 2025.01.
>
> (MARC, APWA 5600 Policy Supplement, Nov 2025.) Clause 7.4.1(b) adopts the 8 ha trigger. This Manual's 10 m margin is wider than APWA's 10 ft and has no direct precedent. This Manual sets it because Uttar Pradesh flood maps are mostly coarser than US maps, the Ganga–Yamuna plain and the khadar floodplains of its rivers are very

flat and low (so a small error in level moves the flood edge a long way), and the margin gives room for maintenance access along the waterbody.

The fixed-width table in Clause 7.4.6 is set by this Manual. Its channel widths are scaled from the 2006 APWA default stream buffers, which were 40 ft, 60 ft, 100 ft and 120 ft (12, 18, 30 and 37 m) for drainage areas of less than 40 acres, 40–160 acres, 160–5,000 acres and more than 5,000 acres (KC APWA 5600, 2006, §5605.3). They are rounded up and floored at the 15 m minimum. APWA offered a fixed-width table for the same reason: communities objected that the 1% extent is often unmapped for small drainage areas (MARC Supplement, 2025). The table should be replaced by mapped extents as soon as the Authority adopts them.

URDPFI (2015) reserves the area flooded at a 10-year frequency for parks and playgrounds, and allows residential use in the 25-year flood zone only on stilts, with minimum plinth levels and no basements. This chapter is stricter. It keeps habitable buildings out of the whole 1% AEP extent plus margin, because the 1% AEP (100-yr) event is the major-system standard of this Manual (Chapter 6).

Uttar Pradesh's rules protect ponds and drains by record, and rivers by distance, but give nalas and tals no buffer in metres. The Byelaws 2025 set no distance from a nala, tal, talab or pokhar; they make building on ponds, reservoirs, rivers and drains identified in a plan or recorded in the revenue records non-compoundable (cl. 16.3.2(xi)), require large projects to keep the natural drainage "for ensuring unrestricted flow of water" with "No construction … allowed to obstruct the natural drainage through the site" (cl. 13.3), and permit only repair and renovation within 200 m of the Ganga riverbank, the bank being "the bank mentioned in the records of concerned department (Revenue/Irrigation)"; along other rivers, a city or development authority is to follow any order of the National Green Tribunal or a court (cl. 2.11). The court lines differ by river and city. At Prayagraj the Allahabad High Court directed "no construction within 500 meter from the mid stream of the Ganges" (PIL 4003/2006, order of 28 March 2011), which the District Magistrate reads as no construction within 200 m of the Ganga riverbank and restricted construction within 500 m, and the Prayagraj Development Authority applies "HFL + 500 m" to the Yamuna, saying the order "has not been set aside" by the Ganga Order of 2016 (replies to the Tribunal, December 2025). For the Gomti, the Lucknow bench of the High Court is reported to have halted construction within 100 m of the banks in 2010, while an I&WRD order of 3 September 2020 is reported to set 50 m (both as reported). The Tribunal's orders on the Ganga of 2017 treated 100 m from the edge of the river as a prohibitory zone and 100 m to 300 m as a regulatory zone (as quoted by NMCG). Around a notified wetland, no permanent construction is permitted within 50 m of the mean high flood level (Wetlands Rules, 2017, r. 4(2)(vi)). The Byelaws' table of NOCs lists an Irrigation / Ground Water Department NOC with the words "OR 50 meters", but the row is truncated and what the 50 m is measured from was not established. On the Kukrail in Lucknow, the Supreme Court in May 2024 agreed with the High Court that the Akbar Nagar colony stood on a floodplain, rejecting the plea that the Kukrail is a nala and not a river (as reported). Clause 7.4.7 makes 15 m the floor of Zone 1 everywhere.

Disclosure. Uttar Pradesh has **no statutory setback in metres from nalas, tals, talabs or pokhars** in the Acts, rules and bye-laws read for this Manual. The Byelaws 2025 protect recorded ponds and drains themselves (cl. 16.3.2(xi)) and set a distance only along the Ganga (cl. 2.11); the Wetlands Rules, 2017 set 50 m only around notified wetlands. The **15 m minimum** Zone 1 of Clauses 7.4.3 and 7.4.7, and every value derived from it in Table 7.1, is **set by this Manual** as a hydraulic corridor, to give every nala and tal a protected width. It is **this Manual's proposal, not a statutory width**, and no government has adopted it. Along the notified rivers, the 1-in-100-year floodplain is a **statutory line, not the design extent**: the 1% AEP extent of this Manual, with the climate factor, governs Zone 2 wherever it is wider. Away from the rivers, Uttar Pradesh has no statutory flood lines, and the 1% AEP extent, where it has been mapped (Clause 7.3.4), is the only flood-based line. The setback is applied as **the larger of the corridor and any statutory line**, so the Manual is **stricter than statute** along nalas and tals, and no less strict anywhere. What does exist, and governs wherever it is wider or stricter (Clause 7.4.5), is:

- **The notified floodplains.** The 1-in-100-year floodplain of the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia (G.O. of 29 January 2025) and of the Yamuna (January 2025, as reported), in which the Ganga Order of 2016 bars new structures in the river, its bank and its active floodplain except as it allows (cl. 6(3), as quoted); the 2026 amendment of the Order (as reported) once its text is read; and, on rivers not yet demarcated, such as the Hindon, the 100-year flood level supplied by the I&WRD.

- **The Ganga riverbank.** Only repair and renovation within 200 m of the Ganga riverbank in cities on the Ganga (Byelaws 2025, cl. 2.11), and on other rivers the orders of the Tribunal or a court.
- **Court lines.** At Prayagraj, no construction within 500 m of the mid-stream of the Ganga (Allahabad High Court, 2011) and "HFL + 500 m" for the Yamuna as applied by the Prayagraj Development Authority; on the Gomti, 100 m (High Court, 2010) or 50 m (I&WRD, 2020), as reported.
- **Wetlands.** No permanent construction within 50 m of the mean high flood level of a notified wetland (Wetlands Rules, 2017, r. 4(2)(vi)); at Ramgarh Tal, a zone of influence of 50 m beyond the notified boundary (notification of 7 December 2020).
- **Ponds and drains of record.** Construction on ponds, reservoirs, rivers and drains identified in a plan or recorded in the revenue records is non-compoundable (Byelaws 2025, cl. 16.3.2(xi)); land covered by a pond, tank or lake cannot become private (Revenue Code, s. 77(1)(i)); and no part of a pond's rainy-season extent may be allotted for building (*Hinch Lal Tiwari*, 2001). These protect the waterbody, not a strip around it; the whole recorded and monsoon extent is a waterbody for this chapter.
- **I&WRD embankments, canals and drains.** Works near them need the I&WRD's approval or NOC.

This Manual sets 15 m as the floor because no width at all exists for nalas and tals; because it is above the smallest APWA default stream buffer (12 m) from which Table 7.1 is scaled; and because it leaves room for the maintenance track and desilting machinery that Uttar Pradesh's nalas need. The reasons for the corridor are the record: the Urban Development Department found that small nalas and nalis are built piecemeal, with no integrated drainage plan in any city (guideline, December 2024); Lucknow's Qila Mohammadi drain was found "blocked at several places as the level of drain is lower than that of culverts" (Lucknow Municipal Corporation, 2018); and ponds continue to be filled and built over, which the Supreme Court and the High Court have repeatedly ordered reversed (Clause 7.13, Commentary). Until a statute, rule, notification or Master Plan adopts it, the 15 m minimum is this Manual's recommended standard and the statutory controls above remain the only legal minimum. Approving authorities should state in each approval which was applied.

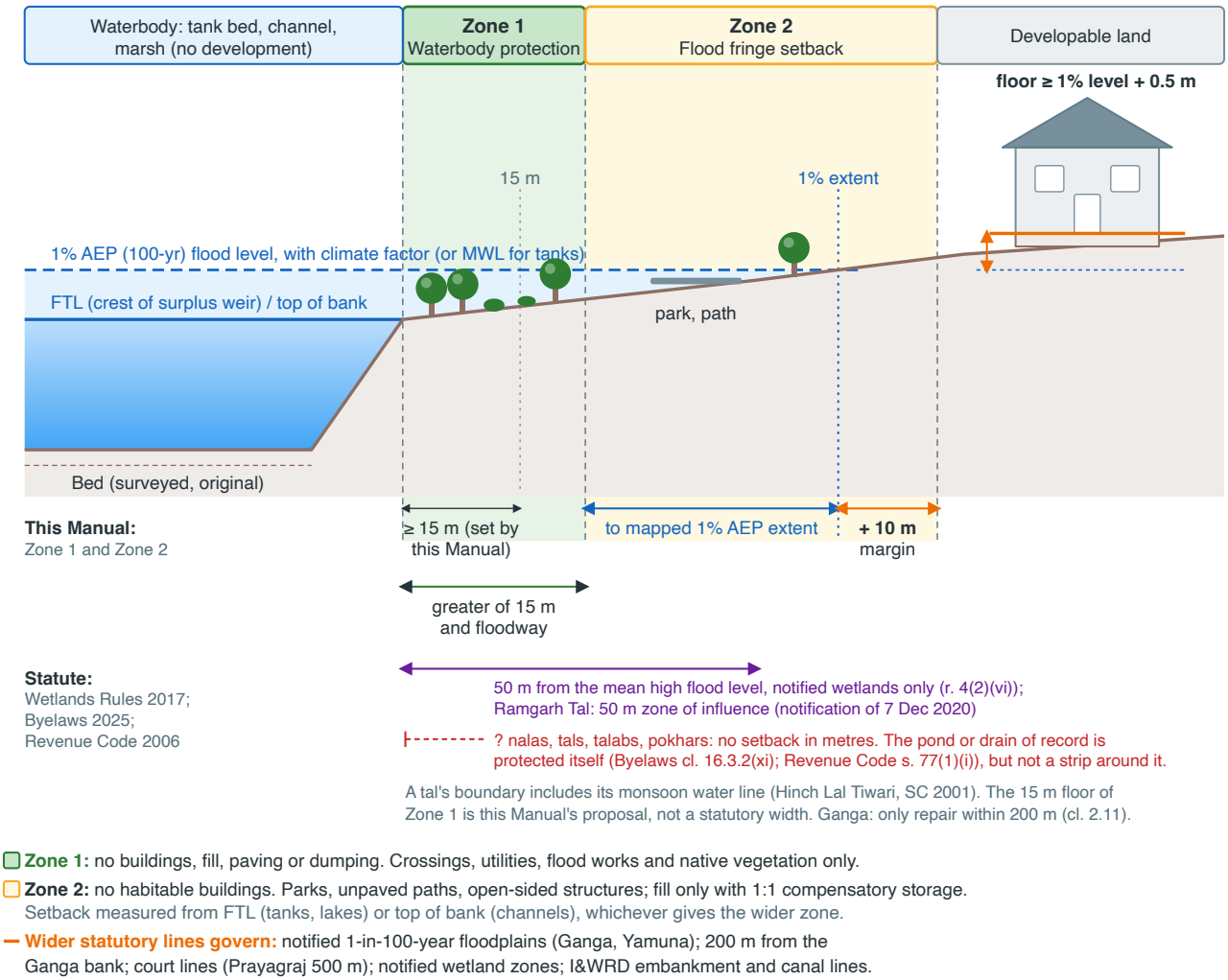


Figure 7.1 — Waterbody setback zones: section through a tank or channel showing FTL, the 1% AEP flood level, the 15 m minimum line, Zone 1 and Zone 2. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Kansas City Metro APWA, Section 5600 Version 2025.01 and Policy Supplement (MARC, 2025).

7.5 Uses permitted in each zone

7.5.1 **Zone 1.** No building, fill, paving, retaining wall, boundary wall, compound wall, dumping of earth, debris or solid waste, storage of materials, or construction-stage stockpile shall be placed in Zone 1. Only the following are permitted, each subject to the custodian's NOC:

- (a) road, rail and utility crossings that meet Clause 7.10.3;
- (b) flood and drainage works: outfalls, inlet structures, gross pollutant traps, sluices, surplus weirs, bund strengthening and bank protection;
- (c) native vegetation, planting and habitat works;
- (d) unpaved or permeable footpaths and maintenance tracks at existing ground level; and
- (e) waterbody restoration under Clause 7.9.

7.5.2 **Zone 2.** No habitable building, basement, school, hospital, fuel store or hazardous-material store shall be placed in Zone 2. The following are permitted:

- (a) all uses permitted in Zone 1;

- (b) parks, playgrounds, open-air sports fields and urban agriculture;
- (c) open-sided structures (shelters, pavilions) with no walls that obstruct flow;
- (d) surface parking with permeable surfacing at existing ground level, where the 1% AEP flood depth is not more than 0.3 m;
- (e) retention, detention and water quality facilities under Chapters 4 and 8, provided they are outside the floodway and their storage is not counted twice (Clause 7.6.5); and
- (f) fill, only for (a) to (e) or for essential public infrastructure, and only with compensatory storage under Clause 7.6.4.

7.5.3 **Fences.** Fences in Zone 1 and Zone 2 shall be open (chain-link or railing) with no plinth wall above existing ground level, so that they do not obstruct flow or trap debris.

7.5.4 **Open space reservation.** Zone 2 land may be counted toward the open space required by the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025, where the Authority agrees. Zone 1 land shall be handed over to the custodian or kept free of private use, as the Authority decides.

> Commentary. The permitted uses follow APWA 2025.01: in Zone 1, only utility and road crossings; in Zone 2, linear utilities, trails and open-sided structures; no clearing, grading, fill or paving in either zone without approval (MARC Supplement, 2025). Clause 7.5.2 adds parks and playgrounds, the uses URDPFI (2015) allows in the 10-year flood zone. The ban on walls in Clauses 7.5.1 and 7.5.3 responds to urban Uttar Pradesh practice: compound walls along channels and tanks act as dams in floods, and are often the first step toward encroachment. The 0.3 m depth limit for parking in Clause 7.5.2(d) has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual.

7.6 Floodway, flood fringe and compensatory storage

7.6.1 **Floodway delineation.** The floodway shall be delineated by a hydraulic model of the 1% AEP flood (with the climate factor), using the encroachment method: the conveyance of the flood fringe is removed equally from both banks until the 1% AEP water level rises by 0.1 m. Where the floodway has not been delineated, the whole 1% AEP flood extent shall be treated as floodway. For a tank, all land below MWL is floodway.

7.6.2 **No fill in the floodway.** No fill, building, embankment, raised road or other obstruction shall be placed below the 1% AEP flood level within the floodway, except the works permitted in Zone 1 under Clause 7.5.1(a) and (b). Those works shall be shown by hydraulic analysis to raise the 1% AEP water level by no more than 0.01 m, upstream or downstream, outside the Applicant's land.

7.6.3 **Fill in the flood fringe.** Fill below the 1% AEP flood level in the flood fringe is permitted only:

- (a) for uses permitted under Clause 7.5.2, or outside the setback where the Authority has notified a developed-fringe area under Clause 7.6.6; and
- (b) with compensatory storage under Clause 7.6.4.

7.6.4 **Compensatory storage.** Where fill is placed in the flood fringe, compensatory storage shall be provided that (Figure 7.2):

- (a) replaces at least **1.0 m³ of storage for each 1.0 m³ of fill** placed below the 1% AEP flood level;
- (b) is provided at **equivalent levels**: the volume lost and the volume replaced shall be balanced in each elevation band of not more than **0.3 m**, from the normal water level (or the 50% AEP level, where higher) up to the 1% AEP flood level;
- (c) is in the same reach of the same waterbody, hydraulically connected to it, and not further downstream than the fill;

- (d) drains freely by gravity back to the waterbody as the flood recedes, with no pumping and no permanent pool below the normal water level;
- (e) is built before, or at the same time as, the fill is placed; and
- (f) is secured by a covenant or handover so that it is never filled later.

7.6.5 **No double counting.** Compensatory storage shall not be counted as detention or retention storage under Chapter 4. Detention and retention storage placed within the 1% AEP flood extent shall be counted only for the volume above the 1% AEP flood level, unless a model of the joint event (Clause 2.12) shows that it is available.

7.6.6 **Developed-fringe areas.** The Authority may notify, by map, areas of existing built-up land within the 1% AEP flood extent but outside the floodway, where it is impractical to apply Zone 2 to redevelopment. In a notified developed-fringe area:

- (a) redevelopment may be approved without the Zone 2 restriction;
- (b) the lowest habitable floor and all openings shall be at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level (Chapter 6);
- (c) basements are not permitted;
- (d) the redevelopment shall cause no net loss of flood storage below the 1% AEP flood level (Clause 7.6.4), and stilt construction may be used for this; and
- (e) Zone 1 continues to apply in full.

> **Commentary.** The 1:1 compensatory storage at equivalent levels is set by this Manual. A simple volume balance is not enough: storage excavated below the normal water level is full before the flood arrives and gives no flood benefit. Storage gained high up does not replace storage lost low down, because the low storage is used in every flood and the high storage only in the largest. Balancing volume within each elevation band avoids both problems. The 0.3 m band, the 0.01 m allowance for crossings, and the use of the encroachment method in Clause 7.6.1 are set by this Manual; the encroachment method is the standard way to delineate a floodway in a one-dimensional hydraulic model. The 0.1 m limit on the rise in the 1% AEP water level is tighter than the 1 ft (about 0.3 m) used by the US National Flood Insurance Program. The Ganga–Yamuna plain and the khadar floodplains of its rivers are flat, and the rivers meander in wide and shallow channels (CWC, Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(f), 1985), so a small rise in level spreads flooding over a wide area, and many small encroachments along the same channel add up.
>
> In Uttar Pradesh the land between a pond's dry-season edge and its rainy-season edge is protected by law as part of the pond: the Supreme Court held that where "the area covered by it varies in rainy season … no part of it could have been allotted to anybody for construction of house building or any allied purposes" (*Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, 2001, para 13). This Manual gives that rule a level: the monsoon water line of a tal (definitions after Clause 7.2) is part of its boundary, and the foreshore up to MWL is its flood storage. The Urban Development Department's guideline asks city drainage master plans to integrate "existing detention ponds, lakes" and to set operating procedures for their pre- and post-monsoon levels (December 2024), which is the use this chapter protects. Around Ramgarh Tal, the notification of 7 December 2020 adds a zone of influence of 50 m beyond the wetland boundary, in which reclamation, filling and construction are prohibited. Treating all land below MWL as floodway (Clause 7.6.1) means that no new building or fill is approved in a tank foreshore.
>
> The developed-fringe mechanism of Clause 7.6.6 is set by this Manual. Large parts of the colonies of Lucknow behind the Gomti embankments, whose drains must be pumped when the river is high (as reported), the low wards of Gorakhpur on the Rapti, such as Mehewa, which flood "after relatively small amounts of rain" (as reported), and the built-up land of Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi within the Yamuna and Ganga floodplains notified in January 2025 (more than 5,000 buildings in Agra alone, as reported) already lie within the 1% AEP extent. A blanket Zone 2 ban on redevelopment there would stop the replacement of older, lower buildings with buildings raised above flood level. The mechanism follows the URDPFI (2015) approach for the 25-year flood zone (stilts, minimum plinth, no basements), applied here to the 1% AEP extent.

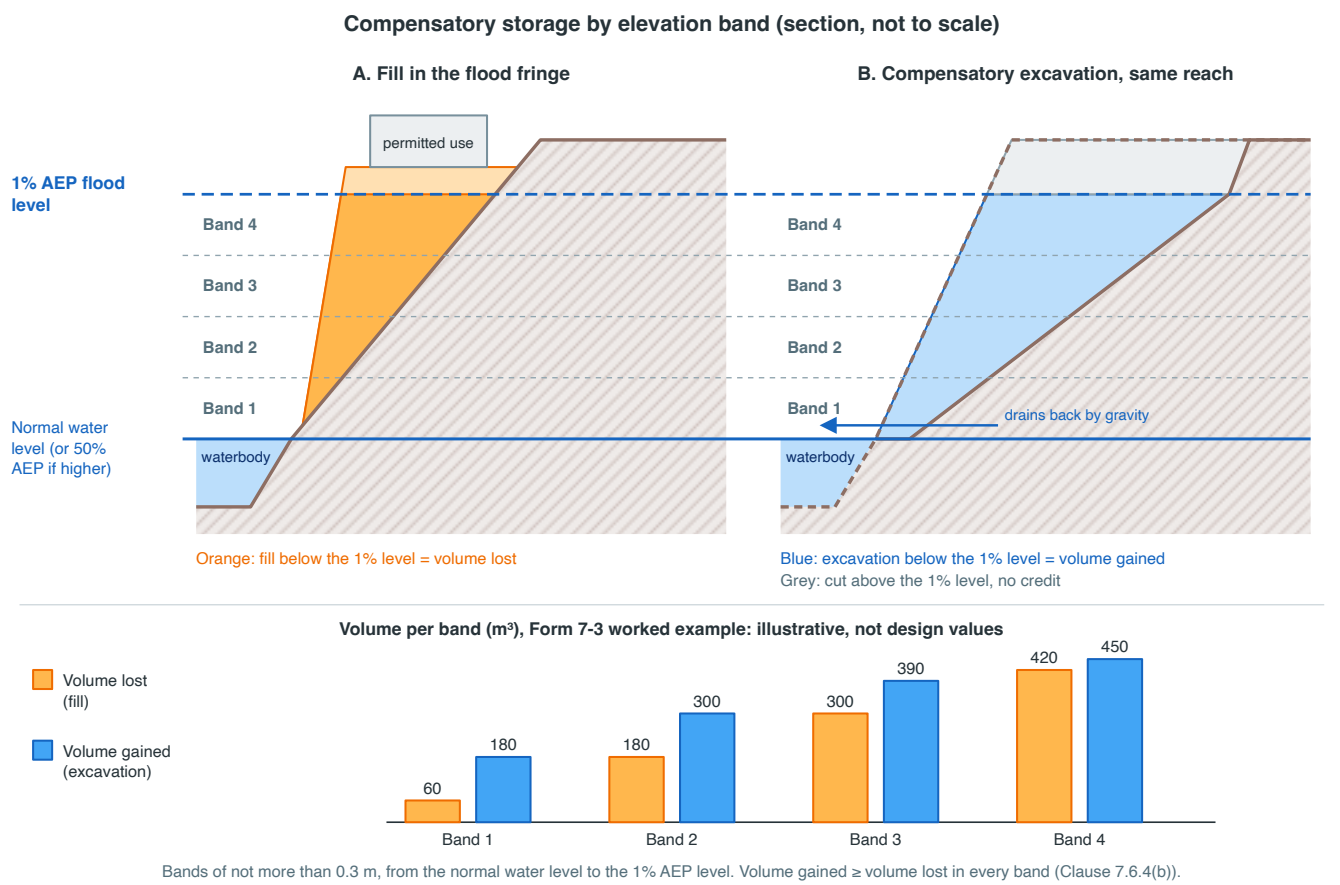


Figure 7.2 — Compensatory storage by elevation band: section through the flood fringe showing fill placed below the 1% AEP flood level and an equal or greater volume excavated within each band of not more than 0.3 m, from the normal water level (or 50% AEP level) up to the 1% AEP level, with the excavation draining back to the waterbody by gravity. Band-by-band calculation on Form 7-3. Original drawing for this Manual, illustrating the method of Clause 7.6.4, which is set by this Manual.

7.7 Tank cascades as design storage

Uttar Pradesh has no tank Act, and few of its tals have the full set of an earthen bund, a surplus weir and irrigation sluices. The storages that matter for urban drainage are of five kinds. The first is the village and urban tal, talab or pokhar, usually with no outlet structure, recorded in the Revenue records and, where it is a village tank, managed by the Gram Panchayat and its Bhumi Prabandhak Samiti (Revenue Code, ss. 59 and 61), together with the Amrit Sarovars. The second is the large tal or jheel, such as Ramgarh Tal in Gorakhpur, a notified wetland of 742.245 ha that receives six named nalas. The third is the recharge reservoir that the Byelaws 2025 require in layouts of more than 4 ha (cl. 13.1.2(b)), fed only by surface runoff and not more than 2 m deep. The fourth is the embanked city, such as Lucknow behind the Gomti embankments and Gorakhpur behind those of the Rapti, which drains by gravity when the river is low and must store in its tals, nalas and low ground, or pump, when it is high, as a polder does (Figure 7.3). The fifth is the canal and reservoir system of the I&WRD, whose canals can receive urban drainage, as in the reported proposal to divert Lucknow's Geetapalli nala to the Haider canal (as reported). Clauses 7.7 and 7.8 apply to any of these whose storage is counted. The bandhs (bandhas) and old tanks of Bundelkhand, some of them of the Chandela period, were not researched for this Manual; any such tank whose storage is to be counted is subject to Clause 7.7.1 in full, with the I&WRD or other custodian. River barrages and regulators, such as the Gomti barrage at Lucknow, are not tanks for these clauses: their releases and pond levels enter a design as inflow and tailwater (Chapter 5).

7.7.1 **When tank storage may be counted.** The storage of a tank or tank cascade may be counted as design storage (in a basin plan, a regional facility or a fee-in-lieu scheme under Clause 7.11) **only** where all of the following are met:

- (a) **Surveyed levels.** FTL, MWL, TBL, the surplus weir crest and length, and the sluice sill levels have been surveyed to the datum of Clause 7.3.5 within the previous 5 years.
- (b) **Stage–storage curve.** A stage–storage curve has been derived from a bathymetric and topographic survey of the waterspread and foreshore within the previous 5 years, or after the last desilting, whichever is later.
- (c) **Operating rule.** A documented operating rule has been agreed with the custodian (Clause 7.8).
- (d) **Maintained structures.** The surplus weir, sluices and bund are maintained under an O&M plan (Chapter 10), and the latest pre-monsoon inspection found them serviceable.
- (e) **Custodian concurrence.** I&WRD, or the other custodian, concurs in writing.

Storage in a tank that fails any of (a) to (e) shall not be counted, though the tank shall still be modelled as an existing feature (Chapter 3).

7.7.2 **Modelling.** Tank cascades shall be modelled under Clause 3.12.5 (level-pool routing of each tank, with surplus weir and sluice ratings) and Clause 3.13 (continuous simulation). The whole cascade, from the uppermost tank whose surplus can reach the site or facility to the next river, major drain or sea outfall, shall be modelled together, including, in a city on an embanked river such as Lucknow on the Gomti or Gorakhpur on the Rapti, every colony drain, tal, nala, regulator or flap gate through the embankment and pumping station by which the flow reaches the river, with the river stage as tailwater, as shown in Figure 7.3.

7.7.3 **Starting level.** The starting level in every tank shall be **FTL** for the design-storm analysis. A lower starting level may be used only under a flood-cushion operating rule that meets Clause 7.8.

7.7.4 **Design maximum level.** For the 1% AEP inflow with the climate factor, routed through the cascade:

- (a) the computed maximum level shall be not higher than MWL (as defined in Clause 7.2); and
- (b) the freeboard from the computed maximum level to the lowest point of the bund (TBL) shall be not less than I&WRD's freeboard standard for the tank.

Where (a) or (b) fails, the tank storage above FTL shall not be counted until the surplus weir capacity is increased or the bund raised under Clause 7.7.6.

7.7.5 **Creditable volume.** The creditable design storage of a tank is the volume between the starting level (Clause 7.7.3) and the computed maximum level of Clause 7.7.4, less any volume already committed to another facility or scheme.

7.7.6 **Changes to FTL, weirs and bunds.** No surplus weir crest shall be raised or lowered, no shutters or falling boards shall be added, and no bund shall be raised, cut or breached except under a design approved by the custodian that:

- (a) routes the cascade under Clause 7.7.2;
- (b) shows the effect on flood levels in the foreshore and upstream, and on flows in the surplus course and downstream; and
- (c) checks the bund under Clause 7.14.

> **Commentary.** This Manual allows tank cascades to be used as design storage subject to three basic conditions (surveyed FTL, a documented operating rule and maintained surplus weirs). Clause 7.7.1 adds the stage–storage survey and the custodian's concurrence, because the storage a tank actually offers depends on its silt level and on who controls the sluices. The 5-year survey interval is set by this Manual.
>
> The FTL starting level follows Clause 3.12.5. Uttar Pradesh's worst urban floods have come when the rivers were already high. The Rapti at Birdghat, Gorakhpur, reached its highest recorded level of 77.54 m on 23 August 1998, against a danger level of 74.98 m, with 13 embankment breaches in the district and road and rail cut for more than 72 hours; the Gomti at Lucknow reached 110.85 m on 11 September 1971, against a danger level of 109.5 m; and in August 2025 the Ganga at Varanasi stood at about 72.1 m, above its danger level of 71.262 m (all as

reported; a lower danger level is also reported for the Gomti at Lucknow). At most city gauges the highest flood level is 1 to 3 m above the danger level, so an outfall set below the highest flood level can stay shut for days; no hydrograph showing how long Uttar Pradesh's rivers stay above outfall levels was obtained for this Manual. While the river is high, the outfalls are shut and the city's tals, nalas and low ground hold whatever rain falls, so storage downstream that is already full gives no relief. A tank cascade passes floods from one tank to the next, so a design that counts storage in one tank and ignores the surplus arriving from the tank above it will overstate the benefit. That is why Clause 7.7.2 requires the whole cascade to be modelled.

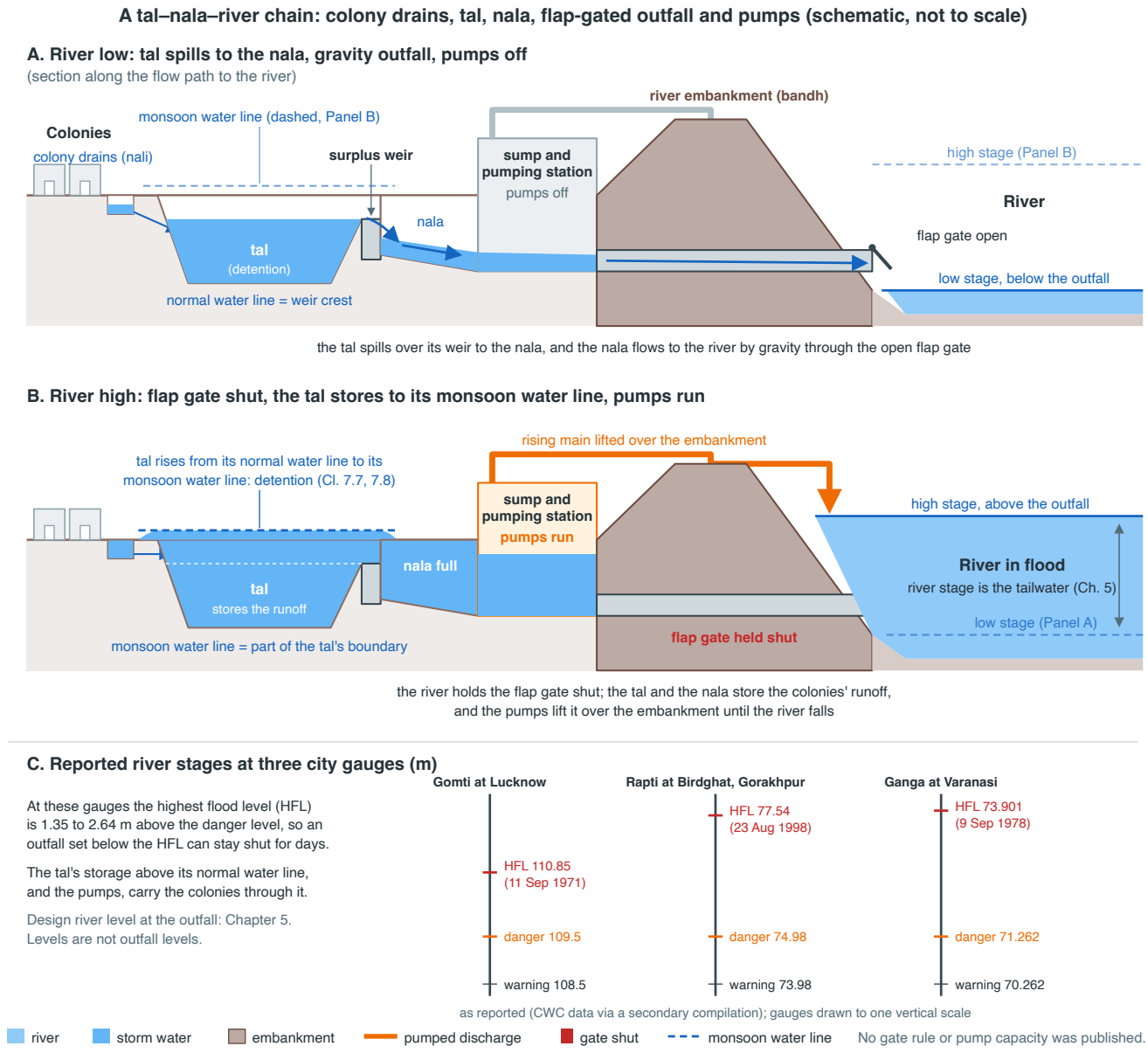


Figure 7.3 — A tal–nala–river chain (schematic, not to scale). A: with the river low, the colony drains (nali) feed a tal used as detention, which spills over its surplus weir to the nala; the nala flows by gravity through the embankment and out through a flap gate, and the pumps are off. B: with the river high, the river holds the flap gate shut; the tal rises from its normal water line toward its monsoon water line and holds the colonies' runoff, and the pumping station lifts the nala's flow over the embankment until the river falls. The river stage is therefore the tailwater of the whole chain (Chapter 5), and the drains, the tal, the nala, the gate and the pumps are modelled together (Clause 7.7.2); the tal's monsoon water line is part of its boundary (definitions after Clause 7.2). C: reported danger levels and highest flood levels at three city gauges, as reported from CWC data in a secondary compilation; they are not levels at any outfall. No sill level, gate operating rule, pump capacity or design river level for any Uttar Pradesh outfall was published; pumping

stations are an eligible component of the State's storm water drainage scheme, and its guideline asks that pumps be operable above the highest flood level (Urban Development Department, December 2024). Original drawing for this Manual.

7.8 Operating rules and pre-monsoon flood cushion

7.8.1 **Operating rule content.** Every tank whose storage is counted under Clause 7.7 shall have a written operating rule, agreed by the custodian and kept with the O&M plan (Chapter 10). It shall state:

- (a) the levels and dates for filling, holding and drawdown through the year;
- (b) the sluice and regulator settings at each level;
- (c) who operates the sluices and regulators, and who may order a release;
- (d) the maximum release rate, set so that the release, added to the flow from the downstream catchment, does not cause flooding of buildings downstream;
- (e) the forecast and warning triggers (IMD district warnings, UPSDMA alerts, and city forecast systems where available) and the actions taken at each trigger;
- (f) communication with downstream ULBs and residents before any release; and
- (g) the records to be kept: daily levels in the SW monsoon, releases, and gate settings.

7.8.2 **Flood cushion.** A tank may be operated with a flood cushion (a level below FTL during part of the SW monsoon), and the cushion counted under Clause 7.7.3, only where:

- (a) the tank has a gated sluice, regulator or other controllable outlet able to draw the tank down to the cushion level in the time stated in the rule;
- (b) the operating rule fixes the cushion level and the dates it applies;
- (c) continuous simulation (Clause 3.13) shows that the cushion is available at the start of a design storm in at least **90%** of SW monsoon seasons in the record, allowing for the rain that usually comes before the peak storm;
- (d) the custodian accepts any loss of irrigation or water-supply yield, and any agreed compensation is recorded; and
- (e) the release needed to create or restore the cushion meets Clause 7.8.1(d).

7.8.3 **No storage credit without control.** Where a tank has no controllable outlet, no flood cushion shall be assumed, whatever the past practice.

7.8.4 **Coordination.** For tanks under I&WRD control, the operating rule shall be I&WRD's rule. This Manual does not authorise any other body to operate a I&WRD tank.

> **Commentary.** No operating rule for an Uttar Pradesh tal that keeps a flood cushion was found, and most tals have no controllable outlet, so Clause 7.8.3 applies to them. The Urban Development Department's guideline asks each city drainage master plan to set standard operating procedures for its detention ponds, including desilting and their pre- and post-monsoon levels (December 2024); Clause 7.8.1 sets out what such a procedure must contain. The controlled flows that matter in the cities are at the river outfalls: regulators and flap gates in the embankments, and the pumping stations behind them. The I&WRD runs flood control rooms from 15 June to 15 October (as reported); in Lucknow, an inspection is reported to have found "only half the pumps" working at the Kukrail pumping station and all pumps non-functional at Wazirganj (undated, as reported); and Gorakhpur is reported to use a decision-support system and automated pumps in the monsoon (as reported). Without an agreed rule with dates, levels and a named operator, storage behind a gate cannot be relied on. Clause 7.8.2 turns that principle into a rule that can be checked, with a reliability test, because a cushion that is usually refilled by the early monsoon rain gives no protection in a July to September monsoon depression. The 90% reliability in Clause 7.8.2(c) has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual.

Many tals have other users. A village tank of more than 0.5 acre may be let out by the Bhumi Prabandhak Samiti with the approval of the Sub-Divisional Officer (Revenue Code, s. 61(b)), and the Code itself recognises land covered by water that is "used for the purpose of growing singhara or other produce" (s. 77(1)(b)). Drawing such a tal down before a storm has a cost to those who use it, which is why Clause 7.8.2(d) requires the custodian to accept it.

7.9 Restoration, desilting and deepening

7.9.1 **Pre-works survey.** Before any desilting or restoration, the proponent shall:

- (a) survey the waterspread, foreshore, bund, weirs and sluices (Clause 7.7.1(a) and (b));
- (b) find the original bed level by test pits or augering on a grid, and from historical records where available; and
- (c) where the tank receives urban runoff or sewage, test the silt for heavy metals and other contaminants before disposal is planned.

7.9.2 **Desilting limit.** Desilting shall remove accumulated sediment down to the original bed level. It shall not deepen the tank below the original bed, except under Clause 7.9.3.

7.9.3 **Deepening.** Deepening below the original bed is permitted only where a hydrogeological report shows that:

- (a) it will not cut through a clay or silt layer that holds water in the tank or protects an aquifer from polluted water;
- (b) in coastal areas, it will not draw saline water into the tank or the aquifer; and
- (c) the extra storage will be refilled and used, and will not stand stagnant below the sluice sill.

Storage created below the lowest sluice sill shall not be counted as flood storage.

7.9.4 **Safe edges.** Where the public has access to the waterbody edge:

- (a) side slopes shall be no steeper than **1V:4H** from 0.5 m above FTL down to 1.2 m below FTL, or a level safety bench at least 3 m wide shall be provided between 0.3 m and 0.5 m below FTL; and
- (b) no isolated deep pit or vertical cut shall be left in the bed.

7.9.5 **Storage not to be reduced.** Restoration shall not reduce the storage below MWL. Islands, walkways, bund widening into the waterspread, ring roads, parking, buildings and "lake-front" platforms within the waterspread or foreshore shall be counted as lost storage and shall be offset under Clause 7.6.4.

7.9.6 **Silt disposal.** Desilted material shall not be placed within the setback, on the bund (except for approved bund strengthening), or on any flood path. Silt found to be contaminated shall be disposed of as the Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board (UPPCB) directs.

7.9.7 **Inlet treatment.** Every restoration of a tank that receives urban runoff shall include sediment and gross pollutant control at each inlet: a sediment forebay, a constructed wetland inlet zone, or a gross pollutant trap (Chapter 8), so that the restored storage does not silt up again.

7.9.8 **Timing.** Desilting shall be completed, and the waterbody made safe, by **31 May** each year (Chapter 10).

Commentary. No deadline for completing the desilting of nalas or tals before the monsoon was found in any order of the Urban Development Department, the Directorate of Local Bodies or a Nagar Nigam; the date of 31 May in this Manual is set by this Manual, two weeks before the I&WRD's reported deadline of 15 June for its flood-protection works (as reported). The Urban Development Department's guideline asks city drainage master plans to set procedures for desilting detention ponds and to rejuvenate the existing storage ponds of the city (December 2024), and many tals have been excavated or revived as Amrit Sarovars. Excavation to "increase

capacity" is governed by Clause 7.9.3. The 31 May deadline matches the pre-monsoon inspection date of Chapter 10. The limits on deepening are set by this Manual. Deepening tanks to "increase capacity" is common, but it can breach the silt and clay layer that holds water in the tank, it can let polluted urban water reach the aquifer, it can draw salt water toward the coast, and it creates storage below the sluice sill that never empties and gives no flood benefit. Deep pits with steep sides are also a drowning hazard. The slope and bench values in Clause 7.9.4 are adapted from common pond-safety practice; they have no Uttar Pradesh precedent.

7.10 Supply channels, surplus courses, inlets and outlets

7.10.1 **Part of the major system.** Supply channels and surplus courses are part of the major drainage system (Chapter 6). They shall be protected as waterbodies, with Zone 1 and Zone 2 setbacks under Clause 7.4.

7.10.2 **No closure or covering.** No supply channel or surplus course shall be closed, filled, diverted, covered, culverted along its length, or converted into a road or a closed drain, except under a design approved by the custodian that keeps or increases its 1% AEP capacity and its access for maintenance.

7.10.3 **Crossings.** Every road, rail, utility or access crossing of a waterbody, supply channel or surplus course shall:

- (a) pass the 1% AEP flow (with the climate factor), or the surplus of the upstream tank at its MWL, whichever is greater, with the freeboard required by Chapter 9;
- (b) not reduce the waterway width at the crossing below the full channel width as recorded in Revenue records or as surveyed, whichever is greater;
- (c) keep the channel bed level and grade; and
- (d) not raise the 1% AEP water level by more than the limit in Clause 7.6.2.

7.10.4 **Capacity.** The design capacity of a surplus course shall be the greater of the surplus weir discharge at MWL and the 1% AEP flow from its own catchment, combined as the cascade model (Clause 7.7.2) shows.

7.10.5 **Protection at structures.** Outlets of surplus weirs and sluices, and drain outfalls into waterbodies, shall have energy dissipation and scour protection designed under Chapter 9, so that the flow leaving them does not erode the bund, the bank or the channel bed.

7.10.6 **Drain outfalls into waterbodies.** A storm drain outfall into a tank, channel or wetland shall:

- (a) have its invert at or above the normal water level of the receiving waterbody, unless the drain is designed for submerged outfall under Chapter 5;
- (b) be located and aligned so that it does not cut through or weaken a tank bund;
- (c) have a gross pollutant trap and first-flush treatment (Chapter 8); and
- (d) not carry sewage or dry-weather flow (Chapter 8).

Commentary. This Manual protects supply channels and surplus courses as part of the major system. In urban areas they are often the first to be lost. Surplus courses are narrowed by culverts and compound walls, and supply channels are covered and turned into roads, which cuts the tank off from its source or leaves its surplus with nowhere to go. In Uttar Pradesh the nalas are split among many owners, and no rule dividing natural drains (I&WRD) from municipal nalas was found for this Manual. In practice rivers, floodplains, embankments, canals and drains in canal commands lie with the I&WRD; nalas and road drains inside a city with the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat; the internal drains of colonies not yet handed over with the development authority or the UP Awas Evam Vikas Parishad; interceptor sewers and drain tapping with UP Jal Nigam; and the drains of industrial areas with Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA or UPSIDA. This Manual uses that division as its working assignment, not as a statement of law. The Urban Development Department found that small nalas and nalis have been built piecemeal, with no integrated plan, and that they are usually designed for a 1–2-year

storm (guideline, December 2024). In Lucknow, "LMC has only one Qila Mohammadi drain to fall back upon", "blocked at several places as the level of drain is lower than that of culverts near Bijnore" (Lucknow Municipal Corporation, AMRUT report, 2018), and remodelling of the nala was put to tender in 2026 (as reported); 33 of the city's 34 drains outfall to the Gomti (as cited). On the Kukrail the Supreme Court rejected the plea that it is a nala and not a river (May 2024, as reported). The Byelaws 2025 require that drains be "an integral part of the road" (cl. 3.1.3.5) and that the natural drain system of a large project be maintained (cl. 13.3). None of these keeps a nala at its recorded width once it has been narrowed or covered, which is the failure Clauses 7.10.2 and 7.10.3 are written to prevent. Clause 7.10.3(b) prevents a crossing from narrowing a channel to its current, encroached width.

7.11 Fee-in-lieu and regional tank storage

7.11.1 Where a basin plan has been notified, and the Authority has adopted alternative S-5 of the Policy Supplement (Clause 1.7), a development may pay a fee in lieu of on-site detention under Chapter 4. The fee shall be applied to restoring or creating storage in a tank, pond or regional facility in the same basin.

7.11.2 Tank storage funded by fee-in-lieu shall:

- (a) meet Clause 7.7.1 in full before it is counted;
- (b) be downstream of the contributing development and upstream of the flood-prone area it is meant to protect;
- (c) be created, or under construction, before the development it serves is occupied, or within a period the basin plan fixes; and
- (d) be recorded in the register of Clause 10.17 with the developments that funded it, so that the same volume is not sold twice.

7.11.3 Fee-in-lieu does not replace:

- (a) the retention requirement of Chapter 4, which is always met on site; or
- (b) the water quality requirement of Chapter 8, which is met on site or in a regional facility treating the same runoff before it reaches the tank.

Commentary. Chapter 4 provides for fee-in-lieu toward restored tal or tank storage in master-planned basins. Malaysia's 2008 DID checklist allowed on-site detention only for small sites and required community ponds for larger areas (DID, 2008). In Uttar Pradesh the nearest existing forms of shared storage are the recharge reservoirs of at least 1% of the scheme area that the Byelaws 2025 require in layouts of more than 4 ha (cl. 13.1.2(b)); the Urban Development Department's direction that city drainage master plans integrate existing detention ponds and lakes, rejuvenate storage ponds within the city and create new ones outside it where possible (guideline, December 2024); the Amrit Sarovars; and, in Noida, the requirement that housing schemes of 20 acres or more develop ponds and water bodies on 5% of their area (Noida Building Regulations and Directions, 2006, as reported by CSE, 2017). None of these sets a technical standard for counting storage. Clause 7.11.2(b) matters because a tank downstream of the flood-prone area protects nothing. Clause 7.11.3 keeps retention on site: it is the volume-control layer of this Manual, and a regional tank cannot recharge the aquifer under the developed site.

7.12 Wetlands, marshes and estuaries

7.12.1 **Scope.** This clause applies to marshes, swamps, backwaters, estuaries, and tidal creeks and lagoons, including:

- (a) wetlands notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 or listed by the UP State Wetland Authority;
- (b) Ramgarh Tal, Gorakhpur, notified under the 2017 Rules on 7 December 2020 (742.245 ha), with its zone of influence of 50 m beyond the notified boundary and the six inflow nalas named in the notification;
- (c) the tals, jheels, marshy low land (kachhar) and depressions of the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Rapti, the Ghaghra, the Hindon and the other rivers, within the notified 1-in-100-year floodplain or the 1% AEP extent of Clause 7.3.4, whichever is larger (the river channel itself is a waterbody under the rest of this chapter); and
- (d) any other marsh, wetland, tal or jheel that the Authority notifies, that the wetland authority lists, or that a court or the National Green Tribunal directs to be protected.

7.12.2 **No drainage of wetlands.** No drain, channel, cut or pump shall be designed to drain a wetland, to lower its normal water level, or to reduce the period for which it is wet, except under a plan approved by the wetland authority.

7.12.3 **Inflows.** Every drain discharging into a wetland in Clause 7.12.1 shall:

- (a) meet Clause 7.10.6;
- (b) pass through water quality treatment for the WQv of its catchment (Chapter 8) before entering the wetland; and
- (c) where practicable, spread its flow across a vegetated margin rather than discharge at one point.

7.12.4 **Hydraulic connectivity.** Roads, embankments and utility corridors across or along a wetland shall have openings that:

- (a) pass the 1% AEP flow without raising the 1% AEP water level by more than the limit in Clause 7.6.2; and
- (b) keep the wetland's normal water exchange, including tidal exchange in estuaries, with openings spread along the crossing so that no part of the wetland is cut off.

7.12.5 **Storage counted at basin scale only.** Wetland storage shall be included in basin and regional models. It shall not be counted as detention for any individual development.

7.12.6 **Tidal wetlands and estuaries.** For estuaries and tidal wetlands:

- (a) tailwater shall be taken from Chapter 5 (Clause 2.12 joint cases);
- (b) works shall also comply with the Coastal Regulation Zone Notification in force; and
- (c) mouth-opening works, training walls and dredging are outside the scope of this Manual and need their own studies.

7.12.7 **No dumping.** No solid waste, construction debris or dredged material shall be placed in a wetland or its setback.

> **Commentary.** Ramgarh Tal in Gorakhpur is the wetland whose notification was read for this Manual. It was notified under the 2017 Rules on 7 December 2020 (No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018), over 742.245 ha, with a zone of influence of 50 m beyond the wetland boundary at every listed coordinate, and covers its six named inflow nalas (Kuda Ghat, Mohaddipur Power House, Rafiq Ahmed Kidwai, Golf Club, Sahabganj Paidleganj and Gordhaiya) and "all other water streams flowing into" it. The notification prohibits reclamation and filling, solid waste, use as a "sink for treated and untreated sewage", and construction other than boat jetties; water withdrawal, diversion or "any other hydrological intervention", and roads proposed under a master plan, are regulated, needing the permission of the UP State Wetland Authority on the recommendation of the District Wetland Committee. The National Green Tribunal had earlier directed that no project be taken up on the tal's submerged or catchment area until the State decided (order of 2016, as listed). Elsewhere in the State, 50

wetlands in nine districts, and later 101 in 26 districts, are reported to have been notified (as reported); the State Wetland Authority's list and the zones of influence it sets were not obtained. Uttar Pradesh has sites on the Ramsar list (as reported), but whether Ramgarh Tal is one was not established, and this Manual does not say so. A drain outfall, desilting, diversion or pumping station in or near a notified wetland therefore needs the Wetland Authority's permission where the notification regulates it, as well as compliance with this chapter. Clause 7.12.2 targets a specific risk: drains built to relieve flooding next to a marsh can drain the marsh itself, and once it is dry it is encroached. Sewage reaches Uttar Pradesh's tals and wetlands through the nalas (Clause 8.9, Commentary). At Ramgarh Tal, six major drains were intercepted and diverted and seven of 18 minor drains were under work (National Green Tribunal, O.A. 116/2014, as reported); a project of ₹474.42 crore for the Godhoiya nala and the tal, to intercept about 38 MLD, was approved on 7 November 2022, and its first phase, with separate storm and sewer lines, was opened on 1 November 2026 (as reported). The UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 directs that no one pollute ponds and rivers (s. 29), and the Ramgarh Tal notification bars the tal's use as a sink for treated or untreated sewage. Clauses 7.10.6(d) and 7.12.3 therefore cannot yet be met by many existing outfalls. In Uttar Pradesh they apply in full to every new outfall, and every existing outfall to a river, tal, jheel or wetland that carries dry-weather flow comes under the annual survey and the interception of Clauses 8.9.4 and 8.9.5 until its sources are removed.

7.13 Encroachment interfaces

7.13.1 **Boundary.** For design under this Manual, the boundary of a waterbody is the larger of its Revenue record boundary and its surveyed FTL (or top of bank), as in Clause 7.3.3. Setbacks are measured from that boundary.

7.13.2 **No reliance on encroached land.** No design shall:

- (a) count, as storage or conveyance, land within a waterbody boundary that is occupied by encroachment, unless its removal is ordered and funded; or
- (b) treat the encroached width of a channel as its design width.

7.13.3 **Public works in encroached reaches.** Where a public drainage work passes through an encroached reach:

- (a) it shall be designed for the full waterbody width (Clause 7.13.1);
- (b) where the full width cannot be cleared before the work is built, the design report shall state the interim capacity and the flood risk until it is cleared; and
- (c) the work shall be built so that the full width can be restored later without rebuilding it.

7.13.4 **Boundary marking.** Every development adjoining a waterbody shall, before the completion certificate:

- (a) mark the outer edge of Zone 1 on the ground with permanent survey markers at intervals of not more than 30 m and at every change of direction; and
- (b) show the setback zones on the approved layout plan and in the sale documents of every plot that includes setback land.

7.13.5 **Retaining walls.** No retaining wall, bund or embankment shall be built along the edge of a waterbody, within Zone 1, to protect or reclaim land, except to protect existing public infrastructure under the custodian's approval.

Commentary. Uttar Pradesh's main controls on filling and building in ponds are the UP Revenue Code, 2006 and the courts. The Code lets the Assistant Collector evict a person who damages, misappropriates or wrongfully occupies Gram Panchayat property, with compensation (s. 67), and allows the class of land reserved for a pond or other public use to be changed only "in exceptional cases", with equivalent land reserved for the same purpose nearby (s. 77(2)). The Supreme Court ordered the occupants of a pond to vacate and the State to "restore the pond, develop and maintain the same as a recreational spot" (*Hinch Lal Tiwari*, 2001); the Allahabad High Court

has ordered ponds and water channels identified from the revenue record of 1 July 1952 to be restored (*Iqbal Ahmad*, 2007, as cited), a school's encroachment on a pond in Agra to be removed (PIL 1474/2019), and, in October 2025, action across the State against encroachment on ponds and Gram Sabha land, with a warning of contempt to the officers who fail to act (as reported); it has also held that a fire station could not be built on pond land by exchange (as reported). The Byelaws 2025 make construction on a pond, reservoir, river or drain identified in a plan or recorded in the revenue records non-compoundable (cl. 16.3.2(xi)). On the floodplains, the CAG reported farmhouse plots allotted by GNIDA in Haibatpur, 130 to 553 m from the Hindon (Report No. 4 of 2023, as reported in the press), which the National Green Tribunal took up of its own motion (O.A. 437/2025); the Noida Authority demolished structures on the Yamuna floodplain under the Ganga Order (2022–2023, as reported); and the Lucknow Development Authority cleared the Akbar Nagar colony on the Kukrail floodplain in 2023–2024 (as reported). The encroachment and drainage sections of the UP Municipal Corporations Act, 1959 and the UP Municipalities Act, 1916 were not read for this Manual. This Manual cannot evict anyone. It can stop designs from treating encroachment as permanent (Clause 7.13.2), make public works restorable to full width (Clause 7.13.3), and make the setback visible on the ground and in property documents so that new buyers know it is there (Clause 7.13.4). The 30 m marker interval is set by this Manual.

7.14 Safety of tank bunds and embankments

7.14.1 **Dam Safety Act screening.** For every tank, and every embankment built or altered under this Manual, the designer shall determine whether it is a "specified dam" under the Dam Safety Act, 2021. Under the Act, a specified dam is a dam:

- (a) more than 15 m high, measured from the lowest point of the general foundation area to the top of the dam; or
- (b) between 10 m and 15 m high, where the crest length is not less than 500 m, or the reservoir capacity is not less than one million m³, or the maximum flood discharge dealt with by the dam is not less than 2,000 m³/s, or the dam has specially difficult foundation problems, or the dam is of unusual design.

Where it is a specified dam, the Act and the requirements of the State Dam Safety Organisation govern, in addition to this Manual.

7.14.2 **Hazard class.** Every tank bund and detention embankment that is not a specified dam shall be given a hazard class:

- **High hazard:** a breach could flood a habitable building, a school, a hospital, an arterial road or critical infrastructure.
- **Low hazard:** any other case.

7.14.3 **High-hazard embankments.** For high-hazard tank bunds and embankments:

- (a) the surplus weir or spillway shall pass the 1% AEP inflow at MWL with the freeboard of Clause 7.7.4(b), and shall be checked for the 0.2% AEP (500-yr) inflow without overtopping the bund (as for detention basins in Chapter 4);
- (b) a breach analysis shall map the area flooded by a breach at MWL;
- (c) an emergency action plan shall be prepared, with the warning and evacuation arrangements for the breach area; and
- (d) the design shall be certified and independently checked under Clause 10.6.

7.14.4 **Inspection.** Every tank whose storage is counted under Clause 7.7, and every high-hazard embankment, shall be inspected before the SW monsoon (by 31 May) and after every heavy-rainfall event (Chapter 10) for seepage, slips, cracks, animal burrows, trees on the bund, and blockage of the weir and sluices.

7.14.5 **No unauthorised cutting.** No person shall cut, lower or breach a tank bund or surplus weir during a flood except under the custodian's emergency procedure.

> Commentary. The definition of a specified dam is quoted from the Dam Safety Act, 2021 (Act 41 of 2021). The Act defines a "dam" as an artificial barrier constructed across rivers or tributaries to impound or divert water. It excludes flood embankments, dikes and guide bunds. The banks of most tals and ponds are low and are not expected to make them specified dams, but each shall be screened under Clause 7.14.1. The embankments along the Gomti at Lucknow and the Rapti at Gorakhpur, and the other river embankments of the I&WRD, are flood embankments, which the Act excludes. The bandhs and old tanks of Bundelkhand were not researched for this Manual; some may be specified dams, and each shall be screened. River barrages, such as the Gomti barrage at Lucknow, enter this Manual only as sources of inflow and tailwater (Chapter 5). Where the storage of a tal or jheel is counted under Clause 7.7, its bank or bund is a tank bund for Clause 7.14.2. Whether a tank bund that is not across a river or tributary is a "dam" under the Act is not clear from its text. Uttar Pradesh's embankment failures have come at the rivers. In the flood of August 1998 there were 13 breaches of embankments in Gorakhpur district, and road and rail links were cut for more than 72 hours (as reported). No breach map or emergency action plan for an Uttar Pradesh embankment, regulator or tal was found. The Lucknow Development Authority is reported to propose 12 more pumping stations and an embankment-and-road project of ₹182 crore along the Gomti (as reported). A failed embankment or regulator floods the colonies it was meant to protect, which is why Clause 7.14.3 asks for breach mapping of high-hazard embankments. The hazard classes, the breach analysis and the emergency action plan for high-hazard tanks are set by this Manual. They extend the Chapter 4 requirement for detention basins (1% AEP spillway with outlet blocked, 0.2% AEP for high-hazard basins) to tanks that are counted as design storage.

7.15 Submittal requirements

Every drainage report for a development or work under Clause 7.1.2 shall include:

1. the **Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1)** under Clause 7.3.2, with the setback zones and their basis (mapped extent, hydraulic study or fixed width);
2. the hydraulic study of the 1% AEP extent and floodway, where Clause 7.3.4 requires it;
3. the **Compensatory Storage Calculation (Form 7-3)**, by elevation band, where fill is proposed in the flood fringe;
4. for any tank storage counted: the **Tank Storage Credit Sheet (Form 7-2)**, with the survey, stage–storage curve, operating rule, cascade model results and custodian concurrence of Clause 7.7.1;
5. for any crossing, outfall or work in Zone 1: the custodian's NOC and the hydraulic analysis of Clause 7.6.2 or 7.10.3;
6. for restoration or desilting: the pre-works survey, silt tests and hydrogeological report of Clause 7.9; and
7. for any embankment: the Dam Safety Act screening and hazard class of Clause 7.14.

7.16 Review and update

7.16.1 This chapter shall be reviewed with the rest of the Manual (Chapter 1). The fixed-width table of Clause 7.4.6 shall also be reviewed within 2 years of the Authority adopting 1% AEP flood maps for its area.

7.16.2 Where the Authority adopts new 1% AEP flood maps, they apply to new submittals **6 months** after adoption, unless the Authority notifies otherwise.

References (chapter)

- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 (July 2025) approving the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and the Model Zoning Regulations-2025 under ss. 57 and 13(2) of the UP Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, with the English text (cls. 2.3.2, 2.11, 3.1.3.5, 13.1.2, 13.3 and 16.3.2). https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh. Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code, 2006, updated to 5 March 2021 (ss. 54, 59, 61, 67 and 77). https://www.lbsnaa.gov.in/storage/uploads/pdf_data/1742473203_Uttar%20Pradesh%20Revenue%20Code%202006%20updated%20till%2005.03.2021.pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh. Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019) (ss. 29, 33 and 34). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf
- Supreme Court of India. *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, judgment of 25 July 2001, AIR 2001 SC 3215 (paras 13–15). https://leap.unep.org/sites/default/files/court-case/COU-156224.pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ)(NGT)/2023 of 29 January 2025 (Ganga floodplain zone, Unnao to Ballia), annexed to the Department's report of 2 April 2025 in NGT O.A. 341/2022, *Deepak Awasthi v. State of U.P.* https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPORT%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20UP%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20341%20of%202022%20%20Deepak%20Awasthi%20Vs.%20State%20of%20U.P..pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. Progress report of 23 May 2026 in NGT O.A. 569/2023, *Alok Kumar v. Union of India* (Hindon floodplain). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Progress%20Report%20By%20Irrigation%20Department,%20State%20of%20Uttar%20Pradesh%20DATED%2023-05-2026%20in%20OA%20569%20of%202023%20Alok%20Kumar%20Vs%20UOI%20and%20Ors.pdf
- National Green Tribunal. O.A. 515/2023, *Ganga Pollution v. State of U.P.*: reply of the District Magistrate, Prayagraj, of 18 December 2025; reply of the Irrigation Department, Prayagraj, of 19 May 2026; reply of NMCG (November 2024, quoting the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016 and the Tribunal's orders of 2017). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20by%20DM,%20Prayagraj%20in%20IA%20No.%20458%20OF%202024%20IN%20OA%20No.%20515%20OF%202023%20(Ganga%20Pollution%20Vs.%20State%20of%20UP%20&%20Ors.).pdf ; https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPLY%20ON%20BEHALF%20OF%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20PRAYAGRAJ%20IN%20IA%20NO%20824%20OF%202025%20GANGA%20POLLUTION%20VS%20STATE%20OF%20UP%20AND%20ORS.pdf ; https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20of%20NMCG%20in%20OA%20NO%20515%20of%202023%20(Ganga%20Pollution%20Vs.%20State%20of%20UP%20&%20Ors.).pdf
- Prayagraj Development Authority. Reply of 17 December 2025 in NGT I.A. 288/2024 in O.A. 526/2023, annexing the order of the Allahabad High Court of 28 March 2011 in PIL No. 4003 of 2006, *In re Ganga Pollution*. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20by%20Prayagraj%20Development%20Authority%20in%20IA%20No.%20288%20of%202024%20IN%20OA%20No.%20526%20OF%202023%20(Ganga%20Sewa%20Abhiyan%20and%20Ors.%20Vs.%20UOI%20and%20Ors.).pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh. Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018 of 7 December 2020 (Ramgarh Taal Wetland, district Gorakhpur), as annexed to the response of CPCB in NGT O.A. 1057/2024, *Sudhir Kumar Jha v. Gorakhpur Development Authority* (also quoting r. 4(2)(vi) of the Wetlands Rules, 2017). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf
- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. *Urban Flood/Jalplavan Niyantran evam Storm Water Drainage Yojana — Dishanirdesh* (Urban Flood/Waterlogging Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme: Guidelines), Hindi, 24 December 2024. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-

new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Lucknow Municipal Corporation (2018). Detailed Project Report, AMRUT (water supply), §2.1.7 (storm drainage). https://lmc.up.nic.in/pdf/amrut/DPRLucknow22052018.pdf
- Central Water Commission (1985). Flood Estimation Report for Middle Ganga Plains, Subzone 1(f), GP/10/1984 (§1.6).
- Government of India. The Dam Safety Act, 2021 (Act 41 of 2021). https://www.casemine.com/act/in/626f9167714d58ef62b50d09 ; CWC, Specified Dam. https://rrssd.cwc.gov.in/specified-dam
- MoHUA (2015). Urban and Regional Development Plans Formulation and Implementation (URDPFI) Guidelines, Vol I. https://web.archive.org/web/2022/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/URDPFI%20Guidelines%20Vol%20I(2).pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement (Section 5600, Version 2025.01). https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (§5605.3 stream buffers). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management. https://www.water.gov.my/jps/resources/auto%20download%20images/5844dfbba8fc1.pdf
- National Green Tribunal. Reply of the Irrigation Construction Division, Ghaziabad, of 14 February 2026, and reply of the District Magistrate, Gautam Buddh Nagar, of 13 October 2025, in O.A. 437/2025 (GNIDA farmhouses on the Hindon floodplain). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPLY%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20CONSTRUCTION%20DIVISION,%20GHAZIABAD%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20437%20of%202025%20NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20CAG%20SLAMS%20GREATER%20NOIDA%20FOR%20ALLOWING%20FARMHOUSES%20ON%20HINDON%20FLOODPLAIN.pdf
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Report No. 4 of 2023, Land Acquisition and Allotment of Properties in GNIDA (tabled 13 August 2025). https://cag.gov.in/ag2/uttar-pradesh/en/audit-report/details/122410
- Centre for Science and Environment (2017). *Mainstreaming Rainwater Harvesting in Noida*. https://www.cseindia.org/content/downloadreports/7991
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (danger levels and highest flood levels, compiled from CWC; secondary). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/
- Reports of court orders and floodplain cases (secondary): LiveLaw on the Allahabad High Court's order on encroachment of Gram Sabha land (October 2025), https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/allahabad-high-court-crackdown-gram-sabha-land-encroachments-pradhans-lekhpals-tahsildars-inaction-306753 ; LiveLaw on the Supreme Court and Akbar Nagar (May 2024), https://www.livelaw.in/top-stories/supreme-court-lucknow-akbarnagar-demolitions-eviction-upheld-slum-dwellers-alternative-accommodation-257604 ; Down To Earth on the Gomti floodplain orders of 2010 and 2020, https://www.downtoearth.org.in/urbanisation/dte-exclusive-2020-order-on-floodplain-zoning-declaring-gomti-non-perennial-river-draws-flak-90655 ; ThePrint on the Yamuna floodplain notification (4 February 2025), https://theprint.in/india/over-5000-buildings-in-agra-face-risk-of-demolition-after-up-govt-demarcates-yamuna-floodplain/2478998 ; Housing.com on Noida's floodplain demolitions, https://housing.com/news/noida-authority-demolishes-32-illegal-structures-on-yamuna-riverbed
- Reports of floods, ponds and projects (secondary): Down To Earth, "Waters of woe" (Gorakhpur, 1998), https://www.downtoearth.org.in/news/waters-of-woe-22412 ; Business Today on the Ganga floods of August 2025, https://www.businesstoday.in/india/story/flooding-in-13-up-districts-ganga-flows-above-danger-mark-in-varanasi-mirzapur-ghazipur-ballia-487669-2025-08-04 ; Drishti IAS on the Godhoiya drain and Ramgarh Tal project, https://www.drishtiias.com/state-pcs-current-affairs/goddhoia-drain-and-ramgarh-tal ; Drishti IAS and Free Press Journal on Amrit Sarovars, https://www.drishtiias.com/state-pcs-current-affairs/up-ranks-1st-in-amrit-sarovar-construction/print_manually , https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/yogi-government-completes-nearly-20000-amrit-sarovars-across-uttar-pradesh

- Platts, J. T. (1884). *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English*. London: W. H. Allen; and Dasa, Syamasundara (1965–1975). *Hindi Shabdasagara*. Kashi: Nagari Pracarini Sabha; both online at the Digital South Asia Library, University of Chicago (accessed 6 November 2026). https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/platts/ ; https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/dasa-hindi/
- Government of India. Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017; Coastal Regulation Zone Notification, 2019.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
7A	Statewide waterbody GIS layer and inventory fields
7B	Fixed-width setback table (alternative S-3, with Annex 1C)
7C	Template tank operating rule, with flood cushion
7D	Desilting and restoration specification
7E	Glossary of Hindi and Urdu waterbody terms and regional variants
Form 7-1	Waterbody Sheet
Form 7-2	Tank Storage Credit Sheet
Form 7-3	Compensatory Storage Calculation (by elevation band)

CHAPTER 8

Water Quality and Recharge

8.1 Purpose and scope

8.1.1 This chapter sets the requirements for the quality of stormwater leaving a site or a public drainage system, and for groundwater recharge. It covers:

- (a) the water quality volume (WQv) and the water quality design flow;
- (b) the treatment train, and the selection and design of best management practices (BMPs);
- (c) the criteria for infiltration and recharge;
- (d) the exclusion of sewage and dry-weather flow from storm drains;
- (e) gross pollutant traps, first-flush treatment and screens at outfalls to waterbodies;
- (f) how rainwater harvesting (RWH) fits with retention and detention;
- (g) erosion and sediment control during construction; and
- (h) monitoring.

8.1.2 This chapter applies to every development and public work to which Chapter 4 applies (Chapter 1). Clauses 8.9 (sewage) and 8.12 (construction erosion and sediment control) apply to every development that needs a building permit or layout approval, and to every public drainage work, whatever its size.

8.1.3 Retention under Chapter 4 is the first and preferred form of water quality control. Runoff retained on site is treated in full. The rest of this chapter applies to the part of the WQv that is not retained.

> **Commentary.** CPHEEO (2019) is the only Indian manual that covers stormwater quality in any detail. Its Chapter 9 reproduces US event mean concentrations, but cautions that "in an Indian context the values would be much higher" because drains receive night soil, urine and food waste, and it sets no Indian numeric criteria (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §9.5). Its Chapter 10 describes water-sensitive urban design, LID and SuDS treatment trains (CPHEEO 2019, Part A Ch. 10). This chapter turns that guidance into requirements. It follows the treatment approach of the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), now merged into APWA 5600 (2025.01), with the Malaysian 3-month ARI water quality storm (MSMA 2, 2012) and the Georgia water quality volume (GSMM, 2016) as tropical and US benchmarks.

8.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Water quality volume (WQv)	The runoff volume that must be retained or treated, from the water quality rainfall depth (Clause 8.4).
Water quality rainfall depth (P_wq)	The greater of the retention depth (Annex 2E, Clause 2.10) and the 24-hour 3-month ARI depth (Annex 8A).

Term	Meaning in this Manual
3-month ARI depth	The 24-hour rainfall depth equalled or exceeded on average four times a year, from a partial-duration series of the long-term daily record.
Water quality design flow (Q_wq)	The peak flow from the 3-month ARI storm, used to size flow-through devices and diversion structures (Clause 8.4.5).
Runoff coefficient for WQv (Rv)	The volumetric runoff coefficient for small storms, Rv = 0.05 + 0.009·I.
BMP	A best management practice: a structural or non-structural measure that reduces pollutant loads or runoff volume.
Treatment train	Two or more BMPs in series, from source to site to regional scale (Clause 8.5).
Pretreatment	A BMP that removes coarse sediment, litter and oil before runoff reaches a filter or infiltration BMP.
First flush	The early part of a runoff event, which usually carries the highest concentrations of sediment, litter and oil.
Gross pollutant trap (GPT)	A device that captures litter, plastics, vegetation and coarse sediment, typically above about 5 mm.
Dry-weather flow (DWF)	Flow in a storm drain when it has not rained for at least 72 hours. In a separate storm system, DWF is evidence of sewage, sullage, groundwater infiltration or illicit discharge.
Cross-connection	Any pipe, channel or opening that lets sewage or sullage (grey water from kitchens, bathrooms and laundries) enter a storm drain.
Infiltration facility	A facility designed to store runoff below the ground surface, or in a depression, and let it soak into the soil: infiltration trenches and basins, unlined bioretention, permeable pavement with an open base, soakaways, recharge pits and recharge wells.
Seasonal high groundwater table	As defined in Clause 3.10.2: the highest level in the SW monsoon season.
Hotspot	A land use with a high risk of spills or contaminated runoff (Clause 8.8.8).
Level of Service (LoS) / Value Rating (VR)	The scoring system of Clause 8.6, from the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012).

8.3 Objectives and pollutants of concern

8.3.1 Stormwater treatment under this Manual shall aim to:

- (a) remove litter, plastics and other gross pollutants before they reach a waterbody;
- (b) remove suspended sediment, and the metals, nutrients and oil carried on it;
- (c) keep sewage and sullage out of storm drains and waterbodies;
- (d) recharge groundwater where soils and groundwater depth allow, without polluting it; and
- (e) prevent erosion and sediment discharge during construction.

8.3.2 The design shall address the following pollutants for every site, and the hotspot pollutants of Clause 8.8.8 where they apply:

Table 8.1 — Pollutants of concern, sources and primary controls

Pollutant	Main sources in Uttar Pradesh towns	Primary control
Gross pollutants (plastics, litter, vegetation)	Streets, markets, open dumping in drains	Source collection; GPTs and screens (Clause 8.10)

Pollutant	Main sources in Uttar Pradesh towns	Primary control
Suspended sediment	Construction sites, unpaved roads and verges, road wear, drain silt	Erosion and sediment control (Clause 8.12); pretreatment; filtration
Oil, grease and fuel	Roads, parking, fuel stations, workshops, bus depots	Oil-grit separators at hotspots; bioretention
Pathogens and organic load (BOD)	Sewage and sullage cross-connections, animal waste	Exclusion and DWF interception (Clause 8.9)
Nutrients (N, P)	Sewage, fertiliser, food waste, detergents	Exclusion; bioretention; wetlands
Heavy metals	Roads, roofs, industrial yards	Filtration; sedimentation

> **Commentary.** Gross pollutants and sewage come first in Clause 8.3 because they dominate the pollution of urban waterbodies in Uttar Pradesh, and because no treatment BMP works for long if they are not removed. CPHEEO (2019) notes that Indian drains carry night soil, urine and food waste (Part A §9.5). In its WSUD procedure it lists TSS, total nitrogen, total phosphorus and gross pollutants as the key pollutants (Part A Ch. 10). AMRUT 2.0 funds the harvesting of rainwater "through storm water drains into water body (which is not receiving sewage/effluent)" (Lok Sabha unstarred question AU1419), which only works if sewage is first kept out of the drains.

8.4 Water quality volume and design flow

8.4.1 **Water quality rainfall depth.** The water quality rainfall depth is:

$$P_{wq} = \max(P_{ret}, P_{3m})$$

where:

- P_{ret} = the retention depth for the site's zone (Annex 2E, Clause 2.10), mm; and
- P_{3m} = the 24-hour 3-month ARI depth for the site's zone (Annex 8A), mm.

8.4.2 **Water quality volume.** The WQv shall be computed as:

$$WQv = (P_{wq} / 1000) \times Rv \times A$$

where:

- WQv is in m³;
- A = the contributing area, m²;
- $Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 \cdot I$; and
- I = the impervious percentage of the contributing area (0–100), after the connectivity rules of Clause 3.9.

The Rv form above may be used only for sites under 0.5 ha and under the Tier B simplified method (Clause 4.14). This is the same limit as for the retention volume (Clause 4.4.2). For all other sites the WQv shall be computed with the SCS-CN method, as the retention volume is: WQv (m³) = 10 × Q_{wq} × A, where Q_{wq} (mm) is the SCS-CN runoff from P_{wq} for each sub-area and A is in ha.

8.4.3 **Climate factor.** The climate factor of Clause 2.8 shall not be applied to P_wq. P_ret and P_3m are frequency statistics of ordinary rainfall, not AEP design depths.

8.4.4 **WQv met by retention.** The volume retained on site under Chapter 4 counts toward the WQv in full. Where the retained volume is equal to or greater than the WQv, no further treatment is required for that area, except:

- (a) pretreatment of inflows to each retention facility (Clause 8.5.3);
- (b) hotspot controls (Clause 8.8.8); and
- (c) the outfall requirements of Clause 8.10, where the site discharges to a waterbody.

8.4.5 **Water quality design flow.** Flow-through devices (swales, filter strips, oil-grit separators, GPTs) and diversion weirs for off-line BMPs shall be sized for Q_wq. Q_wq shall be computed from the 3-month ARI intensity at the time of concentration of the contributing area:

- (a) by the Rational Method, where Chapter 3 allows it (a single element draining no more than 16 ha); or
- (b) as the peak of a hydrograph method using the 3-month ARI 24-hour depth with the alternating-block pattern of Clause 2.9.1.

8.4.6 **Bypass.** Flows above Q_wq shall bypass flow-through and off-line treatment devices without washing out the material already captured. The bypass shall be part of the minor or major system (Chapter 6).

8.4.7 **Drawdown.** Where the WQv is held in an extended-detention BMP (wet pond, constructed wetland or dry extended-detention basin), it shall be released over **24–48 hours** (Chapter 4).

> Commentary. The WQv depth is the runoff from the 3-month ARI storm or the retention depth, whichever is greater. The 3-month ARI is the Malaysian water quality design storm (MSMA 2, 2012). The Malaysian 2008 checklist gave its depth as about 40 mm and said it captures 90% or more of 24-hour storm runoff volume (DID, 2008). The Uttar Pradesh value must be computed (Annex 8A). Georgia sets its WQv as the runoff from 1.2 inches (about 30 mm), the depth that covers 85% of storms in an average year, and requires 80% removal of the average annual post-development TSS load (GSMM 2016, Vol 1, Standard #4). Kansas City's water quality storm is the 1.37-inch (about 35 mm) event that produces up to 90% of the runoff from all 24-hour storms in a year (MARC BMP Manual, 2012).
>
> The Rv formula is from the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), which computes WQv = P × Rv with Rv = 0.05 + 0.009·I. Rv is used instead of the SCS curve number because the CN method greatly understates runoff from small storms on pervious ground. Not applying the climate factor (Clause 8.4.3) has no direct precedent; this Manual does so because it treats P_wq like the retention depth, as a statistic of ordinary rainfall. Bypass of larger flows and the 24–48 hour drawdown follow Chapter 4; MARC (2012) required at least 40 hours of extended detention of the WQv.
>
> **Illustrative — not design values.** For a 1.0 ha site with 80% impervious cover and an assumed P_wq of 50 mm:
>
> - Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 × 80 = 0.77
> - WQv = (50 / 1000) × 0.77 × 10,000 = 385 m³

8.5 Treatment train and pretreatment

8.5.1 **Treatment train.** Water quality control shall be designed as a treatment train, in the order shown in Figure 8.1:

- (a) **source controls** on the plot: roof runoff to RWH, rain gardens, permeable paving, disconnection of impervious areas, and silt traps at inlets;

- (b) **site controls**: bioretention, swales, filter strips, infiltration, oil-grit separators at hotspots, wet ponds and extended detention; and
- (c) **regional controls**, for public drainage: GPTs and DWF interceptors at outfalls, constructed wetlands at tank inlets, and regional ponds.

8.5.2 A development shall meet the WQv on site, through (a) and (b). Regional controls under (c) may count toward a development's WQv only where a regional facility treating the same runoff has been built under a notified basin plan (Clause 7.11).

8.5.3 **Pretreatment.** Every bioretention cell, infiltration facility, permeable pavement receiving run-on, wet pond and constructed wetland shall have pretreatment at each concentrated inflow. Pretreatment shall be a sediment forebay, grass filter strip, silt trap or proprietary device that holds at least **10% of the WQv** of its contributing area, or that is sized for Q_wq for flow-through devices.

8.5.4 Pretreatment shall be accessible for cleaning without entering or disturbing the main BMP.

> **Commentary.** The treatment train follows CPHEEO (2019, Part A §10.2.3, SuDS treatment train) and CIRIA C753 *The SuDS Manual* (2015). It is also the order of priorities of this Manual: preserve, retain, detain, convey (Chapter 1). The 10% forebay volume has no Indian precedent; it is a common sizing rule for forebays in US manuals. In Uttar Pradesh, unpaved verges, construction sites and drain silt deliver a heavy sediment load. Bioretention and infiltration facilities without pretreatment clog, often within a year or two.

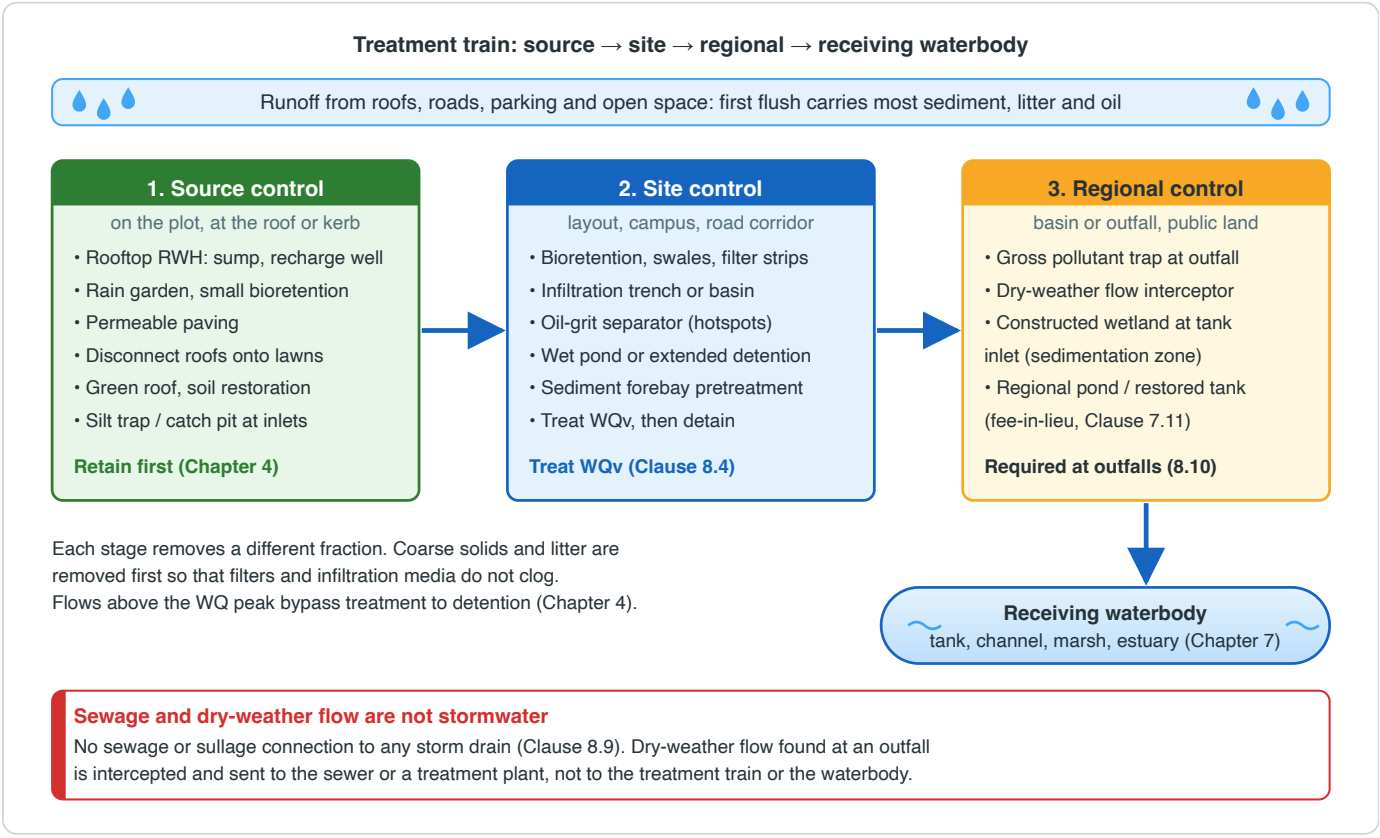


Figure 8.1 — Treatment train: source, site and regional controls before the receiving waterbody, with sewage and dry-weather flow kept out of the system. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015, and MARC/APWA, Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality, 2012.

8.6 BMP selection: Level of Service and Value Rating

8.6.1 **Method.** In Tier A areas, the BMPs for each site shall be selected by the Level of Service (LoS) method of this Clause. In Tier B areas, the simplified route of Clause 8.6.5 may be used.

8.6.2 **Required Level of Service.** For a site that is not redevelopment, the required LoS depends on the change in curve number (ΔCN) from pre- to post-development (Chapter 3):

Table 8.2 — Required Level of Service for sites that are not redevelopment

ΔCN	Impact	Required LoS
17 or more	High	8
7 to 16	Moderate	7
4 to 6	Low	6
1 to 3	Minimal	5

For redevelopment (existing impervious cover of 20% or more of the site), the required LoS shall be taken from Annex 8B.

8.6.3 **Value Rating.** Each BMP treating the WQv has a Value Rating (VR) from Table 8.3. The site's composite VR is the area-weighted average of the VRs of the BMPs serving each part of the site. Treatment trains get a composite VR under Annex 8B. The composite VR shall be equal to or greater than the required LoS.

8.6.4 **Conditions for a Value Rating.** A BMP earns its VR only if:

- (a) it is sized for the WQv (or Q_wq for flow-through devices) of the area credited to it;
- (b) it meets the design requirements of Clause 8.7 and, for infiltration, Clause 8.8; and
- (c) it has pretreatment under Clause 8.5.3.

8.6.5 **Tier B simplified route.** In Tier B areas, the requirement of Clause 8.6.3 is deemed met where the whole WQv of the site is either:

- (a) retained on site under Chapter 4; or
- (b) treated by a bioretention cell, rain garden or infiltration facility designed under Clauses 8.7 and 8.8, with pretreatment.

Table 8.3 — BMP Value Ratings and suitability in Uttar Pradesh

BMP	VR (MARC 2012)	Main pollutants removed	Volume reduction / recharge	Sandy alluvium (khadar, bhabar)	Laterite / hard rock	Usar, terai or tal-bed clay / high water table	Uttar Pradesh notes
Native vegetation (preserved)	9.25	All	High	Suited	Suited	Suited	Counts only for preserved, undisturbed area
Rain garden / infiltration	9.0	Sediment, metals, oil, nutrients	High	Suited if 1.0 m separation met	Conditional (test)	Not suited	Mosquito control: drain within 48 h
Bioretention	8.5	Sediment, metals, oil, nutrients	Medium–high (unlined); low (lined)	Suited	Suited, with underdrain	Lined, with underdrain	Media source and phosphorus content to be specified

BMP	VR (MARC 2012)	Main pollutants removed	Volume reduction / recharge	Sandy alluvium (khadar, bhabar)	Laterite / hard rock	Usar, terai or tal-bed clay / high water table	Uttar Pradesh notes
Permeable pavement	7.5	Sediment, metals, oil	Medium–high	Suited	Conditional	Lined only	Not where run-on carries heavy silt
Extended detention wetland	7.0	Sediment, nutrients, metals	Low	Conditional (water balance)	Suited	Suited	Good at tank inlets (Clause 7.9.7)
Media / sand filter	6.0	Sediment, metals	Low	Suited	Suited	Suited (lined)	Needs frequent cleaning
Extended wet detention (wet pond)	5.0	Sediment, metals, some nutrients	Low	Conditional (water balance)	Suited	Suited	Dry-season water balance (Clause 8.7.8)
Vegetated filter strip	5.0	Sediment	Low–medium	Suited	Suited	Suited	Mostly as pretreatment
Native vegetation swale	4.0	Sediment, oil	Low–medium	Suited	Suited	Suited	Not where Q_wq velocity is high
Extended dry detention	4.0	Coarse sediment	Low	Suited	Suited	Suited	Combine with detention (Chapter 4)
Proprietary / hydrodynamic devices	3.0–5.0	Coarse sediment, oil, litter	None	Suited	Suited	Suited	VR from verified test data only
Signage (public education)	+0.25	—	—	—	—	—	Added to composite VR

The VR column is from the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), Table 4.4. The suitability columns and notes have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

> **Commentary.** The LoS and VR method is from the MARC/APWA Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality (2012), Tables 4.2 and 4.4. The VRs combine a water quality score, based on effluent TSS concentrations in the International Stormwater BMP Database, with scores for volume reduction, temperature, and oils and floatables. The method suits Uttar Pradesh for two reasons. It rewards volume reduction and preservation, which also serve recharge. It can also be checked by a reviewer without water quality modelling. Its weakness is that the scores come from US data. Uttar Pradesh stormwater carries more litter and more sewage than the US runoff behind the scores (CPHEEO 2019, §9.5), so this Manual requires GPTs and DWF exclusion separately (Clauses 8.9 and 8.10) and does not let a VR stand in for them.

8.7 BMP design summaries

8.7.1 **General.** Each BMP shall be designed to the requirements below and to Annex 8D (BMP design sheets). The dimensions given are **recommended starting values** where marked; the designer shall justify any departure. Every BMP shall be designed for safe passage of flows above Q_wq (Clause 8.4.6) and shall have access for maintenance (Chapter 10).

8.7.2 **Bioretention and rain gardens** (Figure 8.2).

- (a) Surface ponding depth not more than **300 mm** above the mulch, with an overflow at the maximum ponding level.
- (b) Surface ponding drained within **48 hours**.
- (c) Filter media 600–900 mm deep: an engineered sandy loam with low fines and low phosphorus content (Annex 8D), with a 50–75 mm mulch layer.
- (d) A transition (choker) layer and a gravel drainage layer below the media.
- (e) A perforated underdrain where the design infiltration rate of the native soil (Clause 8.8.4) is below the rate needed to meet (b), or where the cell is lined.
- (f) Unlined cells shall meet the infiltration criteria of Clause 8.8. Cells that cannot meet them, and cells at hotspots, shall be lined.
- (g) Plants: native or naturalised species tolerant of both waterlogging and long dry spells.

8.7.3 **Vegetated swales.**

- (a) Trapezoidal or parabolic section, with side slopes no steeper than 1V:3H.
- (b) Longitudinal slope 0.5% to 4%, with check dams where steeper.
- (c) Flow depth at Q_wq not more than the height of the grass, and velocity at Q_wq not more than 0.3 m/s.
- (d) The 1% AEP flow (or the bypass) shall not erode the swale (Chapter 9 permissible velocities).
- (e) Where longitudinal slopes are below 1% or the subsoil is poorly drained, an underdrained ("dry") swale with filter media.

8.7.4 **Vegetated filter strips.**

- (a) Receive sheet flow only, with a level spreader where flow arrives concentrated.
- (b) Length in the direction of flow at least 5 m, and slope 1% to 8%.
- (c) Used mainly as pretreatment for bioretention, infiltration and swales.

8.7.5 **Permeable pavement.**

- (a) Run-on from impervious areas not more than twice the permeable area, and no run-on from unpaved or eroding areas.
- (b) Base reservoir of clean, open-graded aggregate, sized to hold its share of the WQv in its voids.
- (c) An open base (infiltrating) only where Clause 8.8 is met; otherwise lined with an underdrain, and then counted as filtration only.
- (d) Structural design for the traffic loading by the road authority's standards.
- (e) Not at hotspots, and not where the surface will be resurfaced with impermeable material.

8.7.6 **Infiltration trenches and basins** (Figure 8.3).

- (a) Pretreatment under Clause 8.5.3 in every case.
- (b) Trenches filled with clean washed aggregate, with a void ratio confirmed by test, wrapped in geotextile on the sides and top, on a sand base.
- (c) An observation well to the base of each trench.
- (d) Storage volume = WQv (or the retention volume of Chapter 4, where greater) held in the voids; emptied within 72 hours at the design infiltration rate.
- (e) An overflow to the minor or major system at grade.
- (f) Not brought into service until the contributing area is stabilised (Chapter 10).

8.7.7 **Wet ponds (extended wet detention).**

- (a) A permanent pool of at least the WQv, plus extended detention of the WQv above the pool, released over 24–48 hours.
- (b) A sediment forebay at each inlet (Clause 8.5.3).
- (c) Length-to-width ratio of the flow path at least 3:1, with no short-circuiting.

- (d) Permanent pool depth 1.0–2.5 m, with a safety bench (Clause 7.9.4).
- (e) A dry-season water balance (Clause 8.7.8).
- (f) The detention storage of Chapter 4 may sit above the extended detention level.

8.7.8 **Water balance for permanent pools.** Wet ponds and wetlands shall be shown, by a monthly water balance using IMD rainfall and pan evaporation, to keep at least 50% of the permanent pool volume (or the minimum wetland depth) through the driest year in 10. They shall not be topped up with groundwater, potable water or sewage. Where the balance fails, a dry extended-detention basin or a constructed wetland with a smaller permanent pool shall be used instead.

8.7.9 **Constructed wetlands.**

- (a) An inlet sedimentation pond (forebay) followed by a shallow vegetated macrophyte zone.
- (b) Extended detention of the WQv above the normal water level, released over 24–48 hours, with an extended detention depth not more than 0.5 m.
- (c) A flow path length-to-width ratio of at least 3:1, with deep zones across the flow path to spread the flow.
- (d) A high-flow bypass so that floods do not scour the macrophyte zone.
- (e) Where built at a tank inlet, the wetland shall sit within the tank's setback but outside its waterspread, and its storage shall not be counted as tank storage.

8.7.10 **Gross pollutant traps.**

- (a) Sized to treat Q_wq, with all flows up to the 1% AEP passing without washing out captured material.
- (b) Capture of gross pollutants down to about 5 mm.
- (c) Head loss included in the hydraulic grade line of the drain (Chapter 9), with the screen assumed **50% blocked**.
- (d) Storage for captured material sized for the cleaning interval of the O&M plan, and not less than the 3-monthly cleaning of Chapter 10.
- (e) Vehicle access for cleaning by suction or grab.

8.7.11 **Oil-grit separators.**

- (a) Required at the hotspots of Clause 8.8.8 that involve fuel or oil: fuel stations, vehicle workshops and washing bays, bus and truck depots, and parking areas of more than 50 spaces.
- (b) Sized for Q_wq, with a high-flow bypass.
- (c) Not to be used as the only treatment: they shall be followed by a filtering BMP where the site needs a VR above 5.

8.7.12 **Silt traps and catch pits.**

- (a) At every inlet that receives runoff from unpaved ground, and at the inlet of every drain discharging to a BMP or waterbody.
- (b) A sump at least 300 mm below the outlet invert.
- (c) Silt traps are pretreatment only and earn no VR.

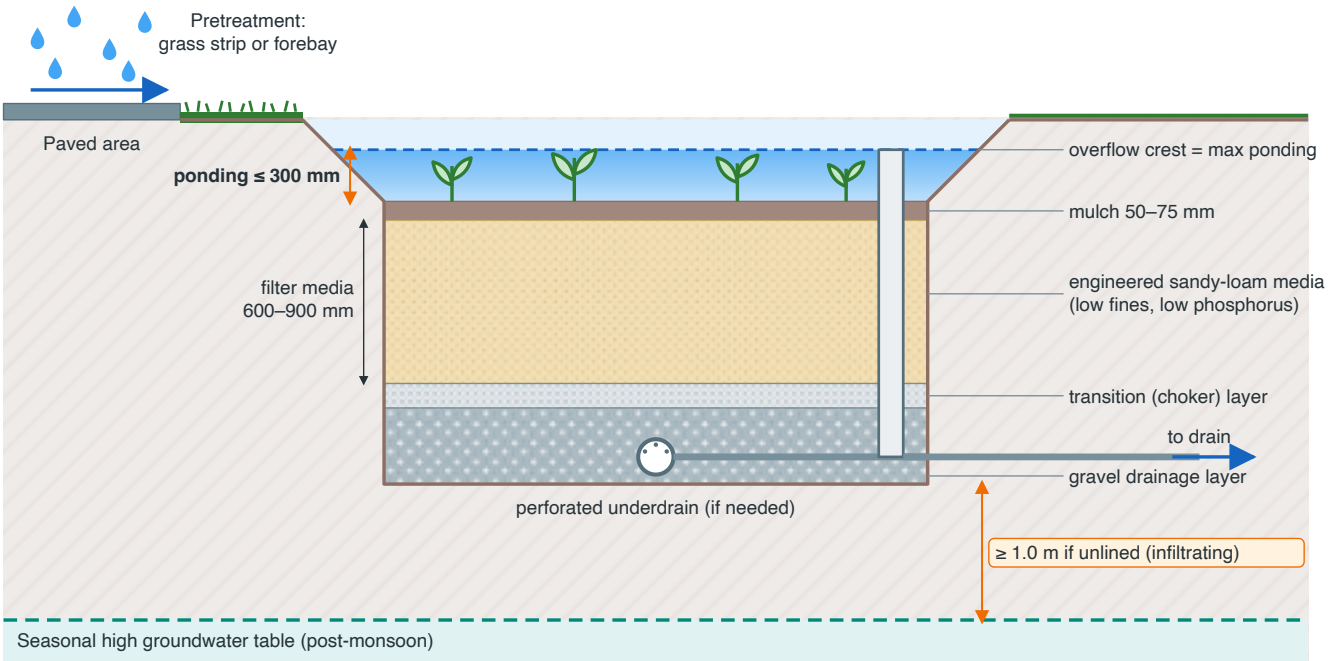
> **Commentary.** The design summaries draw on the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016, Vol 2), CIRIA C753 *The SuDS Manual* (2015) and PUB Singapore's ABC Waters Design Guidelines. The dimensions are typical of those manuals but have not been calibrated in Uttar Pradesh. Three local issues drive changes from the source manuals:
>
> - **Mosquitoes.** Dengue is endemic in Uttar Pradesh. Surface ponding in bioretention and rain gardens must drain within 48 hours (Clause 8.7.2(b)), well inside the time mosquito larvae need to develop. This is consistent with the 24–48 hour WQv drawdown of Clause 8.4.7.
> - **Dry seasons.** Most of Uttar Pradesh's rain falls in the south-west monsoon: the June–September normal is 746.2 mm for the State, 799.2 mm for East Uttar Pradesh and 672.0 mm for West Uttar Pradesh; the monsoon normally sets in over the east on 20 June, covers the whole State by 30 June and withdraws by

10 October (IMD, Meteorological Centre Lucknow). From October to the monsoon, tals and jheels fall unless they are fed, and in Uttar Pradesh the feed is often sewage, because most city nalas carry it (Clause 8.9, Commentary); the Ramgarh Tal notification bars the use of the tal as a "sink for treated and untreated sewage". Clause 8.7.8 applies to BMPs, which shall not be topped up with sewage; tals, jheels and Amrit Sarovars are waterbodies under Chapter 7 and are not to be used as treatment for a development. Wet ponds that dry out turn into stagnant pools or are used for dumping. Clause 8.7.8 requires a water balance and bans topping up with sewage, which is a common practice for keeping urban ponds "full".

- **Litter and silt.** GPTs and silt traps are treated as essential, not optional, because Uttar Pradesh drains carry heavy litter and silt loads. The 50% blockage factor for screens matches the grate clogging factor of Chapter 6.

The 50-space threshold for oil-grit separators, the 5 mm GPT capture size, the 0.3 m/s swale velocity and the other dimensions in this Clause have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

Bioretention cell (rain garden): section, not to scale



Lined version (no infiltration): impermeable liner below the gravel layer. Required at pollution hotspots and wherever the 1.0 m separation to seasonal high groundwater cannot be met.

Dimensions as set in Clause 8.7.2.

Figure 8.2 — Bioretention cell (rain garden) in section: pretreatment, surface ponding, filter media, transition and gravel layers, underdrain, overflow, and the 1.0 m separation to seasonal high groundwater for an unlined cell. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from MARC/APWA, Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality, 2012, and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

8.8 Infiltration and recharge criteria

8.8.1 **Groundwater separation.** An infiltration facility is permitted only where the **seasonal high groundwater table is at least 1.0 m below the base** of the facility. There is no exception in Uttar Pradesh, which has no coastal sand areas (Clause 8.8.9). In usar (sodic) soils, in the terai (sub-areas UP-C and UP-D), and wherever the seasonal high groundwater table is within this separation of the base (as over much of the khadar in the monsoon, or as a test at the

site shows), no infiltration facility, recharge pit, recharge well or recharge shaft shall receive runoff of any kind, and the exception for roof water in Clause 8.11.3(c) does not apply: roof water there goes to storage for use, as cl. 13.1.2 of the Byelaws 2025 provides for waterlogged areas, and section 33 of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (prevention of waterlogging) is the basis for refusing infiltration. This limit is set by this Manual. The seasonal high groundwater table shall be determined under Clause 3.10.2.

8.8.2 **Other separation.** The base of an infiltration facility shall also be at least 1.0 m above bedrock or any impermeable layer, unless the facility is designed to recharge a fractured or weathered rock aquifer under Clause 8.8.10.

8.8.3 **Infiltration tests.** The infiltration rate shall be measured at the proposed base level of the facility:

- (a) by a double-ring infiltrometer test (ASTM D3385) for basins, bioretention and permeable pavement;
- (b) by a falling-head borehole or trial-pit soakage test (for example BRE Digest 365) for trenches, soakaways, recharge pits and recharge wells;
- (c) with at least **2 tests per facility**, and at least 1 test per 100 m² of infiltration base area or per 50 m of trench length; and
- (d) by a person competent in geotechnical testing, with the results reported on the Infiltration Test Record (Form 8-2).

Tests made in the dry season shall be reported with the groundwater level at the time of test and the seasonal high level of Clause 8.8.1.

8.8.4 **Design infiltration rate.** The design infiltration rate is the measured rate divided by a safety factor:

- (a) **2.0** where the tests meet Clause 8.8.3(c) and the results vary by no more than a factor of 2; and
- (b) **3.0** otherwise.

8.8.5 **Minimum rates.**

- (a) Full infiltration (no underdrain) only where the design rate is at least **13 mm/h**.
- (b) Partial infiltration, with an underdrain, where the design rate is 3 mm/h to 13 mm/h. Only the volume that infiltrates within 72 hours is credited as retention.
- (c) No infiltration credit where the design rate is below 3 mm/h.

8.8.6 **Setbacks for infiltration facilities.** Infiltration facilities receiving runoff from roads, parking or other paved surfaces shall be at least:

- (a) **3 m** from building foundations, and **5 m** from a basement;
- (b) **1.5 m** from a property boundary, unless the neighbour agrees in writing;
- (c) **30 m** from a drinking-water well or borewell;
- (d) **15 m** from a septic tank or soak pit; and
- (e) **6 m** from the crest of a slope steeper than 1V:3H, unless a geotechnical report shows the slope remains stable.

Roof-only runoff to recharge structures is subject to (a) and (b) only, and to Clause 8.11.3.

8.8.7 **Drawdown and verification.** Every infiltration facility shall empty within **72 hours** at the design rate (Chapter 4), and shall be tested after construction (Clause 10.9.3).

8.8.8 **Hotspots.** Runoff from the following shall not be infiltrated without treatment, and shall not be infiltrated at all where (d) or (e) applies:

- (a) fuel stations;
- (b) vehicle workshops, washing bays, and bus and truck depots;
- (c) industrial yards and loading areas where hazardous materials are handled or stored;
- (d) solid waste transfer stations and landfill areas; and
- (e) land known or suspected to be contaminated.

Treatment for (a) to (c) shall include an oil-grit separator and a lined filtering BMP before any infiltration.

8.8.9 **Sandy coastal aquifers.** This Clause applies only to coastal sand aquifers. Uttar Pradesh has none, so the Clause has no effect in the State; it is kept only so that the clause numbers stay unchanged. The sandy alluvium of the river floodplains (khadar) and the coarse bhabar of the foothills are not coastal sand areas: Clause 8.8.1 applies there in full, and the reduced separation of item (d) does not. In coastal sand areas:

- (a) infiltration is the preferred means of meeting retention and the WQv wherever Clause 8.8.1 is met;
- (b) storm drains shall not be designed to lower the groundwater table: inverts below the seasonal high groundwater table shall be watertight, with no weep holes or subsoil drains that discharge groundwater to the outfall, unless a hydrogeological report shows no harm to the freshwater aquifer;
- (c) no long-term pumping of groundwater into storm drains shall be approved (for example basement dewatering); and
- (d) in notified coastal sand areas, **roof-only runoff** may be infiltrated with a separation of not less than **0.5 m** to the seasonal high groundwater table, provided a groundwater mounding check shows that the mound stays at least 0.3 m below the facility base and does not reach adjacent foundations or basements. No other runoff may use this reduced separation;
- (e) where neither the 1.0 m separation nor clause (d) can be met, the site shall use surface retention that does not infiltrate below ground (for example shallow vegetated depressions, disconnection of roofs onto lawns, and reuse), and detention under Chapter 4.

8.8.10 **Laterite and hard-rock areas.** In laterite and hard-rock terrain (for example the granite and granite-gneiss of Bundelkhand, as around Lalitpur and Mahoba, where groundwater is held only in the weathered and fractured zone, and the Vindhyan sandstone, limestone and shale of the south of the State, as the CGWB is reported to describe them):

- (a) tests shall be made at the facility base, below any surface crust or hardpan;
- (b) recharge into weathered or fractured rock is permitted only for roof runoff, or for runoff that has passed through a filtering BMP, because fractures give little treatment; and
- (c) infiltration on or above slopes shall be checked for slope stability.

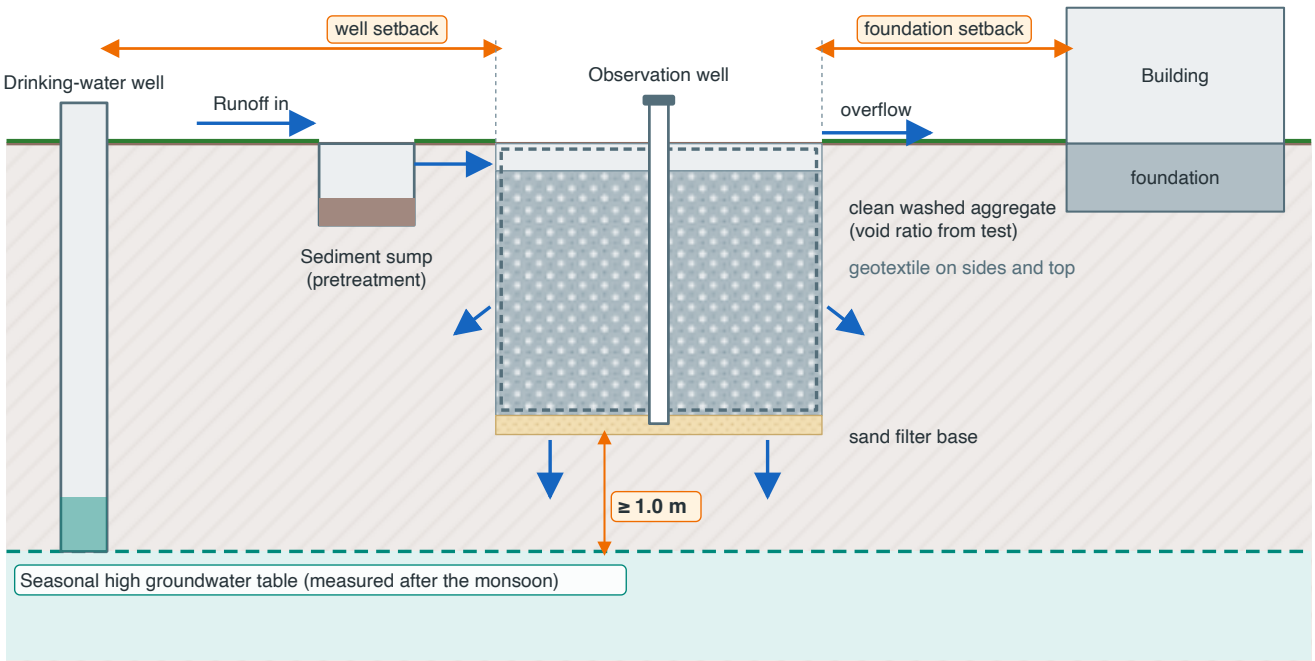
8.8.11 **Delta clays and black cotton soils.** In the usar (sodic) soils of central and eastern Uttar Pradesh, where field trials report infiltration in millimetres a day, not millimetres an hour (as reported), the fine deposits of the terai, and the silted beds of tals, talabs and jheels, and in expansive black cotton soils:

- (a) infiltration facilities will usually fail Clause 8.8.5 and need not be tested where the soil survey (Chapter 3) shows HSG D; and
- (b) where infiltration is used near buildings on expansive soils, the setback of Clause 8.8.6(a) shall be doubled.

> Commentary. The 1.0 m groundwater separation is a core requirement of this Manual. The other values in this Clause (the 1.0 m bedrock separation, test numbers, safety factors, minimum rates and setbacks) are typical of US and UK practice and have no Uttar Pradesh precedent. The well setback in Clause 8.8.6(c) applies to runoff from paved surfaces, not to roof water. Uttar Pradesh RWH practice routes roof water into open wells and recharge wells, and Clause 8.11 keeps that practice.
>
> No statewide map of hydrologic soil groups for Uttar Pradesh was found, and the CGWB's groundwater yearbook for the State could not be reached during research for this Manual; the depths and categories below are from a CGWB submission to the National Green Tribunal and from search summaries of CGWB documents, and every infiltration design needs the tests of Clause 8.8.3. The State's ground falls into five parts: the coarse bhabar at the foot of the hills, a recharge zone with deep water levels; the terai below it, of fine sediments, where wells flow on their own (auto-flow); the central Ganga plain, a multiple aquifer system whose upper aquifer, to about 50 m, is under heavy stress; the marginal alluvial plain; and the granite, gneiss and Vindhyan rocks of Bundelkhand and the south, where water is held in the weathered and fractured zone (CGWB, as reported). Uttar Pradesh has the largest area of sodic (usar) soil of any State, about 1.35 million ha (ICAR, as reported), with field infiltration rates of millimetres a day (CSSRI trials, as reported; units to be confirmed), and about 260,000 ha of the Sharda

Sahayak canal command is reported to be waterlogged (as reported). Lucknow city is "Over-exploited": the pre-monsoon depth to water fell from 5.4–42.8 m below ground in 2014 to 7.65–45.6 m in 2023, a fall of 1.4 to 13.1 m in ten years (CGWB, submission in NGT O.A. 594/2024). Across the State, 59 of 836 assessment units were over-exploited in 2024, 46 critical and 165 semi-critical (CGWB, as reported), and blocks in Gautam Buddh Nagar and Ghaziabad are reported to be over-exploited (as reported). This Manual's interim soil groups follow from these: khadar (newer floodplain alluvium) A or B by texture, but D in the monsoon wherever the seasonal water table is shallow; bangar (older alluvium) B or C, and C where kankar pans or clay lie within 1 m; usar soils D, with no infiltration credit without site tests; terai C or D; the bhabar fringe A or B; Bundelkhand D on granite-gneiss outcrop and thin red soils, C on deeper red sandy loam, and D on black soils; and made ground C unless tested. The State therefore needs opposite rules in different places. In the cities of the western doab and the central–east plain (UP-A and UP-B), where the water table is deep, as in Lucknow, Noida, Ghaziabad and Agra, recharge comes first, with pretreatment. In usar, on HSG D soils, in the terai (UP-C and UP-D) and on the khadar wherever the seasonal water table is within the separation of Clause 8.8.1, no infiltration is used, and retention must be met by storage for use and surface measures; the Byelaws 2025 already bar recharge in waterlogged areas (cl. 13.1.2), and section 33 of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 makes the prevention of waterlogging a statutory duty. Everywhere, runoff from roads and open land goes to surface systems and never directly to a recharge well, borewell or shaft (s. 28 of the Act; Clause 8.11.3(b)). Arsenic, fluoride and nitrate in Uttar Pradesh's groundwater were not researched for this Manual; water drawn back from a recharged aquifer for use should be tested for them. Clause 8.8.9 has no effect in Uttar Pradesh, which has no coast.

Infiltration trench: section, not to scale



Test infiltration at the proposed base level. Design rate = measured rate ÷ safety factor. Empty within 72 h.
Setback distances and test methods: Clauses 8.8.3 to 8.8.6. Road and parking runoff is never piped into a well.
Sandy coastal soils: high rates, shallow groundwater. Laterite, hard rock: low rates. Delta clay: usually unsuitable.

Figure 8.3 — Infiltration trench in section: pretreatment sump, aggregate-filled trench in geotextile, observation well, overflow, the 1.0 m minimum separation to the seasonal high groundwater table, and setbacks to wells and foundations. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, 2016 (Vol 2), and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

8.9 Sewage cross-connections and dry-weather flow

8.9.1 **No sewage in storm drains.** No sewage or sullage (grey water from kitchens, bathrooms and laundries), septic tank effluent, or trade effluent shall be connected to, or discharged into, any storm drain, by any pipe, channel or opening.

8.9.2 **Condition of approval.** Before the completion certificate, the Applicant shall show, by a dye or smoke test witnessed by the Authority or the sewerage agency, that every sewage and sullage outlet on the site discharges to a sewer or to an approved on-site system, and that none discharges to a storm drain. Any existing cross-connection on the site shall be removed as a condition of approval, including on redevelopment and on additions to existing buildings.

8.9.3 **Where no sewer exists.** Where no sewer is available, sewage and sullage shall go to an approved on-site or decentralised treatment system. The treated effluent of such a system may be discharged to a storm drain only with the written consent of the Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board (UPPCB) and the drain owner.

8.9.4 **Public drains: DWF survey.** Every ULB in a Tier A area shall survey its storm drain outfalls to waterbodies for dry-weather flow at least once a year, before the SW monsoon, and record:

- (a) the outfalls with DWF;
- (b) the estimated DWF rate; and
- (c) the upstream sources found by tracing, CCTV, dye or smoke testing.

The results shall be published in the register of Clause 10.17.

8.9.5 **DWF interception.** Until the sources are removed, every outfall to a waterbody that carries DWF shall have a DWF interceptor that:

- (a) diverts the DWF to a sewer or a treatment plant;
- (b) does not reduce the capacity of the storm drain for the minor or major event (Chapter 6), with its weir or diversion head losses included in the hydraulic design (Chapter 9);
- (c) has a screen ahead of the diversion; and
- (d) is not a substitute for removing the source connections.

8.9.6 **Sewage overflows.** No new sewage overflow, emergency bypass or pumping station overflow shall be designed to discharge into a storm drain or waterbody, except where the sewerage agency shows that no alternative exists, and then only with screening and with the overflow frequency stated.

> **Commentary.** The prohibition of sewage connections and the removal of existing cross-connections as a condition of approval are core requirements of this Manual, and Clause 1.10.3 allows no variance from them. Sewage in storm drains is the single largest water quality problem of urban drainage in Uttar Pradesh. It defeats every other measure in this chapter: BMPs designed for stormwater are overloaded, GPTs fill with sludge, and the receiving tanks and channels become sewage lagoons. CPHEEO (2019) notes that Indian drains carry night soil and urine (Part A §9.5). DWF interception (Clause 8.9.5) is an interim measure. It protects the waterbody while the sources are traced and removed, but it can become permanent if the source work is not done, which is why the annual survey and publication of Clause 8.9.4 are required. The annual survey frequency is set by this Manual.
>
> In Uttar Pradesh the Byelaws 2025 define a drain as "a conduit or channel for the carriage of storm water, sewage, ..." (definition 28), and most city nalas carry sewage in practice. The State's main remedy has been interception and diversion at the nala outfall ("tapping") under Namami Gange, with in-drain treatment of drains not yet tapped: at Prayagraj, 39 of the 81 drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna were reported untapped before the Kumbh of 2025, and 22 of them were treated in geotube units at Salori; in Lucknow, 28 of the 45 drains to the Gomti were reported untapped or partly tapped, carrying about 260 MLD; and Kanpur's Sisamau nala, about 140 MLD, was reported tapped in 2018 (all as reported). These are DWF interceptors under Clause 8.9.5, and Clause 8.9.5(b) applies to them in full: a tapping weir, interceptor sewer, geotube or bioremediation unit in or across a nala shall be shown

not to reduce the nala's capacity for the minor and major events, with its head losses in the hydraulic design, and flows above the interceptor's capacity shall pass on down the nala without backing it up into the colonies. In the many peri-urban areas without sewers, Clause 8.9.3 is the operative clause. Newer works point toward separation: Gorakhpur's Godhoiya nala project lays separate storm and sewer lines (as reported), and for the buildings the Byelaws 2025 permit near the Ganga, drainage "shall not be released directly into the river" (cl. 2.11(i)(c)).

8.10 Outfalls to waterbodies: first flush, gross pollutant traps and screens

8.10.1 **Requirement.** Every new storm drain outfall to a waterbody, and every existing outfall on a drain that is rebuilt, widened or extended, shall have:

- (a) a GPT designed under Clause 8.7.10; and
- (b) first-flush treatment: treatment of the WQv (or Q_wq) of the contributing catchment by the BMPs of Clause 8.7, either on the contributing sites or at the outfall.

8.10.2 **Where treatment at the outfall is impracticable.** Where land is not available at a public outfall, first-flush treatment may be provided by:

- (a) a proprietary first-flush or hydrodynamic device sized for Q_wq; or
- (b) a treatment wetland or forebay within the waterbody setback (Clause 7.5.1(b)), outside the waterspread.

8.10.3 **Screens and trash racks.** Screens at outfalls, culvert inlets and pump sumps shall:

- (a) be designed with **50% blockage** for hydraulic capacity;
- (b) have an overflow or bypass path so that a fully blocked screen does not flood property;
- (c) have bar spacing chosen for the hazard: closer spacing for litter capture, wider spacing where blockage would cause flooding; and
- (d) be cleanable from a safe platform, with vehicle access.

8.10.4 **Existing outfalls.** Each ULB shall prepare a programme to fit GPTs and DWF interceptors to its existing outfalls to waterbodies, starting with outfalls to tanks used for drinking water supply and to notified wetlands (Clause 7.12), and shall report progress in the register of Clause 10.17.

> Commentary. This Manual requires first-flush treatment and gross pollutant traps at outfalls to waterbodies. Gross pollutants are the most visible form of pollution in Uttar Pradesh waterbodies, and plastics also block drains and culverts, which links water quality to flooding. The 50% screen blockage matches the grate clogging factor of Chapter 6. Clause 8.10.3(c) warns against fine screens on large drains, which block in the first hour of a storm and cause the flooding they were meant to prevent.

8.11 Rainwater harvesting integration

8.11.1 **RWH mandate continues.** The rainwater harvesting required by the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 (cl. 13.1.2, which requires rooftop RWH on plots of all uses of 300 m² and more where there is no collective recharge network, "except waterlogged areas", and a recharge reservoir of at least 1% of the scheme area, not more than 2 m deep, in layouts of more than 4 ha), together with the conditions that section 31(2) of the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 makes binding on the agencies that sanction building plans, including a combined recharge system for group housing and colonies, continues to apply (Chapter 1). This Clause sets how RWH structures are counted under this Manual.

8.11.2 **Three different functions.** The designer shall keep apart, on the drawings and in the calculations:

- (a) **harvesting**: storage for use (sumps and tanks);
- (b) **recharge**: recharge pits, trenches, shafts and wells that put water into the ground; and
- (c) **detention**: storage with an orifice outlet that is empty at the start of a storm (Chapter 4).

8.11.3 **Recharge structures.**

- (a) Roof runoff may be led to recharge wells, open wells, recharge pits and shafts after a filter or settling chamber.
- (b) Runoff from roads, parking and other paved areas shall not be led directly into any well, borewell or recharge shaft. It may be recharged only through an infiltration facility that meets Clause 8.8, with pretreatment.
- (c) Recharge structures shall meet the groundwater separation of Clause 8.8.1, measured from the base of the pit or the bottom of the filter media, except recharge wells that receive filtered roof water only.

8.11.4 **Credit toward retention and WQv.** A recharge structure counts toward the retention volume of Chapter 4 and the WQv only where:

- (a) its infiltration rate has been tested under Clause 8.8.3;
- (b) it empties within 72 hours at the design rate; and
- (c) it has pretreatment.

A harvesting sump counts toward retention only where its contents are used, by a demand stated in the drainage report, within 72 hours (Chapter 4).

8.11.5 **No credit as detention.** RWH storage does not count as detention unless it is a dedicated volume that is empty when a storm arrives, with an outlet. RWH sumps are assumed **full** at the start of every SW monsoon (JJAS) design storm (Chapter 4).

8.11.6 **Overflow.** Every RWH structure shall have an overflow that discharges at grade to the site drainage, never onto a neighbouring plot or into a sewer.

8.11.7 **Surface-runoff recharge in public spaces.** Recharge trenches, shafts and percolation pits in roads, medians, parks and other public spaces shall meet Clause 8.8 in full, including the hotspot rules for roads with heavy traffic, and shall have a GPT or silt trap at each inlet.

> **Commentary.** The rule that RWH storage does not count as detention is set in Chapter 4. Uttar Pradesh's building rules make rainwater harvesting mandatory, but none of them sets a detention rule. The Byelaws 2025 require rooftop RWH on plots of all uses of 300 m² and more where there is no collective recharge network, "except waterlogged areas", where "Ground water recharging system should not be adopted … but arrangements can be made to collect rainwater received from the roofs"; plots of 100–300 m² in new schemes may instead drain to the scheme's collective recharge network; layouts of more than 4 ha must build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the scheme area, not more than 2 m deep, receiving "only the 'surface-run-off'" and no polluted water; and not more than 5% of a park may be concrete (cl. 13.1.2). For large projects they add at least one recharge bore per 5,000 m² of built-up area, "All recharge should be limited to shallow aquifer", and at least 20% of the open space pervious (environmental conditions for projects of 20,000 m² of built-up area and more). The remaining 30% of parks built over basement parking is to be planted so as to "allow seepage of rainwater" (cl. 3.1.2.3), and road margins are to be left as unpaved as possible "to ensure maximum groundwater recharge" (cl. 3.1.3.6). The UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 makes the rooftop RWH conditions notified by the State binding on the agencies that sanction building plans, and requires a combined recharge system for group housing and colonies (s. 31(2)); penalises an owner who fails to install the RWH system of the sanctioned drawings (s. 39(4)); and bars the direct recharge of rain "(except from rooftop) falling on open land, ground, roads (paved/unpaved), agricultural farms … through recharge well, bore well, recharge shaft, injection well etc." (s. 28). Section 28 makes Clause 8.11.3(b) the law in Uttar Pradesh: road and open-land runoff goes to surface systems,

never directly to a well or shaft. The Chief Minister was reported in October 2025 to have directed that RWH be mandatory on buildings above 100 m² (as reported); no Government Order giving effect to it was found, and it is not treated as law in this Manual. Noida's building regulations of 2006 are reported to require RWH on plots of more than 300 m² (CSE, 2017). None of these rules sets a filter or first-flush standard, requires any storage to be empty before a storm, or limits peak flow. Where the water table is deep, as in Lucknow, recharge is the main function of RWH (Clause 8.11.2(b)); in waterlogged areas, on usar and in the terai, harvesting for use comes first, and recharge is not used (Clause 8.8.1). RWH serves water supply and recharge. It is usually full, or its soil saturated, by the time a July to September monsoon depression arrives after weeks of rain, which is why it cannot be counted as detention.

Clause 8.11.3(b) has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because road runoff carries oil, metals and pathogens. A recharge shaft or borewell bypasses the soil that would otherwise filter it and delivers it straight to the aquifer that supplies wells nearby. The CGWB *Manual on Artificial Recharge of Ground Water* (2007) gives recharge structure types and filter designs; this Manual adds the source-water restrictions.

8.12 Construction-stage erosion and sediment control

8.12.1 **ESC plan.** Every development with land disturbance of **0.1 ha** or more, and every public drainage or road work, shall have an Erosion and Sediment Control (ESC) plan, approved with the drainage report. It shall show:

- (a) the sequence of clearing, earthworks and stabilisation;
- (b) the area exposed at each stage;
- (c) the measures of Clause 8.12.3, with their locations and sizes;
- (d) the protection of infiltration and retention areas (Chapter 10);
- (e) stockpile, concrete washout and fuel storage locations; and
- (f) the inspection and maintenance schedule.

8.12.2 **Monsoon timing.** Earthworks shall be planned so that:

- (a) the area exposed during the SW monsoon (June to September) is as small as practicable;
- (b) all completed earthworks are stabilised by vegetation, mulch, matting or paving by **31 May**; and
- (c) any area exposed between 15 June and 15 October has sediment controls in place before it is cleared.

8.12.3 **Measures.**

- (a) **Silt fences** along the downslope edge of disturbed areas receiving sheet flow, with the area draining to each fence limited as set in Annex 8E.
- (b) **Sediment traps** for concentrated flow from disturbed areas of up to 2 ha.
- (c) **Sediment basins** for disturbed areas of more than 2 ha. The storage volume below the outlet shall be at least the greater of the runoff from the 50% AEP (2-yr) 24-hour storm and **250 m³ per hectare** of drainage area, with a dewatering outlet that draws water from the surface.
- (d) **Inlet protection** at every existing drain inlet that receives runoff from the site.
- (e) **Stabilised construction exits**, with wheel washing where vehicles enter public roads.
- (f) **Stockpiles** outside Zone 1 of any waterbody setback (Chapter 7), at least 10 m from any drain, and covered during the SW monsoon.
- (g) **Dewatering** discharges passed through a sediment basin, settling tank or filter bag, never pumped directly into a drain or waterbody.
- (h) **Concrete washout** in a lined pit, never into a drain.

8.12.4 **Design storm for temporary works.** Temporary ESC measures use the rainfall of Chapter 2 with a climate factor of 1.0 (Clause 2.8.2).

8.12.5 **Inspection.** ESC measures shall be inspected weekly and within 24 hours after every heavy-rainfall event (as defined in Chapter 10), repaired within 48 hours, and cleaned when half full of sediment.

8.12.6 **Removal.** Temporary measures shall be removed only after the area draining to them is stabilised. Sediment shall be removed from any permanent facility used for sediment control before its as-built survey (Chapter 10).

> Commentary. The 0.1 ha threshold is the applicability threshold of Chapter 1. The sediment basin volume of 250 m³/ha is the US EPA Construction General Permit minimum of 3,600 ft³ per acre drained, converted to SI (US EPA, 2022 CGP); the CGP allows the alternative of the 2-year, 24-hour runoff. This Manual requires the greater of the two, because Uttar Pradesh's 2-year 24-hour depths are high and construction sites are commonly left exposed through the SW monsoon. The 2 ha division between traps and basins, the 31 May stabilisation date, the 10 m stockpile distance and the inspection frequency have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 31 May date matches the pre-monsoon deadline of Chapter 10. Construction sediment is a direct flood hazard as well as a pollutant: it fills drains, culverts and tanks, and in Uttar Pradesh the Urban Development Department asks every city drainage master plan to set procedures for desilting its detention ponds (guideline, December 2024; Clause 7.9, Commentary).

8.13 Monitoring

8.13.1 **Outfall monitoring.** Each Tier A authority shall monitor water quality at a representative set of its outfalls to waterbodies, including every outfall to a drinking-water tank or notified wetland. Monitoring shall include:

- (a) dry-weather sampling (Clause 8.9.4), at least once a year before the SW monsoon; and
- (b) wet-weather sampling of at least three events each SW monsoon at a set of index outfalls.

8.13.2 **Parameters.** At minimum: TSS, BOD, COD, faecal coliform, total nitrogen, total phosphorus, oil and grease, and, for industrial catchments, heavy metals. Results shall be compared with the CPCB water quality criteria for the designated best use of the receiving waterbody.

8.13.3 **Gross pollutant records.** The mass or volume of material removed from each GPT and screen at each cleaning shall be recorded in the O&M records (Chapter 10).

8.13.4 **BMP performance monitoring.** The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall run a BMP performance calibration programme and shall revise Table 8.3 and Annex 8C from its results.

8.13.5 **Publication.** Monitoring results shall be published in the register of Clause 10.17.

> Commentary. No Uttar Pradesh programme of stormwater quality monitoring was found during research for this Manual, and CPHEEO (2019) sets no Indian targets. The monitoring in Clause 8.13 is the minimum needed to calibrate Table 8.3 and to show whether DWF interception and source removal are working. The parameter list follows the key pollutants named in CPHEEO's WSUD procedure (TSS, nitrogen, phosphorus and gross pollutants), with BOD and faecal coliform added because of sewage contamination. The monitoring frequencies are set by this Manual.

8.14 Submittal requirements

Every drainage report under this chapter shall include:

1. the **Water Quality Sheet (Form 8-1)**: P_ret, P_3m and P_wq; the WQv and Q_wq for each drainage area; the volume retained under Chapter 4; and the BMP serving each area;
2. for Tier A: the LoS calculation (ΔCN, required LoS) and the composite VR (Clause 8.6);
3. the design of each BMP to Clause 8.7 and Annex 8D, with pretreatment;
4. for infiltration and recharge: the **Infiltration Test Record (Form 8-2)**, the seasonal high groundwater level and its source, the design rate, the drawdown time, and the setbacks of Clause 8.8.6;
5. the sewage and sullage connection plan and the dye or smoke test record of Clause 8.9.2;
6. the GPT and first-flush design for any outfall to a waterbody (Clause 8.10);
7. the RWH layout, separating harvesting, recharge and detention (Clause 8.11); and
8. the ESC plan (Clause 8.12).

8.15 Review and update

8.15.1 This chapter shall be reviewed with the rest of the Manual (Chapter 1). Table 8.3 shall also be reviewed when the calibration programme of Clause 8.13.4 reports, and in any case within 5 years of notification.

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A: Engineering Design (§9.5, Ch. 10). https://web.archive.org/web/2024/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/VolumeI-Part%20A-Engineering-Design.pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council and Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2012). Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality (Tables 4.2–4.6). https://www.marc.org/sites/default/files/2022-05/Best_Management_Practices_for_Stormwater_Quality.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01; MARC factsheet and Supplement. https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-5600-manual-factsheet ; https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- Atlanta Regional Commission / Georgia EPD (2016). Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, 2016 Edition, Vols 1–2. https://documents.atlantaregional.com/gastormwater/GSMM_2016%20EDITION_FINAL_V1.pdf
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2012). Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA), 2nd Edition. https://did.sarawak.gov.my/web/attachment/show/?docid=clRsMlRycU1lNnFRcnl3eDZnNkJMdz09OjpY0au0UPvQ9zUHVWRMbCKX
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management. https://www.water.gov.my/jps/resources/auto%20download%20images/5844dfbba8fc1.pdf
- CIRIA (2015). The SuDS Manual (C753). London: CIRIA.
- PUB, Singapore's National Water Agency. Active, Beautiful, Clean Waters Design Guidelines (current edition).
- Central Ground Water Board (2007). Manual on Artificial Recharge of Ground Water. Ministry of Water Resources, Government of India.
- US Environmental Protection Agency (2022). NPDES Construction General Permit (sediment basin sizing).
- ASTM D3385. Standard Test Method for Infiltration Rate of Soils in Field Using Double-Ring Infiltrometer.
- BRE Digest 365. Soakaway Design. Building Research Establishment, UK.
- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh. G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 (July 2025) and the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025, English text (definition 28 and cls. 2.11, 3.1.2.3, 3.1.3.6, 13.1.2 and the environmental conditions for large projects). https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh. Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act, 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019) (ss. 28, 29, 31, 33 and 39). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board / Central Ground Water Authority. Documents filed in NGT O.A. 594/2024 (groundwater levels in Lucknow city, 2014–2023). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Documents%20on%20behalf%20of%20CGWA%20in%20OA%20ON%20594%20of%202024%20(NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20LUCKNOW%20ME%20PAANEE%20CHALA%20RASATAL%2010%20SAAL%20ME%20160%20FOOT%20NEECHE%20CHALA%20GAYA%20JALSTAR%20MEL%20RAHE%20KHATARNAK%20SANKET_0.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. Dynamic Ground Water Resources of Uttar Pradesh, 2024 (read only through search summaries), https://www.cgwb.gov.in/cgwbpnm/public/uploads/documents/17422948445512851 54file.pdf ; Ground water profile of Uttar Pradesh, https://cgwb.gov.in/old_website/State-Profiles/Uttar%20pradesh.pdf ; Ground Water Year Book, Uttar Pradesh, 2023-24 (not reached), https://gwdata.cgwb.gov.in/download/Yearbook/Uttar%20Pradesh_GWYB%202023-24.pdf
- Usar soils and waterlogging (secondary, read through search summaries): ICAR, *Indian Farming*, https://epubs.icar.org.in/index.php/IndFarm/article/download/84418/34729/215648 ; CSSRI field trials, *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, https://epubs.icar.org.in/index.php/IJAgS/article/download/1296/405/2603 ; Sharda Sahayak command study (2024), https://agris.fao.org/search/ar/records/66d9b981f995ef9c04259939
- Government of Uttar Pradesh. Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018 of 7 December 2020 (Ramgarh Taal Wetland), as annexed in NGT O.A. 1057/2024 (Chapter 7 references).
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow. Southwest Monsoon Report 2025 for Uttar Pradesh (normals, onset and withdrawal).
- Centre for Science and Environment (2017). *Mainstreaming Rainwater Harvesting in Noida*. https://www.cseindia.org/content/downloadreports/7991

- Reports of RWH and drain tapping (secondary): Amar Ujala on the Chief Minister's direction on RWH (4 October 2025), https://www.amarujala.com/lucknow/up-cm-yogi-orders-rainwater-harvesting-to-be-mandatory-in-buildings-larger-than-100-square-meters-potters-ex-2025-10-04 ; The Statesman on the Prayagraj drains and geotubes, https://www.thestatesman.com/india/up-jal-nigam-adopts-geotube-technology-to-treat-drains-ahead-of-maha-kumbh-2025-1503376493.html ; Free Press Journal on the Gomti drains in Lucknow, https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/up-plans-45-drain-sewage-control-network-to-clean-gomti-river-in-lucknow-under-namami-gange ; Down To Earth on the Kanpur drains, https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/dirty-ganga-funds-down-the-drain-in-up-63980
- Platts, J. T. (1884). *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English* (plant names in Annex 8D, pp. 39, 229, 372, 489, 531, 740, 801, 828, 849, 926, 1132, 1152 and 1168). https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/platts/
- Parliament reply AU1419 on AMRUT 2.0 admissible components. https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/2988692/1/AU1419_tzClvw.pdf

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
8A	3-month ARI 24-hour depth and IDF by zone
8B	Redevelopment LoS table and treatment-train composite VR
8C	Uttar Pradesh BMP performance calibration
8D	BMP design sheets, media specification, plant lists
8E	Erosion and sediment control standard details
Form 8-1	Water Quality Sheet
Form 8-2	Infiltration Test Record

CHAPTER 9

Hydraulic Design of Structures

9.1 Purpose and scope

9.1.1 This chapter sets the hydraulic design methods for the structures used in the minor and major systems (Chapter 6), in retention and detention facilities (Chapter 4), at outfalls (Chapter 5) and at waterbodies (Chapter 7). It covers:

- (a) pipes and box drains (Clause 9.3);
- (b) culverts (Clause 9.4);
- (c) open channels (Clause 9.5);
- (d) energy dissipators, outlet protection and drop structures (Clause 9.6);
- (e) detention outlet structures (Clause 9.7);
- (f) trash racks and screens (Clause 9.8);
- (g) pumps and sumps (Clause 9.9);
- (h) tide gates, flap gates and non-return valves (Clause 9.10);
- (i) inlets and gratings (Clause 9.11);
- (j) manholes, junction chambers and access (Clause 9.12); and
- (k) materials and durability, including coastal and saline exposure (Clause 9.13).

9.1.2 **Structural design is outside the scope of this Manual.** Structures shall be designed structurally to the applicable Indian Standards and IRC codes, for example IS 456 (plain and reinforced concrete), IS 458 (concrete pipes), IRC:SP:13 (small bridges and culverts) and the IRC bridge codes. Where this chapter refers to a structural standard, it does so only for durability (Clause 9.13) or hydraulic performance.

9.1.3 Design flows, design AEPs and level-of-service limits come from Chapters 2 to 7. This chapter does not change them.

> **Commentary.** APWA Section 5600 places most structure hydraulics in its sections on inlets and manholes (5604), enclosed pipe systems (5606), engineered channels (5607) and detention (5608). CPHEEO (2019) spreads them across Chapters 5, 6, 8 and 11. This chapter gathers them in one place and points to the US Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) hydraulic circulars for methods that Indian codes do not cover in enough detail: HDS-5 for culverts, HEC-14 for energy dissipators, HEC-22 for inlets and access holes, and HEC-24 for pump stations. The FHWA editions cited are those listed in the FHWA hydraulics library as of October 2026.

9.2 General requirements

9.2.1 **Tailwater.** Every structure that discharges to a river, nala, tal or other water body whose level can rise above the outfall invert shall be analysed with the tailwater conditions of Chapter 5: the non-tidal tailwater of Clause 5.6 for minor- and major-system design; the riverine backwater of Clause 5.8, including the flood from any barrage or dam upstream and from the catchment below it; the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 wherever the river can rise above the outfall invert, which is the normal case for the city drains that outfall to the Gomti at Lucknow, the Ganga at Kanpur, Prayagraj

and Varanasi, the Yamuna at Agra and Prayagraj, the Rapti at Gorakhpur and the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida, and for the drains behind river embankments, which reach the river only through regulators or by pumping; the level held in a drain by any regulator, interception structure or pumping station downstream of the outfall, taken as a fixed control at its gate-closed level, its weir crest or the start level of its pumps; and the joint case of Clause 2.12. No document found sets a design river level at any outfall in Uttar Pradesh; until one is published, the levels of Chapter 5 apply.

9.2.2 **Climate factor.** Design flows shall include the climate factor of Clause 2.8.

9.2.3 **Maintenance access.** Every structure shall be accessible for inspection and cleaning by the methods in Clause 9.12 and Chapter 10, without manual entry into confined spaces wherever practicable.

9.2.4 **Design life.** Structures shall be designed for a service life of at least 50 years for concrete and masonry works, and at least 25 years for mechanical and electrical equipment, unless the approving authority agrees otherwise.

9.2.5 **Blockage.** Where a structure can be blocked by debris, it shall be checked in the blocked condition set out in this chapter, and a safe overflow route shall exist for that condition (Chapter 6, Clause 6.3.2).

> Commentary. The design-life values in Clause 9.2.4 have no direct precedent; this Manual sets them because they are needed to decide when the climate factor applies (Clause 2.8.2 applies it to elements with a design life over 25 years).

9.3 Pipes and box drains

9.3.1 **Capacity and roughness.** Pipe and box-drain capacity shall be computed by Manning's equation with the design n of Chapter 6, Table 6.6. For precast or cast-in-situ RCC box drains, the design n shall be at least 0.015.

9.3.2 **Partly full flow.** Depth, velocity and discharge in partly full circular pipes shall be computed from the hydraulic-element relationships for circular sections (for example CPHEEO 2019, Table 5.5). The minimum velocity of Clause 6.7.3 applies at the design flow.

9.3.3 **Pressure flow.** Where a pipe runs full or surcharged, the HGL shall be computed under Chapter 6, Clause 6.8, with friction and structure losses.

9.3.4 **Steep pipes.** Where the design flow in a pipe is supercritical (Froude number above 1), the designer shall:

- (a) locate any hydraulic jump and show that it occurs in a structure designed to contain it, not in a pipe run;
- (b) provide air venting where the jump can seal the pipe; and
- (c) meet the maximum velocity of Clause 6.7.3(b).

9.3.5 **Changes of size and direction.**

- (a) Pipe size shall not decrease downstream.
- (b) Pipes shall join only at manholes or junction chambers, except that inlet connections may join pipes of 1,200 mm or more through a factory-made junction.
- (c) Changes of direction greater than 90° in a single structure are not permitted.

9.3.6 **Flotation.** Pipes and box drains in high groundwater shall be checked for flotation (Chapter 6, Clause 6.7.7).

> Commentary. The design n of 0.015 for box drains is set by this Manual to match the "fair" concrete value in Table 6.6. Clauses 9.3.4 and 9.3.5 follow common practice in FHWA HEC-22 and other manuals. A jump inside a pipe run causes pressure surges and can blow off manhole covers.

9.4 Culverts

9.4.1 **Method.** Culverts shall be designed by the methods of FHWA *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, HDS-5, 3rd edition (2012), or by software that implements them (for example FHWA HY-8). The design headwater is the **greater** of the headwater under inlet control (HWi) and the headwater under outlet control (HWo).

9.4.2 **Inlet control.** HWi shall be computed from the HDS-5 inlet-control equations or nomographs for the barrel shape, material and inlet edge condition actually built.

9.4.3 **Outlet control.** HWo shall be computed as:

> HWo = ho + H − L·S

> H = [1 + ke + (19.63 n² L) / R^1.33] · V² / 2g (SI units, full barrel)

> ho = the greater of TW and (dc + D)/2

where ho is the outlet water depth used for control (m), H is the total head loss through the barrel (m), L is the barrel length (m), S is the barrel slope (m/m), ke is the entrance loss coefficient (Table 9.1), n is the barrel roughness, R is the hydraulic radius (m), V is the barrel velocity (m/s), TW is the tailwater depth above the outlet invert (m), dc is the critical depth (m) and D is the barrel rise (m). Part-full barrels under outlet control shall be analysed by backwater calculation as set out in HDS-5.

Table 9.1 — Entrance loss coefficients ke (outlet control, full or partly full)

Barrel and inlet	ke
Concrete pipe, projecting from fill, socket (groove) end	0.2
Concrete pipe, projecting from fill, square-cut end	0.5
Concrete pipe, headwall or headwall with wingwalls, socket end	0.2
Concrete pipe, headwall or headwall with wingwalls, square edge	0.5
Concrete pipe, headwall, rounded entrance (radius = D/12)	0.2
Concrete pipe, mitred to conform to fill slope	0.7
Concrete pipe, bevelled edges	0.2
Corrugated metal pipe, projecting from fill	0.9
RCC box, headwall parallel to embankment, square edge on three sides	0.5
RCC box, headwall parallel to embankment, three edges rounded or bevelled	0.2
RCC box, wingwalls at 30°–75° to barrel, square-edged crown	0.4
RCC box, wingwalls at 10°–25° to barrel, square-edged crown	0.5
RCC box, wingwalls parallel (extension of sides), square-edged crown	0.7

Source: FHWA HDS-5 (2012), entrance loss coefficient table (Appendix C).

9.4.4 **Tailwater.** TW shall be the higher of:

- (a) the normal or backwater depth in the downstream channel at the design flow; and
- (b) the tailwater level of Clause 9.2.1, for culverts within tidal or river backwater reach.

9.4.5 **Headwater limits.** At the design AEP of Chapter 6, Table 6.1:

- (a) HW/D shall not exceed 1.2;
- (b) the headwater shall be at least 0.3 m below the edge of the road shoulder at the upstream face; and
- (c) the headwater shall not raise water levels at any upstream building or property boundary above the limits of Chapter 6, Clause 6.12.2(d).

9.4.6 **Road overtopping.** Flow over the road in the check and 1% AEP events shall be computed with the broad-crested weir equation:

> Qr = Cd · L · h^1.5

where Qr is the overtopping flow (m³/s), L is the length of the overtopping section (m) and h is the depth of the headwater above the road crest (m). Cd shall be taken from HDS-5 for the road surface and the ratio of h to road width, and shall not exceed 1.66 (SI). The culvert and overtopping flows shall be balanced at a common headwater. The overtopping depths and hazard shall meet Chapter 6, Clause 6.12.

9.4.7 **Outlet velocity.** The outlet velocity at the design AEP and at the 1% AEP shall be computed and the outlet protected under Clause 9.6.

9.4.8 **Barrels and debris.**

- (a) Multi-barrel culverts shall be avoided in debris-prone urban drains. Where they are used, one barrel shall carry the dry-weather flow, and the inlet shall have a debris fin or deflector.
- (b) Culverts shall meet the minimum size and blockage checks of Chapter 6, Clauses 6.12.4 and 6.12.5.
- (c) Culvert inverts shall match the bed of the drain. They shall not be set above the bed, which traps silt and water upstream.

9.4.9 **Headwalls and cut-offs.** Inlets and outlets shall have headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls designed to prevent piping and undermining.

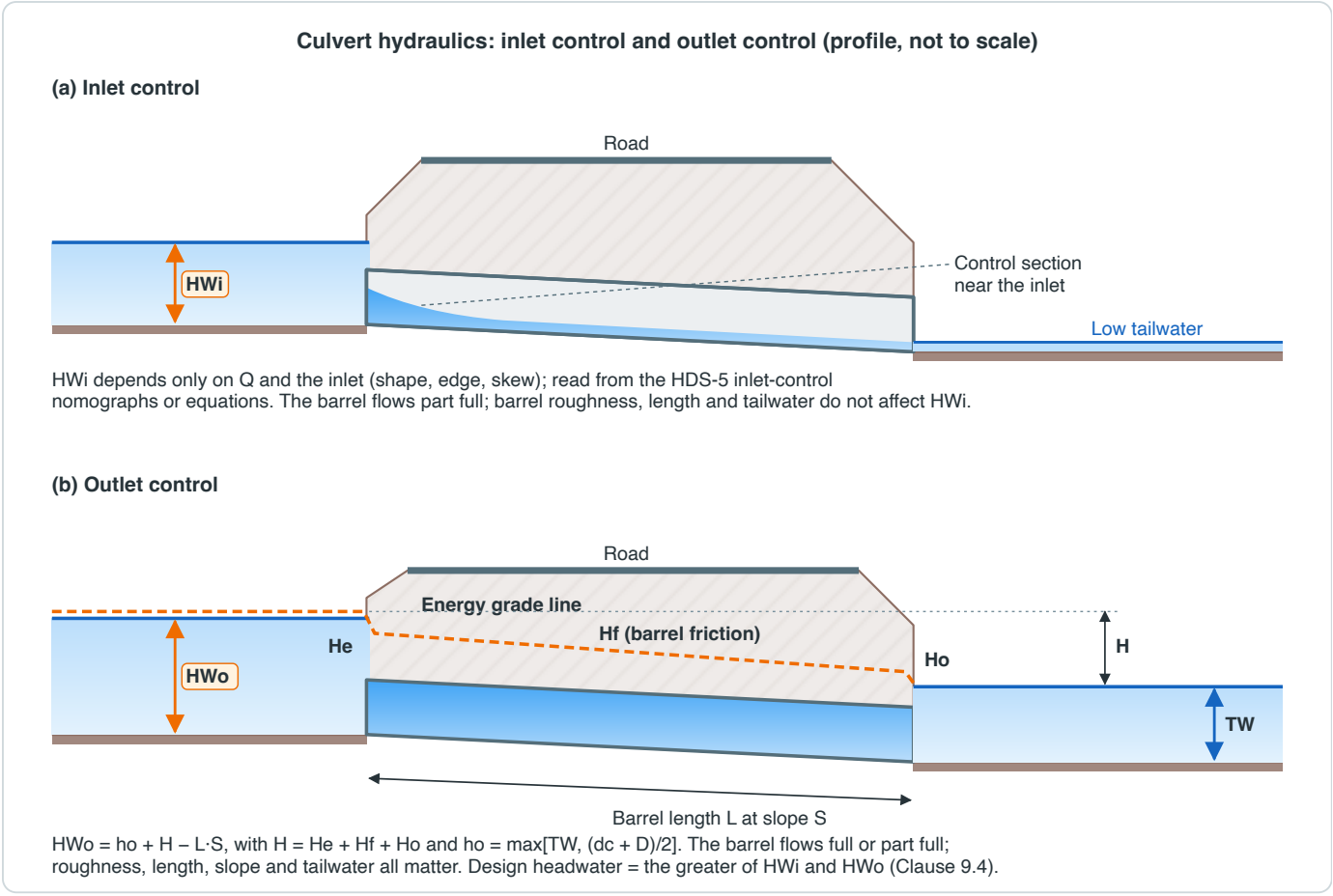


Figure 9.1 — Culvert hydraulics: inlet control and outlet control. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts, HDS-5 (3rd ed., 2012).

> **Commentary.** HDS-5 (3rd ed., FHWA-HIF-12-026, April 2012) merged the culvert design material of HEC-5, HEC-10 and HEC-13 and is the current FHWA culvert manual. The outlet-control equation in Clause 9.4.3 is the HDS-5 energy equation in SI units: the friction coefficient 19.63 equals 2g. The ke values in Table 9.1 are reproduced from HDS-5. The weir coefficient cap of 1.66 (SI) is the conversion of the APWA 5600 (2006) limit of C ≤ 3.0 (US units) for overtopping calculations. The headwater limits of Clause 9.4.5 are set by this Manual: HW/D ≤ 1.2 keeps the inlet from operating far into submerged-orifice flow at the design event, where small increases in flow give large increases in headwater. Clause 9.4.8(c) has no direct precedent; it is included because raised culvert inverts are common in Uttar Pradesh where a road is rebuilt on top of an old culvert, and they hold standing water and silt upstream.

9.5 Open channels

9.5.1 **Flow computation.** Open channels shall be designed by Manning's equation for uniform flow, with the n of Table 6.6. Water levels shall be computed by gradually varied flow (standard step) analysis where tailwater, bridges, culverts, bends or changes of section affect them, which on the city drains that outfall to the Gomti, the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Rapti and the Hindon, whose outfalls a river in flood can hold up, and on the drains behind the river embankments at Lucknow and Gorakhpur, which reach the river through regulators or by pumping, is the normal case.

9.5.2 **Flow regime.** At the design flow, the Froude number shall not exceed 0.8 (CPHEEO 2019, §5.3), unless the channel is designed as a supercritical chute. Flows with a Froude number between 0.8 and 1.2 are not permitted at the design flow in any channel.

9.5.3 **Permissible velocities.** Mean velocity at the design flow shall not exceed the limits of Table 9.2.

Table 9.2 — Maximum permissible mean velocities in channels

Lining or soil	Maximum velocity (m/s)	Source
Concrete lining	3.0	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11
Riprap lining	1.8	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11
Grassed lining	1.2	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11
Stabilised earthen channel (modified natural channel)	2.0, or the critical velocity if less	CPHEEO 2019 §5.10.3
Unlined, fine sand	0.46	Fortier and Scobey (1926), clear water
Unlined, sandy loam	0.53	As above
Unlined, silt loam	0.61	As above
Unlined, firm loam	0.76	As above
Unlined, stiff clay	1.14	As above
Unlined, fine gravel	0.76	As above
Unlined, coarse gravel	1.22	As above

Flexible linings (vegetation, riprap, geosynthetics) may instead be designed by the permissible shear stress method of FHWA HEC-15, *Design of Roadside Channels with Flexible Linings*, 3rd edition (2005).

9.5.4 **Longitudinal slope.** In engineered channels, the longitudinal slope shall not exceed 0.4% for natural linings and 0.2% for concrete linings, unless drop structures (Clause 9.6.6) or a chute are provided (CPHEEO 2019, Table 5.11).

9.5.5 **Freeboard and bends.** Freeboard shall meet Chapter 6, Table 6.7, measured above the water level that includes superelevation at bends. Bend radii shall meet Chapter 6, Clause 6.7.10.

9.5.6 **Side slopes.** Unless a structural or geotechnical design supports a steeper slope:

- (a) unlined earth channels shall have side slopes no steeper than 1V:2H; and
- (b) grassed channels that are mown shall have side slopes no steeper than 1V:3H.

9.5.7 **Low-flow channel.** Channels with a bed width of 3 m or more shall have a defined low-flow channel that carries the dry-weather flow at the self-cleansing velocity of Clause 6.7.3.

9.5.8 **Transitions.** Changes of section shall use gradual transitions. Abrupt expansions and contractions are not permitted in supercritical flow.

9.5.9 **Linings in high groundwater.** Lined channels in areas of high groundwater or tidal influence shall have weep holes with filters, or shall be designed to resist uplift with the channel empty.

9.5.10 **Natural channels.** Natural channels shall be preserved where possible (CPHEEO 2019, §5.10.3 note; Chapter 7). Where a natural channel must be modified, its capacity shall meet the design AEP of Chapter 6 and its velocities shall meet Table 9.2.

> **Commentary.** The lined-channel velocities and slopes are CPHEEO (2019) Table 5.11 values. The unlined-soil values are the classic Fortier and Scobey (1926) permissible velocities for clear water, as reproduced in Chow (1959). They are given for soils common in Uttar Pradesh (the sandy and silty khadar alluvium of the river floodplains, the older bangar alluvium with kankar of the doab and the central and eastern plain, the usar (sodic) soils of the central and eastern districts, the fine terai deposits of the north, and the thin red and black soils over

the granite-gneiss of Bundelkhand). The ban on Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 extends CPHEEO's advice to avoid critical flow, where the water surface "becomes unstable and wavy" (§5.3). This extension is made by this Manual. The side slopes and the low-flow channel are also set by this Manual, because many Uttar Pradesh urban channels carry sewage-mixed dry-weather flow until the cross-connections of Chapter 8 are removed. A wide flat bed then deposits sludge across its whole width, and a low-flow channel keeps the dry-weather flow concentrated.

9.6 Energy dissipators, outlet protection and drop structures

9.6.1 **When required.** Outlet protection or an energy dissipator shall be provided at every pipe, culvert and channel outlet where the outlet velocity at the design AEP or the 1% AEP exceeds the permissible velocity of the receiving channel in Table 9.2, and at every outlet to an unlined channel, tank or waterbody.

9.6.2 **Method.** Energy dissipators and outlet protection shall be designed by the methods of FHWA HEC-14, *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels*, 3rd edition (2006), selecting the dissipator type by its range of application.

9.6.3 **Riprap aprons.** For a circular outlet discharging to a flat apron, the median riprap size shall be computed with the HEC-14 apron equation:

$$D_{50} = 0.2 \cdot D \cdot \left[Q / \left(g^{0.5} \cdot D^{2.5} \right) \right]^{(4/3)} \cdot (D / TW)$$

where D_{50} is the median stone size (m), D is the culvert diameter or rise (m), Q is the design discharge (m³/s), $g = 9.81$ m/s² and TW is the tailwater depth (m). Where TW is not known, it shall be taken as $0.4D$.

Apron length and thickness shall follow the HEC-14 riprap-class table (Table 9.3). The apron width at the outlet shall be at least 3D and shall flare to the downstream channel.

Table 9.3 — Riprap classes and apron dimensions (HEC-14)

Class	D50 (mm)	Apron length	Apron thickness
1	125	4D	3.5 D50
2	150	4D	3.3 D50
3	250	5D	2.4 D50
4	350	6D	2.2 D50
5	500	7D	2.0 D50
6	550	8D	2.0 D50

Source: FHWA HEC-14 (2006), §10.2 and Table 10.1, as reproduced in state-agency design worksheets. Where the computed D50 exceeds Class 6, a riprap basin or a structural stilling basin shall be used.

9.6.4 **Riprap filter and grading.** Riprap shall be placed on a granular filter or a geotextile. Stone shall be angular, durable and graded so that the D50 of Clause 9.6.3 is met.

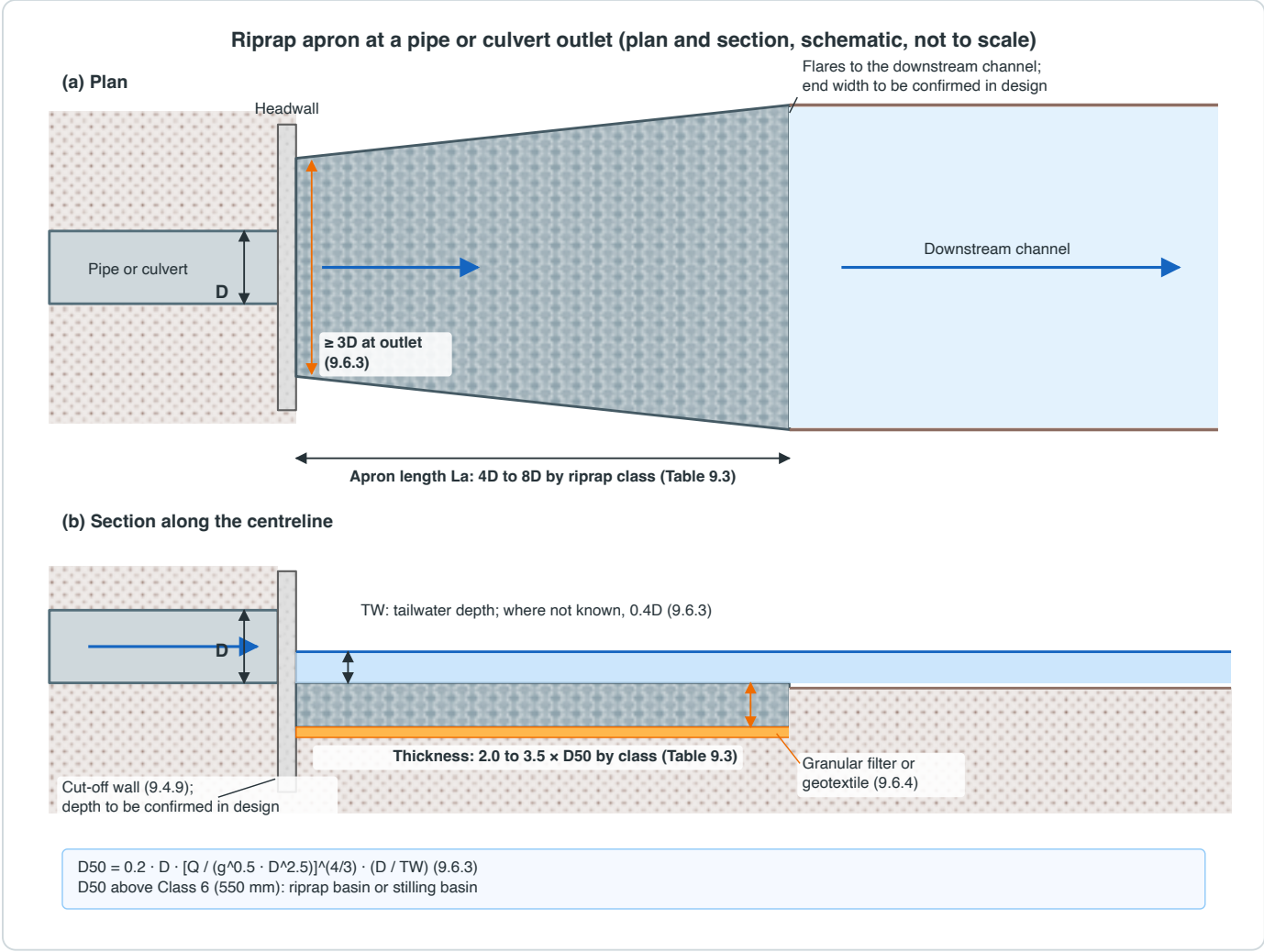


Figure 9.2 — Riprap apron at a pipe or culvert outlet: apron width at least 3D at the outlet, flaring to the downstream channel; length and thickness from Table 9.3; stone on a granular filter or geotextile (Clauses 9.6.3 and 9.6.4). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels, HEC-14 (3rd ed., 2006), §10.2.

9.6.5 **Stilling basins.** Where velocities or Froude numbers are above the range of riprap aprons and basins, a structural stilling basin or impact basin shall be designed from HEC-14 or from the US Bureau of Reclamation basin types it describes.

9.6.6 **Drop structures.** Drop structures shall be used where the channel slope would otherwise exceed Clause 9.5.4 or the velocity limit of Table 9.2.

- (a) For a straight vertical drop, the drop number $D = q^2 / (g\,h^3)$ shall be computed, where q is the unit discharge (m^2/s) and h is the drop height (m). The pool geometry shall be set from the Rand (1955) relationships: drop length Ld/h = 4.30 D^0.27; pool depth Yp/h = 1.00 D^0.22; sequent depths y1/h = 0.54 D^0.425 and y2/h = 1.66 D^0.27.
- (b) Baffled chutes and stepped drops shall be designed by HEC-14 or US Bureau of Reclamation methods.
- (c) The height of a single vertical drop in a public drain shall not exceed 1.5 m. Drops shall have edge protection under Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.8.

9.6.7 **Coastal and beach outfalls.** Outfalls onto beaches or into estuaries shall be protected against wave action and scour. Where littoral sand can close the outfall, the outfall shall be designed so that it can be reopened by machine, and the drainage system shall be checked with the outfall closed under Chapter 5.

> **Commentary.** HEC-14 (3rd ed., FHWA-NHI-06-086, July 2006) is the current FHWA energy-dissipator manual. The apron equation and the class table are from HEC-14 §10.2 (Equation 10.4 and Table 10.1). The equation and table are given here as reproduced in secondary design documents (a Tennessee handbook and a state-agency riprap worksheet). The 3D apron width is from the same sources. A Purdue study (JTRP) found the HEC-14 apron method somewhat conservative within its range of application. The Rand (1955) drop relationships are standard and are reproduced in Chow (1959). The 1.5 m limit on a single vertical drop has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it for public safety in urban drains.

9.7 Detention outlet structures

9.7.1 **Primary outlet.** The primary outlet of a detention facility shall:

- (a) produce the release rates and drawdown times of Chapter 4;
- (b) work without mechanical parts or operator action, except in pumped facilities (Clause 9.9);
- (c) have no orifice smaller than **50 mm**, and every orifice shall be protected by a trash screen (Clause 9.8.5); and
- (d) be accessible for cleaning from the surface.

9.7.2 **Orifices.** Orifice flow shall be computed as:

> $Q = C_d \cdot A \cdot (2 g h)^{0.5}$

where A is the orifice area (m²) and h is the head (m) on the centroid of the orifice, or the difference between the upstream and downstream water levels where the orifice is submerged. C_d shall be 0.60 for a sharp-edged orifice in a thin plate. Other edge conditions shall use published tested values.

9.7.3 **Weirs.** Weir flow shall be computed as $Q = C_w \cdot L \cdot H^{1.5}$, with:

- (a) sharp-crested rectangular weirs: $C_w = 1.84$ (SI), with the effective length reduced by 0.1 H for each end contraction;
- (b) V-notch weirs: $Q = 1.38 \cdot \tan(\theta/2) \cdot H^{2.5}$ (SI), where θ is the notch angle; and
- (c) broad-crested weirs and spillway crests: $C_w = 1.44$ to 1.70 (SI), selected from published tables for the crest shape and head.

Submerged weirs shall be corrected for submergence from published relationships.

9.7.4 **Stage–discharge rating.** For multi-stage outlets (orifices and weirs in a riser, with an outlet pipe), the designer shall compute, at each stage, the discharge under every possible control (each orifice, each weir, riser crest, and the outlet pipe under inlet and outlet control) and use the **smallest** combined value. The rating shall be tabulated from the outlet invert to the emergency spillway crest plus the design head.

9.7.5 **Tailwater.** Ratings shall be computed with the tailwater of Clause 9.2.1. Where the receiving water can rise above the outlet, the outlet shall have a flap gate or non-return valve under Clause 9.10, and the storage shall meet the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

9.7.6 **Emergency spillway.** The emergency spillway shall pass the 1% AEP inflow with the primary outlet assumed blocked and the basin full at the start, with **0.3 m** freeboard to the embankment crest. High-hazard basins shall also be checked for the 0.2% AEP inflow (Chapter 4).

9.7.7 **Outlet pipes through embankments.** Outlet pipes through embankments shall have a filter diaphragm or seepage collars to prevent piping along the pipe, and a flared or headwalled inlet.

9.7.8 **Anti-vortex.** Riser outlets with a design head above the riser crest greater than the riser diameter shall have an anti-vortex plate.

> **Commentary.** The 50 mm minimum orifice with a trash screen, the emergency-spillway criterion and the drawdown times are core criteria of this Manual (Chapter 4). The minimum orifice is smaller than the APWA 5600 (2006, 5608.4) minimum of 3 in (about 75 mm). It allows the low release rates of the Chapter 4 mixed-frequency rule on small sites, and it relies on a good screen (Clause 9.8.5). The "no mechanical parts" rule follows APWA 5600 (2006, 5608.4), which requires the primary outlet to function unattended. The orifice and weir coefficients are standard textbook values (for example Brater and King, *Handbook of Hydraulics*; Chow 1959). The 1.84 sharp-crested coefficient and the 0.1H end-contraction correction are the Francis formula in SI units. The broad-crested range 1.44–1.70 is the SI equivalent of the US range 2.6–3.1 commonly tabulated. Clauses 9.7.7 and 9.7.8 follow common dam and detention practice.

9.8 Trash racks and screens

9.8.1 **Where required.** Trash racks or screens shall be provided:

- (a) where an open drain enters a pipe, covered drain or culvert longer than 30 m (Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.4);
- (b) at every detention outlet orifice (Clause 9.7.1);
- (c) at the inlet of every pump sump (Clause 9.9); and
- (d) at outfalls to waterbodies, as part of the gross pollutant trap of Chapter 8.

9.8.2 **Conduit-entrance racks.** Racks at the entrance to conduits and culverts shall have:

- (a) clear bar spacing not less than 75 mm and not more than half the smallest internal dimension of the conduit;
- (b) a gross area at least 4 times the conduit's cross-sectional area;
- (c) a mean velocity through the rack at the design flow, with 50% of the rack blocked, of not more than 1.0 m/s; and
- (d) an inclination no steeper than 1V:2H where the rack is to be raked by hand, with a working platform and handrail.

9.8.3 **Head loss.** Head loss through a clean rack shall be computed with the Kirschmer equation:

$$h_r = \beta \cdot (t / b)^{4/3} \cdot (V^2 / 2g) \cdot \sin\theta$$

where t is the bar thickness, b is the clear bar spacing, V is the approach velocity, θ is the angle of the rack from the horizontal, and β is the bar shape factor (2.42 for sharp-edged rectangular bars; 1.79 for circular bars). The HGL and headwater shall be checked with the rack **50% blocked** (head loss computed with half the open area).

9.8.4 **Overflow when blocked.** Every rack shall have an overflow route so that a fully blocked rack does not flood buildings or exceed the limits of Chapter 6.

9.8.5 **Detention outlet screens.** Screens over detention orifices shall have openings smaller than the orifice they protect, and an open area at least 10 times the orifice area.

9.8.6 **Pump sump screens.** Bar screens at pump-station inlets shall have a clear spacing smaller than the largest solid the pumps can pass, as stated by the pump manufacturer. Screens shall be built in removable modules, and a mechanically raked screen shall be used where the design inflow exceeds 1 m^3/s.

9.8.7 **Safety.** Racks at the entrance to long conduits shall prevent people from being drawn in. They shall be designed for the hydrostatic load of a fully blocked rack.

> **Commentary.** CPHEEO (2019, §8.3.1.3) describes pump-station bar screens with a spacing of "approximately 58 mm", built in modules, with an emergency overflow in case of clogging. Clause 9.8.6 follows that approach but links the spacing to the pump's solids-passing size, which varies by pump. The 50% blockage check matches the grate clogging factor of Chapter 6. The Kirschmer equation and its shape factors are standard (Kirschmer 1926, as reproduced in hydraulic handbooks). The rack spacing, area ratio, through-velocity, the 30 m conduit length trigger, the 10× screen area for orifices and the 1 m³/s trigger for mechanical raking have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

9.9 Pumps and sumps

9.9.1 **When pumping is used.** Pumping shall be used only where gravity drainage cannot meet the requirements of Chapters 5 and 6, for example at road underpasses (Chapter 6, Clause 6.10.5), basements, low-lying areas and outfalls that are tide-locked under the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

9.9.2 **Design inflow and storage.** The station shall be designed with the inflow hydrograph routed through the catchment and any upstream storage. Pump capacity and storage shall be chosen together:

- (a) the station shall meet the design AEP of the element it serves (for underpasses, the 2% AEP with a 1% AEP check);
- (b) where the station serves a tidal outfall, storage plus pumps shall hold the 48 h design volume with the outfall throttled for the tidal-lock duration (default: two consecutive high tides of 6 h each), as required by Chapter 5; and
- (c) the pumps shall be selected for the full range of static head between the lowest sump level against the lowest tailwater, and the highest tailwater (HAT plus surge plus 0.3 m).

9.9.3 **Wet-well volume.** The effective wet-well volume (between the pump-stop and the lowest pump-start level) shall be the greatest of:

- (a) where variable-speed drives and automatic controls are installed, 5 minutes of the minimum inflow (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.3);
- (b) otherwise, 10 to 15 minutes of the peak inflow, or the volume needed for the pump manufacturer's minimum cycle time, from $V = Q \cdot t$ (CPHEEO 2019, Eq. 8.1); and
- (c) for constant-speed pumps, the volume $V = \Theta \cdot q / 4$ for each pump, where Θ is the minimum cycle time recommended by the motor manufacturer and q is the pump capacity (FHWA HEC-24, 2001).

9.9.4 **Duty and standby.**

- (a) Duty pumps shall be of the same size where practicable (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.3).
- (b) Standby capacity shall be at least equal to the largest duty pump, and not less than 50% of the number of duty pumps.
- (c) Duty and standby roles shall alternate automatically.

9.9.5 **Pump type.** Pumps shall be solids-handling (non-clog) types suited to stormwater with sand and debris. Axial-flow pumps shall be used only behind a screen that meets Clause 9.8.6, because they cannot handle debris (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.2).

9.9.6 **Sump and intake design.** Sump geometry, pump spacing, minimum submergence and approach flow conditions shall follow the pump manufacturer's requirements and ANSI/HI 9.8 (Rotodynamic Pumps for Pump Intake Design). A physical hydraulic model study shall be carried out where any pump exceeds 1 m³/s, or where the sump does not follow

standard ANSI/HI 9.8 geometry. The minimum clear space between adjacent pumps or motors is 0.6 m for small and medium units and 1.0 m for large units (CPHEEO 2019, §8.2.5).

9.9.7 **Silt and screens.** A silt trap and a bar screen shall be provided upstream of the wet well (Clause 9.8.6; Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.3).

9.9.8 **Controls and monitoring.**

- (a) Pumps shall be controlled by a primary level sensor (ultrasonic, radar or pressure) with an independent float-switch back-up.
- (b) High-level and pump-fault alarms shall be sent by telemetry to the local body's control room.
- (c) Sump levels, pump run hours and power status shall be logged and kept for at least 5 years.

9.9.9 **Power supply.**

- (a) The station shall have two independent power sources: the grid supply and a standby generator (or a second independent grid feeder) able to run all duty pumps at once (CPHEEO 2019, §2.4.2.3(j)).
- (b) Fuel for at least **72 hours** of continuous operation of all duty pumps shall be stored on site, above the flood level of Clause 9.9.10.
- (c) Changeover to standby power shall be automatic.

9.9.10 **Flood protection of the station.** The floor of the electrical and control room, the generator and the transformer shall be at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level at the station (Chapter 6, Clause 6.11). Access to the station for maintenance vehicles shall remain usable in the 1% AEP event.

9.9.11 **Discharge.** Each pump shall have its own rising main, or a non-return valve and an isolating valve where mains combine. Rising mains shall discharge into a delivery chamber or outfall fitted with a flap gate or non-return valve under Clause 9.10. Discharge piping shall be sized by a recognised friction formula (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.9).

9.9.12 **Emergency connections.** Every station shall have a hard-standing area and a quick-coupling connection for mobile pumps to discharge into the delivery chamber.

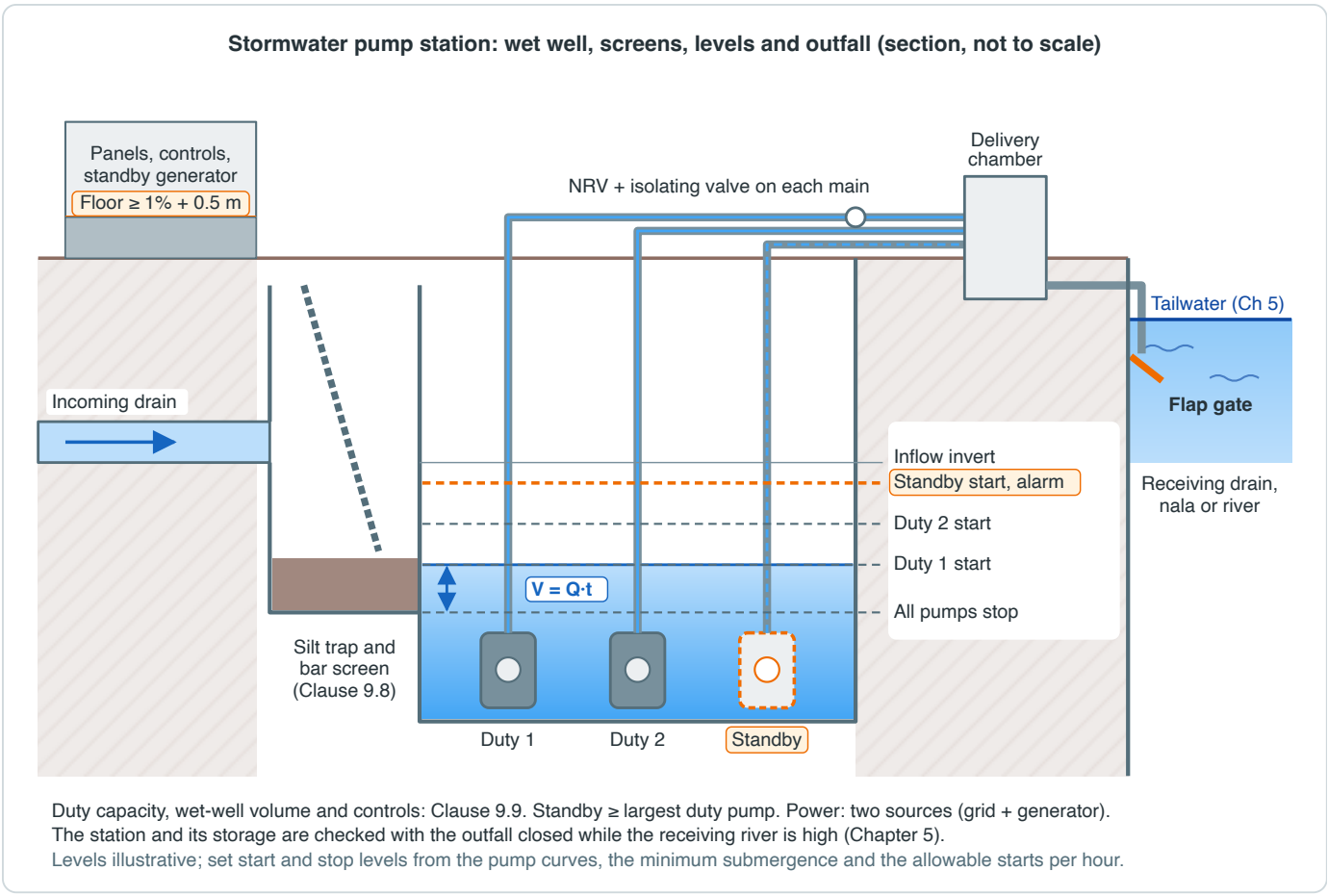


Figure 9.3 — Stormwater pump station: wet well, screens, levels and outfall. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Chapter 8, and FHWA, Highway Stormwater Pump Station Design, HEC-24 (2001).

> **Commentary.** CPHEEO (2019) Chapter 8 covers stormwater pumping: wet-well sizing (§8.3.3), pump types (§8.3.2), trash screens (§8.3.1.3), space requirements (§8.2.5) and the need for generator sets "as standby for emergency operation during failure of electricity" (§2.4.2.3). It recommends standby units of "minimum 50% of the duty pump units". Clause 9.9.4(b) is stricter: the standby must at least equal the largest duty pump, so the station still meets its design duty with its largest pump out of service. This stricter rule is set by this Manual. FHWA HEC-24 (*Highway Stormwater Pump Station Design*, FHWA-NHI-01-007, 2001) is the FHWA pump-station manual. The 72 h fuel storage is set by this Manual to match the 72 h design storm of Chapter 2. The model-study trigger, the telemetry and data-retention requirements, and the emergency connection have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

9.10 Tide gates, flap gates and non-return valves

9.10.1 **Where required.** Flap gates, tide gates or non-return valves shall be provided on every outfall whose invert is below the 1% AEP still-water level of the receiving water (Chapter 5).

9.10.2 **Types.** Acceptable devices are:

- (a) hinged flap gates (cast iron, ductile iron, stainless steel, HDPE or composite);
- (b) elastomeric in-line or end-of-pipe check valves (duckbill type); and
- (c) penstocks or sluice gates, manual or motorised, as a secondary closure.

9.10.3 **Secondary closure.** Outfalls of 900 mm or more, and every outfall serving a pumped or storage system, shall have a penstock or stop-log slot upstream of the flap gate so that the gate can be maintained, and as a back-up if the gate jams open.

9.10.4 **Hydraulics.** The head loss through the device in the open position shall be taken from the manufacturer's tested data and included in the HGL (Chapter 6, Clause 6.8.7). Flap gates shall open at a small head difference (CPHEEO 2019, §6.3.10.1).

9.10.5 **Sand and debris.** At beach, estuary and creek outfalls where sand or debris can hold a gate open or shut:

- (a) the gate shall be housed in a chamber with surface access, or elastomeric check valves shall be used; and
- (b) the gate shall be inspected after every high-tide or surge event during the monsoon season (Chapter 10).

9.10.6 **Materials.** Hinges, pins, links and fixings shall be of corrosion-resistant material (CPHEEO 2019, §6.3.10.1). In coastal and tidal locations this means stainless steel grade 316, bronze or a non-metallic material (Clause 9.13).

9.10.7 **Storage behind gates.** Where gates close during a storm, the storage or pumping behind them shall meet the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

> Commentary. CPHEEO (2019, §6.3.10.1) describes flap gates and flood gates at outfalls to tidal waters. It notes that "adequate storage may be necessary if pumping is to be avoided during the closure of the gate" and that hinge pins and links "should be of corrosion-resistant materials". Uttar Pradesh has no coast, so no outfall in the State is closed by the tide, and the beach, estuary, tidal and coastal provisions of Clauses 9.6.7, 9.9.2(b), 9.10.5, 9.13.3 and 9.13.6, and the coastal and tidal rows of Table 9.5, do not arise; in Clause 9.9.2(c) the highest tailwater is the highest river level of Chapter 5. Gates are still required below the 1% still-water level, because the outfalls of the larger cities are closed by the rivers in flood. At the CWC sites that govern them the high flood levels stand well above the danger levels: the Gomti at Lucknow 110.85 m (1971) against 109.5 m; the Rapti at Birdghat, Gorakhpur, 77.54 m (1998) against 74.98 m; the Ganga at Varanasi 73.901 m (1978) against 71.262 m; the Ganga at Phaphamau and the Yamuna at Naini, Prayagraj, 87.98 m and 87.99 m (1978) against about 84.73 m; and the Hindon at Noida reached 197.28 m on 26 July 2023, 1.81 m above its old high flood level (all as reported). At Lucknow 33 of the city's 34 drains outfall to the Gomti, the outfalls inside its embankments are pumped when the river is high, and an inspection found only half the pumps working at the Kukrail pumping station and none at Wazirganj (as reported; undated). The State's own scheme recognises the need: flood pumping stations are an eligible component of the Urban Development Department's storm water drainage scheme, and its DPR checklist requires pumps that can operate above the high flood level and a separate pumping annexure where the outfall invert is below the normal river level or between that level and the HFL (UDD 2024). Screens and interception structures matter as much as gates, because the nalas carry silt, solid waste and sewage. The State's main remedy for sewage in its drains is to tap them at the outfall under Namami Gange and divert the dry-weather flow to a sewer or treatment plant: the Sisamau nala at Kanpur was reported tapped in 2018; at Prayagraj 39 of the 81 drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna were reported untapped before the Kumbh of 2025, 22 of them treated in geotubes at Salori; and at Lucknow 28 of the 45 drains to the Gomti were reported untapped or partly tapped (all as reported). An interception weir, a geotube or a bioremediation unit in a drain takes up part of its section, so its effect on the storm capacity is checked under Clause 8.9.5 and the HGL of Chapter 6. No inventory of the regulators, flap gates, interception structures and pumping stations on the drains of any Uttar Pradesh city, with their capacities and operating rules, no operating rule for the Gomti barrage at Lucknow, and no design river level at any outfall was found in the public domain. Clauses 9.10.3 and 9.10.5 are set by this Manual because a flap gate or regulator that fails, or is jammed open by silt, solid waste or debris, lets a river in flood back into the drain network, and one jammed shut blocks it. The city nalas of Uttar Pradesh carry silt, solid waste and sewage to their outfalls, and many end at interception (drain-tapping) structures, so a gate, its screen and the interception weir beside it are exposed to the same debris and must be kept clear together; and because the high flood levels of the rivers stand 1.3–3.3 m above their danger levels at Lucknow, Prayagraj and Varanasi (as reported), a gate that leaks or jams can be exposed for the whole of a river flood.

9.11 Inlets and gratings

9.11.1 **Hydraulics.** Inlet capacity, spacing and clogging shall follow Chapter 6, Clause 6.6.

9.11.2 **Load class.** Gratings, covers and frames shall be rated for the traffic at their location. Load classes shall be those of IS 1726 (cast iron manhole covers and frames) or EN 124 (gully tops and manhole tops), at least:

- (a) carriageways and medians: EN 124 class D400 or the equivalent heavy-duty IS class;
- (b) kerb-side channel inlets within 0.5 m of the kerb: class C250 or equivalent; and
- (c) footpaths and cycle tracks: class B125 or equivalent.

9.11.3 **Grate pattern.**

- (a) Grates in carriageways, cycle tracks and footpaths shall not have openings parallel to the direction of travel wider than 25 mm.
- (b) Grate types without tested capacity data shall be rated by the weir and orifice methods of FHWA HEC-22 (2024), with the clogging factors of Chapter 6.

9.11.4 **Kerb openings.** Kerb-opening inlets shall have a clear opening height of at least 100 mm and a length of at least 1.0 m. Where a kerb inlet discharges through the wall of a covered drain (Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.1), the opening shall be at road level.

9.11.5 **Security.** Gratings and covers on public land shall be hinged or locked to their frames, so that they cannot be removed without a tool.

9.11.6 **Inlet chambers.** Inlet chambers shall have the silt sump of Chapter 6, Clause 6.6.7, and shall be sized so that the sump can be emptied by a suction or grab machine.

> Commentary. NDMA (2010, §4.13) cites IS 5961 for cast-iron gratings for drainage inlets. The load classes are based on the EN 124 classes used internationally. The 25 mm limit on parallel openings is set for cyclist and pedestrian safety. APWA 5600 (2006, 5604.2) requires kerb openings of at least 4 ft (about 1.2 m) long and 6 in (about 150 mm) clear height. Clause 9.11.4 sets smaller minimums suited to the narrower roads and lower kerbs common in Uttar Pradesh towns.

9.12 Manholes, junction chambers and access

9.12.1 **Location and spacing.** Manholes shall be provided at the locations and spacings of Chapter 6, Clause 6.7.11 and Table 6.8. Where pipes are too large for a standard manhole, a junction chamber with a riser to the surface shall be used (CPHEEO 2019, §11.3.7.3).

9.12.2 **Minimum internal size.** Manholes shall have at least the internal dimensions of Table 9.4 (CPHEEO 2019, §11.3.7.6):

Table 9.4 — Minimum internal size of manholes

Shape and depth	Minimum internal size
Rectangular, depth below 0.9 m	900 mm × 800 mm
Rectangular, depth 0.9–2.5 m	1,200 mm × 900 mm

Shape and depth	Minimum internal size
Circular, depth above 0.9 m and up to 1.65 m	900 mm diameter
Circular, depth above 1.65 m and up to 2.30 m	1,200 mm diameter
Circular, depth above 2.30 m and up to 6.0 m	1,500 mm diameter
Circular, depth above 6.0 m and up to 9.0 m	1,800 mm diameter

The manhole shall also be large enough to fit the largest pipe connected plus the benching on each side.

9.12.3 **Access openings.** The clear access opening of manholes and access chambers on public drains shall be at least 600 mm, so that cleaning equipment can be lowered.

9.12.4 **Drops.** Where the difference between incoming and outgoing inverts exceeds 0.6 m, a drop connection shall be provided. Below 0.6 m, the difference shall be taken up by adjusting the slope of the incoming pipe or the benching (CPHEEO 2019, §11.3.7.5). The invert drop across a manhole where pipe size changes shall be at least the following fraction of the difference in diameters (CPHEEO 2019, Table 11.6):

- conduits below 400 mm: one-half;
- 400 mm to 900 mm: two-thirds;
- above 900 mm: four-fifths.

9.12.5 **Benching.** Manhole floors shall be benched to at least the crown of the outgoing pipe, with channels shaped to guide flow from each incoming pipe.

9.12.6 **Surcharge.** Manholes on mains where the 1% AEP HGL can rise above the cover (Chapter 6, Clause 6.8.4) shall have bolted, locked or hinged covers designed for that pressure.

9.12.7 **Mechanical cleaning.** Manholes, chambers and covered drains shall be designed for cleaning by machine (suction, jetting, grab or robotic equipment) from the surface. Fixed ladders shall be of corrosion-resistant, encapsulated material where provided.

> **Commentary.** The size and drop requirements are from CPHEEO (2019) Chapter 11. The 600 mm access opening, the benching rule and the bolted covers are set by this Manual. Designing for mechanical cleaning supports the prohibition on hazardous manual cleaning under *The Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013*.

9.13 Materials and durability

9.13.1 **Exposure classes.** Concrete structures shall be designed for the exposure class of IS 456: 2000, Table 3. In Uttar Pradesh the minimum classes of Table 9.5 apply unless a site investigation shows a more severe condition:

Table 9.5 — Minimum IS 456 exposure classes for Uttar Pradesh locations

Location	Minimum IS 456 exposure class
Inland drains and structures	Moderate
Drains and structures in the coastal environment, and any drain that carries or may carry sewage-mixed flow	Severe
Structures exposed to sea-water spray, or in contact with saline or aggressive groundwater	Very severe

Location	Minimum IS 456 exposure class
Structures in the tidal zone	Extreme

9.13.2 **Concrete.** Minimum concrete grade, maximum water–cement ratio, minimum cement content and nominal cover to reinforcement shall be those of IS 456 for the exposure class. For the reader's convenience, IS 456 sets the minimum reinforced-concrete grades as M25 (moderate), M30 (severe), M35 (very severe) and M40 (extreme), and the nominal covers as 30, 45, 50 and 75 mm respectively.

9.13.3 **Aggressive ground.** Groundwater and soil at every structure in coastal and delta areas shall be tested for chlorides and sulphates. Cement type and concrete mix shall be chosen to suit the results under IS 456.

9.13.4 **Sewage-mixed flow.** Pipes and covered drains that carry, or may carry, sewage-mixed flow shall be protected against sulphide (crown) corrosion, by a sacrificial concrete thickness, a corrosion-resistant lining or a non-concrete pipe material.

9.13.5 **Pipes.** Concrete pipes shall comply with IS 458, with the class selected by structural design. Other pipe materials (for example ductile iron, HDPE or structured-wall plastic pipes) shall comply with the applicable Indian Standard and be approved by the approving authority.

9.13.6 **Metalwork.** Within 5 km of the coast, and in all tidal and saline locations:

- (a) fixings, hinges, ladders, handrails and screen frames shall be stainless steel grade 316, or hot-dip galvanised steel with a protective coating, or a non-metallic material; and
- (b) dissimilar metals shall be isolated from each other.

9.13.7 **Masonry.** New public drains in Tier A bodies shall be in reinforced or plain concrete. Brick or stone masonry may be used for drains in Tier B bodies only if it is plastered on the wetted face and meets the n value of Table 6.6.

> **Commentary.** The IS 456 exposure classes and the grade and cover values are quoted from IS 456: 2000 (Tables 3, 5 and 16) for convenience. The standard governs, and designers shall use its current amendment. Assigning Uttar Pradesh locations to exposure classes, the sulphide-corrosion requirement and the ban on new masonry drains in Tier A bodies have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Drains that receive sewage cross-connections (a common condition, Chapter 8) generate hydrogen sulphide, which attacks unprotected concrete above the water line.

9.14 Submittal requirements

Every structure design shall be submitted with a **Hydraulic Structures Report** (Form 9-1) containing, as applicable:

1. culvert calculations (HDS-5 or HY-8 output) with HWi, HWo, outlet velocity, tailwater, overtopping and the blockage check;
2. channel water-surface profiles, velocities, Froude numbers and freeboard;
3. outlet protection and dissipator design, with riprap sizing;
4. detention outlet stage–discharge tables and the emergency spillway check;
5. screen and rack design with the 50% blocked check;
6. a pump station design report: inflow hydrograph, storage, pump curves and system curves, wet-well volume, controls, power supply and the Chapter 5 outfall-closed check;
7. gate and valve selection with head-loss data;
8. inlet, grate and cover load classes; and
9. an exposure class and materials statement (Clause 9.13).

References (chapter)

- Federal Highway Administration (2012). *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, Hydraulic Design Series No. 5, 3rd edition, FHWA-HIF-12-026.
- Federal Highway Administration (2006). *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 14, 3rd edition, FHWA-NHI-06-086.
- Federal Highway Administration (2005). *Design of Roadside Channels with Flexible Linings*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 15, 3rd edition, FHWA-IF-05-114.
- Federal Highway Administration (2024). *Urban Drainage Design Manual*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 22, 4th edition, FHWA-HIF-24-006.
- Federal Highway Administration (2001). *Highway Stormwater Pump Station Design*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 24, FHWA-NHI-01-007.
- FHWA Hydraulics Engineering publications listing. https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/Engineering/hydraulics/library_listing.cfm
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems*, Volume I, Part A: Engineering Design. §2.4.2.3, §5.3, Tables 5.5, 5.11, 5.12, §6.3.10.1, Chapter 8, Chapter 11. https://www.mohua.gov.in/static/uploads/2025/10/8a2456c722036d78c72a698898ef846d.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). *Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities* (5604.2, 5608.4); and Version 2025.01 (Dec 2025).
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 456: 2000, *Plain and Reinforced Concrete — Code of Practice* (Tables 3, 5 and 16).
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 458, *Precast Concrete Pipes (with and without Reinforcement) — Specification* (current revision).
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 1726, *Cast Iron Manhole Covers and Frames*; IS 5961, *Cast Iron Gratings for Drainage Purposes*; IS 12592, *Precast Concrete Manhole Covers and Frames* (current revisions).
- European Committee for Standardization. EN 124, *Gully tops and manhole tops for vehicular and pedestrian areas*.
- Hydraulic Institute. ANSI/HI 9.8, *Rotodynamic Pumps for Pump Intake Design* (current edition).
- Indian Roads Congress. IRC:SP:13, *Guidelines for the Design of Small Bridges and Culverts* (current revision).
- Chow, V.T. (1959). *Open-Channel Hydraulics*. McGraw-Hill. (Fortier and Scobey 1926 permissible velocities; Rand 1955 drop relationships.)
- Fortier, S. and Scobey, F.C. (1926). Permissible canal velocities. *Transactions of the ASCE* 89.
- Rand, W. (1955). Flow geometry at straight drop spillways. *Proceedings of the ASCE* 81.
- Brater, E.F. and King, H.W. *Handbook of Hydraulics*. McGraw-Hill.
- Tennessee Department of Environment and Conservation (2026). *Erosion Prevention and Sediment Control Handbook*, §4.3.6 Riprap Apron (reproduces the HEC-14 apron equation and table). https://www.tn.gov/content/dam/tn/environment/water/stormwater/epsc-handbook/dwr-npdes-sop-g-16-erosion-prevention-sediment-control-handbook-01092026-4.3.6%20-riprap-apron.pdf
- Purdue University Joint Transportation Research Program. Study of riprap apron design at culvert outlets. https://docs.lib.purdue.edu/jtrp/1704
- CIRIA (2019). *Culvert, screen and outfall manual*, C786. London: CIRIA.
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). *National Guidelines: Management of Urban Flooding*, §4.13.
- Government of India. *The Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013*.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
9A	HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients and worked culvert example in SI units
9B	Standard drawings: headwalls, riprap aprons, drop structures, trash racks, detention risers
9C	Pump station design checklist and standard control philosophy

Annex / Form	Content
Form 9-1	Hydraulic Structures Report checklist

CHAPTER 10

Submittals, Review, Operation & Maintenance and Enforcement

10.1 Purpose and scope

10.1.1 This chapter sets out how compliance with this Manual is shown, checked, built, kept working and enforced. It covers:

- (a) the submittal stages and their contents (Clauses 10.3–10.4);
- (b) the compliance calculator (Clause 10.5);
- (c) professional certification and review (Clauses 10.6–10.7);
- (d) construction inspection and as-built certification (Clauses 10.8–10.9);
- (e) maintenance declarations, O&M plans, inspection and access (Clauses 10.10–10.13);
- (f) handover of public assets (Clause 10.14);
- (g) enforcement (Clause 10.15); and
- (h) monitoring, post-event review and data publication (Clauses 10.16–10.17).

10.1.2 This chapter applies to every development and public work to which Chapters 4 and 5 apply under Clause 1.5.2. Clauses 10.3.1 (Stage 0), 10.15 and 10.17 also apply to development that is subject only to Clause 1.5.4.

Commentary. A criterion that is not checked at approval, built as approved, and maintained afterwards has no effect. In Uttar Pradesh the failure is one of missing criteria and divided ownership. The Urban Development Department found in December 2024 that "there is no integrated plan for urban drainage" in the State's urban areas, that small nalas and nalis are built piecemeal, and that existing drains are "usually designed for a 1–2 year" rainfall return period, which it called inadequate (UDD 2024). No rule dividing the natural drains, which the Irrigation and Water Resources Department (I&WRD) keeps in canal commands and along its rivers and embankments, from the nalas of the Nagar Nigams was found; the guideline makes the Nagar Nigam the regulator of an approved drainage master plan under the UP Municipal Corporations Act 1959 and the UP Municipalities Act 1916 (UDD 2024). The approval route shapes this chapter. The development authorities constituted under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973 apply the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025, approved by G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025 under sections 57 and 13(2) of that Act, which superseded the bye-laws of 2008; each authority issues them in its own name (Byelaws 2025, cl. 1.1). Noida, Greater Noida (GNIDA) and YEIDA are industrial development authorities under the UP Industrial Area Development Act 1976 and keep their own building regulations of 2010 (as reported). For a layout, the development permit needs a site plan showing "the approximate location and size of any water body, flood affected areas", the nalas, and contours at 0.3 m intervals where the slope is more than 1:20; building plans must show the "drainage lines and roof top rainwater harvesting system"; and a completion certificate closes the process (Byelaws 2025, cl. 2.3.2 and 2.9). The NOC table lists the Irrigation or Ground Water Department, and an NOC not given within 30 days is deemed to have been given (Byelaws 2025, cl. 2.2). No rule asks for a drainage report, limits peak runoff or requires on-site detention (Byelaws 2025). Every stormwater item in this chapter is therefore written so that the architect or engineer on record can certify it on Forms 1-1, 2-1, 10-2 and 10-3, and the Authority can check it with the layout services plan

and its recharge reservoir, with the drainage drawings of the building plan, and before the completion certificate; for public works, the drainage section of a DPR under the UDD scheme must in any case be consistent with the approved master plan (UDD 2024). This chapter is the process.

10.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this chapter
Submittal	A set of documents lodged with the Authority at one of the stages of Clause 10.3.
Drainage report	The preliminary (Stage 1) or final (Stage 2) report required by Clause 10.4.
Stormwater facility	Any retention, detention, water quality, conveyance, pumping, gate or outfall element required by this Manual, public or private.
Hold point	A construction stage at which work shall not proceed until the Authority or the certifying professional has inspected it (Clause 10.8).
As-built certificate	The certificate of Clause 10.9 that the facility was built as approved and performs as designed.
Owner	The person or body responsible for a facility under its maintenance declaration, or the ULB for a handed-over asset.
O&M plan	The operation and maintenance plan of Clause 10.11.
Facility register	The public register of facilities of Clause 10.17.

Other terms are defined in Clause 1.4.

10.3 Submittal stages

10.3.1 Submittals shall be made in the following stages, linked to the approval steps of the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 (Table 10.1):

Table 10.1 — Submittal stages and linked approvals

Stage	Submittal	When	Linked approval
0	**Pre-application** meeting and **Form 1-1** (Applicability Determination)	Before the planning permission or layout application	None (advisory record)
1	**Preliminary drainage report**	With the planning permission or layout application	Planning permission / layout approval
2	**Final drainage design**	Before building permit, or before commencement where the permit is issued with the planning permission	Building permit / commencement
3	**Construction inspections** at hold points	During construction	None (records filed)
4	**As-built certificate** and verification tests	Before the completion certificate	Completion / occupancy certificate
5	**Maintenance declaration** registered, or **handover** of public assets	Before or with the completion certificate	Completion certificate; asset acceptance

Stage	Submittal	When	Linked approval
6	**Annual declarations** and inspection reports	Every year after completion	Continuing compliance

10.3.2 **Stage 0 is mandatory** for:

- (a) sites of 2 ha or more;
- (b) sites in a flood-sensitive catchment;
- (c) sites proposing a variance, waiver, regional facility or fee-in-lieu; and
- (d) sites draining to a tidal outfall or adjoining a waterbody.

For other sites, Stage 0 is optional, and Form 1-1 is lodged with Stage 1.

10.3.3 **Combined stages.** For sites of less than 1 ha outside flood-sensitive catchments, the Authority may accept Stages 1 and 2 as one submittal.

10.3.4 **Public works.** For a public work, Stage 1 is the drainage section of the DPR and Stage 2 is the drainage section of the tender drawings. The sanctioning authority shall not sanction or tender the work until the relevant stage has been reviewed under Clause 10.7.

10.3.5 **Changes after approval.** Any change that alters impervious area, levels, storage, outlet or outfall after Stage 2 shall be resubmitted, with the compliance calculator re-run, before the change is built.

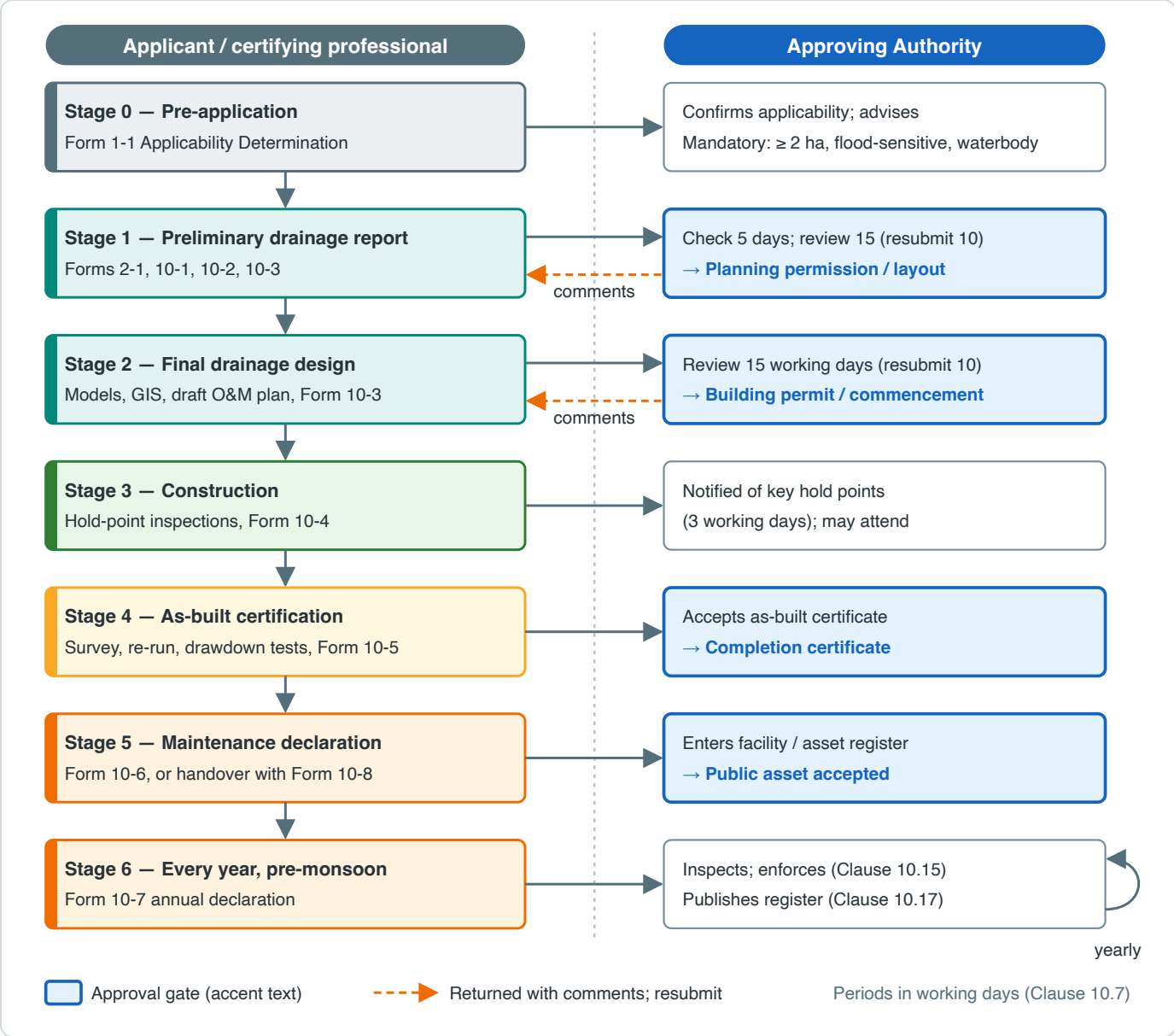


Figure 10.1 — Submittal, review and approval workflow (Clauses 10.3–10.10). Original drawing for this Manual.

> **Commentary.** The stages follow the APWA 5600 sequence of preliminary and final stormwater studies, construction inspection and maintenance agreements (APWA 5600, 2006, §5608 and §5609), mapped onto the Byelaws 2025 steps an Uttar Pradesh applicant already follows. Linking Stage 4 to the completion certificate copies the MBBL 2016 RWH model, which requires inspection before the completion certificate (MBBL 2016, §9.6). The 2 ha and 1 ha limits in Clauses 10.3.2 and 10.3.3 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

10.4 Required contents and checklists

10.4.1 **Preliminary drainage report (Stage 1).** The report shall contain at least:

- (a) Form 1-1 and, where applicable, Form 1-2 (Variance / Waiver Request);
- (b) a site plan with existing and proposed levels, impervious areas, and the catchment boundaries draining to and through the site;
- (c) soils (HSG), the seasonal high groundwater table, and infiltration test results or a test plan (Chapter 3);

- (d) the **Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1)**, completed as Clause 2.13 requires;
- (e) the pre-development condition and hydrologic method (Chapter 3);
- (f) how the hierarchy of Clause 1.2 has been applied: areas preserved, retention method, detention concept and conveyance;
- (g) preliminary retention, water quality and detention volumes, and release rates, from the compliance calculator (Clause 10.5);
- (h) the downstream extent and tailwater case (Chapter 5);
- (i) waterbodies, setbacks and the 1% AEP level (Chapters 6 and 7); and
- (j) the land reserved for facilities and maintenance access (Clause 10.13).

10.4.2 **Final drainage design (Stage 2).** The final design shall contain, in addition to updated Stage 1 contents:

- (a) the final calculations for every storage duration of Clause 2.5.2 and every AEP required by Chapter 4, including the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5;
- (b) stage–storage–discharge tables for each facility, and the emergency spillway design (Chapter 4);
- (c) hydraulic design of conveyance elements, inlets and structures (Chapters 6 and 9);
- (d) the water quality design and the first-flush or gross pollutant trap where required (Chapter 8);
- (e) construction drawings, details and specifications of every facility;
- (f) the construction sequence, including protection of retention and infiltration areas from sediment and compaction (Clause 10.8.3);
- (g) the hold-point schedule (Clause 10.8);
- (h) the draft O&M plan (Clause 10.11) and draft maintenance declaration (Clause 10.10);
- (i) the model input files and the GIS data of Clause 10.4.4; and
- (j) the certificates of Clause 10.6.

10.4.3 **Checklist.** Each submittal shall include the **Drainage Report Checklist (Form 10-1)**, showing for each item of Clauses 10.4.1–10.4.2 the page or sheet where it is addressed, or the reason it does not apply. The Authority shall not start technical review of a submittal without a completed Form 10-1.

10.4.4 **Digital submittal.**

- (a) Reports and drawings shall be submitted as searchable PDF.
- (b) Hydrologic and hydraulic models shall be submitted in their native, runnable format (for example SWMM .inp, HEC-HMS or HEC-RAS project files), with the version of the software used.
- (c) Facilities, outfalls, flow paths and catchment boundaries shall be submitted as GIS data (GeoPackage or shapefile) in WGS 84 (EPSG:4326) or the applicable UTM zone (44N statewide, or 43N for a project wholly in the NCR districts or Mathura, west of 78° E), with attributes as listed in Annex 10B.
- (d) Levels shall be stated relative to a named vertical datum. The relationship to the river datums of the CWC and I&WRD gauges on the receiving rivers and of I&WRD's embankment, regulator and drain levels used in Chapter 5 shall be stated.

10.4.5 **Summary of forms used in submittals** (Table 10.2):

Table 10.2 — Forms used in submittals

Form	Title	Stage
1-1	Applicability Determination	0 or 1
1-2	Variance / Waiver Request	1
2-1	Design Rainfall Sheet	1, 2
10-1	Drainage Report Checklist	1, 2
10-2	Compliance Calculator Summary	1, 2, 4

Form	Title	Stage
10-3	Professional Design Certificate	1, 2
10-4	Hold-Point Inspection Record	3
10-5	As-built Certificate	4
10-6	Maintenance Declaration	5
10-7	Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report	6
10-8	Asset Handover Certificate	5

> Commentary. Runnable models and GIS data cost the applicant little and let the Authority check the work, and later build a city-wide picture of private storage. Uttar Pradesh has no notified design return period, runoff coefficient or design storm for its drains. The Urban Development Department's guideline of December 2024 records that existing drains are usually designed for a 1–2 year return period, requires drainage master plans and DPRs to follow the CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), and asks every DPR for IMD autographic rainfall for the last 25–30 years with an IDF curve, but sets no return period, intensity or runoff coefficient of its own (UDD 2024). The only station IDF published for the State is for Lucknow, from about 25 years of autographic records ending before 1985 (Kathuria, Kaur and Mehra 1987). The one drainage DPR read, for the Taj East Drain at Agra, adopted a 2-year intensity of 28.2 mm/h from an IMD daily series whose printed values are implausible (Agra Smart City DPR). No circular of a Nagar Nigam, development authority, UP Jal Nigam (Urban) or I&WRD giving a return period, an intensity or a runoff coefficient for drain design was found. Form 2-1 and Form 10-2 therefore carry the whole design basis of each submission. Form 2-1 and Form 10-2 ensure that every design states its inputs.

10.5 Compliance calculator

10.5.1 The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall issue and maintain a **compliance calculator**: a version-controlled spreadsheet or web tool that, for a given site:

- (a) applies the applicability tests of Clause 1.5;
- (b) computes the retention volume from the Annex 2E depth, and the water quality volume (Chapter 8);
- (c) applies the credits for preserved areas and retained volume against detention (Chapter 4);
- (d) on the design-aid route (Clause 1.7, S-1), gives retention and detention volumes from the unit-storage tables;
- (e) on alternative S-2, gives the permissible site discharge for each AEP; and
- (f) produces the **Compliance Calculator Summary (Form 10-2)**.

10.5.2 **Use.**

- (a) Every Stage 1, 2 and 4 submittal shall include Form 10-2 from the current version of the calculator.
- (b) On the design-aid route, the calculator may be the only storage calculation.
- (c) Outside the design-aid route, the calculator is a summary and a screening check. It does not replace the hydrograph analysis of Chapter 3. Where a model result differs from the calculator screen by more than the tolerance stated in the calculator guide, the report shall explain why.

10.5.3 **Version control.** The calculator shall record its version in every output. A new version applies to new submittals 6 months after release, in line with Clause 2.14.2. A submittal shall use one version throughout Stages 1 to 4, unless the Applicant elects a later one.

10.5.4 **Openness.** The calculator, its user guide, and the source of every table in it shall be published free of charge.

> **Commentary.** The Mid-America Regional Council issued a Compliance Calculator (.xlsm) and a Calculator Start-Up Guide with APWA 5600 Version 2025.01, together with a site activity plan template and the Policy Supplement (MARC stormwater management page, 2025). The calculator turns a layered standard with credits into one consistent set of numbers that a reviewer can check quickly. Singapore achieves a similar effect with a much simpler rule: a single allowable C value of 0.55 for 10-yr storms up to 4 h, applied by formula (PUB Code of Practice, cl. 7.1.5). An Uttar Pradesh calculator serves Tier B authorities in particular, where it may be the whole calculation.

10.6 Professional certification

10.6.1 **Who may sign.** Drainage reports and designs shall be prepared and signed by a registered professional (Clause 1.4) competent in hydrology and hydraulics. For any of the following, the signatory shall be a civil engineer **empanelled as a Stormwater Design Professional** by the Authority or TCPD:

- (a) Tier A sites of 1 ha or more;
- (b) any site in a flood-sensitive catchment;
- (c) any facility with an embankment, or a high-hazard basin checked for the 0.2% AEP (Chapter 4); and
- (d) any pumped facility, tide gate or regional facility.

10.6.2 **Empanelment criteria** shall be issued by TCPD and shall include a civil engineering degree, relevant experience in drainage design, and completion of a training course on this Manual.

10.6.3 **Certificate.** The signatory shall complete the **Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3)**, certifying that:

- (a) the design complies with this Manual, except for variances listed and approved;
- (b) the rainfall, soils and tailwater inputs are as recorded in Forms 2-1 and 10-2; and
- (c) the models submitted reproduce the results reported.

10.6.4 **Independent check.** Facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d) shall be checked by a second empanelled professional who is independent of the designer. That professional shall sign Form 10-3 as checker.

10.6.5 **False certification.** A false or negligent certificate is an offence under Clause 10.15.

> **Commentary.** Singapore requires that its ABC Waters design features used for peak control be endorsed by an ABC Waters Professional who is also a Professional Engineer (Civil) (PUB Detention Tank Guide, 2024). India has no statutory register of professional engineers comparable to Singapore's, so this clause uses the Byelaws 2025 registration and adds empanelment for the higher-risk cases. The 1 ha limit is set by this Manual.

10.7 Review procedure and timelines

10.7.1 **Completeness check.** The Authority shall check each submittal against Form 10-1 within **5 working days** and either accept it for review or return it with a list of missing items.

10.7.2 **Technical review.** The Authority shall complete technical review and issue approval, conditional approval or a single consolidated list of comments within:

- (a) **15 working days** of acceptance for a first submittal; and
- (b) **10 working days** of acceptance for a resubmittal.

10.7.3 **No new comments.** On resubmittal, the Authority shall not raise new comments on matters that were unchanged and not commented on in the earlier review, unless the matter affects safety.

10.7.4 **Review capacity.** A Tier B authority, or a Tier A authority for overflow work, may use an empanelled reviewer from the TCPD list. The empanelled reviewer shall not have worked on the same site. The Authority remains the decision-maker.

10.7.5 **Concurrent clearances.** Where the NOC of the Irrigation or Ground Water Department listed among the NOCs for building permission in the Byelaws 2025, the permission of I&WRD for a work on, or a discharge to, one of its rivers, drains, canals, embankments or regulators, the approval of the UP State Wetland Authority for a regulated activity in a notified wetland or its zone of influence, the consent of the body that owns the receiving drain where that body is not the Authority, or another agency's concurrence is required (Chapter 7), the Authority shall forward the submittal on the day it is accepted for review, and the review periods shall run concurrently.

10.7.6 **Fit with permit timelines.** The periods in Clauses 10.7.1–10.7.2 run within, and do not extend, the overall time limits for planning permission and building permits set by the Government.

10.7.7 **Reasons.** Every refusal or condition shall state the clause of this Manual on which it is based.

> Commentary. The review periods have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. A single consolidated comment list and the "no new comments" rule follow common good practice for engineering review.

10.8 Construction inspection

10.8.1 **Hold points.** The approved hold-point schedule (Form 10-4) shall include at least:

- (a) the excavated base of each retention, infiltration and detention facility, before any media, liner or structure is placed;
- (b) the outlet structure, orifice and trash screen, before backfill or before the facility is first allowed to fill;
- (c) the infiltration tests of Clause 10.9.3;
- (d) the outfall, flap or tide gate and non-return valve, before the downstream connection is made; and
- (e) pumps and controls, at commissioning.

10.8.2 Each hold point shall be inspected by the certifying professional and recorded on Form 10-4 with dated, geotagged photographs. For sites under Clause 10.6.1, the Authority shall be given at least 3 working days' notice of hold points (a) and (b), and may attend.

10.8.3 **Protection during construction.**

- (a) Retention and infiltration areas shall be fenced off from construction traffic and stockpiles.
- (b) Infiltration facilities shall not be brought into service until the area draining to them is stabilised.
- (c) Sediment shall be removed from any facility used for temporary sediment control before the as-built survey.

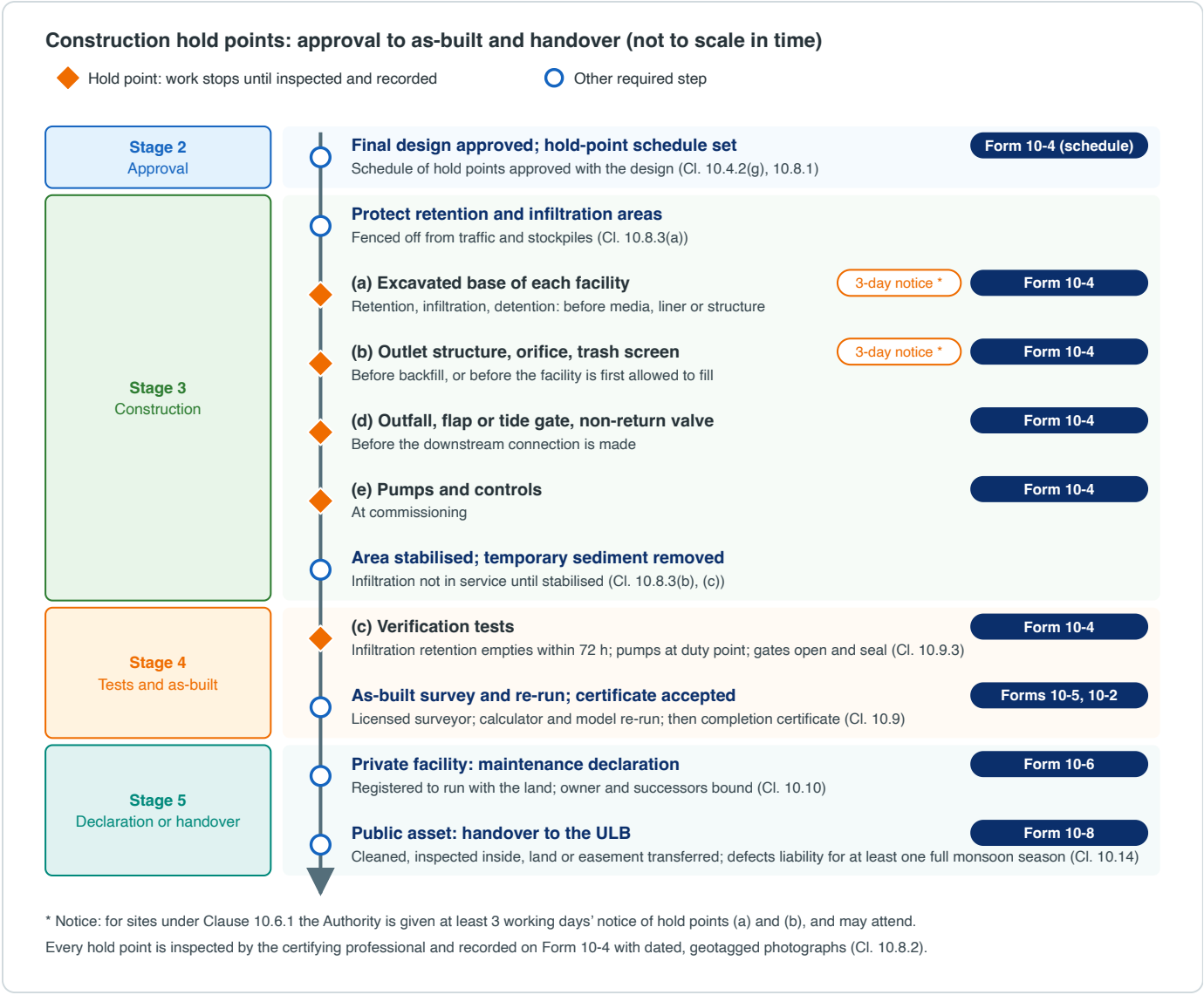


Figure 10.2 — Construction hold points from approval to as-built certification and handover, with the form used at each step (Clauses 10.8–10.10 and 10.14). Hold points are lettered as in Clause 10.8.1. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the construction-inspection and maintenance-agreement sequence of APWA Section 5600 (2006), §5608.

> **Commentary.** Infiltration facilities fail most often in construction, when they are compacted or filled with silt before they ever operate. Hold points (a) and (c) target that failure. The 3-day notice is set by this Manual.

10.9 As-built certification

10.9.1 Before the completion certificate is issued, the certifying professional shall submit the **As-built Certificate (Form 10-5)** with:

- (a) an as-built survey by a licensed surveyor of each facility's levels, storage volume, outlet dimensions and inverts, and the outfall;
- (b) a re-run of the compliance calculator, and of the model where one was used, with as-built values;
- (c) the completed hold-point records (Form 10-4); and

- (d) the final O&M plan and the executed maintenance declaration or handover documents (Clauses 10.10 and 10.14).

10.9.2 **Acceptance.** The as-built facility is accepted where:

- (a) the as-built storage volume at each design level is not less than the volume required by Chapter 4;
- (b) the outlet dimensions and inverts match the approved design; and
- (c) the re-run shows compliance with every criterion of Chapters 4 and 5.

Any deviation shall be corrected, or re-certified as compliant under Clause 10.3.5.

10.9.3 **Verification tests.** Every retention facility that relies on infiltration shall be tested after construction to show that it empties within **72 hours**, as Chapter 4 requires. Pumped facilities shall be tested at their design duty point. Tide gates and non-return valves shall be shown to open and seal.

10.9.4 The Authority shall not issue the completion certificate until Form 10-5 is accepted.

> Commentary. The 72-hour retention drawdown is the criterion of Chapter 4. This Manual requires it to be tested after construction, rather than relying on pre-construction tests alone, because compaction during construction can cut infiltration rates far below the design values.

10.10 Maintenance declarations and covenants

10.10.1 **Declaration.** The owner of every private stormwater facility shall execute a **Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6)** before the completion certificate is issued. The declaration shall:

- (a) identify each facility, its location and the approved O&M plan;
- (b) bind the owner and successors in title to operate, inspect and maintain the facility under the O&M plan;
- (c) grant the Authority a right of entry to inspect, and to carry out works in default under Clause 10.15;
- (d) prohibit removal, filling, covering, reduction or change of use of the facility without the Authority's approval; and
- (e) be registered so that it runs with the land and is disclosed to purchasers.

10.10.2 **Multi-owner developments.** For apartments, layouts and gated communities, the declaration shall name the association or body responsible after handover by the developer. The developer remains responsible until that body is legally constituted and has accepted the declaration in writing.

10.10.3 **Annual declaration.** Every owner of a facility in a Tier A area, and of any pumped facility, tide gate or regional facility anywhere, shall submit an **Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report (Form 10-7)** by **31 May** each year. The report shall be signed by the owner and, for facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d), by an empanelled professional. It shall state that the pre-monsoon inspection of Clause 10.12 has been done and any defects corrected.

10.10.4 **Transfer.** On sale or transfer, the seller shall disclose the declaration and the latest Form 10-7. The purchaser takes on the obligations from the date of transfer.

> Commentary. Singapore requires owners of pumped detention systems to file yearly declarations and documents with PUB (PUB Detention Tank Guide, citing Code of Practice §13.2). Addendum No. 3 to the Code of Practice (16 Apr 2025) introduced annual maintenance declarations for flood barriers and pumped detention tanks, following amendments to the Sewerage and Drainage Act. APWA 5600 (2006, §5608) required easements and maintenance provisions for detention facilities. A registered declaration matters in Uttar Pradesh because

detention tanks under podiums and in basements are easy to convert to parking or storage once the building is occupied. The 31 May date is set by this Manual to fall before the south-west monsoon (June–September), when most Uttar Pradesh extreme rainfall occurs.

10.11 O&M plans

10.11.1 Every stormwater facility shall have an O&M plan, approved at Stage 2 and finalised at Stage 4. The plan shall include:

- (a) an inventory and a plan drawing of each facility, with design levels, volumes and outlet details;
- (b) routine tasks and their frequency: inspection, debris and sediment removal, vegetation care, screen cleaning;
- (c) the trigger for sediment removal, stated as a depth or a percentage of design volume;
- (d) inspection checklists matching Form 10-7;
- (e) for pumped systems, gates and valves: the operating rules, test schedule, standby power, and actions on a cyclone or heavy-rainfall warning;
- (f) actions to prevent standing water and mosquito breeding, consistent with the drawdown times of Chapter 4;
- (g) safety measures for confined spaces, deep water and public access;
- (h) access routes and equipment needed (Clause 10.13);
- (i) an annual cost estimate and who pays it; and
- (j) the records to be kept, and for how long.

10.11.2 **Public facilities.** For facilities owned by a ULB or department, the O&M plan shall be included in the asset register (Clause 10.14.3) and funded in the annual maintenance budget.

Commentary. Uttar Pradesh runs its river flood season through I&WRD, but no comparable order for urban drains was found. At the State review of May 2025 the Chief Minister directed that all flood prevention works be completed by 15 June, and for 2026 about 4,000 km of embankments were reported secured, with flood control rooms in all 18 divisions set up by 31 May and working from 15 June to 15 October (as reported). No order of the Urban Development Department, the Directorate of Local Bodies or a Nagar Nigam setting a deadline for desilting the nalas (nala safai) was found. The UDD scheme of December 2024 allows five years of operation and maintenance to be included in project costs and contracts and treats flood pumping stations as an eligible work (UDD 2024). Gorakhpur is reported to run its monsoon pumping with a decision-support system and automated pumps, while at Lucknow an inspection found only half the pumps working at the Kukrail pumping station and none at Wazirganj (as reported). No operating rule for any regulator, flap gate or drainage pumping station in an Uttar Pradesh city, and none for the Gomti barrage at Lucknow, was found in the public domain. Every gate and pump in this Manual needs a written rule for what happens when a warning is issued.

10.12 Inspection frequencies

10.12.1 **Owner inspections.** Owners shall inspect facilities at least as set out in Table 10.3:

Table 10.3 — Minimum owner inspection frequencies

Facility type	Routine	Pre-monsoon (by 31 May)	After a heavy-rainfall event
Retention / infiltration (soakaways, trenches, bioretention, permeable paving)	Every 6 months	Yes	Yes

Facility type	Routine	Pre-monsoon (by 31 May)	After a heavy-rainfall event
Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area	Every 6 months	Yes	Yes
Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet	Every 6 months	Yes	Yes
Pumped detention, pumps and controls	Monthly test run	Yes, with full duty test	Yes
Flap / tide gate, non-return valve	Every 3 months	Yes, with seal test	Yes
Gross pollutant trap / first-flush device	Every 3 months	Yes	Yes
Private drains and inlets	Every 6 months	Yes	—

A heavy-rainfall event, for this Clause, is a day on which the nearest approved gauge records rainfall at or above the IMD "heavy rainfall" category, or a day for which a red alert is issued for the district. In Uttar Pradesh, the pre-monsoon inspection of regulators, flap gates, non-return valves and pumped facilities, with the pump duty and gate seal tests, shall be completed by **31 May**, and these facilities, with their standby generators, shall be checked again for readiness by **15 June**, with every gate on an outfall to a river operated through its full travel. Pumps, their standby power and the regulators shall then be kept on monsoon standby, with the monthly test run, until **15 October**.

10.12.2 **Authority inspections.** The Authority shall inspect:

- (a) every facility on a site of 1,000 m² or more, or under Clause 10.6.1(c) or (d), at least once every 2 years, and every year in a flood-sensitive catchment; and
- (b) a random sample of at least 10% of other facilities each year.

10.12.3 The results of Authority inspections shall be entered in the facility register (Clause 10.17).

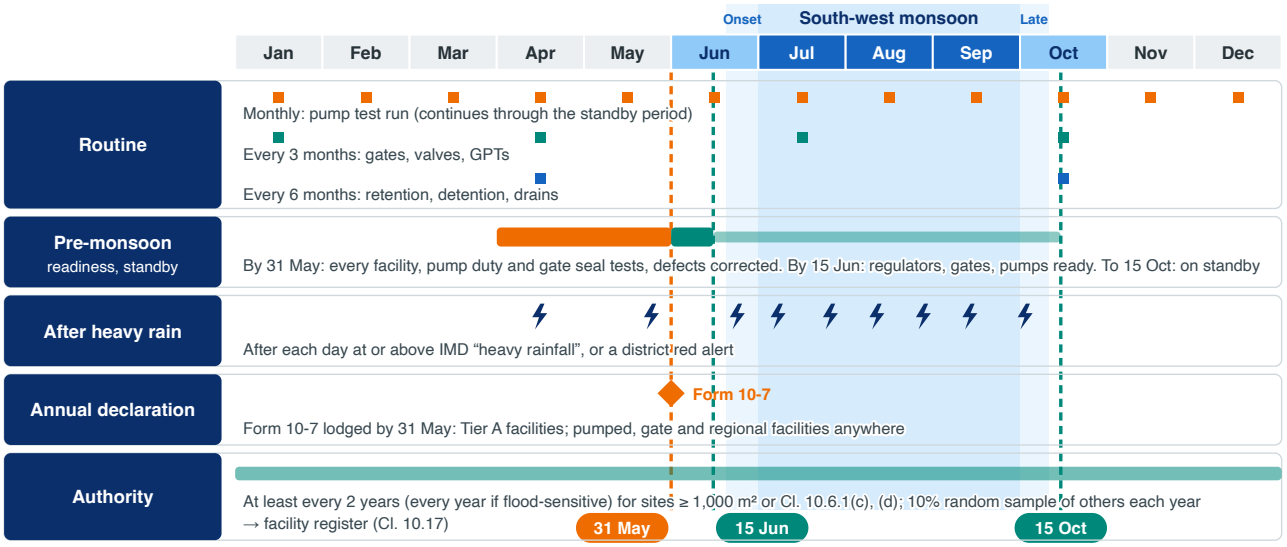


Figure 10.3 — Annual maintenance cycle and who is responsible: routine, pre-monsoon (by 31 May) and post-event inspections, the annual declaration (Form 10-7) and Authority inspections (Clauses 10.10–10.12 and 10.14). Original drawing for this Manual. The timing follows the south-west monsoon (June–September); tick positions within the year are illustrative.

Commentary. The split in Clause 10.12.2 follows the MBBL 2016 inspection regime for RWH, which requires 100% monitoring of buildings over 1,000 m² and a 10% random check below that (MBBL 2016, §9.6). The inspection intervals in Table 10.3 are set by this Manual. The 31 May deadline is set by this Manual for the onset of the south-west monsoon in the second half of June; no order of the Urban Development Department or of a local body setting a desilting deadline was found. The monsoon normally reaches the east of the State by 20 June and covers it by 30 June, but it arrived on 18 June in 2025, and very large falls have come in June: 487.2 mm at Gonda on 12 June 1984, 259.0 mm at Gorakhpur on 9 June 1984, and 327.2 mm at Aligarh on 30 June 1981 (IMD). The north-east terai is already wet in June, with normals of 187.8 mm at Gorakhpur and 180.8 mm at Bahraich (IMD). NDMA (2010) sets 31 March for pre-monsoon desilting nationally; this Manual allows until 31 May so that dry-season work can be finished, and keeps 31 May for the annual declaration. Regulators, gates, pumps and their standby generators must in addition be shown ready by 15 June, the date by which I&WRD's flood works are to be complete and its flood control rooms open (as reported). The normal withdrawal is 10 October, and it came on 13 October in 2025 (IMD); October storms include 310.0 mm at Hardoi on 13 October 1985 (IMD) and 193 mm at Gorakhpur on 2 October 2021 (as reported). Pumps and regulators are therefore kept on standby to 15 October, the day the flood control rooms close (Figure 10.3). The post-event inspections of Table 10.3 cover storms at any time of year, including pre-monsoon storms such as the 129.5 mm at Lucknow on 21 April 1909 and the 110.2 mm at Gorakhpur on 13 May 1956 (IMD).

10.13 Maintenance access

10.13.1 Every facility shall have permanent access for inspection and maintenance, shown on the approved drawings and protected by the maintenance declaration or, for public facilities, by an easement or land transfer.

10.13.2 **Surface facilities.** Basins, ponds and open channels shall have a vehicle access route to the inlet, the outlet and the base, and a maintenance strip along at least one side. Ramps into basins shall be suitable for the plant needed to remove sediment.

10.13.3 **Underground facilities.** Tanks shall have:

- (a) an access opening over the inlet, the outlet and each chamber;
- (b) fixed ladders or steps, and ventilation for confined-space entry;
- (c) a sump or low point for sediment removal; and
- (d) headroom sufficient for manual cleaning.

10.13.4 **Outlets.** Orifices and screens shall be reachable for cleaning without entering a full facility.

10.13.5 Access routes shall not be built over, fenced off or used for parking in a way that prevents access.

> Commentary. APWA 5600 (2006, §5608) required a 15-ft (about 4.5 m) maintenance access strip for detention facilities. Plot sizes in Uttar Pradesh cities make a fixed width hard to apply to every site, so this Manual sets functional requirements. Annex 10C covers maintenance access dimensions.

10.14 Handover of public assets to the ULB

10.14.1 Drains, roads, open space facilities, regional facilities and other stormwater assets that a developer builds for transfer to a ULB shall be handed over only when:

- (a) the as-built certificate (Clause 10.9) has been accepted;
- (b) the facility has been cleaned, and pipes and culverts have been inspected internally (for example by CCTV or manual entry), with the record handed over;
- (c) the land, or an easement over it, has been transferred to the ULB;
- (d) the O&M plan, drawings, GIS data and warranties have been handed over; and
- (e) the **Asset Handover Certificate (Form 10-8)** has been signed by both parties.

10.14.2 **Defects liability.** The developer shall remain responsible for defects and for routine maintenance for a defects liability period that includes at least **one full monsoon season, from 15 June to 15 October,** after handover. The ULB may hold a security deposit for this period.

10.14.3 **Asset register.** On acceptance, the ULB shall enter the asset in its GIS drainage asset register and in the facility register of Clause 10.17.

10.14.4 **Private facilities.** A private facility remains the owner's responsibility under its maintenance declaration unless the ULB formally accepts it under this Clause.

> Commentary. NDMA (2010) calls for a GIS inventory of drains. Requiring the developer's GIS data at handover builds that inventory as the city grows, at no cost to the ULB. The defects period spans one monsoon because many defects in Uttar Pradesh drainage show up only in the first SW monsoon.

10.15 Enforcement

10.15.1 **Offences.** The following are contraventions of this Manual:

- (a) building without an approved drainage design where one is required;
- (b) building a facility other than as approved;
- (c) removing, filling, covering, reducing or changing the use of a facility without approval;
- (d) failing to maintain a facility, or to submit Form 10-7;
- (e) a sewage connection to a storm drain;
- (f) building or filling in a waterbody setback or no-fill zone (Chapter 7);
- (g) obstructing a natural drainage path or major-system flow path; and
- (h) false or negligent certification.

10.15.2 **Graduated response.** The Authority shall respond in the following order, moving to a later step where an earlier one fails or where the contravention is serious (Table 10.4):

Table 10.4 — Graduated enforcement response

Step	Action
1	Written notice stating the contravention, the clause breached, the remedy and a compliance period.
2	Stop-work order, or withholding of the completion certificate, for development not yet complete.
3	Penalty under the applicable Act or rules.
4	Works in default by the Authority, with the cost recovered from the owner.
5	Disconnection of the private drain connection to the public system, where this causes no hazard to others.
6	Report of the certifying professional to the registering authority, and suspension from the empanelled list.

10.15.3 **Immediate action.** Where a contravention puts life or property at risk during a monsoon, the Authority may carry out works in default at once and recover the cost later.

10.15.4 **Security deposits.** For sites under Clause 10.6.1, the Authority may require a security deposit or bank guarantee, released after the as-built certificate is accepted, to cover works in default.

10.15.5 **Record.** Every notice and action under this Clause shall be entered in the facility register.

> **Commentary.** Penalties are referred to generically. This Manual cannot itself create offences or fines, and the powers come from the Acts under which the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 are made and from the municipal Acts. The graduated steps are set by this Manual. In Uttar Pradesh the courts and the National Green Tribunal have become the working regulators of floodplains, ponds and drains. The Tribunal has driven the demarcation of the Ganga, Yamuna and Hindon floodplains on the 1-in-100-year flood, in O.A. 341/2022 (Kanpur) and O.A. 275/2023 and 569/2023 (Gautam Buddh Nagar and Ghaziabad), where the Hindon was still not demarcated in May 2026 (I&WRD 2025; I&WRD 2026). The Supreme Court held that where "a pond exists and the area covered by it varies in rainy season … no part of it could have been allotted" and directed the State to restore it (*Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, 2001), and in October 2025 the Allahabad High Court warned Pradhans, Lekhpals and Tahsildars of contempt for inaction on encroachment of ponds and public land (as reported). In August 2026, after 73.4 mm of rain in a day at Prayagraj, the High Court took up waterlogging in the city on its own motion and ordered pumping within 24 hours with a ward-wise compliance affidavit (as reported). In Lucknow the Supreme Court in May 2024 upheld the clearance of Akbar Nagar from the floodplain of the Kukrail (as reported). Two recent CAG audits concern authorities in the National Capital Region. Report No. 4 of 2023, on land acquisition and allotment by GNIDA, was tabled on 13 August 2025; the press then reported its findings on farmhouse plots in Haibatpur, 130–553 m from the Hindon, on land the

Regional Plan 2021 classed as a natural conservation zone, and the Tribunal took up the report on its own motion as O.A. 437/2025 (CAG 2025; NGT 2025; as reported). Report No. 11 of 2025, on development and allotment by the Ghaziabad Development Authority for 2017-18 to 2021-22, was tabled on 20 February 2026 and covers development works including drainage systems; its drainage findings were not read (CAG 2026). The statutes carry some penalties: construction on ponds, reservoirs, rivers or drains shown in a plan or in the revenue records cannot be compounded (Byelaws 2025, cl. 16.3.2(xi)), and an owner who fails to install the rainwater harvesting system shown on the sanctioned drawings is liable to a penalty (UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019, s.39(4)). This shows that a rule without routine enforcement does little. Professional accountability (step 6) is often more effective than fines on owners, because it acts on the person who signs the design.

10.16 Monitoring and post-event review

10.16.1 **Monitoring network.** Tier A authorities shall maintain, or have access to, recording rain gauges and water-level gauges at their main outfalls and regional facilities. Data shall be archived at intervals of 15 minutes or less.

10.16.2 **Event reports.** After any event that floods buildings within a ULB area, the ULB shall prepare a short event report within **3 months**, recording:

- (a) rainfall at the nearest approved gauges, by duration, compared with the design depths of Chapter 2;
- (b) the stage of the receiving river (the Gomti, the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Rapti, the Hindon or another river) at the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge and, where it is gauged, at the outfall, each on a named datum; the state of every regulator, flap gate, interception structure and pumping station on the outfall and on the drain upstream of it; and releases from any barrage or dam upstream;
- (c) flooded locations, depths and durations, with flood marks surveyed where possible;
- (d) the performance of public and inspected private facilities, including any blocked outlets, failed pumps or closed gates; and
- (e) recommended actions.

10.16.3 **Post-event review.** Where an event exceeds the 1% AEP 24-hour or 72-hour design depth at two or more approved gauges in the State (Clause 2.14.1), UPSDMA, with the State Stormwater Technical Committee, shall lead a post-event review within **12 months**. It shall assess whether the criteria of this Manual were adequate, and shall feed into the review of Clause 1.12.

10.16.4 **Facility performance sampling.** The Authority shall, at least every 5 years, monitor a sample of private retention and detention facilities through a monsoon, to test whether they perform as designed.

Commentary. The post-event trigger is the review trigger already set in Clause 2.14.1. Uttar Pradesh's urban floods have been examined by courts and tribunals rather than by technical reviews. No technical review was found of the rain of 15–16 September 2022, when IMD recorded 20 cm in 24 hours at Gorakhpur and at Lucknow (IMD 2022) and nine people died when a wall collapsed in Dilkusha, Lucknow (as reported); of the rain of 10–11 September 2023, with 14 cm at Lucknow and 15 cm at Kanpur (IMD 2023), the event the Urban Development Department cites as a flash flood (UDD 2024); or of the Hindon flood of July 2023, when the river at Noida rose 1.81 m above its old high flood level and about 350 cars were submerged in a yard on the floodplain at Ecotech-3 (as reported). At Prayagraj in August 2026, 73.4 mm in a day, below the 2-year daily rainfall of the CWC Flood Estimation Report plates (this Manual's reading), was enough to waterlog George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh, and it was the High Court that called for a ward-wise account (as reported). No record of flood extents, depths or durations kept by any Nagar Nigam was found. NDMA (2010) called for automatic rain gauges at "1 in every 4 sq km" in Class I, II and III cities. Clause 10.16.1 asks only for gauges where they serve design and review. The report and sampling intervals are set by this Manual.

10.17 Data publication

10.17.1 Each Authority shall publish, on a public website, and update at least quarterly:

- (a) a **facility register**: location, type, design volume, release rate, owner, date of as-built acceptance, and the latest inspection result for every facility approved under this Manual;
- (b) a summary of each approved drainage report, with Forms 2-1 and 10-2;
- (c) the register of variances and waivers (Clause 1.10);
- (d) the alternatives adopted under the Policy Supplement (Clause 1.7);
- (e) enforcement actions (Clause 10.15.5); and
- (f) event reports and post-event reviews (Clause 10.16).

10.17.2 The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall publish the compliance calculator, all Annexes, the flood-sensitive catchment maps and the State-level summary of facility registers as open data.

10.17.3 Personal data other than the name of a corporate owner or association shall not be published. Security-sensitive details of critical infrastructure may be withheld, with the reason recorded.

10.17.4 Published data shall be machine-readable (for example CSV and GeoPackage) and released under the Government Open Data Licence – India or an equivalent open licence.

> Commentary. Transparency is a design criterion in its own right here. Some of Uttar Pradesh's drainage records are public: the Urban Development Department publishes its storm water drainage guideline of December 2024, the English text of the Byelaws 2025 is published by the State, and I&WRD's floodplain orders and progress reports can be read as filed before the National Green Tribunal. Much else could not be found in the public domain: an approved Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan for any city, or the terms of reference for one; the list of Nagar Nigams whose plans are in preparation (seen only in a summary of a Lok Sabha reply); an inventory of the regulators, flap gates, interception structures and pumping stations on the drains of any city, with their capacities and operating rules; any design river level at an outfall; CWC's station sheets and hourly river records for the Gomti, Ganga, Yamuna, Rapti and Hindon sites; the operating rule of the Gomti barrage; an urban flood plan or SOP of UPSDMA; the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Rules 2020; the number of the Yamuna floodplain order of January 2025; the Hindi text of the Byelaws 2025 and the authorities' own notified copies; the current building regulations of Noida, Greater Noida and YEIDA; and the chapters of CAG Reports No. 4 of 2023 and No. 11 of 2025. Publishing inputs and facility records lets the public, researchers and other agencies check that the city's growing stock of private storage actually exists. The open-format requirement is set by this Manual.

10.18 Review of this chapter

10.18.1 This chapter shall be reviewed with the Manual under Clause 1.12. The forms and the compliance calculator may be revised by the State Stormwater Technical Committee between reviews, under Clause 10.5.3.

References (chapter)

- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). *Urban Flood/Jalplavan Niyantran evam Storm Water Drainage Yojana: Dishanirdesh* (guidelines for the urban flood and waterlogging control and storm water drainage scheme), Hindi, file dated 24 December 2024. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, §5608 (easements, maintenance, submittals) and §5609 (plan requirements). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). Stormwater management page: 2025 Stormwater Standards Manual, Compliance Calculator, Calculator Start-Up Guide, Policy Supplement. https://www.marc.org/environment/environment-plans/stormwater-management
- PUB Singapore (2018, with Addendum No. 3 of 16 Apr 2025). Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed. https://info.corenet.gov.sg/docs/default-source/pub-circulars/pub-circular_cop-7th-ed-addendum-no-3_16-apr-2025.pdf?sfvrsn=5a2c1e1a_2
- PUB Singapore (2024). On-site Stormwater Detention Tank Technical Guide. https://www.pub.gov.sg/-/media/PUB/PDF/detentionTank.pdf
- PUB Singapore (11 Nov 2024). Amendments to Sewerage and Drainage Act (press release). https://www.pub.gov.sg/Resources/News-Room/PressReleases/2024/11/Amendments-to-Sewerage-and-Drainage-Act
- MoHUA (2016). Model Building Bye-Laws, Chapter 9, §9.6. https://web.archive.org/web/2022/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/MBBL.pdf
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). National Guidelines on Management of Urban Flooding. https://sdma.goa.gov.in/sites/default/files/2022-05/management_urban_flooding.pdf
- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025, approving the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and Model Zoning Regulations 2025, with the English text (Version PRF3, 3 July 2025) (clauses 1.1, 2.2, 2.3.2, 2.9, 13.1.2 and 16.3.2). https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019), section 39 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf
- Supreme Court of India (2001). *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, judgment of 25 July 2001, AIR 2001 SC 3215. https://leap.unep.org/sites/default/files/court-case/COU-156224.pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). Compliance report of 2 April 2025 in National Green Tribunal O.A. 341/2022, *Deepak Awasthi v. State of U.P.*, annexing G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ)(NGT)/2023 of 29 January 2025. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPORT%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20UP%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20341%20of%202022%20%20Deepak%20Awasthi%20Vs.%20State%20of%20U.P..pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2026). Progress report of 23 May 2026 in National Green Tribunal O.A. 569/2023, *Alok Kumar v. Union of India* (Hindon floodplain). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Progress%20Report%20By%20Irrigation%20Department,%20State%20of%20Uttar%20Pradesh%20DATED%2023-05-2026%20in%20OA%20569%20of%202023%20Alok%20Kumar%20Vs%20UOI%20and%20Ors.pdf
- National Green Tribunal (2025). O.A. 437/2025, *News item titled "CAG slams Greater Noida for allowing farmhouses on Hindon floodplain"*: reply of the DM Gautam Buddh Nagar of 13 October 2025, annexing the order of 1 September 2025. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPLY%20BY%20DM,%20GAUTAM%20BUDH

%20NAGAR%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20437%20of%202025%20NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20CAG%20SLAMS%20GREATER%20NOIDA%20FOR%20ALLOWING%20FARMHOUSES%20ON%20HINDON%20FLOODPLAIN%20APPEARING%20IN%20THE%20TIMES%20OF%20INDIA%20DATED%2018.08.2025..pdf

- Comptroller and Auditor General of India (2025). Report No. 4 of 2023, *Land Acquisition and Allotment of Properties in Greater Noida Industrial Development Authority*, Government of Uttar Pradesh (tabled 13 August 2025; report page). https://cag.gov.in/ag2/uttar-pradesh/en/audit-report/details/122410
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India (2026). Report No. 11 of 2025, *Development and Allotment of Properties by Ghaziabad Development Authority* (tabled 20 February 2026; report page). https://cag.gov.in/en/audit-report/details/123698
- Kathuria, S.N., Kaur, S. and Mehra, A.K. (1987). Rainfall intensity for local drainage design in Lucknow and its neighbouring area. *Mausam* 38(1), 85–88. https://mausamjournal.imd.gov.in/index.php/MAUSAM/article/download/2654/2468
- Agra Smart City. *Improvements to Taj East Drain*, detailed project report, chapter 9 (rainfall). https://agrasmartcity.in/pdf/wc13581914%20Improvements%20to%20Taj%20East%20Drain.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2022, 2023). Press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 and 11 September 2023 (heavy rainfall over Uttar Pradesh). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20230911_pr_2523.pdf
- India Meteorological Department, Meteorological Centre Lucknow (2024, 2025). Southwest Monsoon Report 2024 and 2025 for Uttar Pradesh (onset and withdrawal dates); station climatological tables, 1991–2020 normals. https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/monsoon.pdf ; https://mausam.imd.gov.in/lucknow/mcdata/swreport.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012) (Uttar Pradesh stations). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- SANDRP (2018, updated 2019). Overview of CWC Flood Forecasting Sites 2018: North India (compiled from CWC; secondary source). https://sandrp.in/2018/08/03/overview-of-cwc-flood-forecasting-sites-north-india/
- SANDRP (3 August 2023). Rivers breaching highest flood levels in July 2023 (Hindon at Noida; secondary source). https://sandrp.in/2023/08/03/rivers-breaching-highest-flood-levels-in-july-2023/
- The Week/PTI (16 May 2025). Report on the Chief Minister's review of flood preparedness (secondary source). https://www.theweek.in/wire-updates/national/2025/05/16/des87-up-adityanath-flood-prep.html
- Free Press Journal (2026). UP govt strengthens 4,000 km embankments ahead of monsoon (flood control rooms, 15 June–15 October; secondary source). https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/up-govt-strengthens-4000-km-embankments-ahead-of-monsoon-to-prevent-flood-damage
- The Realty Today (2025). CAG report highlights violations in GNIDA's farmhouse land schemes (secondary source). https://therealtytoday.com/news/cag-report-highlights-violations-in-gnidas-farmhouse-land-schemes
- LiveLaw (2025, 2026). Allahabad High Court orders on Gram Sabha land encroachments (October 2025) and on Prayagraj waterlogging (August 2026); Supreme Court on the Akbar Nagar demolitions, Lucknow (May 2024) (secondary sources). https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/allahabad-high-court-crackdown-gram-sabha-land-encroachments-pradhans-lekhpals-tahsildars-inaction-306753 ; https://www.livelaw.in/high-court/allahabad-high-court/prayagraj-waterlogging-allahabad-hc-pumps-24-hours-municipal-corporation-546731 ; https://www.livelaw.in/top-stories/supreme-court-lucknow-akbarnagar-demolitions-eviction-upheld-slum-dwellers-alternative-accommodation-257604
- Scroll (16 September 2022). Report on the Dilkusha wall collapse in Lucknow (secondary source). https://scroll.in/latest/1032979/scroll_in
- The Tribune (2023). About 350 cars at a dump yard submerged by the overflowing Hindon (secondary source). https://www.tribuneindia.com/news/delhi/about-350-cars-at-ola-dump-yard-submerged-by-overflowing-hindon-529226
- Daily Pioneer (2021). Gorakhpur records highest October rainfall in 100 years (secondary source). https://www.dailypioneer.com/2021/india/gorakhpur-records-highest-october-rainfall-in-100-years.html

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
10A	Compliance calculator and user guide
10B	GIS data specification and attribute schema
10C	Maintenance access dimensions
10D	Model O&M plans by facility type
10E	Empanelment criteria for Stormwater Design Professionals and reviewers
Form 10-1	Drainage Report Checklist
Form 10-2	Compliance Calculator Summary
Form 10-3	Professional Design Certificate
Form 10-4	Hold-Point Inspection Record
Form 10-5	As-built Certificate
Form 10-6	Maintenance Declaration
Form 10-7	Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report
Form 10-8	Asset Handover Certificate
Form 2-1	Design Rainfall Sheet (Chapter 2)

CHAPTER 11

Basin and City Stormwater Master Plans

11.1 Purpose and scope

11.1.1 Chapters 2 to 10 control one project at a time. This chapter sets the requirements for the plan that ties those projects together: the **Basin Stormwater Master Plan (BSMP)**. A BSMP is prepared for each drainage basin of a city or urban area. A city's set of BSMPs makes up its **City Stormwater Master Plan**.

11.1.2 A BSMP shall:

- (a) map flood hazard for the basin under existing and future conditions;
- (b) set the level of service each part of the drainage system must achieve (Clause 11.6);
- (c) identify the works, storage and land needed to reach that level of service, and rank them (Clauses 11.7 and 11.8);
- (d) reserve land for regional storage, tal and tank restoration, and major flow paths in the statutory land-use plan (Clause 11.9);
- (e) set the basin-specific inputs that site designs under Chapter 4 depend on: regional facilities, the fee-in-lieu unit rate, and any basin release rate stricter than Chapter 4 (Clause 11.8.3); and
- (f) recommend catchments for notification as flood-sensitive (Clause 4.5.4).

11.1.3 **Relationship to site design.** Site criteria (Chapters 4 to 8) apply whether or not a BSMP exists. A BSMP may make the site criteria **stricter** for its basin. It shall not relax them, except through the regional detention and fee-in-lieu routes of Clauses 4.13 and 4.5.6.

> Commentary. Uttar Pradesh has a funded State programme for city drainage master plans, but no approved plan or design standard has been published. The Urban Development Department's guideline of December 2024 found that "there is no integrated plan for urban drainage" in the State and that existing drains are usually designed for a 1–2 year return period (UDD 2024). It makes an approved Integrated Urban Storm Water Drainage Master Plan (IUSWDMP) a precondition for projects under its storm water drainage scheme (waived for 2024-25), with ₹1,000 crore provided for 2024-25, of which ₹100 crore was for the plans, and all Nagar Nigams eligible first. Each plan is to be prepared by catchment, and may extend beyond the local body's limits, by the Construction and Design Services (C&DS) of UP Jal Nigam (Urban), to the CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019); it is to integrate existing detention ponds and lakes, analyse inundation for rainfall above the design, and model hotspots and bottlenecks. It is approved by the local body's standing committee and then by a State Level Apex Committee chaired by the Chief Secretary, after appraisal by the Directorate of Local Bodies, while a Divisional Administrative Coordination Committee under the Divisional Commissioner coordinates the agencies and keeps the drain land free of encroachment (UDD 2024). The guideline sets no return period, level of service or detention standard. A Lok Sabha reply is reported to say that plans are being prepared for 16 municipal corporations and that Gorakhpur began its own plan (as reported; not read). This chapter supplies the design storm, levels of service, storage and buffer criteria that such a plan needs; it has not been adopted by the Urban Development Department or by any other body. A site-level manual cannot fix basin-level problems: lost tank storage, city outfalls to the Gomti, the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Rapti and the Hindon closed when the rivers are high, drains behind river embankments that reach the river only through regulators or by pumping, nalas that carry sewage to

interception structures at their outfalls, natural drains and tals narrowed or filled by encroachment, single drains split between a Nagar Nigam, a development authority and I&WRD, and drains that are adequate on their own but overload the next reach. Comparable manuals pair site criteria with basin planning:

- Denver's Mile High Flood District prepares major drainageway master plans that set regional facilities and release rates.
- The Kansas City APWA criteria rest on regional watershed studies (MARC).
- England's Surface Water Management Plans (Defra, Surface Water Management Plan Technical Guidance, 2010) set a phased method of preparation, risk assessment, options and implementation.
- Malaysia's MSMA requires drainage master plans for urban areas.

This chapter adapts that method to Uttar Pradesh: to city outfalls on the Gomti, the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Rapti and the Hindon that the rivers close in flood, and to drains behind river embankments that reach the river only through regulators or by pumping; to nalas that carry sewage to interception structures at their outfalls; to drains held by Nagar Nigams, development authorities, industrial development authorities and I&WRD without a rule that divides them; to tals and ponds that the law protects but encroachment has reduced; to the State's own programme of drainage master plans under the Urban Development Department's guideline of December 2024, which names who prepares and approves a plan but sets no design return period; and to a south-west monsoon whose short bursts exceed what the CWC ratios assume.

11.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Basin	The land draining to one outfall to the sea, a river, or a major waterbody, as delineated under Clause 11.3.
Basin Stormwater Master Plan (BSMP)	The plan for one basin prepared under this chapter.
Lead Authority	The body responsible for preparing a BSMP (Clause 11.4).
Level of service (LoS)	The flood performance a part of the drainage system must achieve, expressed as an AEP and an outcome (Clause 11.6).
Flood hazard map	A map of flood extent, depth, velocity and hazard class (H1–H6, Chapter 6) for a stated AEP and scenario.
Regional facility	A storage, conveyance or outfall work serving more than one development, identified in a BSMP.
Capital Improvement Programme (CIP)	The ranked, costed list of works in a BSMP (Clause 11.8.4).

11.3 Planning unit: the basin, not the ward

11.3.1 BSMPs shall be prepared **by hydrological basin**, not by ward, zone or local-body boundary. Where a basin crosses local-body boundaries, one BSMP shall cover the whole basin.

11.3.2 Basin boundaries shall be delineated from the digital elevation model of Clause 11.5.2, checked against the drain network, road embankments, canals and tank supply channels. Diversions between basins, whether by canal, drain or surplus course, shall be mapped and represented in the model.

11.3.3 No basin delineation has been published for any Uttar Pradesh city. For the urban areas where the evidence identifies them, the basins are at least the following:

- **Lucknow, Gomti:** the catchment of each drain that outfalls to the **Gomti** within the city, 33 of the 34 drains of the Jal Kal department (as reported), each as a basin with the Gomti level at its outfall as the boundary condition and the outfall-closed case of Chapter 5, with the capacity of its pumping station, as a design case; among them the **Kukrail** nala, with its whole catchment, and the **Qila Mohammadi** nala, on which the drainage of South City, Ashiana, Alambagh, the LDA Colony on Kanpur Road and Transport Nagar depends (LMC 2018), with the reported diversion of the Geetapalli nala to the Haider canal mapped as a link between basins;
- **Gorakhpur, Rapti and Ramgarh Tal:** the city inside the embankments of the **Rapti** and the **Rohin**, with the Rapti level at Birdghat as the boundary condition; and the catchment of **Ramgarh Tal**, the notified wetland of 742.245 ha, with the six named nalas that flow into it and the **Goddhoiya** nala, on which a project of interception, diversion and separate storm and sewer lines was approved in 2022 (Ramgarh Taal notification 2020; as reported);
- **Prayagraj, Ganga and Yamuna:** the catchments of the drains that outfall to the **Ganga** and the **Yamuna**, 81 in all (as reported), with the levels at Phaphamau and Naini, and the backwater at the Sangam, as boundary conditions; and
- **Ghaziabad and Noida, Hindon:** the catchments that drain to the **Hindon** across the Ghaziabad Nagar Nigam, the Ghaziabad Development Authority, Noida and Greater Noida, as one set of basins with the Hindon level as the boundary condition; I&WRD's demarcation of the Hindon floodplain, not complete in May 2026, shall be shown in the BSMP when it is.

Other Tier A bodies, including Kanpur, Varanasi, Agra and Meerut, shall define their basins in the first BSMP that covers them. Where I&WRD or CWC has a high flood level, a notified 1-in-100-year floodplain line, an embankment crest level or an operating rule for a river, a barrage, a regulator or a pumping station, the BSMP shall take its boundary conditions from it and show those levels against its own 1% AEP map.

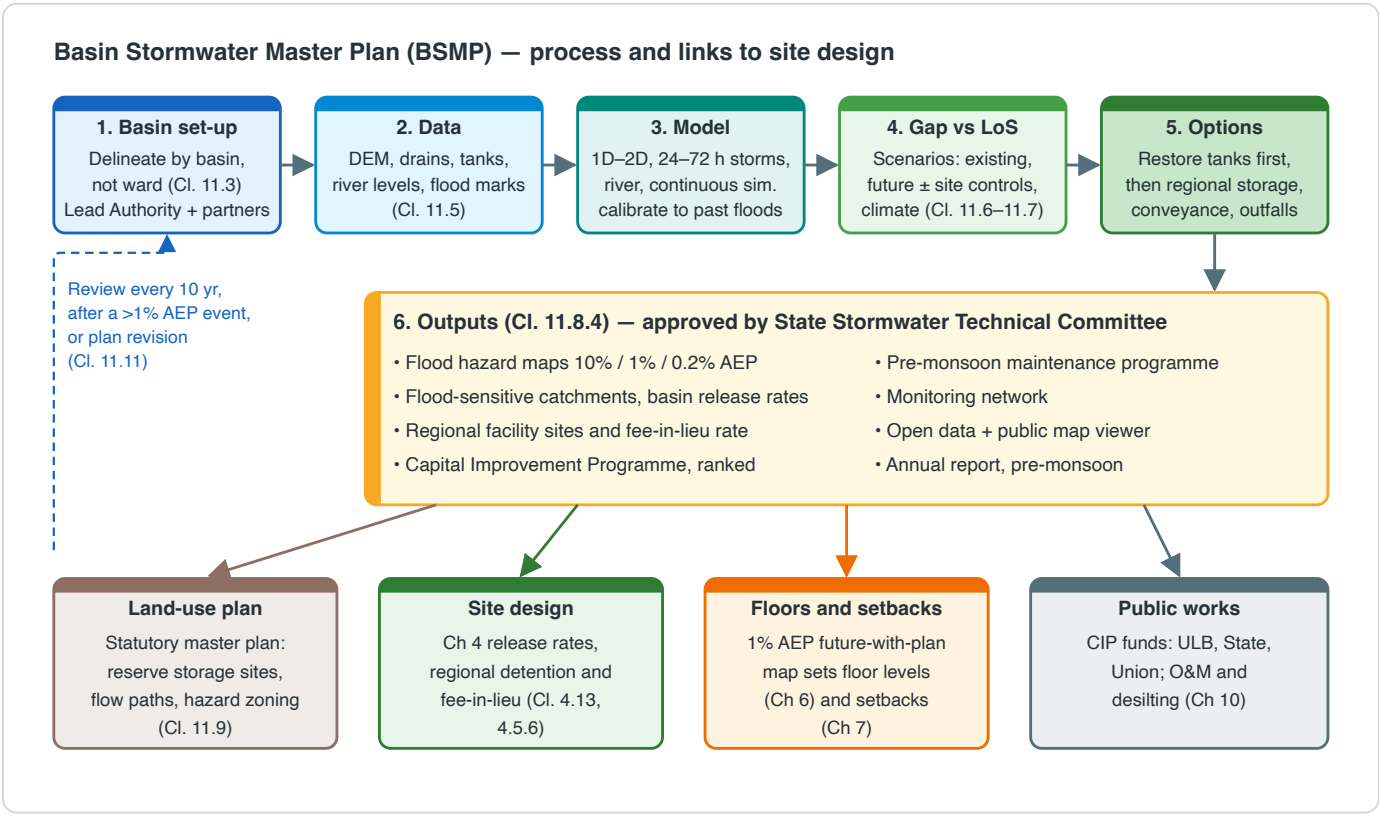


Figure 11.1 — Basin Stormwater Master Plan process and its links to site design. Original drawing for this Manual. The phase structure is adapted from Defra, Surface Water Management Plan Technical Guidance (2010), and Mile High Flood District master planning practice.

> Commentary. Water does not follow ward boundaries. A ward-by-ward drain plan can pass the problem to the next ward, and to the next local body. In Uttar Pradesh a single drain can pass through several owners' hands on its way to the river. No rule dividing the natural drains kept by I&WRD from the nalas of the Nagar Nigams was found; drains in colonies not yet handed over stay with the development authority or the Awas Vikas Parishad, trunk sewers and the interceptors that tap the drains are built by UP Jal Nigam, and the drains of the industrial areas belong to Noida, Greater Noida, YEIDA or UPSIDA (as this Manual reads the institutional record). The Urban Development Department's guideline answers this by making the plan catchment-based, extending it beyond the local body's limits where the catchment does, and requiring every agency to carry out drainage works only in conformity with the approved master plan, regulated by the Nagar Nigam (UDD 2024). I&WRD, for its part, has told the National Green Tribunal that enforcement against encroachment in a notified floodplain lies with the development authority (I&WRD 2025). The storm drains also carry sewage across these boundaries: at Kanpur a State filing listed 30 drains, 14 of them untapped (as reported), and the Hindon receives 133 drains between Saharanpur and Ghaziabad (as reported). This clause makes the basin the planning unit, so that one model carries each drain from its head to the river whoever owns each reach, and so that the interception structures are tested against the capacity of the drains they tap (Chapter 8, Clause 8.9.5).

11.4 Who prepares, and when

11.4.1 **Lead Authority.**

- For the basins of a city with a Nagar Nigam: the **Nagar Nigam**, which the Urban Development Department's guideline makes responsible for the city's drainage master plan and its regulation (UDD 2024), with **C&DS, UP Jal Nigam (Urban)**, which the guideline names to prepare the plan, as preparer. Where the Nagar Nigam prepares an IUSWDMP under that guideline, its BSMPs may be prepared as the technical content of it. Where a basin extends beyond the Nagar Nigam, the other local bodies and the development authority in the basin are partners, and one BSMP covers the whole basin (Clause 11.3.1).
- No rule dividing natural drains from municipal nalas was found; until one is made, this Manual assigns the reaches within each BSMP as follows, each body being Lead Authority for the reaches it owns and for the parts of the CIP on them: **I&WRD** for the rivers, their embankments, regulators and floodplains and the drains in canal commands; the **Nagar Nigam**, **Nagar Palika Parishad** or **Nagar Panchayat**, through its Jal Kal or engineering department, for the municipal nalas and road drains; the **development authority** (or the Awas Vikas Parishad) for the drains of layouts not yet handed over; **UP Jal Nigam** (Urban or Rural) for trunk sewers, interceptors and drain-tapping works; PWD and NHAI for the drains of their roads; and **Noida**, **Greater Noida**, **YEIDA** and **UPSIDA** for the drains of their own areas.
- For the Hindon basins of Ghaziabad and Noida: the Ghaziabad Nagar Nigam and the Noida and Greater Noida authorities, each for its part, prepared together so that one model covers the whole basin, with I&WRD (Irrigation Construction Division, Ghaziabad) as Lead Authority for the Hindon and its floodplain.
- In Tier B bodies: the Lead Authority is named by the Directorate of Local Bodies. Basins draining to a common river reach may be grouped into one district-level plan.

The UP State Wetland Authority shall be consulted on every BSMP whose basin drains to a notified wetland, including the Ramgarh Tal basin at Gorakhpur; UPSDMA and the Divisional Administrative Coordination Committee on every BSMP; and the State Mission for Clean Ganga on every BSMP that proposes works on a drain tapped or to be tapped under Namami Gange.

I&WRD shall be a partner in every BSMP that includes a river, canal or tank under its control.

11.4.2 **When a BSMP is required.**

- (a) Every Tier A body shall approve BSMPs covering its whole area within **3 years** of this Manual taking effect.

- (b) A BSMP is required before:
  - any regional detention or fee-in-lieu is accepted under Clause 4.13;
  - a fee held under Clause 4.5.6.3 is spent; and
  - a basin-specific release rate is applied under Clause 11.8.3.
- (c) A Tier B body shall prepare a BSMP where its Lead Authority, or the State Stormwater Technical Committee, finds recurrent flooding of buildings or arterial roads.

11.4.3 **Preparation.** BSMPs shall be prepared by, or under the direction of, an engineer empanelled as a Stormwater Design Professional (Chapter 10) with experience in basin-scale modelling.

11.5 Data and surveys

11.5.1 Each BSMP shall assemble and publish (Clause 11.10) the data in Table 11.1:

Table 11.1 — Minimum data and surveys for a BSMP

Data	Minimum requirement
Terrain	Digital elevation model from LiDAR or photogrammetry, with vertical accuracy of 0.15 m RMSE or better in urban areas, tied to the Survey of India datum
Drain network	Inventory of all public drains, culverts and outfalls with invert levels, sizes, condition and silt depth; private drains above 600 mm
Waterbodies	Survey of every tank, tal, pond and marsh under Chapter 7: FTL, MWL, bund level, stage–storage, sluices, surplus weirs, supply channels, encroachment
Rivers and canals	Cross-sections at no more than 200 m spacing and at every structure
Outfalls and rivers	The datum of every level named; outfall invert levels against the warning, danger and high flood levels of the receiving river at the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge and its recorded peaks; the 1-in-100-year flood levels and floodplain coordinates notified by I&WRD; the regulators, flap gates, interception (drain-tapping) structures and pumping stations on the outfalls and in the river embankments, with their capacities and operating rules; embankment crest levels; and releases from any barrage or dam upstream
Rainfall and levels	All available rain gauges (IMD, including the Lucknow (city and Amausi), Kanpur, Prayagraj (Bamhrauli), Varanasi (Babatpur and BHU), Gorakhpur, Agra, Meerut, Bareilly and Jhansi stations and the automatic weather stations and rain gauges reported by the Meteorological Centre Lucknow, and, for Ghaziabad and Noida, which have no long-record IMD station, Safdarjung and Palam in Delhi; the tehsil rain gauges; the rain and river gauges of CWC and I&WRD; and any gauges kept by the Nagar Nigams and the development and industrial development authorities) and water-level records, including those for the September 1971 (the Gomti at Lucknow), September 1978 (the Ganga and the Yamuna at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi), August 1998 (the Rapti at Gorakhpur), September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Lucknow), July 2023 (the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida) and September 2023 (Lucknow and Kanpur) events
Flood evidence	Surveyed flood marks and mapped flood extents from past events, including public reports
Land use	Existing land use and imperviousness; future land use from the statutory master plan
Soils and groundwater	HSG map (Annex 3A); seasonal high groundwater; aquifer and recharge zones
Sewer interaction	Known sewage cross-connections, dry-weather flow in drains, and solid-waste hotspots

Commentary. The 0.15 m accuracy has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because on the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Rapti and the Hindon, behind the river embankments at Lucknow and Gorakhpur, and in the low tal basins of the terai such as that of Ramgarh Tal, a small error in ground level moves the flood edge a long way, and the 1% extent from the BSMP sets floor levels (Chapter 6) and setbacks (Chapter 7). Past flood marks matter as much as models. The September 1971 (the Gomti at Lucknow), September 1978 (the Ganga and the Yamuna at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi), August 1998 (the Rapti at Gorakhpur), September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Lucknow), July 2023 (the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida) and September 2023 (Lucknow and Kanpur) events are the best calibration data Uttar Pradesh has, and much of the evidence is held in photographs, news reports and residents' records that should be collected before it is lost.

11.6 Levels of service

11.6.1 Each BSMP shall adopt the following minimum levels of service. A BSMP may adopt stricter levels.

Table 11.2 — Minimum levels of service

Element	Minimum level of service
Minor system	The design AEP of Chapter 6 (Table 6.1)
Habitable buildings	No flooding above floor level in the 1% AEP (100-yr) event
Critical facilities (hospitals, emergency services, substations, water and sewage plants)	No flooding of the facility in the 0.2% AEP (500-yr) event; access road passable in the 1% AEP event
Evacuation routes and arterial roads	Passable (hazard class H2 or better, Chapter 6) in the 1% AEP event
Ponding drain time	Surface water cleared from roads within **6 hours** after rain ends in the 10% AEP (10-yr) event
Tank and tal storage	No net loss of flood storage below the MWL in the basin, measured against the earliest available survey
Outfalls	Functioning under the joint and outfall-closed cases of Chapter 5

Commentary. The building and road levels repeat Chapter 6, so that the basin plan and the site designs aim at the same outcome. The 0.2% AEP for critical facilities, the 6-hour ponding drain time and the no-net-loss rule for tank storage have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The drain time reflects what residents notice most after a storm. The no-net-loss rule reflects a loss of storage that has been counted but not measured. In law the ponds of Uttar Pradesh are well protected: the beds of rivers, nalas, lakes, ponds and tanks vest in the State, a village tank of 0.5 acre or less is reserved for public use, "tank" includes talab, pond and pokhar, and no bhumidhari rights accrue in land covered by a pond, tank or lake (UP Revenue Code 2006, ss.54, 61 and 77(1)(i)); the Supreme Court has held that no part of a pond whose area "varies in rainy season" may be allotted, and that the State must restore it (*Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, 2001), which this Manual reads as setting the protected extent at the monsoon water line; and the Allahabad High Court takes the revenue record of 1 July 1952 as the baseline for restoring ponds (as reported). Ramgarh Tal at Gorakhpur is a notified wetland of 742.245 ha with a 50 m zone of influence (Ramgarh Taal notification 2020), and the State has reported 16,630 Amrit Sarovars completed by March 2025 (as reported). No inventory of the tals and ponds inside any Nagar Nigam, and no survey of the storage of any of them, was found.

11.7 Modelling and scenarios

11.7.1 **Model.** Each BSMP shall use a coupled 1D–2D hydraulic model of:

- the minor system;
- the major (overland) system;
- rivers, canals and tanks; and
- the outfalls.

Methods shall follow Chapter 3. Tidal and river boundaries shall follow Chapter 5.

11.7.2 **Design storms.** The model shall be run for the design storms of Chapter 2, including the 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms, for at least the 50%, 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs. Areal reduction shall be applied under Clause 2.7.3.

11.7.3 **Continuous simulation.** Basins with tank cascades shall also be run by continuous simulation (Clause 3.13), using the full IMD gridded daily record where available and at least 30 years, disaggregated by the temporal patterns of Annex 2D. This shows how full the tanks are when the design storms arrive, and how often heavy rain coincides with a closed outfall. The two-step approach of Clause 3.13.5 may be used: a simplified storage model is run for the whole record, and the coupled 1D–2D model of Clause 11.7.1 is run only for the design storms, starting from the tank levels the continuous run gives. A continuous run of the full 1D–2D model is not required.

11.7.4 **Scenarios.** Each BSMP shall model at least:

- (a) **Existing:** existing land use, network, tanks and outfalls;
- (b) **Future, uncontrolled:** future land use under the statutory master plan, with no site controls;
- (c) **Future, controlled:** future land use with the site controls of Chapter 4;
- (d) **Future, with plan:** scenario (c) plus the works of the CIP; and
- (e) **Climate:** scenarios (a) and (d), with the climate factors of Clause 2.8; the rise of 2–25% in the 24-hour intensity of severe storms by the 2050s reported for Gorakhpur (ISET-International 2014, as reported) spans those factors, which are used unchanged.

11.7.5 **Calibration.** The model shall be calibrated and validated under Clause 3.15, using at least two of the September 1971 (the Gomti at Lucknow), September 1978 (the Ganga and the Yamuna at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi), August 1998 (the Rapti at Gorakhpur), September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Lucknow), July 2023 (the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida) and September 2023 (Lucknow and Kanpur) events where data exist.

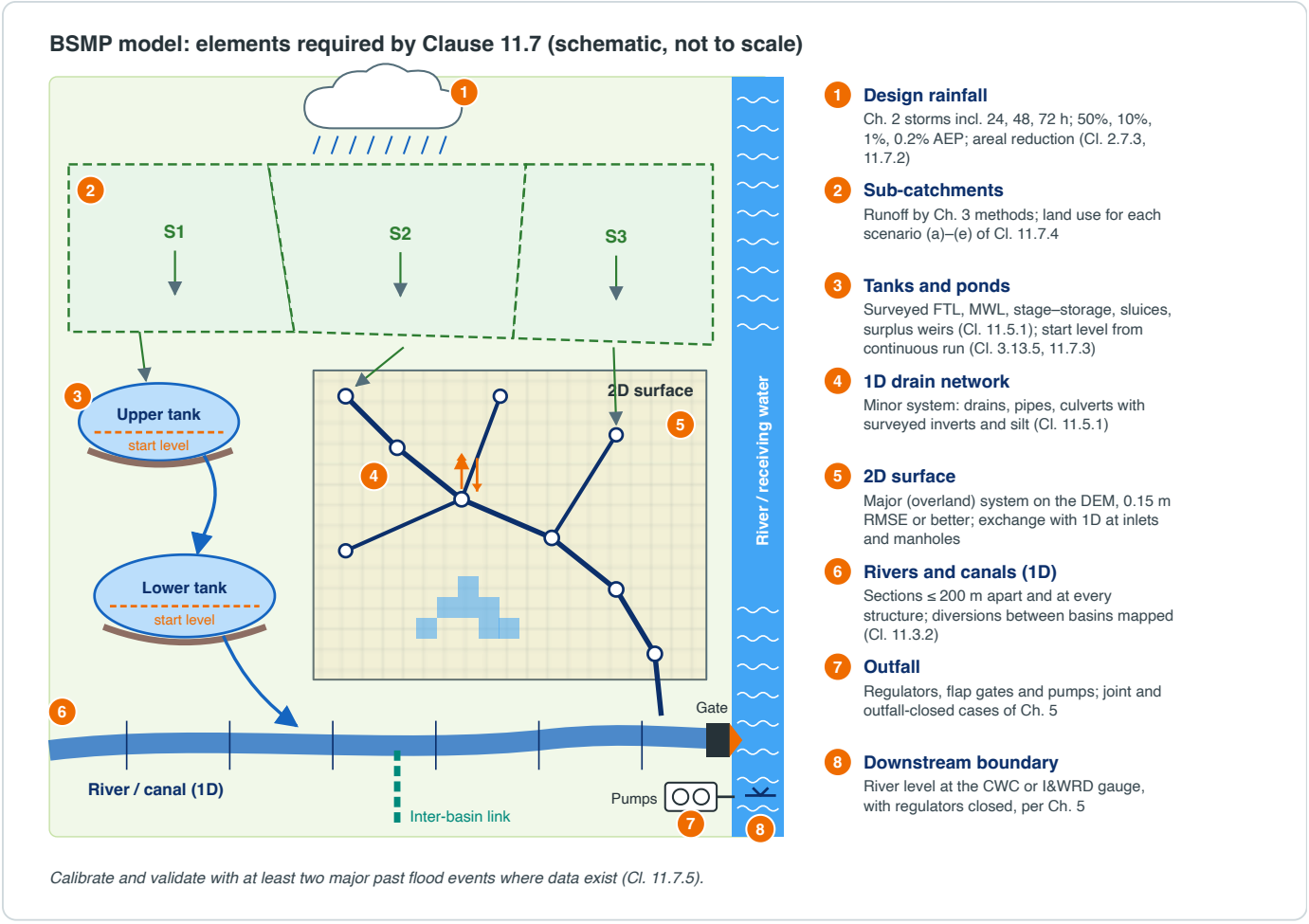


Figure 11.2 — Elements of the BSMP model required by Clause 11.7: sub-catchments, the 1D drain and channel network, the 2D surface, tanks and tals with starting levels from continuous simulation, and the tidal or river boundary at the outfall (schematic, not to scale). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from common coupled 1D–2D urban flood modelling practice.

> **Commentary.** Scenario (b) against scenario (c) shows what the site rules achieve on their own. Scenario (d) shows what the public works add. This comparison is also the evidence base for notifying flood-sensitive catchments (Clause 4.5.4) and for setting a stricter basin release rate (Clause 11.8.3).

11.8 Options, outputs and the Capital Improvement Programme

11.8.1 **Options hierarchy.** Options shall be considered in the following order, the basin-scale form of the hierarchy in Clause 1.2:

1. **Protect and restore storage:** tals, tanks, marshes and floodplains, including desilting to the original bed and recovering encroached area (Chapter 7);
2. **Regional retention and detention**, sited by modelling so that releases do not coincide with the main-stem peak (Clause 4.13);
3. **Conveyance** upgrades to drains, canals and culverts;
4. **Outfall works:** regulators and flap gates on the outfalls to the rivers, pumping stations and the storage behind them, including those behind the river embankments at Lucknow and Gorakhpur, interception structures that keep the storm capacity of the drain, and the river embankments;
5. **Property-level protection** where works cannot reach the level of service; and

6. **Non-structural measures:** flood warning (for example IMD district rainfall warnings and nowcasts issued by the Meteorological Centre Lucknow, CWC flood forecasts and river stages at its sites on the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Rapti and other rivers against their warning and danger levels, and the flood control rooms that I&WRD runs from 15 June to 15 October), flood-hazard zoning, emergency planning and public information.

11.8.2 **Option assessment.** Each option shall be assessed for:

- reduction in flood risk (buildings and people flooded; expected annual damage);
- capital and 30-year maintenance cost;
- land required;
- effect on groundwater recharge where the water table is deep, and waterlogging where it is shallow or the soils are usar (Chapter 8);
- effect on downstream basins and the receiving river; and
- who benefits.

11.8.3 **Basin release rates.** Where scenario (c) does not meet the level of service, the BSMP may set a basin-specific **permissible site discharge** ($m^3/s/ha$) stricter than Chapter 4, by AEP and sub-catchment. The rate takes effect under the notification procedure of Clause 4.5.4.

11.8.4 **Outputs.** Each BSMP shall produce:

- (a) flood hazard maps (extent, depth, velocity, hazard class) for the 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs, existing and future-with-plan. The **1% AEP future-with-plan map** becomes the reference map for floor levels (Chapter 6) and setbacks (Chapter 7);
- (b) recommended flood-sensitive catchments and any basin release rates (Clauses 4.5.4 and 11.8.3);
- (c) regional facility sites, with storage volumes, land needs and the sites they serve;
- (d) the fee-in-lieu unit rate for the basin (Clause 4.13.3);
- (e) the **Capital Improvement Programme**: works ranked by risk reduction per rupee, with cost, phasing and agency;
- (f) a pre-monsoon **maintenance programme**: desilting, gate and pump testing, and tank operating rules (Chapter 10); and
- (g) monitoring needs: new rain gauges, level sensors and flood-mark survey points.

> Commentary. Restoring storage comes first because the outfalls of Uttar Pradesh's larger cities cannot always take more water. When the Gomti, the Ganga, the Rapti or the Hindon is high, the outfalls below its flood level are closed and the drains behind the embankments reach the river only by pumping, so faster conveyance only fills the drains behind them sooner. The State's own guideline already points the same way: master plans are to integrate the existing detention ponds and lakes, rejuvenate storage ponds in the city and create new ones outside it where possible (UDD 2024), and the Byelaws 2025 require recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of every layout of more than 4 ha. The storms are large for drains designed for 1–2 years: IMD recorded 20 cm in 24 hours at Lucknow and at Gorakhpur in September 2022 (IMD 2022), and the only station IDF for the State puts the 50-year 1-hour fall at Lucknow at 106 mm (Kathuria, Kaur and Mehra 1987). Conveyance upgrades on their own move water faster to an outfall that the river may close, or that is limited by the capacity of its regulator, interception structure or pumping station. Groundwater in Uttar Pradesh sets opposite limits in different parts of the State. Lucknow city is over-exploited, with the pre-monsoon depth to water at 7.65–45.6 m below ground in 2023, 1.4–13.1 m deeper than in 2014 (CGWA, in National Green Tribunal O.A. 594/2024); in the terai the wells flow under artesian pressure, and about 260,000 ha of the Sharda Sahayak command are reported waterlogged (as reported). The law reflects both: the UP Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019 makes the rainwater harvesting conditions of the building bye-laws binding on the agencies that sanction plans (s.31(2)), bars the direct recharge of runoff from roads, open land and farms through recharge wells, bores and shafts

(s.28), and makes the prevention of waterlogging a duty (s.33); and the Byelaws 2025 exempt waterlogged areas from recharge (cl. 13.1.2). This is why recharge and waterlogging are both assessment criteria. This Manual ranks projects by risk reduction per rupee so that limited budgets go first where most people are protected.

11.9 Integration with land-use planning

11.9.1 An approved BSMP shall be incorporated into the statutory land-use plan: the Master Plans and Zonal Development Plans of the development authorities made under the UP Urban Planning and Development Act 1973, the plans of Noida, Greater Noida and YEIDA under the UP Industrial Area Development Act 1976, and the layout plans approved under them. In particular:

- (a) regional facility sites, restored tank flood storage, and major flow paths shall be **reserved** in the plan;
- (b) the 1% AEP hazard map shall be shown, and Chapter 7 setbacks applied to it;
- (c) land in hazard classes H5–H6 in the 1% AEP event shall not be zoned for new habitable development; and
- (d) the open space of layouts within a basin should be located, where possible, to form part of the major flow paths or regional storage shown in the BSMP.

11.9.2 Where a land-use plan is revised before a BSMP is approved, the planning authority shall use the best available flood mapping and record the BSMP as pending.

Commentary. Uttar Pradesh draws its floodplain lines river by river, on the 1-in-100-year flood. I&WRD notified the Ganga floodplain zone from Unnao to Ballia, in 13 districts, by coordinates on 29 January 2025 (I&WRD 2025); a Yamuna floodplain order covering 17 districts followed in January 2025 (as reported); and the Hindon was still not demarcated in May 2026, its 100-year flood level being 205.39 m at km 49 and 205.20 m at km 110 (I&WRD 2026). A 2026 amendment of the Ganga Order is reported to divide the floodplain into zones on the 5-, 25- and 100-year floods (as reported). Older lines still apply: within 200 m of the bank of the Ganga only repair and renovation is allowed (Byelaws 2025, cl. 2.11); the Allahabad High Court barred construction within 500 m of the mid-stream of the Ganga at Prayagraj in 2011, and the Prayagraj Development Authority applies "HFL + 500 m" to the Yamuna (PDA 2025); and on the Gomti a line of 100 m set by the High Court in 2010 and one of 50 m in an Irrigation order of 2020 are both reported, and neither text was read. Layout maps must show water bodies and flood-affected areas, but no general setback in metres from a nala or a tal exists, and basements need only keep surface water out (Byelaws 2025, cl. 2.3.2 and 3.3.3.2(iv)). These are river-flood lines, not drainage-flood lines. A BSMP gives the land-use plans the 1% AEP drainage-flood map, and the buffer widths of Chapter 7, that they need. Using open space land as storage or flow path has no direct precedent; this Manual adopts it because the Byelaws 2025 already require layouts of more than 4 ha to build recharge reservoirs on at least 1% of the scheme area, no more than 2 m deep and fed only by surface runoff, limit concrete construction in parks to 5% with permeable or semi-permeable blocks for the rest, require at least 20% of the open spaces of larger building projects to be pervious, and allow check dams, bio-swales and other sustainable urban drainage systems to maintain the drainage pattern (cl. 13.1.2 and 13.3); storage placed in a layout's open space builds on these duties, and because that land still serves as open space, the storage must stay usable as one. Placing it on the flow path costs the developer nothing extra and gives the basin storage it would otherwise have to buy.

11.10 Consultation and publication

11.10.1 A draft BSMP shall be published for public comment for at least **60 days**, with public meetings in each affected local body.

11.10.2 After approval, the following shall be published as open data:

- the model files;
- the flood hazard maps;
- the data of Clause 11.5.1, except security-sensitive asset details; and
- the CIP.

They shall also be shown on a public map viewer.

> Commentary. Publishing the maps lets buyers, lenders, insurers and residents see flood hazard before they build or buy. Publishing the model lets designers use the same boundary conditions as the Authority, so site designs and the basin plan stay consistent. This matches the publication approach of Chapter 10.

11.11 Approval, review and reporting

11.11.1 **Approval.** BSMPs shall be approved by the State Stormwater Technical Committee (Chapter 1), after review of the model and of the public comments.

11.11.2 **Review.** Each BSMP shall be reviewed:

- every **10 years**;
- within **2 years** of an event exceeding the 1% AEP design depth in the basin (Clause 2.14); and
- when the statutory land-use plan is revised.

11.11.3 **Annual report.** The Lead Authority shall publish an annual implementation report before each SW monsoon (by 31 May). The report shall show:

- CIP progress;
- the fee-in-lieu ledger (Clause 4.13.4);
- maintenance completed; and
- any flooding against the levels of service.

11.12 Interim arrangements

11.12.1 Until a BSMP is approved for a basin:

- (a) all site criteria of Chapters 4 to 8 apply in full;
- (b) regional detention and fee-in-lieu under Clause 4.13 are not available, except the holding of fees under Clause 4.5.6.3;
- (c) floor levels and setbacks use the best available mapping, and the methods of Chapters 6 and 7 where no mapping exists; and
- (d) public drain projects shall include a basin-level check that their outfall and downstream reaches can take the design flow under the Chapter 5 tailwater cases.

References (chapter)

- Urban Development Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2024). *Urban Flood/Jalplavan Niyantran evam Storm Water Drainage Yojana: Dishanirdesh* (guidelines for the urban flood and waterlogging control and storm water drainage scheme), Hindi, file dated 24 December 2024. https://urbandevelopment.up.nic.in/assets-new/pdf/Storm%20water/FINAL%20SWD%20GUIDELINE%2024-12-2024%20Designed%20Hindi_R2.pdf
- Defra (2010). *Surface Water Management Plan Technical Guidance*. Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs, London.
- Mile High Flood District (Denver). Master planning programme and Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual.
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement; KC Metro APWA Section 5600, Version 2025.01.
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2012). *Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA)*, 2nd ed.
- Housing and Urban Planning Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). G.O. No. 1323/2025/8-3099/208/2025 of July 2025, approving the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 and Model Zoning Regulations 2025, with the English text (Version PRF3, 3 July 2025) (clauses 2.3.2, 2.11, 3.3.3.2 and 13.1.2). https://invest.up.gov.in/wp-content/uploads/2026/08/Model_Building_Byla_250826.pdf
- Uttar Pradesh Ground Water (Management and Regulation) Act 2019 (U.P. Act No. 13 of 2019), sections 28, 31 and 33 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND214528.pdf
- Uttar Pradesh Revenue Code 2006, sections 54, 61 and 77 (LBSNAA copy, updated to 5 March 2021). https://www.lbsnaa.gov.in/storage/uploads/pdf_data/1742473203_Uttar%20Pradesh%20Revenue%20Code%202006%20updated%20till%2005.03.2021.pdf
- Supreme Court of India (2001). *Hinch Lal Tiwari v. Kamala Devi*, judgment of 25 July 2001, AIR 2001 SC 3215. https://leap.unep.org/sites/default/files/court-case/COU-156224.pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2025). Compliance report of 2 April 2025 in National Green Tribunal O.A. 341/2022, *Deepak Awasthi v. State of U.P.*, annexing G.O. No. 24/2025/107/2025-27-Sin-4-16(Writ)(NGT)/2023 of 29 January 2025 (Ganga floodplain zone, Unnao to Ballia). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/REPORT%20BY%20IRRIGATION%20DEPARTMENT,%20UP%20IN%20OA%20NO.%20341%20of%202022%20%20Deepak%20Awasthi%20Vs.%20State%20of%20U.P..pdf
- Irrigation and Water Resources Department, Government of Uttar Pradesh (2026). Progress report of 23 May 2026 in National Green Tribunal O.A. 569/2023, *Alok Kumar v. Union of India* (Hindon floodplain). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Progress%20Report%20By%20Irrigation%20Department,%20State%20of%20Uttar%20Pradesh%20DATED%2023-05-2026%20in%20OA%20569%20of%202023%20Alok%20Kumar%20Vs%20UOI%20and%20Ors.pdf
- Prayagraj Development Authority (2025). Reply of 17 December 2025 in National Green Tribunal I.A. 288/2024 in O.A. 526/2023, annexing the Allahabad High Court order in PIL No. 4003 of 2006, *In re Ganga Pollution*. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20by%20Prayagraj%20Development%20Authority%20in%20IA%20No.%20288%20of%202024%20IN%20OA%20No.%20526%20OF%202023%20(Ganga%20Sewa%20Abhiyan%20and%20Ors.%20Vs.%20UOI%20and%20Ors.).pdf
- Government of Uttar Pradesh (2020). Notification No. 1397/LXXXI-4-2020-06-2018 of 7 December 2020, Ramgarh Taal Wetland, district Gorakhpur (as annexed to CPCB's response in National Green Tribunal O.A. 1057/2024, *Sudhir Kumar Jha v. Gorakhpur Development Authority*). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/RESPONSE%20BY%20R-3%20CPCB%20IN%20OA%20NO.%201057%20of%202024%20Sudhir%20Kumar%20Jha%20Vs%20Gorakhpur%20Development%20Authority%20Through%20ChiefSecretary.pdf
- Central Ground Water Authority / Central Ground Water Board, Northern Region. Documents filed in National Green Tribunal O.A. 594/2024 (Lucknow groundwater levels, 2014–2023). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Documents%20on%20behalf%20of%20CGW

A%20in%20OA%20ON%20594%20of%202024%20(NEWS%20ITEM%20TITLED%20LUCKNOW%20ME%20PAANEE%20CHALA%20RASATAL%2010%20SAAL%20ME%20160%20FOOT%20NEECHE%20CHALA%20GAYA%20JALSTAR%20MEL%20RAHE%20KHATARNAK%20SANKET_0.pdf

- Lucknow Municipal Corporation (2018). AMRUT detailed project report, Lucknow, 22 May 2018, §2.1.7 (storm drainage and the Qila Mohammadi drain). https://lmc.up.nic.in/pdf/amrut/DPRLucknow22052018.pdf
- Kathuria, S.N., Kaur, S. and Mehra, A.K. (1987). Rainfall intensity for local drainage design in Lucknow and its neighbouring area. *Mausam* 38(1), 85–88. https://mausamjournal.imd.gov.in/index.php/MAUSAM/article/download/2654/2468
- India Meteorological Department (2022). Press releases of 15 and 16 September 2022 (heavy rainfall over Uttar Pradesh). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220915_pr_1821.pdf ; https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20220916_pr_1823.pdf
- ISET-International and CDKN (2014). *Gorakhpur: Extreme Rainfall, Climate Change, and Flooding*, technical report (landing-page summary; secondary source). https://cdkn.org/resource/gorakhpur-extreme-rainfall-technical-report
- Drishti IAS. Goddhoia drain and Ramgarh Tal (project of 7 November 2022; secondary source). https://www.drishtiias.com/state-pcs-current-affairs/goddhoia-drain-and-ramgarh-tal
- The Statesman. UP Jal Nigam adopts geotube technology to treat drains ahead of Maha Kumbh 2025 (Prayagraj drains; secondary source). https://www.thestatesman.com/india/up-jal-nigam-adopts-geotube-technology-to-treat-drains-ahead-of-maha-kumbh-2025-1503376493.html
- Free Press Journal. UP plans 45-drain sewage control network to clean Gomti river in Lucknow under Namami Gange (secondary source). https://www.freepressjournal.in/uttar-pradesh/up-plans-45-drain-sewage-control-network-to-clean-gomti-river-in-lucknow-under-namami-gange
- Down To Earth (2019). Dirty Ganga: funds down the drain in UP (Kanpur drains; secondary source). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/dirty-ganga-funds-down-the-drain-in-up-63980
- Down To Earth (17 July 2023). 2020 order on floodplain zoning declaring Gomti non-perennial river draws flak (Gomti 100 m and 50 m lines; secondary source). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/urbanisation/dte-exclusive-2020-order-on-floodplain-zoning-declaring-gomti-non-perennial-river-draws-flak-90655
- ThePrint (4 February 2025). Over 5,000 buildings in Agra face risk of demolition after UP govt demarcates Yamuna floodplain (secondary source). https://theprint.in/india/over-5000-buildings-in-agra-face-risk-of-demolition-after-up-govt-demarcates-yamuna-floodplain/2478998
- Free Press Journal (2026). Centre redefines Ganga floodplain, drops construction-free zone wording (secondary source). https://www.freepressjournal.in/india/centre-redefines-ganga-floodplain-drops-construction-free-zone-wording
- Drishti IAS / Free Press Journal (2025). UP ranks first in Amrit Sarovar construction (secondary sources). https://www.drishtiias.com/state-pcs-current-affairs/up-ranks-1st-in-amrit-sarovar-construction/print_manually

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
11A	BSMP terms of reference template
11B	Basin lists and boundaries for Tier A bodies
11C	Depth–damage curves for Uttar Pradesh building types
11D	BSMP data and model publication standard
Form 11-1	Annual implementation report

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 1

Policy, Applicability and Adoption

These annexes support Chapter 1. They hold the lists and maps that define where the Manual applies, the model text of the Policy Supplement and of the legal instruments that would give the Manual effect, and the two forms an Applicant files under Chapter 1. The Manual is a draft; it is not adopted by any government or agency: model legal text is offered for consideration by a competent authority and is not in force, and the forms are draft forms. An annex marked "To be prepared" states the data it needs and the rule to use until it is published (Clause 1.11.5).

Annex 1A — List of Tier A authorities, with the boundaries of the Nagar Nigams, of the development areas of the development authorities and of the industrial development areas

Supports Clauses 1.6.1 to 1.6.5 of Chapter 1.

1A.1 Clause 1.6.1 defines Tier A by class of authority. Table 1A.1 sets out the classes, and the authorities named in the clause, as Chapter 1 defines them. Every authority not in Table 1A.1 is Tier B (Clause 1.6.2).

Table 1A.1 — Tier A authorities as defined in Clause 1.6.1

Item	Tier A authority	Clause
(a)	Lucknow Municipal Corporation (LMC)	1.6.1(a)
(b)	Every Approving Authority within the development area of LDA, including LDA where it is the Approving Authority, and the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats of the area	1.6.1(b)
(b)	Every Approving Authority within the development area of any other development authority constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, including the development authority where it is the Approving Authority, and the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats of those areas	1.6.1(b)
(c)	Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA, constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976, and UPSIDA, in their industrial development areas	1.6.1(c)
(c)	Every other Nagar Nigam constituted under the Uttar Pradesh Municipal Corporations Act, 1959	1.6.1(c)
—	A Tier B authority that opts into Tier A by council resolution, or that the Government notifies as Tier A	1.6.4

1A.2 Whatever the tier, the design-aid route and the alternatives of Clause 1.7 are not available in a flood-sensitive catchment (Clause 1.6.5; Annex 1B).

To be prepared. This annex will contain the full list, by name, of every Approving Authority within the development areas of LDA and the other development authorities, of the industrial development authorities and of every Nagar Nigam, with the date from which each is Tier A, and the boundaries of those areas as a map and as a GIS layer. It needs the notified development areas of the development authorities constituted under the 1973 Act and the edition of the Byelaws 2025 that each has issued (the Housing and Urban Planning Department and the authorities); the industrial development areas of Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA and UPSIDA; the current list and boundaries of the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Palika Parishads and Nagar Panchayats (UDD and the Directorate of Local Bodies); the special area development authorities and regulated areas, which are Tier B unless they opt in (Clause 1.6.4); and the district and tehsil boundaries (Revenue Department, Survey of India). Until it is published, the tier is decided by the classes in Clause 1.6.1 and recorded on Form 1-1, and the Authority confirms it at the pre-application stage (Clause 1.5.9).

Table 1A.2 — Register of Tier A authorities (layout)

No.	Authority	Class (Nagar Nigam / Nagar Palika Parishad / Nagar Panchayat / development authority / industrial development authority / other)	District	Basis (Clause 1.6.1(a), (b), (c) or 1.6.4)	Tier A from (date)	Notification or resolution reference
1						
2						
3						

1A.3 The Nagar Nigam, development-area and industrial-development-area boundary map shall be published as open data in a machine-readable format (Clause 10.17.4), with the date of the notification it shows.

Annex 1B — Maps of flood-sensitive catchments

Supports Clauses 1.4, 1.6.5 and 1.10.3(d) of Chapter 1, and Clauses 4.5.3 and 4.5.4 of Chapter 4.

1B.1 The flood-sensitive catchments are listed in Clause 4.5.3.2. Table 1B.1 repeats that list. The maps of this annex and the boundaries of Annex 4A are the same data set and shall be issued together.

Table 1B.1 — Flood-sensitive catchments listed in Clause 4.5.3.2

Item	Catchment	Extent as described in Chapter 4
(a)	Lucknow behind the Gomti embankments	The catchments of the drains of Lucknow that outfall to the Gomti through pumping stations, gates or regulators in its embankments, 33 of the 34 drains reported by LMC's Jal Kal Vibhag, including the Kukrail and its catchment from the Kukrail forest to the Gomti, which cannot discharge to the river by gravity when it is high; the Gomti at Hanuman Setu has a danger level of 109.5 m and reached 110.85 m in September 1971 (as reported)
(b)	Gorakhpur behind the Rapti and Rohin embankments	The city of Gorakhpur, including the catchments of the six nalas that drain to Ramgarh Tal, named in the wetland notification of 2020, and of the Goddhoia nala, and low-lying wards such as Mehewa, which floods "after relatively small amounts of rain" (as reported), whose outfalls are held up when the Rapti is high; the Rapti at Birdghat reached 77.54 m in August 1998 against a danger level of 74.98 m (as reported)
(c)	Prayagraj at the confluence	The catchments of the drains of Prayagraj that outfall to the Ganga and the Yamuna, including the low-lying wards of George Town, Tagore Town and Rambagh, waterlogged in August 2026 (as reported), and the land near the Sangam within the notified Ganga floodplain zone; the rivers reached about 88 m in 1978 (Phaphamau 87.98 m, Naini 87.99 m) against danger levels of about 84.73 m (as reported)

Item	Catchment	Extent as described in Chapter 4
(d)	The Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida	The low-lying land of Ghaziabad and Gautam Buddh Nagar beside the Hindon, whose floodplain is not yet demarcated, including Karhera, and the catchments of the drains that outfall to the Hindon there; the river reached 197.28 m at Noida on 26 July 2023, 1.81 m above its previous highest level (as reported)
(e)	Notified catchments	Any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4

To be prepared. This annex will contain a map of each catchment in Table 1B.1 at a scale fit for deciding whether a plot lies inside it, and the same boundaries as a GIS layer. It needs catchment boundaries drawn from a digital elevation model and the drain network (the Nagar Nigams, the development authorities, Survey of India); the city drains with their outfalls, gates, interception works and pumping stations and their levels on a stated datum (LMC and its Jal Kal Vibhag, LDA, the Nagar Nigams of Gorakhpur, Prayagraj, Varanasi and Ghaziabad, Noida and GNIDA, UP Jal Nigam); the embankments, regulators and the notified 1-in-100-year floodplain coordinates of the Ganga and the Yamuna, and the 100-year levels of the Hindon (I&WRD); the zone of influence and inflow nalas of Ramgarh Tal (the wetland notification of 2020; the Gorakhpur Development Authority); the CWC river levels at Hanuman Setu, Birdghat, Phaphamau, Naini and Varanasi and on the Hindon at Noida; and the land flooded in 1971, 1978, 1998, 2013, 2022, 2023, 2025 and 2026 (the District Magistrates, UPSDMA, I&WRD). The catchments of the Varuna and the Assi within Varanasi, which outfall to the Ganga under backwater when it is high (danger level 71.262 m, 73.901 m in September 1978, as reported), and of the city nalas of Kanpur that outfall to the Ganga, such as the Sisamau nala, are candidates for notification under Clause 4.5.4 once their boundaries and flood records are documented. The notified floodplains of the rivers are governed by Chapter 7 and the floodplain notifications rather than by this list. Until it is published, the Authority decides at the pre-application stage whether a site lies in a listed catchment, from the best boundary available, and the decision and its basis are recorded on Form 1-1 and in the drainage report (Clauses 1.5.9 and 1.11.5).

Table 1B.2 — Attributes of the flood-sensitive catchment layer (layout)

Field	Content	Unit or format
catchment_id	Unique identifier	text
name	Catchment name	text
basis	Clause 4.5.3.2 item (a) to (d), or the notification under Clause 4.5.4	text
notification_ref	Gazette notification number, where notified	text
notified_on	Date of notification	date
applies_from	Date from which the rule applies to applications (Clause 4.5.4.2, step 5)	date
boundary_source	Source and date of the boundary	text
area_km2	Catchment area	km²

Annex 1C — Policy Supplement: text of alternatives S-1 to S-5 and model council resolution

Supports Clauses 1.6.3, 1.6.5 and 1.7.1 to 1.7.3 of Chapter 1.

Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force. The text below shows how the Policy Supplement of Clause 1.7 could be written. It has no effect unless and until it is issued by the Government and adopted by an Approving Authority under Clause 1.7.3.

Part 1 — General provisions

P1.1 **Scope.** This Supplement sets out alternatives S-1 to S-5 to the requirements of the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual (the Manual) named in each alternative. An alternative applies within the area of an Approving Authority (the Authority) only from the date on which the Authority adopts it under P1.3.

P1.2 **No lower criterion.** No alternative lowers any criterion of the Manual. S-1 and S-2 are simplified methods for meeting the same criterion (Clause 1.7.3(a)).

P1.3 **Adoption.**

- (a) A Tier B authority adopts an alternative by council resolution in the form of Part 3, and sends a copy to the State Stormwater Technical Committee (the Committee) within 30 days of the resolution.
- (b) A Tier A authority adopts an alternative only after the Committee has concurred in writing.
- (c) The Authority publishes the alternatives it has adopted on its website and in the register of Clause 10.17.

P1.4 **Retention.** No alternative replaces the retention requirement (Annex 2E depth), except where fee-in-lieu under S-5 funds equivalent retention in the same basin (Clause 1.7.3(d)).

P1.5 **Tables.** The tables used by S-1, S-2 and S-3 are those issued by the Committee, and are reviewed with Chapter 2 of the Manual (Clauses 1.7.3(e) and 2.14). An alternative that depends on a table cannot be used until that table is issued.

P1.6 **Record.** An Applicant who uses an alternative states it on Form 1-1 and in the drainage report, with the resolution or concurrence under which it was adopted.

Part 2 — The alternatives

S-1 — Design-aid route for storage

S-1.1 *Replaces:* storage sized by a hydrograph method under Chapter 3.

S-1.2 *Alternative:* retention and detention volumes may be taken from the unit-storage tables issued for Annex 4B (m³ per ha, by rainfall zone, hydrologic soil group and impervious fraction) and the compliance calculator, by the method of Clause 4.14.2.

S-1.3 *Eligibility:* sites of 2 ha or less outside flood-sensitive catchments, and of 0.5 ha or less within them (Table 1.2; Clause 4.14.1).

S-1.4 *Conditions:* the post-development imperviousness used shall be that shown on the approved plans; the outlet, spillway, RWH accounting and safety provisions of Clause 4.14.2 apply; the compliance calculator may be the sole calculation (Table 1.1).

S-2 — Permissible site discharge (PSD)

S-2.1 *Replaces:* the release rate $Q_{post}(T) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T)$ computed for the site (Clause 2.11.2).

S-2.2 *Alternative:* the release rate for each AEP may be taken as the tabulated unit-area release rate for the site's zone and AEP, multiplied by the site area. The tabulated rates are derived from the $0.9 \times Q_{pre}$ rule (Table 1.2).

S-2.3 *Eligibility:* any site outside a flood-sensitive catchment.

S-2.4 *Conditions:* storage is then sized to hold every duration of Clause 2.5.2 at the PSD; drawdown, minimum orifice and spillway rules of Chapter 4 apply unchanged.

S-3 — Fixed-width waterbody setback

S-3.1 *Replaces:* the waterbody setback extended to the mapped 1% AEP flood extent plus margin (Chapter 7).

S-3.2 *Alternative:* where no 1% AEP extent is mapped, the setback shall be the fixed width for the class of waterbody in the table of Clause 7.4.6 (and Annex 7B), measured as in Clause 7.4.3.

S-3.3 *Eligibility:* waterbodies with no mapped 1% AEP extent.

S-3.4 *Conditions:* no setback under this alternative is less than the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7 (Clause 1.10.3(c)); the no-fill zone of Chapter 7 applies; where a 1% AEP extent is later mapped and adopted, the mapped setback applies to new applications.

S-4 — Downstream screening checklist

S-4.1 *Replaces:* downstream analysis by hydraulic model under Chapter 5.

S-4.2 *Alternative:* the Applicant completes a screening checklist of downstream capacity and known flooding, covering at least the conditions of Clause 5.3.4: that the receiving public drain has documented capacity for its minor-system design flow (Chapter 6), and that no flood-prone location is recorded within 500 m downstream. A hydraulic model under Chapter 5 is required only where the screen fails.

S-4.3 *Eligibility:* sites of less than 1 ha, outside flood-sensitive catchments, not discharging to a tidal outfall.

S-4.4 *Conditions:* the checklist is signed by the registered professional who signs the drainage report (Clause 10.6); flood-prone locations are those recorded by the local body, the District Magistrate and the District Disaster Management Authority, UPSDMA, or the flood control rooms of I&WRD (Clause 5.3.3(d)).

S-5 — Fee-in-lieu toward regional storage

S-5.1 *Replaces:* on-site detention under Chapter 4.

S-5.2 *Alternative:* all or part of the detention requirement may be met by a fee-in-lieu toward a regional detention facility or restored tal or tank storage identified in the basin plan (Clause 4.13.1).

S-5.3 *Eligibility:* sites in a basin for which a basin plan has been notified (Table 1.2).

S-5.4 *Conditions:*

- (a) the conditions of Clause 4.13.2 apply, including interim on-site detention until the regional facility or restored tank is operational, and retention and WQv treatment on site;
- (b) the fee is computed under Clause 4.13.3 and held in the ring-fenced basin account;
- (c) the volume credited and the fee are entered in the public ledger of Clause 4.13.4; and
- (d) in a flood-sensitive catchment, fee-in-lieu is available only as allowed by Clause 1.10.3(d).

Part 3 — Model council resolution

> **Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.**

Resolution No. _____ of _____ (name of Nagar Nigam / Nagar Palika Parishad / Nagar Panchayat), dated _____

Subject: Adoption of alternatives under the Policy Supplement to the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual.

The Council, having considered the report of the Municipal Commissioner (Nagar Ayukt) / Executive Officer dated _____, and noting that:

- (i) the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual and its Policy Supplement have been given effect by _____ (instrument and date);
- (ii) this local body is a Tier B / Tier A authority under Clause 1.6 of the Manual; and
- (iii) for a Tier A authority, the State Stormwater Technical Committee concurred on _____ (reference _____),

resolves:

1. to adopt the following alternatives of the Policy Supplement within its area, under the conditions of Clause 1.7.3 of the Manual:

Table 1C.1 — Alternatives adopted by this resolution

Alternative	Adopted (Yes / No)	Area to which it applies (whole area, or wards / zones)	Applies from (date)
S-1 Design-aid route			
S-2 Permissible site discharge			
S-3 Fixed-width setback			
S-4 Downstream screening checklist			
S-5 Fee-in-lieu			

2. that no adopted alternative shall apply within a flood-sensitive catchment except as the Manual allows (Clause 1.6.5);
3. that a copy of this resolution be sent to the State Stormwater Technical Committee within 30 days;
4. that the adopted alternatives be published on the local body's website and entered in the register of Clause 10.17; and
5. that this resolution be reviewed when the tables of Clause 1.7.3(e) are revised.

Mayor / Chairperson: _____ Municipal Commissioner (Nagar Ayukt) / Executive Officer: _____ Date: _____

Annex 1D — Model Byelaws 2025 amendment and model ULB bye-law

Supports Clauses 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.11 and 1.12 of Chapter 1.

> **Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.** The text shows one way the instruments of Clause 1.3.1 could be drafted. Rule and section numbers are left blank.

> **Drafting note D1D.1.** The rule numbers of the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 at which the new rule and the conditions would be inserted, and the enabling sections of the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973, the Uttar Pradesh Industrial Area Development Act, 1976 and the municipal and panchayat Acts, are to be confirmed by the Government's legal advisers. None is stated here.

Part A — Model amendment to the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025

A.1 **Short title and commencement.**

- (1) These rules may be called the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development (Stormwater Management) Amendment Byelaws, _____.
- (2) They shall come into force on the date six months after their publication in the Uttar Pradesh Gazette (Clause 1.11.1).

A.2 **Insertion of a new rule.** After rule [_____] of the building bye-laws approved by the Government under section 57 of the Uttar Pradesh Urban Planning and Development Act, 1973 and issued by each development authority in its own name, the following rule shall be inserted:

Rule [_____]. Stormwater management.

(1) *Definitions.* In this rule, "the Manual" means the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual as notified by the Government, with its annexes and amendments; other words have the meanings given in Clause 1.4 of the Manual.

(2) *Application.* This rule applies to every development for which planning permission, building permit or layout approval is required under these rules.

(3) *Runoff control.* Where a development, over its common plan of development, involves land disturbance of 0.1 ha or more, or new or replaced impervious area of 500 m² or more, the development shall comply with Chapters 4 and 5 of the Manual (retention, detention, downstream and tailwater analysis).

(4) *Provisions for every development.* Every development, whatever its size, shall comply with Clause 1.5.4 of the Manual: no sewage connection to a storm drain; floor levels; waterbody setbacks and the no-fill zone; and no obstruction of a drainage path.

(5) *Exemptions.* A single dwelling on its own plot below the thresholds of sub-rule (3), and linear road resurfacing that adds no impervious area, are exempt from sub-rule (3) but not from sub-rule (4) or the rainwater harvesting provisions of these rules.

(6) *Conditions of approval.* The competent authority shall not grant:

- (a) planning permission or layout approval, unless a preliminary drainage report under the Manual has been accepted;
- (b) a building permit, or permission to commence, unless the final drainage design has been accepted; or
- (c) a completion certificate, unless the as-built certificate has been accepted and the maintenance declaration has been registered, or the public assets have been handed over,

for a development to which sub-rule (3) applies (Manual, Clause 10.3).

(7) *Certification.* Drainage reports and designs shall be signed by a registered professional, and, where Clause 10.6.1 of the Manual so requires, by an empanelled Stormwater Design Professional.

(8) *Rainwater harvesting.* Nothing in this rule alters the rainwater harvesting provisions of these rules.

(9) *Variances and waivers.* The competent authority may grant a variance or waiver only on the grounds and by the procedure of Clause 1.10 of the Manual, and shall publish each decision.

(10) *Transition.* Applications filed complete before the commencement of this rule, and Tier B authorities, are governed by Clause 1.11 of the Manual.

Part B — Model ULB bye-law

B.1 **Title and commencement.** These bye-laws may be called the _____ (name of local body) Stormwater Management Bye-laws, _____. They come into force on _____.

B.2 **Adoption of the Manual.** The Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, as notified by the Government, applies to:

- (a) every development approved by the local body; and
- (b) every drainage, road, culvert, waterbody and flood-mitigation work executed by the local body, including its own drains and roads (Clause 1.3.1(b)).

B.3 **Public works.** Every detailed project report and contract for a work under B.2(b) shall require compliance with the Manual, from the dates in Clause 1.11 (Clause 1.3.4).

B.4 **Tier and alternatives.** The local body is a Tier _____ authority under Clause 1.6 of the Manual. The alternatives of the Policy Supplement adopted by the local body are listed in the Schedule, with the resolution under which each was adopted.

B.5 **Submittals and review.** Submittals shall be made in the stages of Clause 10.3 of the Manual and reviewed within the periods of Clause 10.7.

B.6 **Maintenance, inspection and enforcement.** Maintenance declarations, inspections, handover of public assets and enforcement shall follow Clauses 10.10 to 10.15 of the Manual.

B.7 **Publication.** The local body shall publish the registers and reports of Clause 10.17 of the Manual.

B.8 **Review.** These bye-laws shall be reviewed whenever the Manual is amended under Clause 1.12.

Table 1D.1 — Schedule: alternatives adopted (layout)

Alternative	Resolution number and date	Committee concurrence (Tier A only)	Applies from	Area

Form 1-1 — Applicability Determination

Supports Clauses 1.5.1 to 1.5.9 and 1.6 of Chapter 1, and Clause 10.3 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodged at the pre-application meeting (Stage 0) or with the preliminary drainage report (Stage 1), as Clause 10.3.2 requires.

Table 1F.1 — Form 1-1: Applicability Determination

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
	A. Applicant and site	
A1	Applicant (owner, developer or department)	_____
A2	Site address and survey numbers	_____
A3	Site coordinates (latitude, longitude)	_____
A4	Approving Authority (Clause 1.4)	_____
A5	Tier of the Authority: A / B (Clause 1.6; Annex 1A)	_____
A6	Approval sought: planning permission / building permit / layout approval / public work (DPR)	_____
A7	Type of development: building / layout / sub-division / road / paving / land-use change / other (Clause 1.4)	_____
A8	Stage at which this form is lodged: Stage 0 / Stage 1 (Clause 10.3)	_____
	B. Coverage (Clause 1.5.1)	
B1	Development requiring approval under the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 — 1.5.1(a): Yes / No	_____
B2	Public work by a ULB, State department, board or State undertaking — 1.5.1(b): Yes / No	_____
B3	Work by a Central agency needing the Authority's approval or no-objection — 1.5.1(c): Yes / No	_____
	C. Areas over the common plan of development (Clauses 1.4, 1.5.5)	
C1	Phases, plots and sub-divisions included (one layout approval or one ownership)	_____
C2	Total site area (ha)	_____
C3	Land disturbance (ha)	_____
C4	Existing impervious area (m²)	_____
C5	New impervious area (m²)	_____
C6	Replaced impervious area, removed to subgrade and rebuilt (m²)	_____
C7	New plus replaced impervious area, C5 + C6 (m²)	_____
C8	Plot area for the RWH mandate (m²) (Clause 1.5.3)	_____
	D. Thresholds and exemptions	
D1	Land disturbance 0.1 ha or more — 1.5.2(a): Yes / No	_____
D2	New or replaced impervious area 500 m² or more — 1.5.2(b): Yes / No	_____
D3	Redevelopment (existing impervious cover on the site) — 1.5.6: Yes / No	_____
D4	Constrained redevelopment route of Clause 4.5.6 proposed: Yes / No	_____

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
D5	Linear public work: added impervious area per drainage catchment crossed given in Table 1F.2 — 1.5.7: Yes / No / not applicable	_____
D6	Exemption claimed — 1.5.8(a) single dwelling below the thresholds / 1.5.8(b) resurfacing with no added impervious area / none	_____
D7	RWH mandate applies (Byelaws 2025, cl. 13.1.2: plot of 300 m² and more, of any use, where there is no collective recharge network of the scheme, except in waterlogged areas; plots of 100–300 m² in new schemes through the scheme's collective network; Noida, GNIDA and YEIDA: their own building regulations [TBC]) — 1.5.3: Yes / No	_____
	E. Site conditions	
E1	Site in a flood-sensitive catchment (Annex 1B; Clause 4.5.3): No / Yes — name	_____
E2	Source of the catchment boundary used	_____
E3	1% AEP level mapped or determinable for the site (Clause 1.5.4(b)): Yes / No; source	_____
E4	Waterbody on or adjoining the site (Clause 1.5.4(c); Chapter 7): No / Yes — name	_____
E5	Natural drainage path or major-system flow path crossing the site (Clause 1.5.4(d)): No / Yes	_____
E6	Site drains to a tidal outfall (Clause 10.3.2(d)): Yes / No	_____
E7	Variance, waiver, regional facility or fee-in-lieu proposed (Clause 10.3.2(c)): No / Yes — Form 1-2 attached	_____
	F. Determination	
F1	Result: (i) Chapters 4 and 5 apply, with Clause 1.5.4 and the RWH mandate; (ii) Clause 1.5.4 and the RWH mandate only (below thresholds); (iii) exempt under 1.5.8, Clause 1.5.4 and the RWH mandate still apply	_____
F2	Stage 0 mandatory under Clause 10.3.2: Yes (state item (a) to (d)) / No	_____
F3	Storage method: hydrograph method (Chapter 3) / design-aid route S-1 (Clause 1.7, where adopted and eligible)	_____
F4	Other Policy Supplement alternatives relied on (S-2 to S-5), with the adopting resolution	_____
F5	Tier B phased start applies (Clause 1.11.3): Yes / No	_____
	G. Declaration	
G1	I declare that the information above is correct and covers the whole common plan of development. Applicant: name, signature, date	_____
G2	Prepared by (registered professional, Clause 1.4): name, registration number, signature, date	_____
	H. For the Authority (Clause 1.5.9)	
H1	Determination confirmed / corrected	_____
H2	Corrections and reasons	_____
H3	Officer: name, designation, signature, date	_____

Table 1F.2 — Form 1-1: added impervious area by drainage catchment, linear works (Clause 1.5.7)

Drainage catchment crossed	Chainage from – to	Added impervious area (m²)	500 m² or more (Yes / No)	Storage location: right of way / regional facility

Form 1-2 — Variance / Waiver Request

Supports Clause 1.10 of Chapter 1.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodged with the preliminary drainage report (Clause 1.10.4(a)), with one form for each requirement concerned.

Table 1F.3 — Form 1-2: Variance / Waiver Request

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
	A. Applicant and site	
A1	Applicant	_____
A2	Site address and coordinates	_____
A3	Form 1-1 reference and date	_____
A4	Tier of the Authority: A / B	_____
A5	Site area (ha)	_____
A6	Site in a flood-sensitive catchment: Yes / No	_____
	B. Request	
B1	Type: variance from a numeric requirement (1.10.1) / waiver of Chapter 4 detention (1.10.2)	_____
B2	Clause of the Manual concerned	_____
B3	Value required by the Manual	_____
B4	Value or arrangement proposed	_____
	C. Matters that cannot be varied or waived (Clause 1.10.3) — confirm that the request does not concern any of them	
C1	(a) a sewage connection to a storm drain	Not concerned: _____
C2	(b) the lowest habitable floor level of Chapter 6	Not concerned: _____
C3	(c) a waterbody setback below the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7, or fill or construction in the no-fill zone of Chapter 7	Not concerned: _____
C4	(d) retention in a flood-sensitive catchment, except by fee-in-lieu under Clause 1.7	Not concerned: _____
	D. Variance: grounds (Clause 1.10.1(a))	
D1	Site condition: high groundwater table / contaminated soil / rock / site too small for the required facility / other	_____
D2	Evidence (tests, surveys, plans), with references	_____
D3	Options assessed and why each is impracticable	_____
	E. Variance: equal performance or make-up (Clause 1.10.1(b))	
E1	Downstream point used (Chapter 5)	_____
E2	Performance at that point with full compliance and with the variance (peak flows, water levels)	_____

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
E3	Or: shortfall made up by fee-in-lieu or off-site works in the same catchment — volume (m³), works or fee	_____
	F. Waiver of detention: grounds (Clause 1.10.2)	
F1	Site discharges directly to the sea / to a tidal reach with no flood-prone property downstream	_____
F2	Analysis showing that undetained flow does not worsen the outfall-closed condition of Chapter 5 — reference	_____
F3	Retention still provided in full: Yes	_____
	G. Attachments (Clause 1.10.4(a))	
G1	Report certified under Clause 10.6	_____
G2	Preliminary drainage report	_____
	H. Certification and declaration	
H1	Certified by (registered professional; empanelled professional where Clause 10.6.1 applies): name, registration or empanelment number, signature, date	_____
H2	Applicant: name, signature, date	_____
	I. For the Authority (Clause 1.10.4)	
I1	Referred to the State Stormwater Technical Committee (Tier B, site 1 ha or more): Yes / No; date	_____
I2	Decision: granted / granted with conditions / refused	_____
I3	Reasons and conditions	_____
I4	Entry number in the public register (Clause 10.17)	_____
I5	Note: a variance runs with the approval and lapses if the approval lapses (Clause 1.10.4(d))	—
I6	Officer: name, designation, signature, date	_____

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 2

Design Rainfall and Design Storms

These annexes support Chapter 2. Annexes 2A to 2E will hold the statewide rainfall tables that Chapter 2 refers to: the benchmark checks and zone map, sub-daily ratios, grid-to-point factors, temporal patterns and retention depths. Each needs analysis of NIH-DHAARA and IMD records that has not yet been done for this Manual, so each is marked "To be prepared" and gives its intended layout and the rule to use until it is published (Clause 1.11.5). Form 2-1 is a draft form for the Design Rainfall Sheet that every hydrologic submittal must include (Clause 2.13). The Manual is a draft; it is not adopted by any government or agency.

Annex 2A — NIH-DHAARA vs IMD station and IMD gridded checks at benchmark points; zone map

Supports Clauses 2.3.1 to 2.3.5 of Chapter 2.

To be prepared. This annex will compare, at benchmark points across the State, the NIH-DHAARA design depths with frequency analyses of long IMD daily station records and of IMD gridded daily data (converted to point values with Annex 2C), for 24 hours and longer and for the AEPs of Table 2.1. It will also contain the map of rainfall zones used by Annexes 2B, 2C and 2E and by the Tier B tables of Chapter 4. It needs NIH-DHAARA values at the benchmark coordinates (NIH), IMD daily and recording-gauge station records and IMD gridded rainfall (IMD), State rain-gauge records (the tehsil rain gauges whose readings IMD reports, the gauges of I&WRD and any network of UPSDMA [TBC]), and district and basin boundaries (Survey of India, I&WRD). Until it is published, design depths are taken from NIH-DHAARA under Clause 2.3.1, the cross-checks of Clause 2.3.3 are reported on Form 2-1, and the zone of a site is the one agreed with the Authority and recorded on Form 2-1.

Table 2A.1 — Benchmark comparison of design depths (layout)

Benchmark point	IMD station ID	Latitude, longitude	Years of record	Duration (h)	AEP	NIH-DHAARA (mm)	IMD station analysis (mm)	IMD gridded, point value (mm)	NIH-DHAARA / IMD station	Remarks
				24						
				48						
				72						

2A.1 The zone names below are the working names used in the Tier B table template of Chapter 4 (Clause 4.14.2). Their boundaries, and whether further zones are needed, are to be set by the analysis of this annex.

Table 2A.2 — Rainfall zones (layout)

Zone (working name)	Extent (districts, basins)	Representative stations	Notes
UP-Z1 West	The west of the State in CWC subzone 1(e), from Saharanpur, Muzaffarnagar, Shamli, Baghpat, Meerut, Hapur, Ghaziabad, Gautam Buddh Nagar and Bulandshahr to Aligarh, Hathras, Mathura, Agra, Firozabad, Etah, Mainpuri and Etawah, with the strip of subzone 1(b) along the last 46 km of the Chambal in the ravines of Agra and Etawah; boundary with UP-Z2 on the 1(e)/1(f) boundary of the 1(f) report's Plate 8 [TBC]	Agra 42261 (daily record 1901–2012), Aligarh 42262 (from 1931), Meerut 42139 (from 1901), Mainpuri 42265; for Ghaziabad and Gautam Buddh Nagar, which have no long-record IMD station, New Delhi/Safdarjung 42182, the nearest (Clause 2.3.6(e))	Annual normals about 690–790 mm (Agra 693.6, Meerut 788.9 mm), JJAS 82–87% (IMD). FER 1(e) 50-yr 24-h about 200–280 mm, typically about 240 mm (Plate 9; Agra 200–240, Ghaziabad and Noida 220–240, Meerut about 280); 1-h ratio 0.34 (1(e)) and 0.35 (1(b)). Floors of Clause 2.3.6(h): 1 h 70–100 mm and 3 h 110–165 mm at 10–100 yr. Records: Aligarh 327.2 mm (30 Jun 1981), Agra 286.0 mm (16 Sep 1939), Meerut 227.3 mm (17 Sep 1880) (IMD); Ghaziabad 143–164 mm in one night on 9 Jul 2026 (as reported). NIH-DHAARA 50-yr 24-h low here (Noida 204, Ghaziabad 218, Meerut 215 mm)
UP-Z1 West: UP-A West doab and NCR	As UP-Z1; the doab between the Yamuna and the Ganga, the NCR districts and the Yamuna and Hindon floodplains	As UP-Z1	Alluvium with a deep water table in the cities (Ghaziabad 22.8 m below ground in 2006; Bisrakh in Gautam Buddh Nagar and blocks of Ghaziabad over-exploited, as reported). Receiving waters: the Yamuna (Mathura HFL 169.73 m, Agra 154.76 m, both 1978) and the Hindon (197.28 m at Noida on 26 Jul 2023, 1.81 m above the old HFL), as reported. Recharge-first where the water table is deep; Hindon and Yamuna backwater in the low sectors of Noida and Ghaziabad
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand	The central and eastern Ganga plain in subzone 1(f), and Bundelkhand and the Vindhyan south in subzones 1(c) and 1(d)	Lucknow City 42368 (1901–2010) and Lucknow/Amausi 42369 (from 1951), Kanpur 42366, Allahabad/Bamhrauli 42475 (from 1886), Varanasi (BHU) 42483 and Varanasi/Babatpur 42479, Fatehpur 42471, Sultanpur 42375, Jhansi 42463, Banda 42473, Orai 42468	Annual normals about 830–990 mm (Jhansi 831.2, Lucknow 861.4, Prayagraj 915.4, Varanasi 985.9 mm), JJAS 87–90% (IMD). FER 50-yr 24-h about 220–320 mm (Kanpur 220–240, Lucknow and Varanasi 240–280, Prayagraj 280–320, Jhansi and Banda 240–280, Lalitpur more than 320); 1-h ratio 0.31 (1(f)) and 0.32 (1(c)). Lucknow station fit (Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra, 1987): 50-yr 1 h 106.0, 3 h 174.6, 6 h 233.5 mm. Floors of Clause 2.3.6(h): 1 h 80–115 mm and 3 h 130–195 mm at 10–100 yr. Records: Varanasi (BHU) 349.5 mm (26 Sep 1943), Allahabad 335.3 mm (20 Aug 1953), Lucknow 311.7 mm (17 Jul 1947), Kanpur 242.8 mm (16 Sep 1970), Jhansi 266.7 mm (12 Aug 1952); Khajwa (Fatehpur) 514.9, Meja (Allahabad) 512.1 and Derapur (Kanpur) 508.0 mm before 1920 (IMD)
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand: UP-B Central–east Ganga plain	Lucknow, Kanpur, Unnao, Rae Bareli, Hardoi, Sitapur, Barabanki, Ayodhya, Sultanpur, Pratapgarh, Prayagraj north of the Yamuna, Fatehpur, Kaushambi, Varanasi, Jaunpur, the north of Chandauli, Ghazipur, Mau, Azamgarh and Ballia, and the districts between them; boundaries [TBC]	Lucknow, Kanpur, Bamhrauli, Babatpur and BHU, as UP-Z2	Older alluvium (bangar) with kankar, and usar (sodic) patches; khadar along the rivers. Lucknow city over-exploited, water table 7.65–45.6 m below ground before the 2023 monsoon (CGWB). Receiving waters, as reported: the Gomti at Lucknow (HFL 110.85 m, 1971), the Ganga at Kanpur (114.08 m, 2010), Phaphamau (87.98 m, 1978) and Varanasi (73.901 m, 1978), the Yamuna at Naini (87.99 m, 1978), the Sai, the Varuna and the Assi. Embanked Gomti in Lucknow with pumped outfalls

Zone (working name)	Extent (districts, basins)	Representative stations	Notes
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand: UP-E Bundelkhand and Vindhyan	Jhansi, Lalitpur, Jalaun, Hamirpur, Mahoba, Banda and Chitrakoot (subzone 1(c)), and Sonbhadra, the south of Mirzapur and Chandauli and Prayagraj south of the Yamuna (subzone 1(d), report not found [TBC]); boundaries [TBC]	Jhansi 42463, Banda 42473, Orai 42468	Granite and granite-gneiss with thin red and black soils, and Vindhyan sandstone, limestone and shale; groundwater only in the weathered and fractured zone (CGWB, as reported). Fast runoff, low base flow (FER 1(c) 0.018 $m^3/s/km^2$). Lalitpur flagged: 50-yr 24-h more than 320 mm on 1(c) Plate 10; Lalitpur 384.0 mm (10 Sep 1941) (IMD). Rivers: the Betwa, the Ken, the Yamuna, the Son and the Kanhar
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand	The terai and foothill belt along the Nepal and Uttarakhand borders and the Rohilkhand plain, in subzone 1(f) in the north-east and 1(e) and 1(f) in the north-west	Gorakhpur 42379 (1901–2012), Bahraich 42273, Bareilly 42189, Moradabad 42187, Najibabad 42143, Kheri Lakhimpur 42270, Shahjahanpur 42266, Nautanwa 42282; Gonda 42274 (1931–93)	Annual normals about 1,190–1,240 mm (Bareilly 1,186.5, Bahraich 1,198.6, Gorakhpur 1,240.9 mm), JJAS 85–88% (IMD). FER 50-yr 24-h from about 240 mm to more than 400 mm (Gorakhpur and Bareilly about 240–280, Gonda about 320, Lakhimpur more than 320, more than 400 on the Nepal border). Floors of Clause 2.3.6(h) as UP-Z2; the ratio floor governs where the 24-h depth is large. Records: Gonda 487.2 mm (12 Jun 1984), Bahraich 463.3 mm (13 Sep 1982), Baheri 460.6 mm (8 Jul 2024), Najibabad 425.0 mm (22 Jul 2010) (IMD). NIH-DHAARA 50-yr 24-h high here at the city cells (Gorakhpur 380, Bahraich 500, Bareilly 390 mm)
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand: UP-C North-east terai	Bahraich, Shrawasti, Balrampur, Gonda, Siddharthnagar, Basti, Sant Kabir Nagar, Maharajganj, Gorakhpur, Kushinagar and Deoria; boundaries [TBC]	Gorakhpur, Bahraich, Gonda, Nautanwa	Newer alluvium and terai deposits; shallow water table, wells flowing under artesian pressure in the terai (CGWB, as reported). June already wet (Gorakhpur 187.8, Bahraich 180.8 mm). Receiving waters: the Rapti at Birdghat (HFL 77.54 m, 1998), the Ghaghra, the Rohin and Ramgarh Tal, as reported. Long river-locked periods behind the Rapti and Rohin embankments
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand: UP-D Rohilkhand and western terai	Bijnor, Moradabad, Rampur, Bareilly, Pilibhit, Shahjahanpur, Lakhimpur Kheri and Budaun; boundaries [TBC]	Bareilly, Moradabad, Najibabad, Kheri Lakhimpur, Shahjahanpur	From the coarse bhabar fringe with a deep water table to the terai with a shallow one (CGWB, as reported); waterlogging in the Sharda Sahayak command (as reported). Steep foothill streams, for which the 1(e) report asks for a "suitable increase". Receiving waters: the Ramganga (Moradabad HFL 192.88 m, 2010), the Sharda and the head of the Gomti, as reported

---

Annex 2B — Sub-daily ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone: NIH-DHAARA (hourly-based) vs the one-third rule

Supports Clauses 2.6.1 to 2.6.4 of Chapter 2.

To be prepared. This annex will tabulate, for each zone of Annex 2A, the ratios of the t-hour to the 24-hour design depth from NIH-DHAARA, which are derived from hourly records, against the ratios implied by IMD Das et al. (2022) and by the one-third rule. It needs NIH-DHAARA depths for each duration at representative points in each zone (NIH), IMD recording-gauge data and the IDF values of Das et al. (2022) (IMD). Until it is published, sub-daily depths are read directly from NIH-DHAARA or an approved station IDF (Clause 2.6.1). Where only daily depths are available, the ratios used are those agreed with the Authority, which in Uttar Pradesh are those of Clause 2.3.6: the CWC Flood Estimation Report ratios for the site's subzone in Table 2B.1, raised at 1 and 3 hours to the floors of Clause 2.3.6(h) for the 10-yr and rarer storms, and, in the development area of LDA, not less than the Lucknow station values of Clause 2.3.6(b) (Clause 2.6.2), and are recorded on Form 2-1. The one-third rule is not used (Clause 2.6.4).

2B.1 The first row of Table 2B.1 gives the ratios of the one-third rule P(t) = P(24)·(t/24)^(1/3), for comparison only. The 1, 3, 6 and 12 h values are those stated in the commentary to Clause 2.6; the 2 h value is computed from the same formula. The rule shall not be used for design unless this annex confirms it for the zone concerned (Clause 2.6.4).

Table 2B.1 — Ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone (layout)

Zone	Source	1 h	2 h	3 h	6 h	12 h	24 h
All (reference only, not for design)	One-third rule	0.35	0.44	0.50	0.63	0.79	1.00
UP-Z1 West, and the 1(e) part of UP-Z3 (UP-D)	CWC FER 1(e), 50-yr (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g))	0.340	0.475	0.560	0.680	0.840	1.00
UP-Z1 West: Chambal strip of Agra and Etawah	CWC FER 1(b), 50-yr (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g))	0.35		0.53	0.67	0.80	1.00
UP-Z2 (UP-B) and the 1(f) part of UP-Z3 (UP-C, UP-D)	CWC FER 1(f), 50-yr (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g); 2-h value from an OCR of Fig. 10 [TBC])	0.31	0.425	0.50	0.65	0.82	1.00
UP-Z2 (UP-E), and the 1(d) area	CWC FER 1(c), 50-yr (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g))	0.32		0.50	0.65	0.79	1.00
All zones	Ratio floor of Clause 2.3.6(h)(i), 10–100 yr	0.35		0.57			1.00
UP-Z2 (UP-B): Lucknow	Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra (1987), 2-yr station ratios (comparison only; 6-h ratio 0.71)	0.36		0.58	0.71		1.00
UP-Z2 (UP-B): Kanpur	Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra (1987), 2-yr station ratios (comparison only)	0.38		0.61	0.74		1.00
UP-Z3 (UP-C): Bahraich	Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra (1987), 2-yr station ratios (comparison only)	0.35		0.57	0.69		1.00
UP-Z2 (UP-B): Lucknow	Station fit of Clause 2.3.6(b) at 50 yr, as ratios to a 24-h plate value of 280 mm (comparison only)	0.38		0.62	0.83		1.00
UP-Z2 (UP-B): Lucknow	NIH-DHAARA, 50-yr, Lucknow cell (comparison only; 3- and 6-hour values not queried)	0.25	0.40			0.83	1.00

2B.2 Depths from fixed observation windows are converted to true-interval depths with the factors of Clause 2.6.3, repeated in Table 2B.2. They are the standard WMO (Hershfield) values and are not provisional.

Table 2B.2 — Fixed-interval adjustment factors (Clause 2.6.3)

Number of fixed observation intervals in the duration	Factor
1	1.13
2	1.04
3–4	1.02

Annex 2C — Grid-to-point factors

Supports Clauses 2.7.1 and 2.7.4 of Chapter 2.

To be prepared. This annex will give the factors that convert grid-average design depths (for example from 0.25° cells) to point depths, by zone, duration and AEP. It needs paired frequency analyses of IMD gridded rainfall and of the IMD and State gauges inside each cell (IMD, I&WRD and the tehsil rain gauges of the Revenue Department [TBC]), the benchmark points of Annex 2A, and a stated method for deriving the factors. Until it is published, design depths are taken as point values from NIH-DHAARA or an approved station IDF (Clauses 2.3.1 and 2.3.2). Grid-average values are not used as design depths unless a conversion agreed with the Authority is recorded on Form 2-1 (Clause 1.11.5).

2C.1 The commentary to Clause 2.7 shows why the factors matter, and in Uttar Pradesh the reanalysis cells err both ways. At Prayagraj the IMDAA cell of NIH-DHAARA (about 12 km) gives a 50-year 24-hour depth of about 265 mm and a 100-year depth of about 299 mm, while the Allahabad gauge recorded 335.3 mm on 20 August 1953; at Varanasi the cell gives about 254 mm and 286 mm, while Varanasi (BHU) recorded 349.5 mm on 26 September 1943. At Gorakhpur the cell's 50-year value, about 380 mm, is well above the station's record of 284.5 mm (19 August 1912), and at Bahraich its 50-year value of about 500 mm is above the station's record of 463.3 mm (13 September 1982). The cells' 50-year 1-hour depths, 63–109 mm, are 0.22–0.32 of their 24-hour depths, and at Lucknow 70.7 mm against 106.0 mm from the station fit (NIH-DHAARA, queried 6 Nov 2026; IMD; Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra, 1987). Values of this kind are grid-average values and need these factors before any use as point depths; under Clause 2.3.6 they are not used as design depths in Uttar Pradesh until this annex and Annex 2A are published.

Table 2C.1 — Grid-to-point factors (layout)

Zone	Grid product and cell size	Duration (h)	AEP	Factor (point / grid)	Stations used	Years of record
		24				
		48				
		72				

Annex 2D — Uttar Pradesh temporal patterns (Huff curves)

Supports Clauses 2.9.3 and 2.9.4 of Chapter 2, and Clause 11.7.3 of Chapter 11.

To be prepared. This annex will give dimensionless time-distribution (mass) curves of Uttar Pradesh storms, in the form introduced by Huff (1967), by zone, storm-duration class and quartile, at stated probability levels. It needs storm hyetographs from recording gauges and automatic weather stations (IMD, its automatic weather stations and automatic rain gauges in the State, and any recording gauges of I&WRD [TBC]), separated into independent storms by a stated rule, and the east Uttar Pradesh storm of 14–15 September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Jaunpur), the Lucknow storm of 15–16 September 2022, the storm of 10–11 September 2023 over Lucknow, Kanpur and Barabanki, the Baheri storm of 8 July 2024 and the Ghaziabad storm of 9 July 2026 among them. Until it is published, design storms use the alternating-block pattern of Clause 2.9.1 and the 48- and 72-hour pattern of Clause 2.9.2; for catchments of 25–5,000 km², the CWC Flood Estimation Report curves may be used with a sensitivity run under Clause 2.9.1 (Clause 2.9.4). SCS Type distributions are not used (Clause 2.9.3). For the disaggregation of daily records in continuous simulation (Clause 11.7.3), the method is agreed with the Authority and recorded (Clause 1.11.5).

Table 2D.1 — Cumulative fraction of storm depth against cumulative fraction of storm time (layout, one table per zone, duration class and quartile)

Fraction of storm time	0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0
10% probability curve	0										1.0
50% probability curve	0										1.0
90% probability curve	0										1.0

2D.1 Each table shall state the zone, the duration class, the quartile (the quarter of the storm in which most rain fell), the number of storms analysed and the period of record.

Reference: Huff, F.A. (1967). Time distribution of rainfall in heavy storms. *Water Resources Research* 3(4), 1007–1019.

Annex 2E — Retention percentile depths by zone

Supports Clauses 2.8.3 and 2.10.1 to 2.10.2 of Chapter 2, Clause 4.4 of Chapter 4 and Chapter 8.

To be prepared. This annex will give, for each zone of Annex 2A, the retention design depth P_R: the 24-hour rainfall depth not exceeded on 90% of days with rain (≥ 2.5 mm) in the long-term record (Clause 2.10.1). It needs long daily records at stations in each zone (IMD, I&WRD and the tehsil rain gauges of the Revenue Department [TBC]) and IMD gridded data with the factors of Annex 2C where stations are sparse. Until it is published, P_R is computed by the definition of Clause 2.10.1 from the long-term daily record of a station agreed with the Authority, by the steps in 2E.1, and recorded on Form 2-1 (Clause 1.11.5).

2E.1 **Computing P_R from a daily record.**

1. Take the daily (24-hour) rainfall series of the station for its full record.
2. Keep only the days with rain of 2.5 mm or more (wet days).
3. Rank the wet-day depths and take the depth not exceeded on 90% of them (the 90th percentile).
4. Do not apply the climate factor (Clause 2.8.3) or the fixed-interval factor; P_R is a statistic of everyday rainfall, not an AEP design depth.
5. Record the station, the period of record, the number of wet days and P_R on Form 2-1.

Table 2E.1 — Retention depth P_R by zone (layout)

Zone	Stations or grid cells used	Period of record	Number of wet days (≥ 2.5 mm)	P_R, 90th percentile (mm)	Issued on
UP-Z1 West					
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand					
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand					

Form 2-1 — Design Rainfall Sheet

Supports Clauses 2.3 to 2.13 of Chapter 2, and Clause 10.4.1(d) of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One sheet for each hydrologic submittal. The steps follow Figure 2.3 of Chapter 2.

Table 2F.1 — Form 2-1: site, source and storms

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
	A. Site (Clause 2.13, item 1)	
A1	Project and site	_____
A2	Site coordinates (latitude, longitude, decimal degrees)	_____
A3	Rainfall zone (Annex 2A, or as agreed with the Authority)	_____
A4	Contributing catchment area (km²) (Clause 2.7)	_____
A5	Design life: more than 25 years / temporary works, 5 years or less (Clause 2.8.2)	_____
A6	Outfall under tidal or river backwater influence: Yes / No (Clauses 2.5.3, 2.12)	_____
	B. Source (Clauses 2.3, 2.3.5; item 2)	
B1	NIH-DHAARA: version or access date	_____
B2	Coordinates queried	_____
B3	Screenshot or export of the values extracted attached: reference	_____
B4	Station IDF used (Clause 2.3.2): No / Yes — station, ID, distance from site (km)	_____
B5	Station IDF: years of recording-gauge data (30 or more); published or approved by	_____
B6	Station IDF: change of terrain or coastal exposure between gauge and site: None / describe	_____
	C. AEPs and durations (Clauses 2.4, 2.5)	
C1	Elements designed and their AEPs (Table 2.1)	_____
C2	Conveyance: Tc and design duration (not less than 10 min) (Clause 2.5.1)	_____
C3	Storage: durations checked from {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}; 24, 48 and 72 h included (Clause 2.5.2)	_____
C4	Critical duration found for each storage element	_____
	D. Conversions	
D1	Sub-daily depths: read directly / from Annex 2B ratios / from ratios agreed with the Authority (Clauses 2.6.1, 2.6.2)	_____
D2	Fixed-interval factor applied: none (true-interval source) / 1.13 / 1.04 / 1.02 (Clause 2.6.3)	_____
D3	Grid-to-point factor: not needed (point source) / Annex 2C / agreed value (Clause 2.7.1)	_____
D4	ARF: 1.0 (10 km² or less; single-site storage) / CWC curve / interpolated (Clauses 2.7.2–2.7.4)	_____
D5	Climate factor: 1.20 (≤ 6 h) and 1.10 (> 6–72 h) / 1.0 temporary works / projected depths under Clause 2.8.4	_____
	E. Cross-checks (Clause 2.3.3; item 4)	
E1	IMD Das et al. (2022) values for 1–24 h: reported in Table 2F.2	_____

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
E2	CWC subzone 1(e) / 1(f) / 1(c) / 1(b) 24-hour point value, catchments of 25–5,000 km²: subzone used	_____
E3	CWC floor governs for any AEP: No / Yes — AEPs	_____
	F. Retention depth (Clause 2.10)	
F1	P_R (mm) and source: Annex 2E zone value / computed under Annex 2E, 2E.1 — station and period	_____
F2	No climate factor applied to P_R (Clause 2.8.3): confirmed	_____
	G. Design storms (Clauses 2.9, 2.11, 2.12; items 5 and 6)	
G1	Storms up to 24 h: alternating block, peak at 50%; time step (≤ Tc/3 and ≤ 15 min)	_____
G2	48 and 72 h storms: built under Clause 2.9.2 (Table 2F.3)	_____
G3	Other pattern used: none / Annex 2D / CWC FER with sensitivity run (Clauses 2.9.3, 2.9.4)	_____
G4	Hyetographs attached as a table and a plot for each design storm: reference	_____
G5	AMC: III for every design storm of 1 July–30 September in UP-C and UP-D and on floodplain or embanked low-lying land anywhere, and of July–August in UP-B, whatever its duration; in UP-A and UP-E, III for a storm that follows or contains a 5-day total of more than 53 mm; II otherwise (Clause 2.11.4)	_____
G6	Pre-development condition: greenfield, open land in good condition for the mapped HSG (Clause 2.11.5)	_____
G7	Release criterion: standard, Q_post ≤ 0.9 × Q_pre (Clause 2.11.2) / flood-sensitive, mixed-frequency rule (Clause 2.11.3)	_____
G8	Tailwater joint cases run (Clause 2.12): case (a) MHWS + sea-level allowance; case (b) 10% AEP 48 h storm with 1% AEP still-water level + sea-level allowance; governing case	_____
	H. Prepared by	
H1	I confirm that the values above are those extracted and used in the submittal. Name, registration number, signature, date	_____

Design depth = source depth × fixed-interval factor × grid-to-point factor × ARF × climate factor. Where the design depth is lower than the CWC floor for the same AEP, the floor is adopted (Clause 2.3.3).

Table 2F.2 — Form 2-1: depth table (Clause 2.13, item 3)

AEP (T-yr)	Duration	Source depth (mm)	Fixed-interval factor	Grid-to-point factor	ARF	Climate factor	Design depth (mm)	IMD Das et al. (2022) (mm)	CWC floor (mm)	Adopted depth (mm)

Table 2F.3 — Form 2-1: 48- and 72-hour storm construction (Clause 2.9.2)

AEP (T-yr)	Duration (h)	Total design depth (mm)	24 h design depth, final 24 h (mm)	Remainder (mm)	Hours before the final 24 h	Uniform intensity before the final 24 h (mm/h)
	48				24	
	72				48	

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 3

Hydrologic Methods

These annexes support Chapter 3. Annex 3C sets out benchmark test problems for software acceptance, and Forms 3-1 and 3-2 are the submittal forms required by Clause 3.17. Annexes 3A, 3B, 3D and 3E need survey, gauging or published report data that this draft does not yet contain; each gives the intended layout and the interim rule of Chapter 3 that applies until it is published. The forms are draft forms and have no statutory status.

Annex 3A — Uttar Pradesh soil series to HSG lookup; seasonal high water table map

Supports Clauses 3.7 and 3.10 of Chapter 3.

To be prepared. This annex will contain (a) a lookup from each soil series mapped in Uttar Pradesh to its hydrologic soil group (HSG), in both the drained and the undrained state, and (b) a map of the depth to the seasonal high groundwater table in the south-west monsoon (June–September). It needs NBSS&LUP and Uttar Pradesh Department of Agriculture (soil survey) [TBC] series maps with their scales, measured saturated hydraulic conductivity and depth to an impermeable layer for each series, and observation-well records from the Central Ground Water Board and the UP Ground Water Department, supplemented by piezometers in the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Gomti, the Ghaghra, the Rapti and the Hindon, the north-east terai, where wells flow under artesian pressure, the waterlogged canal commands such as that of the Sharda Sahayak, and the low-lying land behind the embankments of the Gomti at Lucknow and the Rapti at Gorakhpur. Until it is published, use the interim rules of Chapter 3: assign HSG from measured saturated hydraulic conductivity and depth to an impermeable layer or water table by the criteria of NEH Part 630, Ch. 7 (Clause 3.7.2); verify it by site infiltration tests wherever retention relies on infiltration (Clause 3.7.3); take the seasonal high water table from site piezometers, trial pits or the nearest observation well (Clause 3.10.2); and assign HSG D wherever that level is within 0.6 m of the ground surface (Clause 3.10.1).

Table 3A.1 — Soil series to HSG lookup (layout)

Soil series	District(s)	Taxonomic class	Surface texture	Saturated hydraulic conductivity (mm/h)	Depth to impermeable layer (m)	HSG, drained	HSG, undrained	Source map and scale

Table 3A.2 — Seasonal high water table, by mapping unit (layout)

Mapping unit or grid cell	Observation wells used	Years of June–September record	Highest June–September level below ground (m)	Within 0.6 m of ground (Clause 3.10.1)?	Data source

Mapping unit or grid cell	Observation wells used	Years of June–September record	Highest June–September level below ground (m)	Within 0.6 m of ground (Clause 3.10.1)?	Data source

---

Annex 3B — Uttar Pradesh CN calibration and supplementary land covers (khadar farmland, usar land, ravines, terai forest and grassland, Bundelkhand scrub and rock, tal beds)

Supports Clauses 3.8 and 3.15 of Chapter 3.

To be prepared. This annex will contain (a) curve numbers calibrated against observed rainfall and runoff in Uttar Pradesh catchments, compared with the TR-55 values of Table 3.5, and (b) curve numbers for land covers that Table 3.5 does not list: the cultivated and grazed land of the river floodplains (khadar), which the rivers cover when they are high; the barren or sparsely grassed sodic (usar) land of the central and eastern plain; the ravines of the Yamuna and the Chambal in Agra and Etawah, bare or under scrub; the forest and grassland of the terai and bhabar below the foothills; the scrub on thin soils over granite-gneiss in Bundelkhand and its bare rock outcrop; and the beds of tals that are dry or cultivated at the start of a storm. It needs paired rainfall–runoff records for small gauged catchments of known cover and soil, from I&WRD gauging sites, agricultural research stations and tank gauges, analysed by event and by antecedent moisture. Until it is published: the pre-development reference stays open space in good condition for every site (Clause 3.3.2), so these covers do not enter the pre-development run; for off-site existing conditions, use the nearest Table 3.5 or TR-55 cover row, including the cultivated rows (Clause 3.8.3(c)), and state the row chosen and the reason on Form 3-1; land under standing water at the start of the design storm is modelled as water surface with no losses (Table 3.5; Clause 3.10.4(b)). Any departure from these defaults requires calibration under Clause 3.15 (Clause 3.15.1(d)).

Table 3B.1 — Supplementary land covers, AMC II (layout)

Cover type	HSG A	HSG B	HSG C	HSG D	Ia ratio	Basis (catchments, events, years)
Floodplain (khadar) farmland and grazing land, above the river level at the start of the storm						
Usar (sodic) land, barren or with sparse grass						
Ravines of the Yamuna and the Chambal, bare or under scrub						
Forest and grassland of the terai and bhabar						
Scrub on thin soil over granite-gneiss, Bundelkhand						
Bare or nearly bare rock outcrop, Bundelkhand						
Tal bed, dry or cultivated at the start of the storm						
Other (state)						

Table 3B.2 — CN calibration catchments (layout)

Catchment	District	Area (km²)	Dominant HSG and cover	Events used	Table 3.5 CN	Calibrated CN	Calibrated ÷ Table 3.5

Catchment	District	Area (km²)	Dominant HSG and cover	Events used	Table 3.5 CN	Calibrated CN	Calibrated ÷ Table 3.5

Annex 3C — Benchmark test problems for software acceptance

Supports Clauses 3.5, 3.6, 3.8, 3.9, 3.11, 3.12 and 3.16 of Chapter 3.

Purpose. Software not listed in Clause 3.16.1 shall reproduce the results of the five problems below (Clause 3.16.3). Each problem is fully specified and uses only the methods and tables of Chapter 3, so every answer can be checked by hand. The acceptance tolerance is ±5% on each tabulated result, the equivalence threshold of Clause 3.16.2; for closed-form results (Problems 3C-1 to 3C-4), software should agree to the rounding shown. The submittal shall report the software result next to each answer below.

Illustrative — not design values. The inputs (areas, intensities, rainfall depths, slopes and the basin) are chosen for testing only. They are not design data for any site.

Problem 3C-1 — Rational Method peak (Clause 3.5)

Inputs. A 2.0 ha catchment draining to one inlet: 1.2 ha concrete paving and roofs, C = 0.90 (Table 3.2, upper half of 0.80–0.95); 0.8 ha lawns on sandy soil, average slope, C = 0.15 (Table 3.2, upper half of 0.10–0.15). Design AEP 1% (100-yr). Rainfall intensity at Tc, including the climate factor: i = 120 mm/h.

Part (b): a separate 0.5 ha fully paved catchment, C = 0.90, design AEP 1%, i = 150 mm/h.

Table 3C.1 — Problem 3C-1 solution

Step	Calculation	Result
Composite C (Clause 3.5.4)	(1.2 × 0.90 + 0.8 × 0.15) / 2.0	0.60
Frequency factor (Table 3.3)	1% AEP	Cf = 1.25
C · Cf (≤ 1.0)	0.60 × 1.25	0.75
Peak flow (Clause 3.5.1)	0.75 × 120 × 2.0 / 360	**Q = 0.500 m³/s**
Part (b): C · Cf	0.90 × 1.25 = 1.125, capped at 1.0 (Clause 3.5.3)	1.00
Part (b): peak flow	1.00 × 150 × 0.5 / 360	**Q = 0.208 m³/s**

Problem 3C-2 — Time of concentration by the segment method (Clause 3.6)

Inputs. Pre-development flow path: sheet flow over greenfield, n = 0.15 (Clause 3.6.3), L = 30 m, S = 0.01; P2 (50% AEP 24-hour rainfall, no climate factor) = 80 mm. Shallow concentrated flow, unpaved, L = 200 m, S = 0.01. Channel flow, L = 400 m, bank-full velocity V = 1.0 m/s (given).

Table 3C.2 — Problem 3C-2 solution

Segment	Calculation	Travel time
Sheet flow (Clause 3.6.2(a))	0.091 × (0.15 × 30)^0.8 / (80^0.5 × 0.01^0.4) = 0.2138 h	12.83 min
Shallow concentrated (Clause 3.6.2(c))	V = 4.918 × 0.01^0.5 = 0.4918 m/s; 200 / (3,600 × 0.4918) = 0.1130 h	6.78 min
Channel (Clause 3.6.2(d))	400 / (3,600 × 1.0) = 0.1111 h	6.67 min

Segment	Calculation	Travel time
Tc (Clause 3.6.1; ≥ 10 min)	12.83 + 6.78 + 6.67	**26.27 min**
Lag (Clause 3.6.5)	0.6 × 26.27	15.76 min

Problem 3C-3 — SCS-CN runoff depth, AMC and Ia sensitivity (Clause 3.8)

Inputs. Pre-development reference on HSG C: CN = 74 at AMC II (Table 3.5), all pervious. Cumulative rainfall P = 100 mm; second case P = 25 mm.

Table 3C.3 — Problem 3C-3 solution

Case	S (mm)	Ia (mm)	Runoff Q (mm), P = 100 mm	Runoff Q (mm), P = 25 mm
(a) AMC II, Ia = 0.2S: S = 25,400 / 74 − 254	89.24	17.85	**39.38**	**0.53**
(b) AMC III, Ia = 0.2S: CN(III) = 23 × 74 / (10 + 0.13 × 74) = 86.75	38.80	7.76	**64.93**	—
(c) AMC II, Ia = 0.05S: S0.05 = 25.4 × 1.33 × (89.24 / 25.4)^1.15	143.31	7.17	**36.49**	**1.97**

Runoff is $Q = (P - Ia)^2 / (P - Ia + S)$. Case (c) gives less runoff than case (a) at 100 mm but more at 25 mm, as Clause 3.8.5 and Figure 3.3 describe.

Problem 3C-4 — Separate vs composite impervious representation, and SCS unit hydrograph peak (Clauses 3.9 and 3.11.2)

Inputs, part (a). A site that is 50% directly connected impervious (CN 98) and 50% open space on HSG B (CNp = 61), AMC II, Ia = 0.2S, P = 25 mm.

Inputs, part (b). A sub-area of A = 2.5 km² with Tc = 1.0 h and computation interval Δt = 0.1 h.

Table 3C.4 — Problem 3C-4 solution

Step	Calculation	Result
(a) Impervious half (Clause 3.9.2)	S = 5.18 mm, Ia = 1.04 mm; Q = 23.96² / (23.96 + 5.18)	19.70 mm
(a) Pervious half	S = 162.39 mm, Ia = 32.48 mm > P	0 mm
(a) Area-weighted runoff, separate sub-areas	0.5 × 19.70 + 0.5 × 0	**9.85 mm**
(a) Composite CN (Clause 3.9.4)	61 + 0.50 × (98 − 61)	79.5
(a) Runoff with composite CN	S = 65.50 mm, Ia = 13.10 mm; Q = 11.90² / (11.90 + 65.50)	**1.83 mm**
(b) Interval check (Clause 3.11.3(a))	0.133 × 1.0 = 0.133 h ≥ Δt = 0.1 h	satisfied
(b) Lag and time to peak (Clause 3.11.2)	tL = 0.6 × 1.0 = 0.60 h; tp = 0.1 / 2 + 0.60	tp = 0.65 h
(b) Unit hydrograph peak, Q = 1 mm	0.208 × 2.5 × 1 / 0.65	**qp = 0.800 m³/s per mm**

Part (a) reproduces the comparison in the commentary to Clause 3.9 (about 9.9 mm vs 1.8 mm).

Problem 3C-5 — Level-pool (modified Puls) storage routing (Clause 3.12.1)

Inputs. A detention basin with vertical sides and plan area 500 m², with the stage–storage–discharge relationship of Table 3C.5. Triangular inflow hydrograph: 0 at t = 0, rising linearly to 0.50 m³/s at t = 30 min, falling linearly to 0 at t = 90 min. Basin empty at t = 0. Routing interval Δt = 10 min (600 s). No tailwater.

Table 3C.5 — Problem 3C-5 stage–storage–discharge relationship

Stage (m)	Storage S (m³)	Outflow O (m³/s)
0.0	0	0.00
0.5	250	0.05
1.0	500	0.10
1.5	750	0.15
2.0	1,000	0.20
2.5	1,250	0.25

Method. The storage-indication equation is (I1 + I2) + (2S1/Δt − O1) = (2S2/Δt + O2). The table gives O = S / 5,000 (S in m³, O in m³/s), so 2S/Δt + O = 17.667 O and 2S/Δt − O = 15.667 O, and each step is O2 = [(I1 + I2) + 15.667 O1] / 17.667. Software interpolating linearly in Table 3C.5 shall give the same result.

Table 3C.6 — Problem 3C-5 routed outflow

Time (min)	Inflow I (m³/s)	Outflow O (m³/s)	Storage (m³)	Stage (m)
0	0.0000	0.0000	0.0	0.000
10	0.1667	0.0094	47.2	0.094
20	0.3333	0.0367	183.3	0.367
30	0.5000	0.0797	398.4	0.797
40	0.4167	0.1226	612.8	1.226
50	0.3333	0.1511	755.7	1.511
60	0.2500	0.1670	835.2	1.670
70	0.1667	**0.1717**	**858.6**	**1.717**
80	0.0833	0.1664	832.1	1.664
90	0.0000	0.1523	761.5	1.523
120	0.0000	0.1062	531.1	1.062
180	0.0000	0.0517	258.3	0.517

Results. Peak outflow 0.172 m³/s at 70 min; peak storage 859 m³; peak stage 1.72 m. The inflow peak of 0.50 m³/s is reduced to 34% of its value.

Table 3C.7 — Benchmark results to be reported by the applicant

Problem	Result	Benchmark	Software result	Difference (%)	Within ±5%?
3C-1	Q, main case (m³/s)	0.500			

Problem	Result	Benchmark	Software result	Difference (%)	Within ±5%?
3C-1	Q, part (b) (m³/s)	0.208			
3C-2	Tc (min)	26.27			
3C-3	Q, case (a), P = 100 mm (mm)	39.38			
3C-3	Q, case (b), P = 100 mm (mm)	64.93			
3C-3	Q, case (c), P = 100 mm (mm)	36.49			
3C-3	Q, case (c), P = 25 mm (mm)	1.97			
3C-4	Runoff, separate sub-areas (mm)	9.85			
3C-4	Runoff, composite CN (mm)	1.83			
3C-4	qp (m³/s per mm)	0.800			
3C-5	Peak outflow (m³/s)	0.172			
3C-5	Peak storage (m³)	859			

Annex 3D — Peak rate factor study for flat coastal land

Supports Clauses 3.11.5 and 3.15 of Chapter 3.

> **Not required in Uttar Pradesh.** Uttar Pradesh is landlocked and has no flat coastal plain, so no land in the State meets Clause 3.11.5(a), and the standard factor 484 (PRF' = 0.208) applies to all land (Clause 3.11.5). The khadar floodplains, the terai and the tals are flat but are not coastal plain; their slow response is represented by storage and backwater (Clauses 3.10.4 and 3.12.4), not by a lower peak rate factor. The annex and the layout of Table 3D.1 are kept only so that the annex numbering is unchanged.

Table 3D.1 — Calibrated peak rate factors (layout)

Catchment	Area (km²)	Mean slope (m/m)	Drainage condition	Events used	Calibrated PRF (US customary)	PRF' (SI)	Range of applicability

---

Annex 3E — CWC SUH parameters for subzones 1(e), 1(f), 1(c) and 1(b), with worked example

Supports Clauses 3.4.3 and 3.11.4 of Chapter 3.

To be prepared. This annex will tabulate, for CWC subzones 1(e) (Upper Indo-Ganga Plains), 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains), 1(c) (Betwa) and 1(b) (Chambal), the regression relationships for the synthetic unit hydrograph parameters, the design storm duration, loss rate, base flow, areal reduction and time distribution, each with its reference to the Flood Estimation Report, and a worked example for one catchment. It needs the four CWC Flood Estimation Reports that cover Uttar Pradesh: the Upper Indo-Ganga Plains subzone 1(e), approved at the 40th meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee on 23–24 July 1984, whose design-office report number is not on the scanned copy read for this Manual [TBC], and which covers the west of the State, including Saharanpur, Meerut, Ghaziabad, Noida, Aligarh, Mathura, Agra, Moradabad and Bareilly; the Middle Ganga Plains subzone 1(f) (GP/10/1984, October 1985), which covers the eastern half of the State, including Lucknow, Kanpur, Prayagraj north of the Ganga, Varanasi and Gorakhpur; the Betwa subzone 1(c) (B/17/1989), which covers Bundelkhand, including Jhansi, Lalitpur, Orai, Banda and Chitrakoot; and the Chambal subzone 1(b) (C/16/1988), which covers only the last 46 km of the Chambal in the State, in the ravines of Agra and Etawah (see the References of Chapter 3); with the report for the Sone subzone 1(d), which covers Sonbhadra, the south of Mirzapur and Chandauli and the trans-Yamuna part of Prayagraj, still to be obtained [TBC], and the subzone boundaries within Uttar Pradesh, including the 1(e)/1(f) boundary near Lucknow, Kanpur and Lakhimpur, to be confirmed on the reports' index maps [TBC], transcribed and checked against the published reports, and a catchment with physiographic parameters measured from survey or a DEM. Until it is published, take all SUH inputs directly from the applicable Flood Estimation Report (Clause 3.11.4(a)), apply the 24-hour design rainfall of Clauses 2.3.3(b) and 2.7.3 with the climate factor of Clause 2.8 (Clause 3.11.4(b)), report the SUH result alongside the HEC-HMS or SWMM result for the existing natural condition (Clause 3.11.4(c)), and, where the hydrograph model gives a lower 1% AEP peak, either justify it by calibration under Clause 3.15 or adopt the SUH peak (Clause 3.11.4(d)).

Table 3E.1 — SUH relationships by subzone (layout)

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Subzone 1(e) relationship	Subzone 1(f) relationship	Subzone 1(c) relationship	Subzone 1(b) relationship
Peak discharge per unit area	qp	m³/s per km²	qp = 2.030 (L/√S)^−0.649	qp = 0.409 (L/√S)^−0.456	qp = 1.331 (L/S)^−0.492, as printed; L/√S [TBC]	qp = 1.251 tp^−0.610 (relationship table; the step-by-step text prints 1.215 [TBC])
Time from centre of unit rainfall to peak	tp	h	tp = 1.858 qp^−1.038	tp = 1.217 qp^−1.034	tp = 2.195 qp^−0.944	tp = 0.339 (L/√S)^0.826
Width of UH at 50% of peak	W50	h	W50 = 2.217 qp^−0.990	W50 = 1.743 qp^−1.104	W50 = 2.04 qp^−1.026	W50 = 2.215 qp^−1.034
Width of UH at 75% of peak	W75	h	W75 = 1.477 qp^−0.876	W75 = 0.902 qp^−1.108	W75 = 1.25 qp^−0.864	W75 = 1.191 qp^−1.057
Width of rising limb at 50% of peak	WR50	h	WR50 = 0.812 qp^−0.907	WR50 = 0.736 qp^−0.928	WR50 = 0.739 qp^−0.968	WR50 = 0.834 qp^−1.077
Width of rising limb at 75% of peak	WR75	h	WR75 = 0.606 qp^−0.791	WR75 = 0.478 qp^−0.902	WR75 = 0.500 qp^−0.813	WR75 = 0.502 qp^−1.065
Base width of UH	TB	h	TB = 7.744 tp^0.779	TB = 16.432 tp^0.646	TB = 3.917 tp^0.990	TB = 6.662 tp^0.613
Unit duration	tr	h	2	6	1	1

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Subzone 1(e) relationship	Subzone 1(f) relationship	Subzone 1(c) relationship	Subzone 1(b) relationship
Design storm duration	TD	h	TD = 1.1 tp, limited to 24 h	TD = 1.1 tp, limited to 24 h; by tp: 3–5 h, 6 h; 6–11 h, 12 h; 12–17 h, 18 h; 18–72 h, 24 h	TD = 1.1 tp, rounded to the nearest hour	TD = 1.1 tp, rounded to the nearest hour (the report also prints TD = 0.539 (L/√S)^0.724, read by optical character recognition only [TBC])
Design loss rate	—	mm/h	3.0	3.0 (printed as the "modal value … 3.0 mm per hour")	2.3 (printed "0.23 cm/hr"; modal value of about 102 events on 11 catchments)	1.7 (printed "0.17 cm/hr"; modal value)
Design base flow	—	m³/s per km²	0.05	0.05 (87 of 158 events in the range 0.01–0.09)	0.018 (30 of 102 events in the range 0.009–0.027)	qb = 0.207 A^−0.290, read by optical character recognition only [TBC]
Ratio of t-hour to 24-hour rainfall	—	—	50-yr: 1 h 0.340; 2 h 0.475; 3 h 0.560; 4 h 0.607; 5 h 0.647; 6 h 0.680; 9 h 0.770; 12 h 0.840; 15 h 0.890; 18 h 0.930; 24 h 1.000	50-yr: 1 h 0.31; 3 h 0.50; 6 h 0.65; 9 h 0.75; 12 h 0.82; 15 h 0.89; 18 h 0.94; 24 h 1.00 (2, 4 and 5 h from the table of Fig. 10, read by optical character recognition only: 0.425, 0.555 and 0.605 [TBC])	1 h 0.32; 3 h 0.50; 6 h 0.65; 9 h 0.72; 12 h 0.79; 15 h 0.84; 18 h 0.90; 24 h 1.00 (independent of return period from 5 years)	1 h 0.35; 3 h 0.53; 6 h 0.67; 9 h 0.74; 12 h 0.80; 15 h 0.85; 18 h 0.90; 24 h 1.00 (independent of return period from 5 years)
Time distribution of 24-hour rainfall	—	cumulative fraction	Average curves of Fig. 12; not transcribed [TBC]	Average curves of Fig. 12 for storms of 2–3, 4–6, 7–12, 13–18 and 19–24 hours, from about 3,240 storms; not transcribed [TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
Conversion of 1-day to 24-hour rainfall	—	factor	1.15	1.15	1.15	1.15
Areal reduction factor	ARF	—	Table 6 of the report [TBC]	Table 6 and Figs 11(a) and 11(b), 50–4,500 km², from six bridge catchments; the worked example uses 0.91 for 24 hours at 300 km²; the table not checked against the page images [TBC]	ARF table of the report, for areas up to 2,500 km², read by optical character recognition only [TBC]	[TBC]

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Subzone 1(e) relationship	Subzone 1(f) relationship	Subzone 1(c) relationship	Subzone 1(b) relationship
50-yr 24-hour point rainfall at Uttar Pradesh towns	—	mm	Plate 9: Ghaziabad and Noida about 220–240; Agra and Mathura about 200–240; Aligarh about 240; Meerut about 280; Moradabad about 280–320; Bareilly about 280	Plate 8: Lucknow about 240–280; Kanpur about 220–240; Prayagraj about 280–320; Varanasi and Gorakhpur about 240–280; Gonda about 320; Lakhimpur above 320	Plate 10: Jhansi and Banda about 240–280; Orai and Kalpi about 220–240; Karwi about 280; Lalitpur above 320	Not read [TBC]
Catchment area for which the relationships apply	A	km²	25–2,500, for "reasonably free catchments"; a "suitable increase" for steep foothill catchments	Derived from 25 of 45 catchments of 30–4,479 km²; the stated range of application not read [TBC]	25–2,500; up to 5,000 "judiciously"	25–2,500; up to 5,000 "based on sound judgement"
Report reference	—	—	§3.9 (p. 42), §3.11 and §3.12 (p. 57), text table (p. 61)	Relationship table (p. 32), pp. 11–12, 34 and 43	Relationship table (p. 20), pp. 22–23	Relationship table (p. 20), pp. 21–23, §5.3

Note: relationships as printed in the four CWC reports that cover Uttar Pradesh (References of Chapter 3), read from scanned copies and checked against the page images except where marked as read by optical character recognition only. L is the length of the main stream in km, S its equivalent slope in m/km and A the catchment area in km². Three entries are to be resolved before use. In subzone 1(b) the relationship table gives qp = 1.251 tp^−0.610, but the step-by-step procedure in the text prints 1.215 (p. 21); the two differ by about 3% in qp, and this Manual uses the table [TBC]. In subzone 1(c) the peak equation is printed with "(L/S)", without the root sign that the other subzones use, and the text also speaks of "qp vs L/S"; whether L/√S was meant is to be checked against the axis of Fig. 3 of the report [TBC]. The 1(e) report number is not on the copy read [TBC]. The 1(f) report's worked example reproduces from these relationships: for a catchment of 299.53 km² with L = 27.03 km and S = 0.048 m/km (L/√S = 123.37), they give qp = 0.0455 m³/s per km² against the report's 0.046, and tp = 29.4 h from the report's qp; the report adopts tp = 27 h, Tm = 30 h and TD = 24 h, and with a 50-yr 24-hour point rainfall of 34.0 cm, an ARF of 0.91 and a base flow of 14.98 m³/s it gives a 50-yr peak of 338.77 m³/s (optical character recognition, checked by recomputation). The design loss rates are φ-indices fitted to the floods of whole rural catchments; they are not soil infiltration capacities and are not used to assign HSG (Clause 3.7) or to size infiltration practices (Chapter 4). The reports were derived from gauged rural catchments at railway and road bridges (1(e) 23 catchments, 137 bridge-years of 1961–1982; 1(f) 25 catchments; 1(c) 11; 1(b) 19 of 26.18–5,729 km²), none of them urban. In Uttar Pradesh they apply to the rural nalas and streams that enter city limits, such as the Kukrail at Lucknow and the Varuna at Varanasi, which appear in the stream list of the 1(f) report (optical character recognition [TBC]); they are not a model of city catchments. Where a city catchment lies within 25–5,000 km², the SUH is computed only as the benchmark of its natural condition (Clause 3.11.4), and the catchment itself is designed by the methods of Clause 3.4 with the design rainfall of Chapter 2. The 6-hour unit graph of 1(f) and its design storm of at least 6 hours make it unsuitable below about 100 km². The rivers through the large cities, the Gomti (25,270 km² within 1(f)), the Ghaghra, the Rapti, the Ganga and the Yamuna, are far larger than the catchments of any report and are outside Clause 3.11.4 (Clause 3.4.5). The ratios understate the short storms of Uttar Pradesh: with the 1(f) ratios, the 50-yr 1-hour depth at Lucknow is about 74–87 mm, against 106.0 mm from the station analysis of Kathuria, Kaur and Mehra (1987), so the ratios are not to be used to derive intensities for durations shorter than the TD of the SUH (Chapter 2). Subzone boundaries: the 1(e)/1(f) boundary of Plate 8 of the 1(f) report runs from just west of Lakhimpur south-west to the Yamuna near 79.9° E, so Lucknow, Kanpur and the land east of them are in 1(f), and the upper Gomti and Sai are in 1(e); Prayagraj north of the Ganga is in 1(f), the land between the Ganga and the Yamuna is on the 1(f)/1(c) boundary, and the land south of the Yamuna is in subzone 1(d); and the southern ravines of Agra and Etawah are in 1(b). The report for the Sone subzone 1(d), which covers Sonbhadra, the south of Mirzapur and Chandauli and the trans-Yamuna part of Prayagraj, was not found during research for this Manual [TBC]; until it is obtained, no SUH benchmark is given here for that subzone.

Table 3E.2 — Worked example outline (layout)

Step	Content	Clause
1	Catchment area, main stream length, length to centroid and equivalent slope, from survey or DEM	3.11.4(a)
2	SUH parameters from Table 3E.1 and the plotted unit hydrograph	3.11.4(a)
3	Design storm duration, point and areal 24-hour rainfall with climate factor, time distribution	3.11.4(a), (b)
4	Effective rainfall after the design loss rate; convolution with the SUH; base flow added	3.11.4(a)
5	1% AEP peak compared with the HEC-HMS or SWMM peak for the existing natural condition	3.11.4(c), (d)

Form 3-1 — Hydrologic Calculation Summary

Supports Clauses 3.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, 3.10–3.13, 3.15–3.17 of Chapter 3.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One form per submittal. Attach the documents listed in Section H.

A. Project

Table 3F.1 — Form 3-1: project

Field	Entry
A1. Project name and applicant	
A2. Location (village or ward, survey numbers, district)	
A3. Site area (ha) and number of points of comparison (POCs)	
A4. Catchment class: standard (Clause 2.11.2) or flood-sensitive (Clause 2.11.3)	
A5. Design Rainfall Sheet reference (Form 2-1)	

B. Method and software (Clauses 3.4, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16)

Table 3F.2 — Form 3-1: method and software

Field	Entry
B1. Purpose of each calculation (conveyance, storage, comparison, catchment study)	
B2. Contributing area for each purpose (ha or km²)	
B3. Method used and the row of Table 3.1 that permits it	
B4. Reason for the choice of method	
B5. Software and version; engine and version for packages built on SWMM or HEC (Clause 3.16.1, 3.16.2)	
B6. For other software: benchmark results of Annex 3C attached (Table 3C.7) and the 5% comparison of Clause 3.16.2	
B7. Runoff transform (Clause 3.11.1)	
B8. Computation interval Δt (h), with 0.133 Tc of the smallest sub-area and the hyetograph time step (Clause 3.11.3(a))	
B9. Storage routing and channel routing methods (Clauses 3.12.1, 3.12.2)	
B10. Dynamic-wave routing required? If yes, which condition of Clause 3.12.4	
B11. CWC SUH benchmark required (25–5,000 km², Clause 3.11.4)? Result reference	
B12. Continuous simulation required (Clause 3.13.1)? Record used and starting tank levels (Clause 3.13.5)	
B13. Calibration required (Clause 3.15.1)? Calibration report reference	

C. Soils and groundwater (Clauses 3.3.3(b), 3.7, 3.10)

Table 3F.3 — Form 3-1: soils and groundwater

Field	Entry
C1. HSG source map, scale and lookup used (Clause 3.7.1, Annex 3A) or NEH Part 630, Ch. 7 assignment (Clause 3.7.2)	
C2. Infiltration tests: number, locations, depths, results (Clause 3.7.3)	
C3. Seasonal high water table: depth below ground and source (Clause 3.10.2)	
C4. Areas within 0.6 m assigned HSG D (Clause 3.10.1)	
C5. Disturbed pervious areas and HSG downgrade applied (Clause 3.3.3(b))	

D. Parameters by sub-area and condition (Clauses 3.3, 3.5, 3.8, 3.9; Clause 3.17 item 4)

Table 3F.4 — Form 3-1: parameters by sub-area and condition

Sub-area	Condition (pre / post)	Area (ha)	Impervious: roofs / paved / roads (ha)	DCIA (ha)	Disconnected (ha)	HSG	CN, AMC II	CN, AMC III (pervious part)	C and Cf (if Rational)	Tc (min)

E. Time of concentration worksheet (Clause 3.6)

One worksheet per sub-area and condition.

Table 3F.5 — Form 3-1: time of concentration worksheet

Segment	Flow type	Surface and n (Table 3.4)	L (m)	S (m/m)	P2 (mm)	V (m/s)	Tt (min)
1	Sheet					—	
2	Shallow concentrated				—		
3	Channel or pipe				—		
	Tc (not less than 10 min)						

E1. Is the post-development Tc shorter than the pre-development Tc? If not, explain (Clause 3.6.6): _____

F. Rainfall and losses (Clauses 3.8.4, 3.8.5, 3.11.5, 3.12, 3.3.5)

Table 3F.6 — Form 3-1: rainfall, losses and starting levels

Field	Entry
F1. AEPs and durations run; climate factor applied (Chapter 2)	
F2. AMC used for each duration (Clause 3.8.4)	
F3. Ia ratio for design runs; Ia = 0.05S sensitivity run made (Clause 3.8.5)	
F4. Peak rate factor used; if lower than 484, the Annex 3D value and the land it applies to (Clause 3.11.5)	
F5. Starting water level of each tank or waterbody, and its basis (Clauses 3.12.5, 3.13.5)	

Field	Entry
F6. Off-site run-on: land use assumed for conveyance and for the comparison (Clause 3.3.5)	
F7. Incidental storage counted? If yes, the authority's acceptance (Clause 3.12.3)	

G. Departures

Table 3F.7 — Form 3-1: departures from Chapter 3

No.	Clause departed from	Value used in place of the Chapter 3 value	Justification
1			
2			

H. Attachments (Clause 3.17)

Table 3F.8 — Form 3-1: attachments

Item	Attached (yes / no / not applicable)	Reference
H1. Catchment maps, pre- and post-development, with sub-areas, Tc flow paths, POCs and off-site run-on		
H2. HSG map, water-table data and infiltration test results		
H3. Parameter tables (Section D) and Tc worksheets (Section E)		
H4. Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) and hyetographs		
H5. Hydrograph tables and plots; stage–storage and stage–discharge tables; routed outflows; peak water levels		
H6. Form 3-2 for each POC		
H7. Calibration report (Clause 3.15)		
H8. Native model input and output files (Clause 3.16.4)		

I. Statement by the responsible engineer (Clause 3.17 item 10)

I state that the methods and parameters of Chapter 3 of the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual (Draft v1.0) have been used in this submittal, and that every departure is listed and justified in Section G.

Table 3F.9 — Form 3-1: statement by the responsible engineer

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Organisation	
Signature	
Date	

Form 3-2 — Pre- vs Post-Development Comparison

Supports Clauses 3.8.5, 3.11.5 and 3.14 of Chapter 3.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One form for each point of comparison (POC). Flows in m³/s, volumes in m³.

A. Point of comparison (Clause 3.14.2)

Table 3F.10 — Form 3-2: point of comparison

Field	Entry
A1. POC identifier and location	
A2. Area draining to the POC: site (ha) and off-site run-on (ha)	
A3. Off-site run-on passes through site storage? (Clause 3.14.2(c))	
A4. Catchment class: standard (Clause 2.11.2) or flood-sensitive (Clause 2.11.3)	
A5. Tailwater applied, including joint cases of Clause 2.12 (Clause 3.14.9(c))	
A6. Flood-sensitive only: largest 10% AEP pre-development peak over all durations, the cap of Clause 2.11.3 (Clause 3.14.7)	
A7. Flood-sensitive only: 50% AEP pre-development peak at the pre-development critical duration (Clause 2.11.3)	

B. Peak flows (Clauses 3.14.7–3.14.10)

Limit: standard catchments 0.9 × Q_pre for the same AEP and duration (Clause 3.14.10(a)); flood-sensitive catchments the caps A6 (for 1% AEP) and A7 (for 50% AEP) (Clause 3.14.10(b)).

Table 3F.11 — Form 3-2: peak flows by AEP and duration

AEP	Duration (h)	AMC	Q_pre	Q_post, uncontrolled	Q_post, routed	Limit	Met?
50% (2-yr)	1	II					
50% (2-yr)	2	II					
50% (2-yr)	3	II					
50% (2-yr)	6	II					
50% (2-yr)	12	III					
50% (2-yr)	24	III					
50% (2-yr)	48	III					
50% (2-yr)	72	III					
10% (10-yr)	1	II					
10% (10-yr)	2	II					
10% (10-yr)	3	II					
10% (10-yr)	6	II					

AEP	Duration (h)	AMC	Q_pre	Q_post, uncontrolled	Q_post, routed	Limit	Met?
10% (10-yr)	12	III					
10% (10-yr)	24	III					
10% (10-yr)	48	III					
10% (10-yr)	72	III					
1% (100-yr)	1	II					
1% (100-yr)	2	II					
1% (100-yr)	3	II					
1% (100-yr)	6	II					
1% (100-yr)	12	III					
1% (100-yr)	24	III					
1% (100-yr)	48	III					
1% (100-yr)	72	III					

C. Volumes and storage (Clauses 3.14.8–3.14.10)

Table 3F.12 — Form 3-2: volumes and storage

AEP	Governing duration (h)	Runoff volume, pre	Runoff volume, post uncontrolled	Retention volume	Detention storage required	Peak water level in storage (m)
50% (2-yr)						
10% (10-yr)						
1% (100-yr)						

C1. Governing duration for storage, and the 24, 48 and 72 h results (Clause 3.14.10): _____

D. Sensitivity runs (Clauses 3.8.5, 3.14.11)

Table 3F.13 — Form 3-2: sensitivity runs

Run	Governing storm (AEP, duration)	Change in Q_post, routed (%)	Change in required storage (%)	Retention volume or WQv governing (Clause 3.8.5(c))
Ia = 0.05S				
Standard peak rate factor (only where a lower factor is used)				—

E. Associated checks (Clause 3.14.12)

Table 3F.14 — Form 3-2: associated checks

Check	Result	Reference in submittal
Drawdown times (Chapter 4)		
Minimum orifice and trash screen (Chapter 4)		
Emergency spillway (Chapter 4)		
Outfall-closed storage check (Chapter 5)		
Downstream analysis (Chapter 5)		

F. Statement by the responsible engineer

I state that this comparison has been made by the procedure of Clause 3.14, with the same design storms in the pre- and post-development runs, and that no runoff has been diverted from one natural catchment to another to meet the criterion (Clause 3.14.2(b)).

Table 3F.15 — Form 3-2: statement by the responsible engineer

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 4

Site Runoff Control: Retention and Detention

These annexes support Chapter 4. Annex 4C is a complete Tier A worked example with routing tables, built on the illustrative example of Clause 4.6.7. Annex 4B sets out the structure of the Tier B tables, the provisional fixed release coefficients and a standard orifice table computed from the Chapter 4 orifice equation; the values that need NIH-DHAARA depths are still to be derived. Annex 4A needs GIS and groundwater data that this draft does not yet contain; it gives the intended layout and the interim rules of Chapter 4. Forms 4-1 to 4-3 are the submittal forms required by Clause 4.17. They are draft forms and have no statutory status.

Annex 4A — Flood-sensitive catchment boundaries (GIS); shallow-groundwater zone map

Supports Clauses 4.5.3, 4.5.4 and 4.12 of Chapter 4.

4A.1 **Flood-sensitive catchment boundaries.** The catchments are those listed in Clause 4.5.3.2, with any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4. Their maps and GIS layer are the same data set as Annex 1B, which lists the catchments and gives the attribute layout of the layer. The two annexes shall be issued together.

4A.2 **Shallow-groundwater zone map.** This map shows the areas where Clause 4.12 applies: the khadar floodplains of the Ganga, the Yamuna and their tributaries, the north-east terai, the waterlogged canal commands such as that of the Sharda Sahayak, and the low-lying land behind the embankments of the Gomti at Lucknow and the Rapti at Gorakhpur, and any area where the groundwater table lies within 3 m of the surface at any time of year (Clause 4.12.1).

To be prepared. This annex will contain (a) the boundaries of the flood-sensitive catchments as a GIS layer and as maps at a scale fit for deciding whether a plot lies inside them, and (b) a map of the shallow-groundwater zone of Clause 4.12.1, with the seasonal high groundwater depth during and after the SW monsoon. It needs basin and sub-basin boundaries from a digital elevation model and the drainage network (I&WRD, NRSC, Survey of India), the floodplain zones of the Ganga and the Yamuna notified by I&WRD by coordinates on the 1-in-100-year flood, the 100-year flood levels of the Hindon computed by I&WRD, the embankments, regulators and drains of I&WRD, the ponds, tals and drains recorded in the revenue records and in the Master Plans, Zonal Plans and layout plans under the 1973 Act, and the boundaries and 50 m zones of influence of Ramgarh Tal and of the other wetlands notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017, town boundaries (the development authorities, Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA and UPSIDA, the Nagar Nigams and other urban local bodies, and the Directorate of Local Bodies), flood maps held by UPSDMA, observation-well records of the CGWB and the UP Ground Water Department, and the extent of the khadar of the river floodplains, the usar (sodic) soils, the terai deposits, and the granite-gneiss and the thin red and black soils of Bundelkhand from soil survey maps (NBSS&LUP, the Uttar Pradesh Department of Agriculture (soil survey) [TBC]). Until it is published: (a) the catchments named in Clause 4.5.3.2 apply, and whether a site lies in one is decided and recorded as set out in Annex 1B; and (b) every site to which Clause 4.12.1 may apply establishes its design groundwater level from site piezometer readings over one June–November season or, failing that, from the nearest CGWB or State observation well plus 0.5 m and the design flood level of any adjacent river, nala or tal (Clause 4.12.1(b)). For the flotation check in the khadar floodplains and the north-east terai without piezometer readings, the design groundwater level is existing ground level (Clause 4.12.1).

Table 4A.1 — Attributes of the shallow-groundwater zone layer (layout)

Field	Content	Unit or format
zone_id	Unique identifier	text
zone_class	khadar floodplain; north-east terai; waterlogged canal command (Sharda Sahayak or other); land behind a river embankment (Gomti at Lucknow, Rapti at Gorakhpur or other); other area with groundwater within 3 m of the surface (Clause 4.12.1)	text
shgw_depth_m	Seasonal high groundwater depth below ground, SW monsoon season	m
shgw_basis	Wells or piezometers used, and period of record	text
tidal_influence	Whether the groundwater level follows an adjacent tidal water body (Clause 4.12.1(b))	yes / no
source	Source agency and date of the data	text
geometry	Zone boundary	polygon

Annex 4B — Tier B tables: PSD and SSR (Table 4.3), retention credit factor C_R, standard outlet sizes; confirmed fixed release coefficients (Table 4.3A)

Supports Clauses 4.4.6.3, 4.14.1, 4.14.2 and 4.14.4 to 4.14.6 of Chapter 4.

4B.1 This annex will hold four tables. Their status in this draft is:

Table 4B.1 — Contents of Annex 4B and their status

Table	Content	Clause	Status in this draft
4B.2	Tier B permissible site discharge (PSD) and site storage requirement (SSR), the values of Table 4.3	4.14.2	To be prepared
4B.3	Retention credit factor C_R	4.4.6.3	To be prepared; C_R = 0 until published
4B.4	Standard outlet sizes	4.14.2 step 4, 4.14.6	Computed in this annex from the orifice equation of Clause 4.6.5.2
4B.5	Fixed release coefficients C_10 and C_2 (Table 4.3A)	4.14.4	Provisional values of Table 4.3A; confirmed values to be prepared

4B.2 PSD and SSR (Table 4.3)

To be prepared. This table will give, for each rainfall zone, hydrologic soil group and post-development imperviousness, the PSD for the 2-yr and 100-yr stages and the SSR, for standard and flood-sensitive catchments, in the layout of Table 4.3. It needs NIH-DHAARA design depths with the climate factor for each zone (Chapter 2, Annex 2A), the sub-daily ratios of Annex 2B, and routing of a set of standard sites by the full method of Clause 4.6 for every AEP and duration of Table 4.1. Each PSD shall be the governing release cap and each SSR the governing storage per hectare, with a margin so that the simplified method is never cheaper than routing. Until it is published, Tier B sites use Clause 4.6, or the fixed-coefficient route of Clause 4.14.3 where the site is 1 ha or less (Clauses 4.14.1 and 4.14.3).

Table 4B.2 — Tier B PSD and SSR (layout of Table 4.3)

Zone (Annex 2A)	HSG	Imperviousness	PSD 2-yr (L/s/ha)	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), standard	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), flood-sensitive	SSR (m³/ha), standard	SSR (m³/ha), flood-sensitive
UP-Z1 West: UP-A West doab and NCR	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand: UP-B Central–east Ganga plain	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
UP-Z2 Central–east plain and Bundelkhand: UP-E Bundelkhand and Vindhyan	C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand: UP-C North-east terai	C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
UP-Z3 Terai and Rohilkhand: UP-D Rohilkhand and western terai	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—

4B.3 Retention credit factor C_R

To be prepared. This table will give C_R for each rainfall zone, hydrologic soil group and design infiltration or drawdown rate of the retention practice (Clauses 4.4.3 and 4.4.6.3). It needs routing of the full duration set of Clause 2.5.2 with NIH-DHAARA depths, with the retention practice modelled as in Clause 4.4.6.2, and the credit expressed as the reduction in governing storage per cubic metre of retention provided. Until it is published, **C_R = 0** (Clause 4.4.6.3).

Table 4B.3 — Retention credit factor C_R (layout)

Zone (Annex 2A)	HSG	Design infiltration or drawdown rate (mm/h)	C_R (–)

4B.4 Standard outlet sizes

4B.4.1 Table 4B.4 gives the largest circular orifice, in 5 mm steps, whose discharge does not exceed a stated permissible discharge at a stated head. It is computed from the orifice equation with the discharge coefficient of Clause 4.6.5.2:

$$Q = 0.60 \times (\pi d^2 / 4) \times \sqrt{(2 g H)}$$

where Q is the discharge (m³/s), d the orifice diameter (m), g = 9.81 m/s² and H the head from the water level to the centre of the orifice (m). Sizes are rounded **down**, so that the orifice never passes more than the permissible discharge. Where the computed size is below 50 mm, the 50 mm minimum of Clause 4.8.2 is shown; it is deemed to comply under

Clause 4.5.5.1.

4B.4.2 The table assumes free discharge. Where the tailwater can rise above the orifice (Clause 4.6.6), H is the difference between the upstream and downstream water levels and the orifice shall be checked by routing. The State Stormwater Technical Committee may replace this table when it issues Annex 4B.

Table 4B.4 — Largest orifice diameter (mm) for a permissible discharge at a given head (Cd = 0.60, free discharge)

Permissible discharge (L/s)	H = 0.5 m	H = 1.0 m	H = 1.5 m	H = 2.0 m
5	55	50	50	50
10	80	65	60	55
15	100	80	75	70
20	115	95	85	80
30	140	115	105	100
50	180	150	135	130
75	225	185	170	155
100	260	215	195	180
150	315	265	240	225
200	365	305	275	260
300	450	375	340	315

Check: for 50 L/s at H = 1.0 m, the area is 0.050 / (0.60 × √(2 × 9.81 × 1.0)) = 0.0188 m², so d = √(4 × 0.0188 / π) = 0.155 m, rounded down to 150 mm.

4B.5 Fixed release coefficients (Table 4.3A)

4B.5.1 Table 4B.5 repeats the provisional coefficients of Table 4.3A. They may be used now under the fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14.4).

Table 4B.5 — Fixed release coefficients C_10 and C_2 (provisional, Table 4.3A)

Hydrologic soil group	C_10	C_2	Clause	Status
A (sandy, well drained)	0.05	0.02	4.14.4	Provisional
B	0.08	0.03	4.14.4	Provisional
C	0.15	0.08	4.14.4	Provisional
D (clay, poorly drained)	0.25	0.15	4.14.4	Provisional

To be prepared. The confirmed coefficients will replace Table 4B.5. They need NIH-DHAARA depths for each zone and the greenfield curve numbers of Clause 3.3, as described in the commentary to Clause 4.14. Until they are published, the provisional values of Table 4.3A apply.

Annex 4C — Worked example (Tier A) with full routing tables

Supports Clauses 4.4 to 4.9, 4.15 and 4.17 of Chapter 4.

Illustrative — not design values. This example continues the illustrative example of Clause 4.6.7. Its inputs are invented to be plausible for the Kukrail catchment in north Lucknow; they are not NIH-DHAARA values and must not be used for design. Part 1 sets out the inputs, hydrographs and routing step by step, for a trial outlet. Part 2 finds that the trial outlet fails the drawdown check with the blockage of Clause 4.8.3, and revises it to the outlet reported in Table 4.2. Part 3 completes the spillway, outlet, safety and retention checks. The outfall-closed check of Chapter 5 for the same facility on an outfall behind the Gomti embankment in Lucknow is in Annex 5C.

Part 1 — Inputs, hydrographs and routing (Clauses 4.6.1 to 4.6.4)

4C.1 **Inputs.**

Table 4C.1 — Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value	Basis
Site area A	2.0 ha (0.02 km²), one outfall	Clause 4.6.7
Catchment class	Flood-sensitive (Clause 4.5.3)	Clause 4.6.7
Land cover and curve numbers, AMC II	Pre-development: all pervious, CN 70. Post-development, as two sub-areas: directly connected impervious 1.57 ha at CN 98, and pervious open space 0.43 ha at CN 70 (same soil as pre-development). Impervious fraction f = (92 − 70) / (98 − 70) = 0.786, so the area-weighted CN is 92	Clauses 3.9.2, 4.6.7
AMC III conversion	Pervious areas only, for storms of 12 h and longer: CN_III = 23·CN / (10 + 0.13·CN) = 84.3. The impervious CN 98 is not converted	Clause 3.8.4
Initial abstraction	Ia = 0.2S; Ia = 0.05S as a sensitivity run	Clause 3.8.5
Time of concentration Tc	45 min pre-development; 15 min post-development, used for both sub-areas, because the open space is small and drains through the same site system	Clause 4.6.7
Unit hydrograph	SCS triangular; tL = 0.6 Tc; tp = Δt/2 + tL; base 2.67 tp	Clauses 3.6.5, 3.11.2
Time step Δt	5 min (= Tc/3 of the post-development site)	Clause 4.6.2, step 8
24-h depths, 2-, 10-, 100-yr	110, 200, 350 mm, taken as including the climate factor	Clause 4.6.7
Shorter durations	P(t) = P24 · (t/24)^0.40 (assumed ratio set, not Annex 2B)	Clause 4.6.7
48-h and 72-h depths	1.25 and 1.40 × P24, with the 24-h depth on the last day	Clauses 4.6.7, 2.9.2
Storage	Open, vertical-walled, 2,500 m² plan area, excavated, no embankment, not publicly accessible	Clause 4.6.7
Trial outlet	Stage 1: 120 mm orifice at the floor. Stage 2: 470 mm orifice, invert 0.533 m above the floor. No Stage 3	Trial for this annex; Part 2 revises it
Outfall	Free outfall to a receiving drain whose level stays below the outlet invert	Illustrative input

The example follows Clauses 3.8.4 and 3.9.2: the runoff of each sub-area is computed separately and the two are added before routing.

4C.2 **Design rainfall.** Table 4C.2 gives the depths. For example, the 100-yr 6-hour depth is 350 × (6/24)^0.40 = 350 × 0.574 = 201.0 mm.

Table 4C.2 — Design rainfall depths, mm (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	1	2	3	6	12	24	48	72
50% AEP (2-yr)	30.9	40.7	47.9	63.2	83.4	110.0	137.5	154.0
10% AEP (10-yr)	56.1	74.0	87.1	114.9	151.6	200.0	250.0	280.0
1% AEP (100-yr)	98.2	129.5	152.3	201.0	265.3	350.0	437.5	490.0

4C.3 **Hyetographs.** Storms up to 24 h use the alternating-block method in 5-minute blocks with the peak block at mid-storm (Clause 2.9.1). The 48- and 72-hour storms spread the depth in excess of the 24-hour depth uniformly over the first 24 or 48 h and place the 24-hour alternating-block storm on the last day (Clause 2.9.2). For the 100-yr 72-hour storm: (490.0 − 350.0) / 576 blocks = 0.243 mm per 5 minutes for the first 48 h; the peak 5-minute block on the last day is 350 × (5/1440)^0.40 = 36.3 mm, at 60:00–60:05 h.

4C.4 **Losses.** Table 4C.3 gives S = 25,400/CN − 254 (mm) and Ia = 0.2S. The runoff depth for a rainfall depth P is Q = (P − Ia)² / (P − Ia + S) for P > Ia, and zero otherwise.

Table 4C.3 — Curve numbers and abstractions (Illustrative — not design values)

Condition	AMC	CN	S (mm)	Ia = 0.2S (mm)
Pre-development	II (durations ≤ 6 h)	70	108.9	21.8
Pre-development	III (durations ≥ 12 h)	84.3	47.3	9.5
Post-development pervious open space (0.43 ha)	II (durations ≤ 6 h)	70	108.9	21.8
Post-development pervious open space (0.43 ha)	III (durations ≥ 12 h)	84.3	47.3	9.5
Post-development directly connected impervious (1.57 ha)	All durations (not converted)	98	5.2	1.0

Check: 100-yr 24 h, post-development. Impervious: Q = (350.0 − 1.0)² / (350.0 − 1.0 + 5.2) = 343.9 mm. Pervious, AMC III: Q = (350.0 − 9.5)² / (350.0 − 9.5 + 47.3) = 299.0 mm. Site: 0.786 × 343.9 + 0.214 × 299.0 = 334.2 mm. The post-development columns of Table 4C.4 are these area-weighted site depths.

Table 4C.4 — Storm runoff depth Q, mm (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	AMC	2-yr pre	2-yr post	10-yr pre	10-yr post	100-yr post
1	II	0.7	20.1	8.2	41.3	79.2
2	II	2.8	28.2	16.9	57.2	108.5
3	II	5.1	34.2	24.5	69.0	130.2
6	II	11.4	47.5	42.9	94.7	177.1
12	III	45.0	70.5	106.6	137.2	249.9
24	III	68.4	96.4	152.6	185.1	334.2
48	III	93.5	123.3	201.0	234.7	421.5
72	III	108.9	139.6	230.3	264.5	473.9

The runoff volume is 10 × Q × A = 20 × Q m³ for this 2.0 ha site: for example 9,478 m³ for the 100-yr 72-hour storm. The routed hydrographs carry up to 0.5% less, because the 5-minute alternating-block storm places 349.5 mm rather than 350.0 mm on the last day.

4C.5 **Unit hydrographs.** The runoff in each 5-minute block (for the post-development site, the sum of the two sub-areas) is convolved with the triangular unit hydrograph of Table 4C.5. The peak is qp = 0.208 × A × Q / tp, with A in km² and Q = 1 mm (Clause 3.11.2).

Table 4C.5 — Unit hydrograph parameters (Illustrative — not design values)

Condition	Tc (h)	tL = 0.6 Tc (h)	tp = Δt/2 + tL (h)	Base 2.67 tp (h)	qp (L/s per mm of runoff)
Pre-development	0.75	0.45	0.492	1.313	8.5
Post-development	0.25	0.15	0.192	0.512	21.7

4C.6 **Release caps (Clause 4.5.3).** The site is flood-sensitive, so the mixed-frequency rule applies. The 100-yr cap is the largest pre-development 10-yr peak over all durations: **356 L/s** (72 h; Table 4.2). The 2-yr cap is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak: **180 L/s** (72 h). Each cap applies to every post-development duration (Clause 4.5.3.1).

4C.7 **Stage–storage–discharge.** The basin is vertical-walled, so storage S = 2,500 × h (m³), where h is the stage above the floor (m). Outlet discharge follows Clause 4.6.5.2 with Cd = 0.60:

- Stage 1, for h ≥ d: Q1 = 0.60 × A1 × √(2g (h − d/2)). For h < d (orifice part-full), the head is taken as d/2 and the result is multiplied by h/d.
- Stage 2 is counted once the water is above its centre: Q2 = 0.60 × A2 × √(2g (h − z2 − d2/2)), where z2 is its invert. Below its centre its flow is ignored, which slightly over-states storage.

Table 4C.6 — Stage–storage–discharge, trial outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

Stage h (m)	Storage (m³)	Stage 1, 120 mm (L/s)	Stage 2, 470 mm (L/s)	Total (L/s)
0.00	0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.06	150	3.7	0.0	3.7
0.12	300	7.4	0.0	7.4
0.20	500	11.2	0.0	11.2
0.30	750	14.7	0.0	14.7
0.40	1,000	17.5	0.0	17.5
0.50	1,250	19.9	0.0	19.9
0.60	1,500	22.1	0.0	22.1
0.70	1,750	24.0	0.0	24.0
0.80	2,000	25.9	83.0	108.9
0.90	2,250	27.5	167.8	195.3
1.00	2,500	29.1	222.3	251.4
1.10	2,750	30.7	265.8	296.5
1.20	3,000	32.1	303.2	335.3
1.30	3,250	33.5	336.4	369.9
1.40	3,500	34.8	366.7	401.5

Check at h = 1.00 m: Q1 = 0.60 × 0.01131 × √(19.62 × 0.94) = 0.0291 m³/s; Q2 = 0.60 × 0.1735 × √(19.62 × (1.00 − 0.533 − 0.235)) = 0.2223 m³/s.

4C.8 **Routing.** Each storm is routed by level-pool continuity (Clause 4.6.1): over each 5-minute step, the change in storage equals inflow volume minus outflow volume. The computation used six 50-second sub-steps per 5-minute step. Each row of Table 4C.7 can be checked by hand as ΔS ≈ (I − Ō) × 300 s, where I is the mean inflow over the 5-minute step ending at the time shown and Ō is the mean of the outflows at the start and end of the step. For example, between 60:15 and 60:20: ΔS = 2,853.0 − 2,613.3 = 239.7 m³, and (1.0891 − (0.2655 + 0.3069)/2) × 300 = 240.9 m³.

Table 4C.7 — Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, around the peak (Illustrative — not design values)

Time (h:min)	Rainfall in step (mm)	Inflow I (L/s)	Outflow O (L/s)	Storage S (m³)	Stage h (m)
60:00	8.44	286.3	169.5	2,164.0	0.866
60:05	36.33	354.2	184.1	2,216.9	0.887
60:10	11.61	703.3	218.0	2,367.1	0.947
60:15	6.88	1,066.0	265.5	2,613.3	1.045
60:20	5.23	1,089.1	306.9	2,853.0	1.141
60:25	4.34	897.5	334.8	3,025.0	1.210
60:30	3.77	653.2	349.9	3,117.6	1.247
60:35	3.36	403.6	353.8	**3,132.9**	**1.253**
60:40	3.05	301.5	352.3	3,117.3	1.247
60:45	2.81	254.8	348.6	3,088.7	1.235
60:50	2.61	224.9	343.7	3,052.4	1.221
60:55	2.45	203.3	337.9	3,011.3	1.205

Storage is greatest at the end of the step ending at 60:35. In the next step the mean inflow (302 L/s) is below the outflow (about 352 L/s), so storage falls.

Table 4C.8 — Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, hourly (Illustrative — not design values)

Time (h)	Cumulative rainfall (mm)	Inflow (L/s)	Outflow (L/s)	Stage (m)	Storage (m³)
12	35.0	14	8	0.130	325
24	70.0	15	12	0.215	536
36	105.0	16	14	0.264	660
48	140.0	16	15	0.294	736
54	181.7	47	19	0.469	1,172
57	213.5	69	23	0.623	1,559
59	248.5	120	91	0.789	1,971
60	293.3	286	170	0.866	2,164
61	378.0	187	332	1.187	2,967
62	399.3	106	237	0.968	2,421

Time (h)	Cumulative rainfall (mm)	Inflow (L/s)	Outflow (L/s)	Stage (m)	Storage (m³)
63	414.5	80	142	0.829	2,072
66	446.9	51	52	0.771	1,927
72	489.5	33	33	0.768	1,920
84	489.5	0	18	0.405	1,012
96	489.5	0	10	0.167	418
108	489.5	0	4	0.058	146

The routed outflow volume equals the inflow volume (about 9,470 m³): detention delays the volume but does not remove it.

4C.9 **Results, trial outlet.** Table 4C.9 gives the peaks, maximum stages and drawdown times for the trial outlet.

Table 4C.9 — Results for the trial outlet (120 mm and 470 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	2-yr detained (L/s)	2-yr max stage (m)	10-yr detained (L/s)	10-yr max stage (m)	100-yr detained (L/s)	100-yr max stage (m)	100-yr storage (m³)	10-yr 90% drawdown, clean (h)	10-yr 90% drawdown, 50% blocked (h)
1	9	0.15	15	0.30	22	0.59	1,468	27.2	54.2
2	11	0.20	18	0.42	89	0.79	1,966	28.3	57.0
3	13	0.24	20	0.50	135	0.82	2,058	29.3	59.1
6	15	0.31	23	0.64	190	0.89	2,229	31.1	63.4
12	17	0.40	49	0.77	279	1.06	2,647	36.2	69.2
24	19	0.45	87	0.79	334	1.20	2,991	42.8	75.4
48	20	0.51	144	0.83	353	1.25	3,129	42.5	72.7
72	20	0.52	147	0.84	354	1.25	**3,133**	42.5	71.9

The drawdown time is measured from the time of maximum 10-yr storage until 90% of that storage has been released (Clause 4.7.1).

Part 2 — Checks and revision of the outlet (Clauses 4.5, 4.7 and 4.8)

4C.10 **Release caps.** Every 100-yr detained peak is at or below 356 L/s, and every 2-yr detained peak is far below the 2-yr cap of 180 L/s. Both caps are met. The 2-yr peaks are not compared duration by duration with the pre-development peaks: for a flood-sensitive site the 2-yr cap is the single largest pre-development 2-yr peak (Clause 4.5.3.1).

4C.11 **Drawdown.** Clause 4.8.3 requires the low-flow orifice to be assumed **50% blocked** when drawdown is checked. With the 120 mm orifice at half its area, 90% of the 10-yr storage takes 54 to 75 h to drain (Table 4C.9), against the 48-hour limit of Clause 4.7.1. **The trial outlet fails.** With a clean orifice it would drain in about 42 h.

4C.12 **Revised outlet.** The low-flow orifice was increased in 10 mm steps until the blocked drawdown met 48 h for every duration, and Stage 2 was then re-sized so that the 100-yr cap was still met. The result:

- Stage 1: **170 mm** orifice at the floor;
- Stage 2: **460 mm** orifice, invert 0.53 m above the floor (centre at 0.76 m);
- no Stage 3.

The larger low-flow orifice releases more in frequent storms. That is acceptable here because the 2-yr cap of a flood-sensitive site is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak (Clause 4.5.3.1). The WQv is assumed to be treated in a separate practice upstream (Chapter 8), so Stage 1 is not required to hold the WQv for 24–48 h (Clause 4.6.5.1); where Stage 1 also releases the WQv, Clause 4.7.2 must be checked as well.

Table 4C.10 — Stage–storage–discharge, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

Stage h (m)	Storage (m³)	Stage 1, 170 mm (L/s)	Stage 2, 460 mm (L/s)	Total (L/s)
0.00	0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.085	213	8.8	0.0	8.8
0.17	425	17.6	0.0	17.6
0.30	750	28.0	0.0	28.0
0.40	1,000	33.9	0.0	33.9
0.50	1,250	38.9	0.0	38.9
0.60	1,500	43.3	0.0	43.3
0.70	1,750	47.3	0.0	47.3
0.76	1,900	49.6	0.0	49.6
0.80	2,000	51.0	88.3	139.3
0.90	2,250	54.5	165.3	219.7
1.00	2,500	57.7	216.4	274.1
1.10	2,750	60.8	257.5	318.3
1.17	2,925	62.8	282.8	345.6
1.20	3,000	63.7	293.0	356.7
1.30	3,250	66.5	324.6	391.1

Table 4C.11 — Results for the revised outlet (170 mm and 460 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	2-yr detained (L/s)	2-yr max stage (m)	10-yr detained (L/s)	10-yr max stage (m)	10-yr storage (m³)	100-yr detained (L/s)	100-yr max stage (m)	100-yr storage (m³)	10-yr 90% drawdown, 50% blocked (h)
1	15	0.14	28	0.29	734	42	0.57	1,426	31.3
2	20	0.19	34	0.40	990	79	0.76	1,911	32.1
3	22	0.22	37	0.46	1,147	139	0.80	1,999	32.8
6	25	0.26	41	0.56	1,386	194	0.86	2,154	34.2
12	30	0.33	46	0.68	1,692	276	1.01	2,512	39.0
24	32	0.37	49	0.75	1,870	320	1.11	2,766	45.3
48	34	0.40	82	0.77	1,913	343	1.17	**2,913**	44.8
72	34	0.41	84	0.77	1,915	343	1.16	2,911	44.7

Findings:

- **100-yr cap:** largest detained peak 343 L/s ≤ 356 L/s. Met.
- **2-yr cap:** largest detained peak 34 L/s ≤ 180 L/s. Met.
- **Drawdown:** longest blocked drawdown 45.3 h ≤ 48 h (Clause 4.7.1). Met.
- **Governing storage: 2,913 m³** (100-yr, 48 h), at a maximum stage of **1.17 m**. The larger low-flow orifice releases more water early in the long storms, so the revised outlet needs about 220 m³ less storage than the trial outlet. Table 4.2 in Clause 4.6.7 reports this revised design.
- **Governing storms (Clause 4.6.2, step 12):** storage, the 100-yr 48-hour storm; Stage 1, the 10-yr 24-hour storm (drawdown); Stage 2, the 100-yr 48-hour storm (cap).

Part 3 — Sensitivity, retention, spillway, outlet details and safety

4C.13 **Ia = 0.05S sensitivity (Clause 3.8.5).** With S converted as S0.05 = 25.4 × 1.33 × (S0.20 / 25.4)^1.15, the governing 100-yr 48-hour run gives 2,898 m³ of storage and a 341 L/s peak, slightly below the default run. The pre-development 10-yr peak, and so the 100-yr cap, falls to 344 L/s. The design is based on the default run (Clause 3.8.5(c)); the sensitivity results are reported on Form 3-2.

4C.14 **Retention and retention credit (Clauses 4.4.2 and 4.4.6).** With an illustrative retention depth P_R = 40 mm, Q_R is computed for each sub-area at AMC II, because a composite CN is not used for retention (Clause 3.9.4). Impervious, CN 98: S = 5.2 mm, Ia = 1.0 mm, Q_R = (40 − 1.0)² / (40 − 1.0 + 5.2) = 34.4 mm. Pervious, CN 70: S = 108.9 mm, Ia = 21.8 mm, Q_R = (40 − 21.8)² / (40 − 21.8 + 108.9) = 2.6 mm. RRV = 10 × (34.4 × 1.571 + 2.6 × 0.429) = **552 m³**. The retention is modelled as a store that is empty at the start of the storm and captures all runoff until full, with no infiltration during the storm (Clause 4.4.6.2).

Table 4C.12 — Retention credit by routing, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

100-yr storm	Storage without retention (m³)	Storage with retention (m³)	Reduction (m³)
24 h	2,766	2,628	138
48 h	2,913	2,906	7
72 h	2,911	2,911	0

The governing storage falls from 2,913 to 2,906 m³, so the retention credit is 7 m³, about 1% of the RRV. The retention is still required in full for its own purposes (Clause 4.4.1, Chapter 8).

4C.15 **Emergency spillway (Clause 4.9).** The facility is excavated, with no embankment, so Clause 4.9.7 applies: the overflow route is treated as the spillway and must meet Clause 4.9.1.

- Design flow: the 1% AEP peak inflow, 1,089 L/s, with the outlet blocked and the basin full to the crest.
- Crest: the 1% AEP maximum water level with the outlet working is 1.17 m; with the recommended 0.15 m clearance (Clause 4.9.3) the crest is set at **1.35 m**.
- Crest length: a broad-crested weir with Q = C × L × H^1.5, C = 1.7 (an illustrative coefficient for a broad-crested weir in SI units; Clause 4.6.5.2 requires a coefficient suited to the shape). With L = 4.0 m: H = (1.089 / (1.7 × 4.0))^(2/3) = 0.295 ≈ **0.30 m**.
- Maximum level with the spillway flowing: 1.35 + 0.30 = 1.65 m. With 0.3 m freeboard (Clause 4.9.1), the top of the walls is at least **1.95 m** above the floor.
- The spillway discharges to the 1% AEP overland flow path, away from buildings (Clause 4.9.4).

4C.16 **Outlet details (Clause 4.8).**

Table 4C.13 — Outlet checks, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Requirement	Value	Result
Minimum orifice	≥ 50 mm (Clause 4.8.2)	170 mm	Met
Rack bar spacing	≤ half the smallest opening and ≥ 25 mm (Clause 4.8.3)	≤ 85 mm	Set at 75 mm
Rack open area	≥ 10 × area protected (Clause 4.8.3)	10 × (0.0227 + 0.1662) m² = 1.89 m² for one rack around both orifices	Provide ≥ 1.89 m²
Anti-vortex, Stage 1	Needed if head > 1.5 d (Clause 4.8.4)	Head up to 1.08 m > 0.26 m	Required
Anti-vortex, Stage 2	Needed if head > 1.5 d (Clause 4.8.4)	Head above centre up to 0.41 m < 0.69 m	Not required
Isolation	Facility serving > 1 ha (Clause 4.8.6)	Serves 2.0 ha	Stop-log slot or penstock, normally open
Outlet barrel	≥ 300 mm (Clause 4.8.5)	Sized under Chapter 9 for 343 L/s	To be designed

4C.17 **Safety (Clause 4.15).** The 10-yr depth (0.77 m) exceeds the 0.45 m limit for publicly accessible storage (Clause 4.15.1(a)), so the facility is not open to the public. It has vertical walls higher than 0.6 m and a depth of more than 1.2 m when the spillway flows, so a non-climbable fence at least 1.2 m high with a lockable gate is required (Clause 4.15.3). Signs and a depth marker are provided (Clause 4.15.5).

4C.18 **Summary of the design (Illustrative — not design values).**

Table 4C.14 — Summary of the revised design (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value
Storage	2,500 m² plan area; 2,913 m³ at the 1% AEP maximum level of 1.17 m
Stage 1	170 mm orifice at the floor, with trash rack and anti-vortex plate
Stage 2	460 mm orifice, invert 0.53 m
Spillway	Crest 1.35 m, length 4.0 m, maximum level 1.65 m
Top of walls	≥ 1.95 m above the floor
100-yr peak release	343 L/s (cap 356 L/s)
2-yr peak release	34 L/s (cap 180 L/s)
10-yr drawdown, 50% blocked	45.3 h (limit 48 h)
Retention	RRV 552 m³ provided in addition; credit 7 m³
Still to be checked	Outfall-closed check on an outfall behind the Gomti embankment in Lucknow (Annex 5C); downstream analysis (Chapter 5); groundwater and flotation (Clause 4.12); WQv (Chapter 8)

Form 4-1 — Site Runoff Control Report

Supports Clauses 4.3 to 4.17 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One form for each site. Where the site drains to more than one outfall, complete Sections E to J for each outfall (Clause 4.5.1.3). Tier B sites using Clause 4.14.2 attach Form 4-2 in place of Sections F and G; sites using the fixed-coefficient route attach Form 4-3 in place of Sections F and G (Clause 4.17).

A. Site and route

Table 4F.1 — Form 4-1: site and route

Field	Entry
A1. Project name and applicant	
A2. Location (village or ward, survey numbers, district)	
A3. Approving Authority and tier (Tier A / Tier B)	
A4. Site area, land disturbance and new or replaced impervious area (ha, ha, m²) (Clause 4.1.2)	
A5. Number of outfalls (Clause 4.5.1.3)	
A6. Sizing route: full method (Clause 4.6) / Tier B tables (Clause 4.14.2) / fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14.3)	
A7. Constrained redevelopment route used (Clause 4.5.6)? If yes, attach the Constraint Statement, the existing-condition model and the shortfall and fee computation	

B. Inputs (Clause 4.17, item 1)

Table 4F.2 — Form 4-1: inputs

Field	Entry
B1. Design Rainfall Sheet reference (Form 2-1)	
B2. Hydrologic Calculation Summary reference (Form 3-1)	
B3. HSG of each sub-area and the tests that confirm it (Clause 4.6.2, step 1)	
B4. Pre-development condition and CN (Clause 4.5.1.2)	
B5. Post-development CN of each sub-area, and Tc pre and post	
B6. Routing method and software, with version; time step (Clauses 4.6.1, 4.6.2)	

C. Order of measures (Clause 4.3.1; Clause 4.17, item 2)

Table 4F.3 — Form 4-1: order of measures

Step	What the design does	Why this step cannot do more
1. Preserve		
2. Retain		

Step	What the design does	Why this step cannot do more
3. Detain		
4. Convey		

D. Retention (Clause 4.4; Clause 4.17, items 3 and 4)

Table 4F.4 — Form 4-1: retention

Field	Entry
D1. Retention depth P_R (mm) and zone (Annex 2E)	
D2. Runoff depth Q_R (mm) by sub-area and RRV (m³) (Clause 4.4.2)	
D3. Retention practices and volume provided (m³)	
D4. Infiltration tests: number, locations and depths, measured rates (mm/h) (Clause 4.4.3(a))	
D5. Design infiltration rate (mm/h), not more than half the measured rate (Clause 4.4.3(b))	
D6. Seasonal high groundwater depth below the base of each practice (m), at least 1.0 m (Clause 4.4.3(c))	
D7. Reuse demand calculation, where retention is by reuse (Clause 4.4.3)	
D8. Retention drawdown time (h), not more than 72 h (Clause 4.4.5)	
D9. Shortfall in RRV (m³), if any, treated as WQv (Clause 4.4.4.2)	
D10. Governing storage without and with retention, and the retention credit (m³) (Clause 4.4.6)	
D11. Preservation credit areas and covenant reference (Clause 4.4.7)	

E. Release criteria (Clause 4.5; Clause 4.17, item 5)

Table 4F.5 — Form 4-1: release criteria

Field	Entry
E1. Catchment class: standard (Clause 4.5.2) or flood-sensitive (Clause 4.5.3), with the Annex 4A map extract	
E2. Release caps by AEP (L/s), and the duration that sets each cap	
E3. Clause 4.5.5 used (50 mm orifice deemed to comply, or the short-duration 2-yr relief)? Report any 2-yr exceedance	

F. Results (Clause 4.6; Clause 4.17, item 6)

Complete one row for each duration, in the format of Table 4.2. Mark the governing case for storage, for each outlet stage and for the spillway (Clause 4.6.2, step 12).

Table 4F.6 — Form 4-1: results by duration (L/s; m³)

Duration (h)	2-yr pre	2-yr post, detained	10-yr pre	10-yr post, detained	100-yr post, uncontrolled	100-yr post, detained	100-yr storage used
1							
2							

Duration (h)	2-yr pre	2-yr post, detained	10-yr pre	10-yr post, detained	100-yr post, uncontrolled	100-yr post, detained	100-yr storage used
3							
6							
12							
24							
48							
72							

G. Facility, drawdown and outlet (Clauses 4.7, 4.8, 4.10; Clause 4.17, items 7 to 9)

Table 4F.7 — Form 4-1: facility, drawdown and outlet

Field	Entry
G1. Facility type (Clause 4.10) and storage provided (m^3)	
G2. Stage–storage and stage–discharge tables and plots; inflow and outflow hydrographs for the governing cases (attach)	
G3. 10-yr drawdown: time to release 90% of the maximum stored volume (h), with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked (Clauses 4.7.1, 4.8.3)	
G4. WQv release time (h), 24 to 48 h (Clause 4.7.2)	
G5. Tidal outfall: drawdown with the tidal tailwater, and any pumped drawdown (Clause 4.7.4)	
G6. Each outlet stage: type, size (mm), invert level (m)	
G7. Trash racks: clear bar spacing (mm) and open area (m^2) (Clause 4.8.3)	
G8. Anti-vortex devices (Clause 4.8.4); outlet barrel diameter and seepage control (Clause 4.8.5); isolation (Clause 4.8.6)	
G9. Proprietary devices: certified head–discharge curve and minimum clear opening (Clause 4.6.5.3)	

H. Spillway, freeboard and embankment (Clause 4.9; Clause 4.17, item 10)

Table 4F.8 — Form 4-1: spillway and freeboard

Field	Entry
H1. Hazard classification, with reasons (Clause 4.9.2)	
H2. 1% AEP peak inflow (L/s); 0.2% AEP peak inflow for high-hazard facilities (L/s)	
H3. 1% AEP maximum water level with the outlet working (m); spillway crest level (m) (Clause 4.9.3)	
H4. Spillway or overflow route: type, dimensions, maximum level with the outlet blocked (m)	
H5. Freeboard to the embankment crest or wall top (m), at least 0.3 m (Clause 4.9.1)	
H6. Spillway location and discharge path (Clause 4.9.4)	
H7. Embankment height (m); geotechnical report where more than 2 m (Clause 4.9.6)	

I. RWH accounting, groundwater and flotation (Clauses 4.11, 4.12; Clause 4.17, items 11 and 12)

Table 4F.9 — Form 4-1: RWH, groundwater and flotation

Field	Entry
I1. RWH storage provided (m³), assumed full at the start of every storm (Clause 4.11.2)	
I2. Combined RWH and detention tanks: zone levels and the detention orifice level (Clause 4.11.3); attach tank sections	
I3. Design groundwater level and its basis (Clause 4.12.1)	
I4. Lined or unlined storage; volume below the design groundwater level not counted (Clause 4.12.2)	
I5. Flotation factor of safety, at least 1.2 (Clause 4.12.3)	

J. Downstream, tailwater, safety and maintenance (Clause 4.17, items 13 and 14)

Table 4F.10 — Form 4-1: downstream, tailwater, safety and maintenance

Field	Entry
J1. Downstream and Tailwater Report (Form 5-1) or Simplified Downstream Statement (Form 5-2) reference	
J2. Tailwater used in routing, and flap gate where tailwater governs (Clause 4.6.6)	
J3. Public access, depths in the 10% and 1% AEP storms, slopes, fencing, grates, signs and depth markers (Clause 4.15)	
J4. Draft maintenance declaration reference (Chapter 10)	

K. Statement by the registered professional (Clause 10.6)

I state that this report has been prepared under Chapter 4 of the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual (Draft v1.0), that the results reported are reproduced by the models submitted, and that every departure from Chapter 4 is listed with its reason. The Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) is attached.

Table 4F.11 — Form 4-1: statement by the registered professional

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Empanelment number, where Clause 10.6.1 requires it	
Organisation	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Form 4-2 — Tier B Site Sheet

Supports Clauses 4.4.6.3, 4.14.1 and 4.14.2 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. This sheet replaces items 6 and 7 of the Site Runoff Control Report (Form 4-1) for Tier B sites using Clause 4.14.2. It can be used only after Table 4.3 is published in Annex 4B; until then, Tier B sites use Clause 4.6 or, for sites of 1 ha or less, the fixed-coefficient route (Clauses 4.14.1 and 4.14.3).

A. Eligibility (Clause 4.14.1)

Table 4F.12 — Form 4-2: eligibility

Field	Entry
A1. Local body (Tier B)	
A2. Site area A (ha): 2 ha or less outside flood-sensitive catchments; 0.5 ha or less inside them	
A3. Catchment class: standard or flood-sensitive (Annex 4A)	

B. Table 4.3 values (Clause 4.14.2, step 1)

Table 4F.13 — Form 4-2: values read from Table 4.3

Field	Entry
B1. Rainfall zone (Annex 2A)	
B2. Hydrologic soil group	
B3. Post-development imperviousness (%)	
B4. PSD 2-yr (L/s/ha)	
B5. PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), for the catchment class	
B6. SSR (m³/ha), for the catchment class	

C. Storage and release (Clause 4.14.2, steps 2 and 3)

Table 4F.14 — Form 4-2: storage and release

Line	Quantity	Computation	Value
C1	RRV provided (m³)	Clause 4.4	
C2	C_R	Annex 4B; 0 until published	
C3	V_credit (m³)	C2 × C1 (Clause 4.4.6.3)	
C4	Required storage V (m³)	B6 × A − C3	
C5	Storage provided (m³)	From drawings	
C6	Q_PSD,2 (L/s)	B4 × A	

Line	Quantity	Computation	Value
C7	Q_PSD,100 (L/s)	B5 × A	

D. Outlet and other provisions (Clause 4.14.2, steps 4 and 5)

Table 4F.15 — Form 4-2: outlet and other provisions

Field	Entry
D1. Low-flow orifice: diameter (mm) from the Annex 4B outlet table, head (m), at least 50 mm	
D2. Upper control: type, size and level	
D3. Spillway or overflow (Clause 4.9)	
D4. RWH accounting (Clause 4.11)	
D5. Safety provisions (Clause 4.15)	

E. Statement

I state that the values above are taken from Annex 4B for the site's zone, soil group, imperviousness and catchment class, and that the storage and outlets shown on the drawings match them.

Table 4F.16 — Form 4-2: statement

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Form 4-3 — Fixed-coefficient Route Sheet (Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7)

Supports Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. This sheet replaces items 6 and 7 of the Site Runoff Control Report (Form 4-1) for sites using the fixed-coefficient route. Complete it for each point where runoff leaves the site (Clause 4.14.4). Figure 4.3 shows the method.

A. Eligibility (Clause 4.14.3)

Table 4F.17 — Form 4-3: eligibility

Check	Yes / No
A1. Site area 1 ha or less	
A2. The design does not count tank or waterbody storage (Clause 4.14.3(a))	
A3. No part of the site lies within a waterbody setback (Clause 4.14.3(b))	
A4. The site does not drain to a tank cascade whose storage is counted in a downstream design (Clause 4.14.3(c))	

B. Release caps (Clause 4.14.4)

Table 4F.18 — Form 4-3: release caps

Line	Quantity	Source or computation	Value
B1	Site area A (ha)	Survey	
B2	Area of each hydrologic soil group (ha)	Clause 3.7	
B3	C_10 and C_2, area-weighted	Table 4.3A	
B4	i_10 and i_2 (mm/h), 15-minute duration, with the climate factor	Form 2-1; Clause 2.8	
B5	Q_cap,10 (L/s)	2.78 × C_10 × i_10 × A	
B6	Q_cap,2 (L/s)	2.78 × C_2 × i_2 × A	
B7	Discharge of a 50 mm orifice at the corresponding stage (L/s), where a cap is smaller (Clause 4.5.5.1)	Orifice equation, Clause 4.6.5.2	

C. Volumetric coefficient (Clause 4.14.5)

Table 4F.19 — Form 4-3: volumetric coefficient C_v

Line	Quantity	Value
C1	Composite C of Table 3.2 (upper half of each range)	
C2	Cf of Table 3.3 for the 1% AEP	
C3	C_v for durations below 12 h (C1 × C2)	
C4	C_v for durations of 12 h or more, with C for every pervious surface not less than 0.50	

D. Storage (Clause 4.14.5)

For each duration: inflow = 10 × C_v × P(d) × A (m³); release = 1.8 × Q_cap × d (m³); difference = inflow − release. V_100 and V_2 are the largest differences; V is the larger of the two.

Table 4F.20 — Form 4-3: storage by duration

d (h)	P_100(d) (mm)	100-yr inflow (m³)	1.8 × Q_cap,10 × d (m³)	100-yr difference (m³)	P_2(d) (mm)	2-yr inflow (m³)	1.8 × Q_cap,2 × d (m³)	2-yr difference (m³)
1								
2								
3								
6								
12								
24								
48								
72								

Table 4F.21 — Form 4-3: storage required and provided

Line	Quantity	Value
D1	V_100 (m³) and governing duration	
D2	V_2 (m³) and governing duration	
D3	V = larger of D1 and D2 (m³)	
D4	Storage provided (m³)	

E. Outlet, retention and other checks (Clauses 4.14.3, 4.14.6, 4.14.7)

Table 4F.22 — Form 4-3: outlet, retention and other checks

Field	Entry
E1. Low-flow orifice: diameter (mm) and invert; discharge (L/s) with the storage holding V_2 full, not more than Q_cap,2	
E2. Upper orifice or weir: size and level; total release (L/s) at the top of V, not more than Q_cap,10	
E3. Retention volume of Clause 4.4 provided in addition to V (m³); no retention credit taken	
E4. Drawdown (Clause 4.7), trash racks (Clause 4.8), spillway (Clause 4.9): reference to Form 4-1 Sections G and H	
E5. Downstream and tailwater checks (Chapter 5) and water quality (Chapter 8): references	

F. Statement

I state that the site meets the eligibility conditions of Clause 4.14.3 and that the caps, storage and outlets above have been computed by Clauses 4.14.4 to 4.14.7.

Table 4F.23 — Form 4-3: statement

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 5

Downstream and Tailwater Analysis

These annexes support Chapter 5. Annex 5C is a worked example of the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10, for the illustrative facility of Annex 4C. Annexes 5A and 5B need tidal, surge, survey and river data that this draft does not yet contain; each lists what the chapter already sets, gives the intended layout and states the interim rule of Chapter 5 that applies until it is published. Forms 5-1 and 5-2 are the submittal forms required by Clause 5.14. They are draft forms and have no statutory status.

Annex 5A — Tidal datums (MSL, MHWS, HAT vs CD and Survey of India datum), surge allowances and 1% still-water levels by coastal segment

Supports Clauses 5.7, 5.9, 5.10, 5.11 and 5.12 of Chapter 5.

5A.1 Table 5A.1 shows how the values of this annex enter the design tailwater levels of Table 5.1. The sea-level allowance is set by Clause 5.7.4 and does not depend on this annex.

Table 5A.1 — Use of the Annex 5A values in the design tailwater (Table 5.1)

Design case	Tailwater	Annex 5A values used	Chapter value
Minor-system design	MHWS + SLA	MHWS	SLA ≥ +0.3 m (Clause 5.7.4)
Major-system and storage design	HAT + surge + SLA	HAT; 10% AEP surge (Clause 5.7.3(a))	SLA ≥ +0.3 m
Joint case (Clause 2.12(b))	1% AEP still-water level + SLA	1% AEP still-water level (Clause 5.7.3(b))	SLA ≥ +0.3 m
Datum conversion	Chart datum to project datum	Offset from chart datum to the Survey of India datum (Clause 5.7.2(b))	—

Not prepared for Uttar Pradesh. Uttar Pradesh has no coast, so no outfall in the State has a tidal tailwater, and this annex has no Uttar Pradesh content (Clause 5.1.4). Its tables are kept, empty, so that the annex and table numbers match the other editions of this Manual. Rows F1 to F7 of Form 5-1 are entered as "not applicable", and the tailwater is derived under rows F8 to F10.

Table 5A.2 — Tidal datums, surge and still-water levels by coastal segment (layout)

Coastal segment	Reference port and tide-table edition	MSL (m CD)	MHWS (m CD)	HAT (m CD)	CD to Survey of India datum (m)	10% AEP surge (m)	1% AEP still-water level (m CD)	Wave set-up (m), open-sea outfalls	Sources

Coastal segment	Reference port and tide-table edition	MSL (m CD)	MHWS (m CD)	HAT (m CD)	CD to Survey of India datum (m)	10% AEP surge (m)	1% AEP still-water level (m CD)	Wave set-up (m), open-sea outfalls	Sources

Annex 5B — Major drains, riverine outfall reaches, and river mouths subject to sand-bar closure; map

Supports Clauses 5.2, 5.3, 5.8 and 5.13 of Chapter 5.

5B.1 Table 5B.1 lists the water bodies that Chapter 5 already names. It is not complete: the annex will add the extents of each reach, the other rivers, canals and mouths of the State, and a map.

Table 5B.1 — Water bodies named in Chapter 5

Water body	Region	Listed as	Clause
Gomti through Lucknow, between its embankments, with the Gomti barrage and the Kukrail confluence	Lucknow	Riverine outfall reach; gated and pumped outfalls (Kukrail and Wazirganj pumping stations); design river level not below the transferred 110.85 m (Hanuman Setu, 1971; danger 109.5 m; conflicting values of 108.50 m and 108.81 m reported [TBC]); lock of at least 7 days; barrage operating rule [TBC]	5.8.1, 5.8.3, 5.8.5
Ganga at Phaphamau and Yamuna at Naini, to and below the Sangam	Prayagraj	Riverine outfall reach; both rivers coincident; design river level not below the transferred 87.98 m (Phaphamau) and 87.99 m (Naini), 1978; danger 84.734 m and 84.73 m; lock of at least 7 days	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Ganga at Kanpur	Kanpur	Riverine outfall reach; design river level not below the transferred 114.08 m (2010); danger 114.0 m	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Ganga at Varanasi, with the Varuna and the Assi	Varanasi	Riverine outfall reach; design river level not below the transferred 73.901 m (1978); danger 71.262 m; Ganga level carried up the Varuna and the Assi	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Hindon through Ghaziabad and Noida to the Yamuna	Ghaziabad, Gautam Buddh Nagar	Riverine outfall reach; design river level not below 197.28 m at Noida (26 July 2023) transferred, and not below the I&WRD 100-year levels (196.367–205.390 m, km 0–49; 205.20 m at km 110); floodplain not yet demarcated; danger level [TBC]	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Yamuna along Noida below the Okhla barrage	Gautam Buddh Nagar	Riverine outfall reach; Hathnikund releases routed through Delhi; Okhla barrage gates as operated (operating rule [TBC]); Hindon confluence	5.8.1, 5.8.3, 5.8.5
Yamuna at Agra and Mathura, with the Taj East Drain	Agra, Mathura	Riverine outfall reach; design river level not below the transferred 154.76 m at Agra (154.87 m reported at Poiyaghat) and 169.73 m at Mathura (1978); danger 152.4 m and 166.0 m	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Rapti and Rohin at Gorakhpur, with the embanked city	Gorakhpur	Riverine outfall reach; land behind the embankments routed as closed storage; permanent pumps only; embankment-breach check; design river level not below the transferred 77.54 m at Birdghat (1998); danger 74.98 m	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Ramgarh Tal and its six inflow nalas	Gorakhpur	Major drains (inflow nalas); notified wetland; no storage credit without records; outflow control [TBC]	5.2, 5.8.5

Water body	Region	Listed as	Clause
Kukrail, Qila Mohammadi nala and the other drains that outfall to the Gomti	Lucknow	Major drains; river-locked outfalls; I&WRD consent and design water level [TBC] where the channel is I&WRD's	5.2, 5.8.5
Sisamau nala and the other drains that outfall to the Ganga	Kanpur	Major drains; river-locked outfalls	5.2, 5.8.5
Drains and canals of I&WRD, irrigation canals receiving storm water, and drains of Nagar Nigams, development authorities, industrial development authorities and UP Jal Nigam 1.0 m wide or more	Uttar Pradesh	Major drains; owner's consent, design water level and flap gate	5.2, 5.8.5
Hathnikund barrage (Haryana); Okhla barrage; Gomti barrage and Lakshman Mela regulator	Yamuna; Gomti	Releases and gate operation to be included in river levels (operating rules and release records [TBC])	5.8.3, 5.8.5
River mouths subject to sand-bar closure	None in Uttar Pradesh	Not applicable (Clause 5.1.4)	5.13.1

To be prepared. This annex will list and map (a) the major drains of each basin plan, (b) the riverine outfall reaches where backwater shall be modelled, with their upstream and downstream limits and the source of their design flood levels, and (c) the river mouths and creek inlets subject to seasonal sand-bar closure, with the most recent pre-monsoon bar crest levels and any I&WRD mouth-maintenance programme. It needs I&WRD river and canal records, design and recorded flood levels, reservoir operating rules, mouth-condition, dredging and bar-cutting records and pre-monsoon bar surveys (I&WRD), the drain inventories of LMC and other local bodies, basin stormwater master plans (Chapter 11), and base mapping from the Survey of India and NRSC. Until it is published: every river, I&WRD canal, the Kukrail and the other nalas that outfall to the Gomti in Lucknow, including the Qila Mohammadi nala, the nalas that outfall to the Ganga at Kanpur, including the Sisamau nala, the nalas that outfall to the Ganga and the Yamuna at Prayagraj, the Varuna and the Assi at Varanasi, the Taj East Drain and the other nalas that outfall to the Yamuna at Agra and Mathura, the Hindon and the drains that outfall to it or to the Yamuna in Ghaziabad and Noida, the nalas that outfall to the Rapti and the Rohin at Gorakhpur and the six inflow nalas of Ramgarh Tal, any drain of I&WRD, any drain maintained by a Nagar Nigam, a development authority, an industrial development authority or UP Jal Nigam with an internal width of 1.0 m or more, any irrigation canal that receives storm water and every tidal creek is a major drain (Clause 5.2); the water bodies of Table 5B.1 are riverine outfall reaches (Clause 5.8.1); and the mouths of the coastal States' rivers (there is none in Uttar Pradesh) are assumed closed at the start of the SW monsoon unless I&WRD certifies otherwise (Clause 5.13.2).

Table 5B.2 — Attributes of the Annex 5B layers (layout)

Field	Content	Unit or format
feature_id	Unique identifier	text
name	Name of the drain, river, canal, creek or mouth	text
category	Major drain; riverine outfall reach; mouth subject to sand-bar closure	text
clause	Clause of Chapter 5 under which it is listed	text
reach_limits	Upstream and downstream limits of the reach	text
design_flood_level_source	I&WRD design or highest recorded flood level, or hydraulic model (Clause 5.8.2)	text
reservoir_release	Upstream reservoir or tank and its operating rule, where any (Clause 5.8.3)	text
bar_crest_level	Most recent pre-monsoon bar crest level, for mouths	m (Survey of India datum)

Field	Content	Unit or format
mouth_programme	I&WRD mouth-maintenance programme and certification (Clause 5.13.2)	text
source	Source agency and date	text
geometry	Line (drains and reaches) or point (mouths)	line / point

---

Annex 5C — Worked example: outfall-closed check for a site behind the Gomti embankment in Lucknow

Supports Clauses 5.9, 5.10, 5.11 and 5.12 of Chapter 5 and Clause 4.6.6 of Chapter 4.

Illustrative — not design values. This example applies the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 to the revised detention facility of Annex 4C. The site, its levels and its receiving drain are invented to show the method. No tidal level is used: the tide enters only through the illustrative statements in Table 5C.1 about whether the receiving drain is above or below the site outlet.

Inputs

5C.1 The site is the 2.0 ha flood-sensitive site of Annex 4C. It discharges through its own outlet chamber and a flap gate to a public storm drain that reaches the Gomti through a gated and pumped outfall in the river embankment, so Clause 5.10.1 applies to the facility. To show the method, this example uses the two 6-hour lock windows of Clause 5.10.3, as the coastal editions of this Manual do. A river-locked outfall in Uttar Pradesh has a single lock of at least 7 days under Clause 5.8.5(a), covering the whole storm, so the facility must store or pump the whole storm volume (Clause 5.9.4); that needs more storage, or pumping, than this example shows. The routing, the volume balance of Clause 5.10.4 and the assessment are the same.

Table 5C.1 — Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value	Basis
Facility	Revised facility of Annex 4C: 2,500 m² plan area, vertical walls; 170 mm orifice at the floor; 460 mm orifice, invert 0.53 m	Annex 4C, Table 4C.14
Storm	1% AEP, 48 h, peak day last, AMC III; 72 h also run	Clause 5.10.2
Inflow	Post-development 1% AEP hydrographs of Annex 4C (48 h: 8,420 m³; 72 h: 9,468 m³)	Annex 4C
Receiving drain levels at the connection, J1, J2 and J3	Below the site outlet invert (from the drain owner's model)	Illustrative input
Receiving drain during each lock window	Backs up above the site outlet invert, so the site cannot discharge	Illustrative input; Clause 5.10.3(b)
Flap gate on the site outlet	Set 0.15 m below the orifice inverts in the outlet chamber, so that outside the lock windows its opening head and head loss do not affect the orifice control	Illustrative input; to be confirmed from the certified curve (Clause 5.11.2)
Lock windows	Two of 6 h each, starts 12.4 h apart (semi-diurnal tide)	Clause 5.10.3(a)
Pumps	None	—

5C.2 **Cases of Table 5.2.** Because the receiving drain stays below the site outlet in J1, J2 and J3 (Table 5C.1), those cases give the free-outfall results of Annex 4C: in J2 the 1% AEP maximum water level is **1.17 m** (2,913 m³), and in J3 (10% AEP, 48 h) it is 0.77 m. R1 and R2 do not apply, because the site does not drain to a river. J4, the outfall-closed

check, is worked below.

Lock windows (Clause 5.10.3)

5C.3 The peak 1-hour block of the final 24 hours of the 48-hour storm is 35:35–36:35 h, with 98.2 mm (the 1-hour depth of Table 4C.2). Two runs are made:

- **Run A:** the first window is centred on that block: 33:05–39:05 h; the second starts 12.4 h later: 45:29–51:29 h.
- **Run B:** the first window starts at that block: 35:35–41:35 h; the second: 47:59–53:59 h.

For the 72-hour storm, every time is 24 h later.

5C.4 Gravity discharge is zero inside each window. Outside the windows the outlet discharges through the orifices of Table 4C.10. The routing is the same level-pool routing as in Annex 4C.

Results

Table 5C.2 — Outfall-closed check results (Illustrative — not design values)

Storm	Run	Lock windows (h:min)	Maximum stage (m)	Maximum storage (m³)	Time of maximum (h:min)	Largest release after a window (L/s)
1% AEP, 48 h	A	33:05–39:05; 45:29–51:29	2.01	5,019	39:05	566
1% AEP, 48 h	B	35:35–41:35; 47:59–53:59	**2.10**	**5,238**	41:35	584
1% AEP, 72 h	A	57:05–63:05; 69:29–75:29	2.00	5,012	63:05	565
1% AEP, 72 h	B	59:35–65:35; 71:59–77:59	2.09	5,233	65:35	584

Run B of the 48-hour storm governs. The first window closes the outlet just as the storm peak arrives, so the whole peak is stored. The second window arrives when the facility has drained to about 0.7 m, below the Stage 2 orifice, and adds little.

5C.5 **Volume balance (Clause 5.10.4).** Table 5C.3 gives the balance for Run B. The outflow in each period is found by continuity: outflow = storage at start + inflow − storage at end.

Table 5C.3 — Volume balance, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)

Period (h:min)	Inflow (m³)	Gravity outflow (m³)	Pumped (m³)	Storage at start (m³)	Storage at end (m³)
0:00–35:35, before window 1	3,817	2,213	0	0	1,604
35:35–41:35, window 1	3,634	0	0	1,604	5,238
41:35–47:59, between windows	941	4,423	0	5,238	1,756
47:59–53:59, window 2	28	0	0	1,756	1,784
After 53:59	0	1,784	0	1,784	0
Total	8,420	8,420	0	—	—

Check for window 1: V_{inflow} = 3,634 m³ ≤ $V_{storage\ available} + V_{pumped} + V_{gravity}$ = (5,238 − 1,604) + 0 + 0 = 3,634 m³. The facility therefore needs **5,238 m³** of storage, which the routing confirms.

Table 5C.4 — Stage hydrograph, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)

Time (h)	Inflow (L/s)	Outlet	Outflow (L/s)	Stage (m)	Storage (m³)
24	20	Open	18	0.18	445
28	39	Open	24	0.25	621
32	59	Open	32	0.36	906
34	85	Open	37	0.47	1,166
36	286	Closed	0	0.78	1,944
38	106	Closed	0	1.73	4,321
40	66	Closed	0	1.96	4,904
42	51	Open	529	1.79	4,472
44	42	Open	204	0.87	2,181
46	37	Open	49	0.74	1,854
48	33	Open	47	0.70	1,756
50	0	Closed	0	0.71	1,784
54	0	Closed	0	0.71	1,784
56	0	Open	43	0.58	1,459
60	0	Open	32	0.37	921
66	0	Open	16	0.16	397
72	0	Open	7	0.06	162

Assessment

5C.6 **Clause 5.10.4(a).** The facility of Annex 4C reaches 1.17 m in J2, and its spillway crest is at 1.35 m (Annex 4C). In the outfall-closed check the stage reaches 2.10 m, so the spillway would operate. **The facility of Annex 4C fails the check.**

5C.7 **Remedy.** Pumping (Clause 5.12) does not help here: during the lock windows the receiving drain is itself closed, and pumping into it would raise its level, which Clause 5.12.3 does not permit. The remedy is more storage. Keeping the plan area of 2,500 m² and the outlets of Annex 4C:

- the facility must hold 5,238 m³, to a stage of **2.10 m**;
- the spillway crest is set above that stage, with the 0.15 m clearance recommended in Clause 4.9.3: **2.25 m**;
- with the 4.0 m spillway of Annex 4C (head 0.30 m), the maximum level with the spillway flowing is 2.55 m, and with 0.3 m freeboard the top of the walls is at least **2.85 m** above the floor.

The outfall-closed check therefore governs the storage: 5,238 m³ against 2,913 m³ from the release-rate checks, about 80% more. A larger plan area would make the facility shallower; the outlet, caps and drawdown would then have to be re-checked, because the stage–discharge relationship changes.

5C.8 **Release after the lock.** When the first window ends, the stored water is released under a head of about 2 m, at up to 584 L/s. This is above the 100-yr cap of 356 L/s. Clause 5.10.4 allows this, because the release reaches a drain that has itself just reopened, and requires it to be included in the J4 run of the downstream analysis (Clauses 5.4 and 5.9) and reported on Form 5-1, Section H.

5C.9 **Drawdown after the storm (Clause 5.10.5).** The J1 tidal curve stays below the site outlet (Table 5C.1), so the drawdown of Annex 4C applies: 45.3 h for 90% of the 10-yr storage with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked, within the 48-hour limit of Clause 4.7. In Run B, 90% of the maximum J4 storage is released 22.6 h after the maximum.

5C.10 **Other requirements.**

- The flap gate on the site outlet is inspected and operated before 15 June each year and after every event in which it closed against a storm flow (Clause 5.11.5).
- The deeper facility is checked for flotation with groundwater at the design groundwater level; in the khadar floodplains and the north-east terai without piezometer readings that level is existing ground level (Clauses 4.12.1 and 4.12.3).
- The fence and signs of Annex 4C apply to the deeper facility (Clause 4.15).

Table 5C.5 — Summary (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value
Governing case	J4, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (first window starting at the peak 1-hour block)
Storage required	5,238 m³ (Annex 4C release-rate design: 2,913 m³)
Maximum stage	2.10 m, with 2,500 m² plan area
Spillway crest	2.25 m
Top of walls	≥ 2.85 m above the floor
Largest release after a lock window	584 L/s, to be included in the downstream J4 run
Drawdown	Annex 4C result applies: 45.3 h with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked

Form 5-1 — Downstream and Tailwater Report

Supports Clauses 5.3 to 5.14 of Chapter 5.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One report for each project. Sites of less than 0.5 ha that meet Clause 5.3.4 may submit Form 5-2 instead, where the Authority accepts it. Attach the plans, model files and hydrographs referred to.

A. Project

Table 5F.1 — Form 5-1: project

Field	Entry
A1. Project name, applicant and location	
A2. Project type: site under Chapter 4; drainage project under Chapter 6; regional detention or tank restoration (Clause 5.1.2)	
A3. Site or project area (ha) and outfalls	
A4. Site Runoff Control Report reference (Form 4-1), where applicable	

B. Extent of the analysis (Clause 5.3; Clause 5.14, item 1)

Table 5F.2 — Form 5-1: analysis points

Point	Location	Type (Clause 5.3.3 (a) to (e))	Contributing catchment (ha)	Project area as % of it

Table 5F.3 — Form 5-1: end point

Field	Entry
B1. End point and reason: 10% point, tank or tal, or major drain or the sea (Clause 5.3.1 (a) to (c))	
B2. Where the end point is a tank or tal: change in maximum water level (m) and in surplus-weir discharge (m^3/s); continuation below the weir if the level rises (Clause 5.3.2)	
B3. Plan of the analysis extent, showing the site, each point with its contributing area and percentage, and the end point (attach)	

C. Model (Clause 5.4.4; Clause 5.14, item 2)

Table 5F.4 — Form 5-1: model

Field	Entry
C1. Software and version; hydrologic and hydraulic methods (Clause 5.4.4)	
C2. Network schematic, with the survey sources for drains and crossings (attach)	
C3. Land use and CN of off-site areas (present land use)	

Field	Entry
C4. Upstream detention included, with evidence that it is built, maintained and documented	
C5. Calibration or validation evidence, where available	
C6. Scenarios run: existing, with project, and future where the Authority requires it (Clause 5.4.1)	
C7. Storms run: AEPs and durations, AMC and areal reduction (Clause 5.4.3)	

D. Results at each analysis point (Clause 5.4.2; Clause 5.14, item 3)

Complete one row for each analysis point, AEP and duration. E = existing; P = with project.

Table 5F.5 — Form 5-1: results by analysis point

Point	AEP	Duration (h)	Peak flow E / P (m^3/s)	Time to peak E / P (h)	Maximum water level E / P (m)	Peak velocity E / P (m/s)	Duration of inundation E / P (h)

E. Acceptance (Clause 5.5; Clause 5.14, item 4)

Table 5F.6 — Form 5-1: acceptance criteria

Criterion	Met at every point?	Where not met, the remedy adopted (Clause 5.5.3)
E1. 1% AEP water level rise ≤ 10 mm at buildings, lowest openings and carriageways (Clause 5.5.1(a))		
E2. No building newly flooded; no building or road newly failing the Chapter 6 limits (Clause 5.5.1(b))		
E3. Peak flow not above existing at the minor-system AEP of each element or at 1% AEP (Clause 5.5.1(c))		
E4. Velocity in lined channels within the lining limit, 3.0 m/s maximum (Clause 5.5.1(d))		
E5. Velocity in unlined channels, 50% and 10% AEP, not increased by more than 10% (Clause 5.5.1(e))		
E6. Change in duration of road closure on arterial or emergency routes (Clause 5.5.2)		
E7. Timing exception requested (Clause 5.5.4)? Give the conditions met		

F. Tailwater derivation (Clauses 5.6 to 5.8; Clause 5.14, item 5)

Table 5F.7 — Form 5-1: tailwater derivation

Field	Entry
F1. Tide-table edition and port, or port authority source (Clause 5.7.2(a))	

Field	Entry
F2. MHWS, HAT and MSL (m above chart datum)	
F3. Connection from chart datum to the Survey of India benchmark and the project datum: offset (m) and source (Clause 5.7.2(b))	
F4. Estuary, creek or canal outfall: levels used and any evidence for a departure from open-coast levels (Clause 5.7.2(c))	
F5. 10% AEP surge and 1% AEP still-water level: values, source, method and record length (Clause 5.7.3)	
F6. Wave set-up, for outfalls facing the open sea (Clause 5.7.3(d))	
F7. SLA (m), at least +0.3 m; design life; sensitivity run at twice the SLA for design lives over 50 years (Clause 5.7.4)	
F8. Non-tidal tailwater: receiving-system level and source (Clauses 5.6.2, 5.6.3)	
F9. River levels and sources; reservoir or tank releases included (Clauses 5.8.2, 5.8.3)	
F10. River-locked outfalls, the Gomti through Lucknow, the Sangam reach, the Ganga at Kanpur and Varanasi, the Hindon and the Yamuna at Noida and Ghaziabad, the Rapti at Gorakhpur and I&WRD drains: operator of each gate, sluice and pumping station identified, gate sills, embankment crest, installed capacity and operating levels obtained, with every level tied to the datum of the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge; 1% AEP river level at the outfall from the I&WRD floodplain notification or a model, and not below the highest recorded level at the nearest gauge transferred to the outfall, with the profile used; 10% AEP river level, not below the danger level transferred; drain behind the gate routed with its whole catchment and present storage, pumping confirmed available (permanent pumps only, not more than installed capacity less the largest pump), pumps operable at the design river level; single river lock of not less than 7 days covering the whole storm, and its source; gate-failure and embankment-breach checks; Gomti barrage, Okhla barrage and Hathnikund releases as in the largest recorded event; Gomti level conflict resolved or higher values used; coincident Ganga and Yamuna levels at Prayagraj; main-river level carried up the Kukrail, Varuna, Assi or other tributary; Hindon level not below the 2023 record; no storage credit in Ramgarh Tal without records; I&WRD or owner's consent, permitted rate, design water level or computed channel level, and flap gate (Clause 5.8.5)	

G. Joint cases (Clause 5.9; Clause 5.14, item 6)

Table 5F.8 — Form 5-1: joint-case results

Case	Rainfall	Tailwater used (m, project datum)	Applies?	Governing result (storage, level, pipe size or pump capacity)
J1				
J2				
J3				
J4				
R1				
R2				

H. Outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10; Clause 5.14, item 7)

Table 5F.9 — Form 5-1: outfall-closed check

Field	Entry
H1. Reason the check applies (Clause 5.10.1)	
H2. Storm: AEP, 48 h and 72 h, AMC III (Clause 5.10.2)	
H3. Lock duration and basis: default of two 6-hour windows, or site study (Clause 5.10.6); extension for sand-bar closure (Clause 5.13.5)	

Field	Entry
H4. Lock windows of the two runs (start and end times) (Clause 5.10.3(d))	
H5. Maximum stage in each facility, against its 1% AEP maximum water level (Clause 5.10.4(a))	
H6. Maximum stage in the minor and major systems, against the Chapter 6 limits (Clause 5.10.4(b))	
H7. Property connections: surcharge level, or non-return valves fitted (Clause 5.10.4(c))	
H8. Stage hydrographs (attach)	
H9. Drawdown after the storm under the J1 tidal curve, and pumping where needed (Clause 5.10.5)	

Table 5F.10 — Form 5-1: volume balance for each lock window (Clause 5.10.4)

Period	Inflow (m³)	Gravity outflow (m³)	Pumped (m³)	Storage at start (m³)	Storage at end (m³)
Before window 1					
Window 1					
Between windows					
Window 2					
After window 2					

I. Gates and valves (Clause 5.11; Clause 5.14, item 8)

Table 5F.11 — Form 5-1: schedule of flap gates, tide gates and non-return valves

Location	Type	Size (mm)	Invert (m, project datum)	Certified head–discharge data (reference)	Stop-log or penstock (outfalls > 600 mm)

J. Pumped outfalls (Clause 5.12; Clause 5.14, item 9)

Table 5F.12 — Form 5-1: pumped outfalls

Field	Entry
J1. Reason pumping is needed (Clause 5.12.1)	
J2. Duty capacity (m³/s) at the static head for the J2 tailwater; standby capacity (Clause 5.12.2)	
J3. Effect on the receiving water level (Clause 5.12.3)	
J4. Power supply: two independent supplies, or standby generation with 72 h of fuel; automatic changeover (Clause 5.12.4)	
J5. Level of electrical panels, controls, generators and fuel, against the higher of the 1% AEP flood level + 0.5 m and HAT + surge + SLA + 0.5 m (Clause 5.12.5)	
J6. Discharge arrangement (Clause 5.12.6); controls, alarms and logging (Clause 5.12.7); screens (Clause 5.12.8)	

K. Sand bar (Clause 5.13; Clause 5.14, item 10)

Table 5F.13 — Form 5-1: sand-bar assumption

Field	Entry
K1. River mouth or creek inlet concerned	
K2. Mouth assumed closed, or open with I&WRD certification attached (Clause 5.13.2)	
K3. Bar crest level from the most recent pre-monsoon survey (m) and the closed-mouth tailwater (Clause 5.13.3)	
K4. Extension of the lock duration, where required (Clause 5.13.5)	

L. Inspection and maintenance (Clause 5.14, item 11)

Table 5F.14 — Form 5-1: inspection and maintenance

Field	Entry
L1. Gate and valve inspection before 15 June and after closure events (Clause 5.11.5)	
L2. Pump test runs before 15 June (Clause 5.12.9)	
L3. Other requirements for the maintenance plan (Chapter 10)	

M. Statement by the registered professional (Clause 10.6)

I state that this report has been prepared under Chapter 5 of the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual (Draft v1.0), that the results reported are reproduced by the models submitted, and that every departure from Chapter 5 is listed with its reason. The Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) is attached.

Table 5F.15 — Form 5-1: statement by the registered professional

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Empanelment number, where Clause 10.6.1 requires it	
Organisation	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Form 5-2 — Simplified Downstream Statement (small sites)

Supports Clause 5.3.4 of Chapter 5.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. For sites of less than 0.5 ha. The Authority may accept this statement in place of the full analysis only where every answer in Section B is "Yes". Otherwise submit Form 5-1.

A. Site

Table 5F.16 — Form 5-2: site

Field	Entry
A1. Project name, applicant and location	
A2. Site area (ha), less than 0.5 ha	
A3. Receiving public drain: name or reference, type and size	
A4. Site Runoff Control Report reference (Form 4-1)	

B. Conditions (Clause 5.3.4)

Table 5F.17 — Form 5-2: conditions

Condition	Yes / No	Evidence
B1. The receiving public drain has documented capacity for its minor-system design flow (Chapter 6)		
B2. No flood-prone location is recorded within 500 m downstream of the site outfall. Records checked: local body, LMC, UPSDMA, I&WRD (Clause 5.3.3(d))		
B3. The site does not drain to a tidal or backwater-affected outfall		

C. Route plan

Table 5F.18 — Form 5-2: attachments

Attachment	Attached?
C1. Plan of the drainage route from the site outfall for 500 m downstream, with the receiving drain and any recorded flood-prone locations	
C2. Copy or reference of the drain capacity record	

D. Statement

I state that the site meets the conditions of Clause 5.3.4 as shown above, and that the records listed have been checked.

Table 5F.19 — Form 5-2: statement

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 6

Minor and Major Drainage Systems

These annexes support Chapter 6. Annex 6A (standard inlets and their capacity curves) and Annex 6B (sediment yield) need test and survey data that are not yet available; each states what it will contain and the interim rule to use until it is published. Annex 6C gives standard drawings that carry only the dimensions Chapter 6 and Chapter 9 already set; every other dimension is marked "to be confirmed in design". Form 6-1 is a draft form: it lists what Clause 6.15 requires and does not add to it.

Annex 6A — Standard inlet types for Uttar Pradesh with capacity curves (on grade and sag)

Supports Clauses 6.6.1 to 6.6.7 of Chapter 6 and Clause 9.11 of Chapter 9.

To be prepared. This annex will contain a short list of standard inlet types for Uttar Pradesh streets (kerb-opening, grate and combination inlets, including the road-level wall opening into a covered drain) and, for each type, capacity curves on grade and in a sag. It needs a fixed set of standard inlet geometries agreed with the road-owning agencies, and rating tests of those geometries (laboratory or full-scale), or HEC-22 calculations for each geometry checked against tests (data and likely sources: Public Works Department (PWD), NHAI and Lucknow Municipal Corporation (Nagar Nigam Lucknow) standard details, IIT Kanpur, IIT (BHU) Varanasi, MNNIT Allahabad or other hydraulic laboratories, manufacturers' tested ratings). Until it is published, compute the clean capacity of the inlet actually proposed by the methods of FHWA HEC-22 (4th edition, 2024) or from the manufacturer's tested rating for that exact geometry (Clause 6.6.2), reduce it by the clogging factors of Table 6.5 (Clause 6.6.3), and meet the interim requirements of Table 6A.1.

Table 6A.1 — Interim requirements for inlets until Annex 6A is published (from Chapters 6 and 9)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Inlet type on public streets	Kerb-opening or combination inlets, unless the Approving Authority accepts grate-only inlets for a location	6.6.1(a)
Inlet level	Openings at road level; gutter depression where practicable	6.6.1(b)
Clean capacity	FHWA HEC-22 (4th ed., 2024) or the manufacturer's tested rating for the exact geometry; CPHEEO §5.6.2 equations as a cross-check only	6.6.2
Clogging, on grade	Grate 50%; kerb opening 10%	6.6.3, Table 6.5
Clogging, in a sag	Grate 50%; kerb opening 20%	6.6.3, Table 6.5
Spacing	By sequential calculation from the top of each gutter run; not more than 30 m on kerbed roads	6.6.4
Kerb opening size	Clear height at least 100 mm; length at least 1.0 m	9.11.4

Item	Requirement	Clause
Grate pattern	Openings parallel to the direction of travel not wider than 25 mm	9.11.3(a)
Load class	D400 in carriageways and medians; C250 within 0.5 m of the kerb; B125 in footpaths and cycle tracks (or the equivalent IS class)	9.11.2
Connection pipe	At least 300 mm diameter; gradient giving at least 0.9 m/s at the inlet's design flow	6.6.6
Silt sump	At least 300 mm deep below the outlet pipe invert, cleanable from the surface	6.6.7, 9.11.6

The intended layout of the annex is given in Tables 6A.2 to 6A.4.

Table 6A.2 — Register of standard inlet types (layout)

Type code	Description	Grate size or kerb opening (mm)	Gutter depression (mm)	Load class	Standard drawing
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 6A.3 — Capacity on grade (layout; one table per inlet type)

Cross slope Sx (m/m)	Longitudinal slope SL (m/m)	Gutter flow Q (L/s)	Spread T (m)	Clean intercepted flow (L/s)	Design intercepted flow after clogging (L/s)	Bypass flow (L/s)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 6A.4 — Capacity in a sag (layout; one table per inlet type)

Ponded depth at the inlet (mm)	Clean capacity (L/s)	Clogging factor (Table 6.5)	Design capacity (L/s)	Flow regime (weir, orifice or transition)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 6B — Sediment yield for silt-trap sizing and calibration of the sediment allowance

Supports Clauses 6.7.4, 6.7.8, 6.13.3 and 6.13.10 of Chapter 6.

To be prepared. This annex will contain sediment yields for urban drains in Uttar Pradesh, by land use and drain type, for sizing the silt traps of Clause 6.13.3, and a calibration of the sediment allowance of Clause 6.7.8 against measured silt depths. It needs desilting records (volume or mass removed per drain length and per catchment area, with dates), silt-depth surveys before and after the south-west monsoon, and catchment land-use and soil data (data and likely sources: desilting records of Lucknow Municipal Corporation (Nagar Nigam Lucknow) and other urban local bodies, I&WRD records for channels, land cover from NRSC, soils from the Uttar Pradesh soil survey and NBSS&LUP, rainfall from IMD). Until it is published, size each silt trap from the designer's stated estimate of the sediment expected between scheduled cleanings, based on the desilting records of the same drain or of similar drains in the same local body, and state the cleaning interval assumed; the interval shall not be longer than the yearly pre-monsoon desilting of Clause 6.13.10. Inlet silt sumps remain at least 300 mm deep (Clause 6.6.7), and the sediment allowance of Clause 6.7.8 applies unchanged.

The intended method is a simple volume balance, with every term to be stated in the design:

$$V_{trap} = Y \cdot A \cdot t_c$$

where V_{trap} is the sediment storage volume of the trap below its outlet invert (m^3), Y is the sediment yield for the catchment's land use and drain type (m^3/ha per year, from Table 6B.2 once published), A is the catchment area draining to the trap (ha), and t_c is the scheduled cleaning interval (years). The annex will state whether a safety margin is added.

Table 6B.1 — Sediment allowances already set by Chapter 6 (provisional, to be calibrated)

Element	Sediment allowance at the invert	Clause
Open and covered drains	Greater of 75 mm and 10% of the clear internal depth	6.7.8(a)
Pipes of 600 mm diameter or more	5% of the internal diameter	6.7.8(b)
Pipes below 600 mm	No allowance; minimum velocity of Clause 6.7.3(a) applies	6.7.8(c)
Drains and pipes that cannot reach the minimum velocity	Allowance doubled; mechanical desilting access provided	6.7.4(b), (c)
Inlet silt sumps	At least 300 mm below the outlet pipe invert	6.6.7

Table 6B.2 — Sediment yield by land use and drain type (layout)

Land use or catchment type	Drain type	Sediment yield Y (m^3/ha per year)	Bulk density (t/m^3)	Local body and records used	Years of record
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 6B.3 — Calibration of the sediment allowance (layout)

Drain or pipe ID	Clear internal depth or diameter (mm)	Allowance under Clause 6.7.8 (mm)	Measured silt depth before pre-monsoon desilting (mm)	Measured silt depth at the end of the monsoon (mm)	Ratio of measured to allowance
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 6C — Standard drawings: covered roadside drain with removable covers, access chamber, inlet with silt sump

Supports Clauses 6.6, 6.7.6 to 6.7.10 and 6.13 of Chapter 6, and Clauses 9.11 and 9.12 of Chapter 9.

The drawings below are schematic standard drawings. They show only the dimensions that Chapter 6 and Chapter 9 set. Wall and slab thicknesses, reinforcement, concrete grade and cover, chamber plan sizes and frame details are to be confirmed in design: they come from the structural design (Clause 9.1.2) and the exposure class of Clause 9.13. Table 6C.1 lists the dimensions shown and their source clauses.

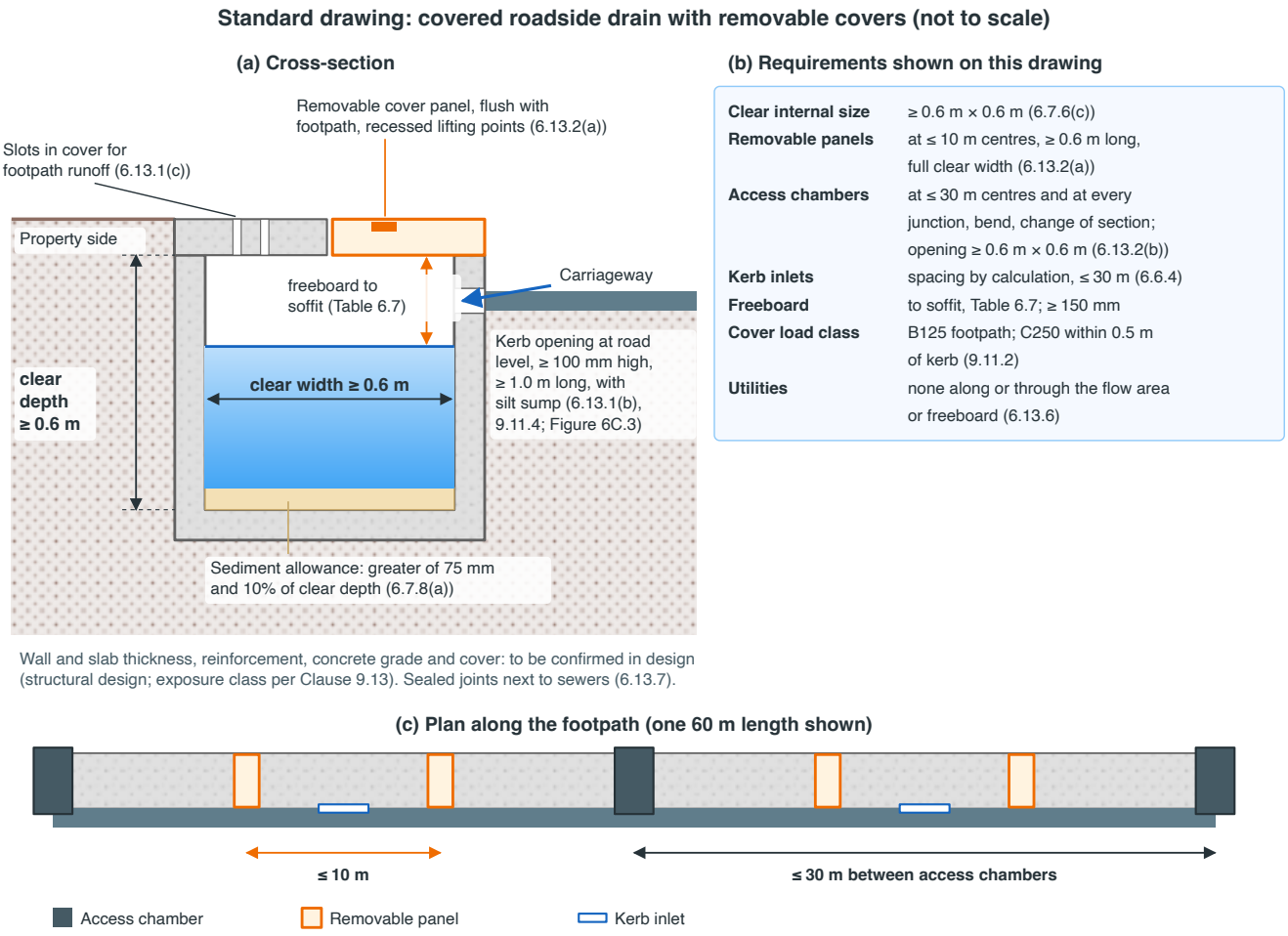


Figure 6C.1 — Standard drawing: covered roadside drain with removable covers, kerb inlets at road level, footpath slots, freeboard to the soffit and sediment allowance, with a plan of cover panels and access chambers along the footpath. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Chapter 5, and IRC:SP:50-2013.

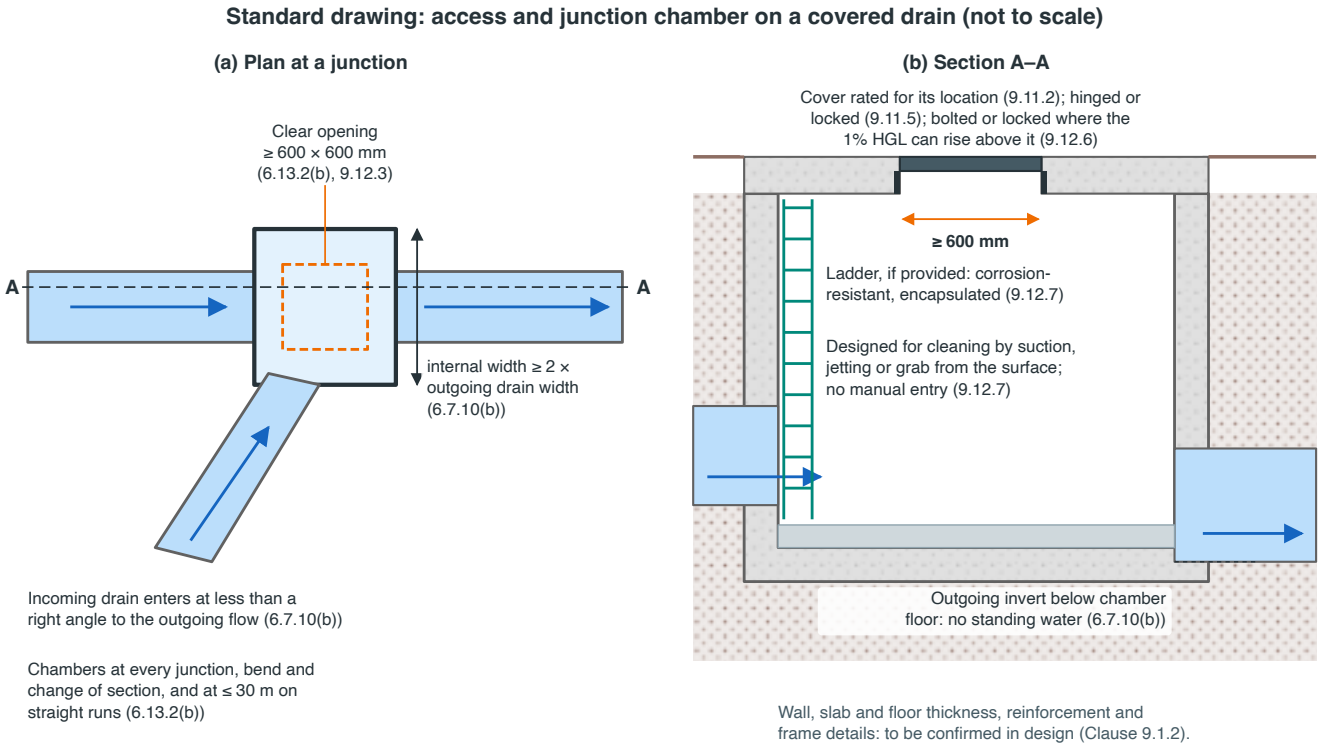


Figure 6C.2 — Standard drawing: access and junction chamber on a covered drain, with the clear opening, junction width, entry angle of the incoming drain, outgoing invert below the chamber floor, and cover requirements. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), §5.3.4 and Chapter 11.

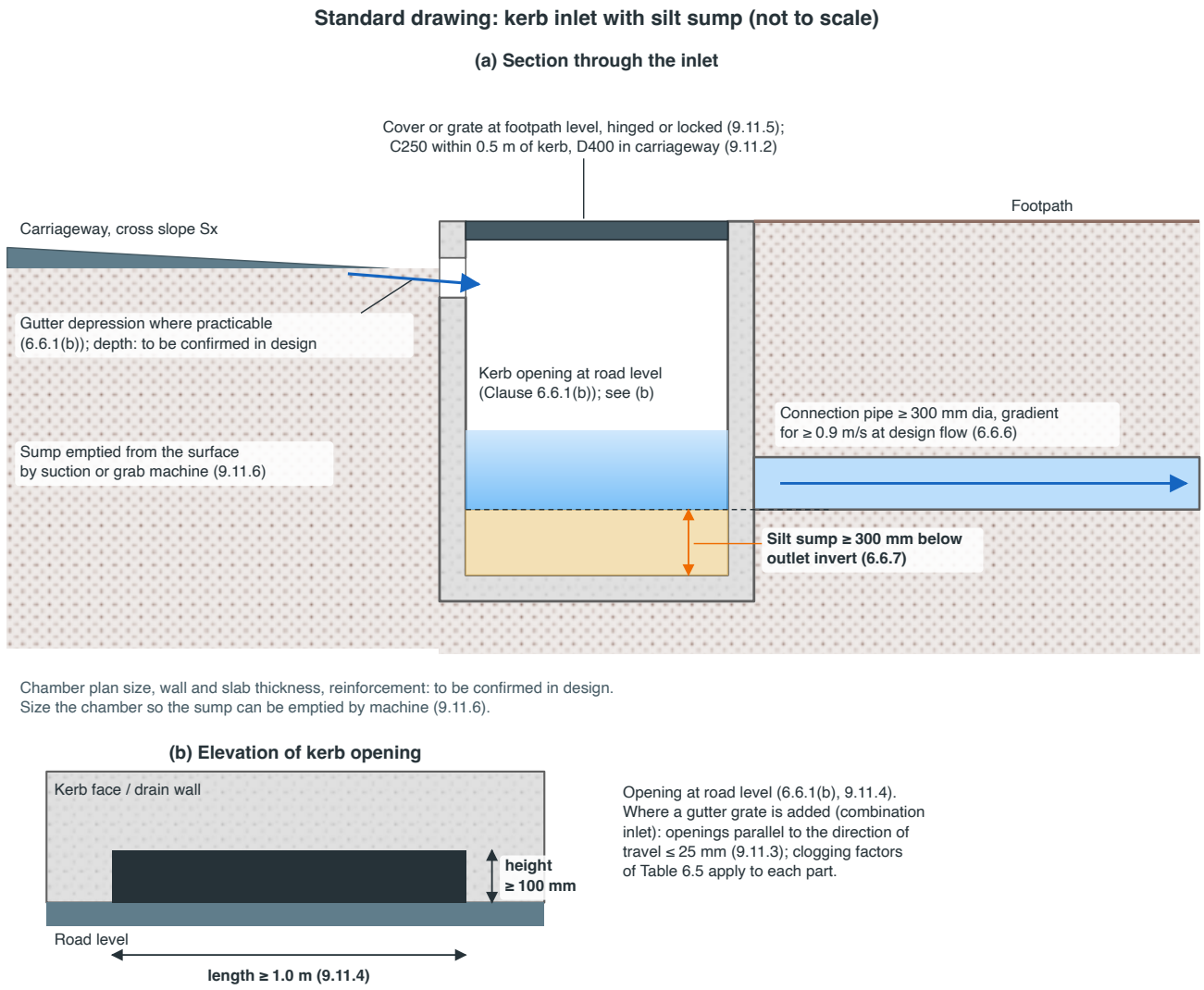


Figure 6C.3 — Standard drawing: kerb inlet at road level with silt sump, connection pipe and cover, and an elevation of the kerb opening. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Figure 5.9, and FHWA, HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (4th ed., 2024).

Table 6C.1 — Dimensions on the standard drawings and their source clauses

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
6C.1	Clear internal size of a covered public drain	At least 0.6 m wide and 0.6 m deep	6.7.6(c)
6C.1	Freeboard to the cover soffit	Table 6.7; not less than 150 mm for any roadside drain	6.7.9, 6.13.1(a)
6C.1	Sediment allowance	Greater of 75 mm and 10% of clear depth	6.7.8(a)
6C.1	Removable cover panels	At not more than 10 m centres; each at least 0.6 m long and spanning the full clear width; recessed lifting points; flush with the footpath	6.13.2(a)
6C.1	Footpath runoff	Through slots or grated openings in the cover	6.13.1(c)
6C.1	Kerb inlets	Openings in the drain wall at road level, each with a silt sump; spacing by calculation, not more than 30 m	6.13.1(b), 6.6.4
6C.1, 6C.2	Access chambers	At every junction, bend and change of section, and at not more than 30 m centres on straight runs	6.13.2(b)

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
6C.2	Clear access opening	At least 0.6 m × 0.6 m (600 mm)	6.13.2(b), 9.12.3
6C.2	Junction chamber	Internal width at least twice the outgoing drain width; incoming drains at less than a right angle; outgoing invert below the chamber floor	6.7.10(b)
6C.2	Covers	Load class for the location; hinged or locked; bolted or locked where the 1% AEP HGL can rise above the cover	9.11.2, 9.11.5, 9.12.6
6C.2	Cleaning	By machine from the surface; ladders, where provided, corrosion-resistant and encapsulated	9.12.7
6C.3	Kerb opening	At road level; clear height at least 100 mm; length at least 1.0 m	6.6.1(b), 9.11.4
6C.3	Silt sump	At least 300 mm below the outlet pipe invert; emptied by suction or grab machine	6.6.7, 9.11.6
6C.3	Connection pipe	At least 300 mm diameter; at least 0.9 m/s at the design flow	6.6.6
6C.3	Grate in a combination inlet	Openings parallel to travel not wider than 25 mm; Table 6.5 clogging on each part	9.11.3, 6.6.3
All	Wall and slab thickness, reinforcement, concrete grade and cover, chamber plan size, gutter depression depth	To be confirmed in design	9.1.2, 9.13

Form 6-1 — Conveyance Design Report checklist

Supports Clause 6.15 of Chapter 6.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Not for statutory use.

Attach this checklist to the front of the Conveyance Design Report. For each item, enter Yes, No or Not applicable, and the drawing or page where it is shown.

Section A — Project

Table 6F.1 — Form 6-1, Section A: project

Field	Entry
Project name and location	_____
Local body, and Tier A or Tier B (Chapter 1)	_____
Applicant	_____
Designer (name and registration)	_____
Total catchment area served (ha)	_____
High-density area status for the 10% AEP minor system (Clause 6.4.4)	_____
Within the coastal band of Clause 6.11.6 (Yes / No)	_____
Date and revision	_____

Section B — Contents required by Clause 6.15

Table 6F.2 — Form 6-1, Section B: contents required by Clause 6.15

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)	Drawing or page
1	Catchment plan: sub-catchments, minor system, inlet locations and the 1% AEP major-system overland flow paths	6.3.2		
2	Land-use and road-class AEP adopted for each element, and the high-density area status	Table 6.1, 6.4.4		
3	Design flows, with the rainfall sheet of Chapter 2 and the method of Chapter 3	6.3.4		
4	Gutter spread, depth and D·V checks for the minor, check and 1% events	Tables 6.2, 6.3		
5	Inlet schedule: clean capacity, clogging factor, design capacity and bypass flow	6.6		
6	Pipe and drain design tables: n, velocity, sediment allowance and freeboard	6.7		
7	HGL profiles for the minor and check events, with the tailwater used	6.8		
8	Sag ponding levels, including the fully-blocked check	6.10		
9	Floor-level schedule for every building	6.11		
10	Culvert and crossing calculations (with Form 9-1)	6.12, Chapter 9		

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)	Drawing or page
11	Utilities-crossing schedule and access-opening layout for covered drains	6.13		

Section C — Design basis

Table 6F.3 — Form 6-1, Section C: design basis

Field	Entry	Clause
Minor-system design AEP adopted	_____	Table 6.1
Road class(es) and design / check AEPs for road drainage and crossings	_____	Table 6.1, 6.4.2
Rainfall source and climate factor applied	_____	6.3.4, Chapter 2
Method: Rational Method (catchment ≤ 16 ha, single element) or hydrograph method with routing	_____	6.3.4(a), (b)
Minimum time of concentration used (not less than 10 min)	_____	6.3.4(c)
Tailwater at the outfall for the HGL (MHWS + 0.3 m at tidal outfalls, or the receiving level)	_____	6.8.2
Any transfer of flow between natural catchments (none unless accepted under 6.3.5)	_____	6.3.5

Section D — Compliance checks

Table 6F.4 — Form 6-1, Section D: compliance checks

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
D1	Every inlet, sag, pipe, drain, culvert and storage element has a 1% AEP overland path	Shown on plan	6.3.2	
D2	Major-system flow = 1% AEP peak less the clogged minor-system capacity	Computed at each point	6.3.3	
D3	Spread in the minor event	Table 6.2	6.5.2	
D4	Depth in the check and 1% events	≤ 150 mm at the crown; ≤ 350 mm at the deepest point	Table 6.2	
D5	Flow hazard (D·V) by location	Table 6.3	6.5.3	
D6	Inlet clogging factors applied	Table 6.5	6.6.3	
D7	Inlet spacing on kerbed roads	≤ 30 m	6.6.4(a)	
D8	Sag inlet design capacity ≥ minor design flow arriving; flanking inlets where required	—	6.6.5	
D9	Inlet connection pipes and silt sumps	≥ 300 mm dia, ≥ 0.9 m/s; sump ≥ 300 mm	6.6.6, 6.6.7	
D10	Manning's n not less than the minimum design values	Table 6.6	6.7.2	
D11	Minimum velocity at the minor design flow	0.6 m/s drains; 0.9 m/s pipes	6.7.3(a)	
D12	Maximum velocity and Froude number	3.0 m/s lined drains and pipes; Fr ≤ 0.8	6.7.3(b), (d)	

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
D13	Where minimum velocity cannot be met: velocity reported, sediment allowance doubled, desilting access provided	—	6.7.4	
D14	Pipes sized for pipe-full capacity, not the 0.95-depth peak	—	6.7.5	
D15	Minimum sizes	Pipes 300 mm (450 mm public mains); open drain bed 0.3 m; covered public drains 0.6 m × 0.6 m	6.7.6	
D16	Cover to pipes; flotation check where groundwater is within 1 m of the crown	≥ 0.6 m; ≥ 0.9 m under carriageways	6.7.7	
D17	Sediment allowance in capacity	6.7.8 values	6.7.8	
D18	Freeboard, including superelevation at bends	Table 6.7	6.7.9	
D19	Bend radii and junction sumps	6.7.10	6.7.10	
D20	Manhole spacing on straight runs	Table 6.8	6.7.11	
D21	HGL below inlet rims and manhole covers in the minor event	≥ 0.3 m	6.8.3	
D22	Manholes that can surcharge above ground: bolted or locked covers	—	6.8.4	
D23	Soffits matched or outgoing soffit lower; outgoing invert not above the lowest incoming invert	—	6.8.6	
D24	Gate and valve losses included in the HGL; non-return valves on private connections where required	—	6.8.7, 6.8.8	
D25	Overland flow paths outside streets: width, tenure, no obstruction, continuous fall	≥ 1% top width + 0.5 m each side, ≥ 3.0 m	6.9.2	
D26	Compound walls across mapped flow paths: openings pass the 1% flow at 50% blockage	—	6.9.3	
D27	Access strip along open drains with top width ≥ 2 m	≥ 3.5 m, linked to a road at ≤ 500 m	6.9.4	
D28	Drainage reserve where required: width, separate plot, no structures, markers, services, 2 m stability check	Table 6.9	6.9.6–6.9.8	
D29	Sag ponding in the 1% event, overflow route, and fully-blocked check	≤ 350 mm at the deepest point	6.10.2, 6.10.3	
D30	Trapped sags and road underpasses	6.10.4, 6.10.5	6.10.4, 6.10.5	
D31	Floor levels	≥ 1% AEP level + 0.5 m; defaults of 6.11.3 where no level is computed	6.11.1–6.11.3	
D32	Basements and building services	6.11.4, 6.11.5	6.11.4, 6.11.5	
D33	Coastal band: floor ≥ 1% still-water level + 2 × SLA (+ wave set-up where applicable) + 0.5 m; no basement rooms or plant	—	6.11.6	
D34	Culverts: design AEP, overtopping, 50% / 20% blockage check, minimum size	≥ 900 mm	6.12	

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
D35	Covered drains: removable panels and access chambers	≤ 10 m; ≤ 30 m	6.13.1, 6.13.2	
D36	Silt traps, screens with bypass and 50% blockage check	—	6.13.3, 6.13.4	
D37	No building over drains; no utilities in the flow area or freeboard; existing crossings deducted with 50% blockage	—	6.13.5, 6.13.6	
D38	No sewage connections; sealed joints next to sewers; edge protection on open drains deeper than 1.0 m	—	6.13.7, 6.13.8	
D39	Outfalls: tailwater, flap gates or non-return valves below the 1% still-water level, outlet protection	—	6.14	

Section E — Variances

Table 6F.5 — Form 6-1, Section E: variances

Clause	Requirement not met	Reason and proposed alternative	Approved by and date
_____	_____	_____	_____

Section F — Signatures

The report shall be prepared and signed by a registered professional, and the Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) attached (Clauses 10.6.1 and 10.6.3 of Chapter 10). Where a structure stands within 2 m of the edge of a drainage reserve, the stability design shall also be signed by a qualified structural engineer (Clause 6.9.8(f)).

Table 6F.6 — Form 6-1, Section F: signatures

Role	Name	Registration or empanelment no.	Signature	Date
Designer	_____	_____	_____	_____
Structural engineer (Clause 6.9.8(f), where applicable)	_____	_____	_____	_____

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 7

Waterbodies, Tals (Ponds) and Setbacks

These annexes support Chapter 7. They give the inventory field specification, the fixed-width setback table, a template operating rule, the desilting and restoration specification, a glossary of Hindi and Urdu waterbody terms, and the three forms that Clause 7.15 requires. Where an annex cannot yet be completed it says so and gives the rule to use in the meantime. The forms are draft forms; the template and model text are for consideration by a competent authority and are not in force.

Annex 7A — Statewide waterbody GIS layer and inventory fields

Supports Clauses 7.3.1, 7.3.3 and 7.3.5 of Chapter 7.

To be prepared. This annex will contain the statewide GIS layer of waterbodies required by Clause 7.3.1, prepared by each Authority with the I&WRD and the Revenue Department. It needs the Revenue records and village maps of the Revenue Department, in which tanks, talabs, ponds and pokhars, nalas, land covered by water and embankments (bandh) are recorded and vest in the State or the Gram Panchayat under the UP Revenue Code, 2006 (sections 54, 59, 61 and 77), read back to the record of 1 July 1952 where the Allahabad High Court's line of pond cases applies; land shown as a pond, reservoir, river, drain or nala in a Master Plan, Zonal Plan or layout plan under the 1973 Act, which the Byelaws 2025 protect (cl. 16.3.2(xi)); the floodplain coordinates notified by the I&WRD on the 1-in-100-year flood, for the Ganga from Unnao to Ballia (G.O. of 29 January 2025) and for the Yamuna (January 2025, as reported); the boundary and zone of influence of every wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, such as Ramgarh Tal; and the lists of Amrit Sarovars; the I&WRD and Gram Panchayat tank registers with FTL and MWL; surveyed levels on a common datum; the ISRO National Wetland Inventory and Assessment (NRSC); Survey of India topographic maps; and any list of waterbodies published under court directions. Until it is published, each Applicant identifies waterbodies from all the sources of Clause 7.3.3, with the larger extent governing, and records them on the Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1).

The field specification below is complete. It is written so that every field the chapter asks for (Clause 7.3.1(a) to (g)) has a defined name, type and source, and so that the same fields can be filled from a project's Form 7-1.

7A.1 Layers

- **WB_POLY** — one polygon per waterbody: the Revenue record boundary (Clause 7.3.1(c)).
- **WB_FTL** — the surveyed FTL contour (tanks, lakes, ponds) or top of bank (channels), as a polygon or line.
- **WB_MWL** — the MWL contour of each tank, as a polygon.
- **WB_FLOOD** — the 1% AEP flood extent, where mapped (Clause 7.3.1(f)), with the floodway where delineated (Clause 7.6.1).
- **WB_STRUCT** — points for surplus weirs, sluices, regulators, inlets and drain outfalls.
- **WB_LINK** — lines for supply channels, surplus courses and the links between tanks in a cascade (Clause 7.3.1(e)).

- **WB_ENCR** — polygons of known encroachments, each with the date recorded (Clause 7.3.1(g)).
- **WB_SETBACK** — Zone 1 and Zone 2 polygons (Clause 7.4), derived from the layers above.

All layers shall carry the waterbody identifier (WB_ID) so that they can be joined. All levels shall be stated to one datum (Clause 7.3.5), named in the layer metadata.

Table 7A.1 — Attribute fields of the waterbody inventory (WB_POLY)

Field	Type	Unit / domain	Required	Content	Clause
WB_ID	Text	District code + serial	Yes	Unique identifier, never reused	7.3.1
WB_NAME	Text	—	Yes	Name as in Revenue and I&WRD records, with local name	7.3.1(a)
WB_NAME_HI	Text	Hindi script	Yes	Name in Hindi	7.3.1(a)
WB_TYPE	Code	Table 7A.2	Yes	Waterbody type	7.2, 7.3.1(a)
SURVEY_NOS	Text	Village, survey and subdivision numbers	Yes	Revenue survey numbers of the waterbody	7.3.1(a)
VILLAGE	Text	—	Yes	Revenue village, tehsil and district	7.3.1(a)
CUSTODIAN	Code	Table 7A.2	Yes	Custodian body	7.3.1(b)
AREA_REC	Number	ha	Yes	Area within the Revenue record boundary	7.3.1(c)
AREA_FTL	Number	ha	Tanks	Waterspread at FTL, surveyed	7.2, 7.3.1(d)
FTL	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Full tank level	7.3.1(d)
MWL	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Maximum water level (Clause 7.2 definition)	7.3.1(d)
MWL_BASIS	Code	I&WRD record / 1% AEP computed	Tanks	Which value governs MWL	7.2
TBL	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Top bund level, lowest point	7.3.1(d)
WEIR_CREST	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Surplus weir crest level	7.3.1(d)
WEIR_LEN	Number	m	Tanks	Surplus weir crest length	7.3.1(d)
WEIR_TYPE	Text	—	Tanks	Surplus weir type (for example fixed crest, with shutters or falling boards)	7.3.1(d)
SLUICE_N	Integer	—	Tanks	Number of sluices; details in WB_STRUCT	7.3.1(d)
SUPPLY_CH	Text	WB_ID(s)	Tanks	Supply channel(s) feeding the tank	7.3.1(d)
SURPLUS_CS	Text	WB_ID(s)	Tanks	Surplus course(s) leaving the tank	7.3.1(d)
UPSTR_WB	Text	WB_ID(s)	Cascades	Upstream tank(s) in the cascade	7.3.1(e)
DNSTR_WB	Text	WB_ID	Cascades	Downstream tank, river, drain or sea outfall	7.3.1(e)
CATCH_AREA	Number	ha	Channels	Drainage area at the downstream end of the reach (for the 8 ha trigger of Clause 7.4.1(b) and Table 7.1)	7.4.1
DATUM	Text	—	Yes	Datum of all levels; conversion from any older I&WRD datum	7.3.5
LEVEL_DATE	Date	—	Tanks	Date of the level survey	7.7.1(a)
SSC_DATE	Date	—	Tanks	Date of the latest stage–storage survey	7.7.1(b)

Field	Type	Unit / domain	Required	Content	Clause
FLOOD_SRC	Code	Adopted map / site study / none	Yes	Source of the 1% AEP extent	7.3.4
FLOODWAY	Code	Delineated / whole 1% extent / below MWL	Yes	Basis of the floodway	7.6.1
ENCR_KNOWN	Code	Yes / No	Yes	Known encroachment; details in WB_ENCR	7.3.1(g)
CREDITED	Code	Yes / No	Tanks	Storage counted under Clause 7.7, with the scheme reference	7.7.1
WETLAND	Code	Notified / listed / other	Wetlands	Status under Clause 7.12.1	7.12.1
SOURCES	Text	—	Yes	Sources used, from the list in Clause 7.3.3(a) to (e)	7.3.3
UPDATED	Date	—	Yes	Date of the last edit, and by whom	7.3.1

Table 7A.2 — Code lists

Code list	Values	Clause
WB_TYPE	River; natural drain or nala; canal; lake or jheel; tal or pond (tal, talab, pokhar, johad); Amrit Sarovar or other excavated pond; marsh or low wet land; floodplain wetland or depression; layout recharge reservoir; abandoned quarry or borrow pit; supply channel; surplus course	7.2
CUSTODIAN	Nagar Nigam; Nagar Palika Parishad or Nagar Panchayat; development authority (1973 Act); UP Awas Evam Vikas Parishad; industrial development authority (Noida, GNIDA, YEIDA, UPSIDA); I&WRD (division); Gram Panchayat or Bhumi Prabandhak Samiti; Revenue Department (Collector, Tehsildar); UP State Wetland Authority (notified wetland); private owner; other (name)	7.3.1(b)
Structure (WB_STRUCT)	Surplus weir; sluice; regulator; inlet; drain outfall; gross pollutant trap; crossing	7.3.1(d), 7.10
Encroachment (WB_ENCR)	Building; fill; road; wall; dumping; cultivation; other — each with date recorded, area (m²) and source	7.3.1(g), 7.13

Table 7A.3 — Attribute fields of structures (WB_STRUCT)

Field	Type	Unit	Content	Clause
STR_ID	Text	—	Unique identifier	7.3.1(d)
WB_ID	Text	—	Waterbody served	7.3.1(d)
STR_TYPE	Code	Table 7A.2	Structure type	7.3.1(d)
CREST_SILL	Number	m (datum)	Weir crest or sluice sill level	7.7.1(a)
LENGTH_SIZE	Text	m	Weir crest length, or sluice opening size	7.7.1(a)
GATED	Code	Yes / No	Controllable outlet (needed for a flood cushion, Clause 7.8.2(a))	7.8.2
CONDITION	Code	Serviceable / defective	Result of the latest pre-monsoon inspection, with date	7.7.1(d), 7.14.4

Annex 7B — Fixed-width setback table (alternative S-3, with Annex 1C)

Supports Clauses 7.3.4, 7.4.3, 7.4.6 and 7.4.7 of Chapter 7, and alternative S-3 of the Policy Supplement (Annex 1C).

7B.1 When the table may be used

The fixed-width setback may be used only where all of the following apply:

- (a) the Authority has not adopted a 1% AEP flood extent map for the waterbody (Clause 7.3.4);
- (b) Clause 7.3.4 does not require the Applicant to determine the 1% AEP extent by a hydraulic study: the site is not in a flood-sensitive catchment, is not a site of 1 ha or more adjoining a waterbody, and the Authority has not asked for a study; and
- (c) the waterbody is one to which setbacks apply (Clause 7.4.1): any recorded or found waterbody, and any natural channel draining 8 ha or more at the site.

Where an Authority adopts alternative S-3 under Clause 1.7, the table below is the S-3 table. Clause 1.7.3(e) provides for the S-3 table to be issued by the State Stormwater Technical Committee. Until it is issued, the values are those of Clause 7.4.6, repeated here without change.

Table 7B.1 — Fixed-width setback by waterbody class (alternative S-3)

Waterbody class	Drainage area at the site	Total setback (Zone 1 + Zone 2)	Of which Zone 1	Measured from
Channel, small	8 ha to 65 ha	25 m	15 m	Top of bank (Clause 7.4.3)
Channel, medium	65 ha to 20 km²	40 m	15 m	Top of bank
Channel, large, and rivers	More than 20 km²	50 m	20 m	Top of bank
Tank, lake or pond	Any	MWL contour + 25 m	To the MWL contour, and not less than 15 m from FTL	FTL contour (Zone 1); MWL contour (total)
Marsh, estuary or backwater	Any	As notified by the Authority, and not less than 50 m	15 m	The waterbody boundary of Clause 7.13.1

Values from Clause 7.4.6 (Table 7.1). Zone 2 is the total setback less Zone 1.

7B.2 Rules of application

- (a) **Measurement.** Measure horizontally on plan, outward from the boundary of Clause 7.13.1: the larger of the Revenue record boundary and the surveyed FTL (or top of bank). Where FTL and top of bank both apply, use whichever gives the wider zone (Clause 7.4.3).
- (b) **Drainage area.** For a channel, use the drainage area at the downstream end of the reach that adjoins the site. Where a reach crosses a class limit within the site, apply the wider setback to the whole reach within the site.
- (c) **Both banks.** The setback applies on each bank of a channel and all round a tank, lake, pond or marsh.
- (d) **Minimum set by this Manual.** Zone 1 is never less than 15 m (Clause 7.4.7). A wider statutory or approval setback governs for the uses it restricts (Clause 7.4.5).
- (e) **Stricter of the two.** Where a hydraulic study is made voluntarily, the setback is the wider of Table 7B.1 and Clauses 7.4.3 and 7.4.4.
- (f) **Record.** The basis of the setback (fixed width) shall be stated on the Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1) and in the approval (Clause 7.4, Disclosure).
- (g) **Review.** The table shall be reviewed within 2 years of the Authority adopting 1% AEP flood maps (Clause 7.16.1).

7B.3 Source of the channel widths

The channel widths were set by this Manual with reference to the 2006 Kansas City APWA default stream buffers, rounded up and floored at the 15 m minimum (Clause 7.4.6, commentary). The source values, as cited in the chapter, are:

Table 7B.2 — Source buffers cited in Clause 7.4.6 (KC APWA 5600, 2006, §5605.3)

Drainage area (source, acres)	Approximate SI equivalent	Source buffer
Less than 40 ac	Less than 16 ha	40 ft (12 m)
40–160 ac	16–65 ha	60 ft (18 m)
160–5,000 ac	65 ha – 20 km²	100 ft (30 m)
More than 5,000 ac	More than 20 km²	120 ft (37 m)

The 65 ha and 20 km² class limits in Table 7B.1 are the SI equivalents of 160 ac and 5,000 ac. The 8 ha lower limit is the 20-acre trigger of APWA 2025.01 (Clause 7.4.1(b)).

Annex 7C — Template tank operating rule, with flood cushion

Supports Clauses 7.7.1(c), 7.7.3, 7.8 and 7.14.4 of Chapter 7.

Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force. For tanks under I&WRD control, the operating rule is I&WRD's rule (Clause 7.8.4); this template sets out the content that Clause 7.8 asks for, so that the custodian's rule can be checked against it. Text in square brackets is to be completed for each tank.

7C.1 Identification

1. Tank: [name, WB_ID of Annex 7A, village, tehsil, district].
2. Custodian: [I&WRD division / ULB / Gram Panchayat / other].
3. Cascade position: upstream tank(s) [ ]; downstream tank, river or drain [ ].
4. Datum: [ ]. Surveyed levels (Clause 7.7.1(a)), date of survey [ ]: FTL [ ] m; MWL [ ] m; TBL (lowest point) [ ] m; surplus weir crest [ ] m, length [ ] m; sluice sills [ ] m.
5. Stage–storage curve (Clause 7.7.1(b)): survey date [ ]; attached as Schedule 1.
6. Controllable outlets (Clause 7.8.2(a)): [gated sluice / regulator / none]; capacity at FTL [ ] m³/s.

7C.2 Purposes and priority

7. The tank serves [irrigation of a command area of [ ] ha / drinking water supply / recharge / flood storage]. Irrigation and water supply remain primary unless the custodian records otherwise (Clause 7.8.2(d)).

7C.3 Levels and dates through the year (Clause 7.8.1(a))

8. The tank shall be operated to the levels in Table 7C.1.

Table 7C.1 — Rule levels by period (to be completed for each tank)

Period	Target level (m)	Upper limit (m)	Lower limit (m)	Purpose
[1 Jan – date]	[ ]	FTL	[ ]	Holding for irrigation / supply

Period	Target level (m)	Upper limit (m)	Lower limit (m)	Purpose
[date – start of cushion period]	[ ]	FTL	[ ]	Holding
[Flood-cushion period, if any]	Cushion level [ ]	Cushion level [ ]	[ ]	Flood cushion (Clause 7.8.2)
[End of cushion period – 31 Dec]	[ ]	FTL	[ ]	Refilling

9. Where no flood cushion is adopted, the starting level for design is FTL (Clause 7.7.3) and the row for the cushion period is deleted.

7C.4 Flood cushion (Clause 7.8.2)

10. Cushion level: [ ] m, which is [ ] m below FTL, giving a cushion volume of [ ] m³ from Schedule 1.
11. Dates: the cushion applies from [ ] to [ ].
12. Drawdown: the tank can be drawn down from FTL to the cushion level through [outlet] in [ ] hours, with a release not exceeding the maximum release rate of paragraph 18.
13. Reliability: continuous simulation (Clause 3.13) over the record [years] shows that the cushion is available at the start of a design storm in [ ]% of SW monsoon seasons, which shall be at least 90%. The simulation report is Schedule 2.
14. Yield: the custodian accepts the loss of irrigation or supply yield stated in Schedule 3 [and the compensation recorded there].
15. Where the tank has no controllable outlet, this section does not apply and no flood cushion is assumed (Clause 7.8.3).

7C.5 Releases (Clause 7.8.1(b) to (d))

16. Sluice and regulator settings at each level: Table 7C.2.
17. Operator: the sluices and regulators are operated by [post]. A release above [ ] m³/s may be ordered only by [post], or, in an emergency, by [post].
18. Maximum release rate: [ ] m³/s. This rate, added to the flow from the downstream catchment, does not flood buildings downstream (Schedule 4 gives the downstream check).
19. No person shall cut, lower or breach the bund or surplus weir except under the custodian's emergency procedure (Clause 7.14.5).

Table 7C.2 — Outlet settings by level (to be completed for each tank)

Tank level (m)	Sluice 1	Sluice 2	Regulator	Expected outflow (m³/s)	Notes
Below cushion level	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	
Cushion level to FTL	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	
FTL (weir begins to spill)	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	
Above FTL to MWL	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	Check freeboard to TBL (Clause 7.7.4(b))

7C.6 Forecasts, warnings and communication (Clause 7.8.1(e) and (f))

20. The triggers and actions are in Table 7C.3.
21. Before any release under this rule, the operator shall inform the ULBs and the district administration downstream, and residents by the means stated in Schedule 5, at least [ ] hours before the release where the forecast allows.

Table 7C.3 — Triggers and actions (to be completed for each tank)

Trigger	Source	Action	By whom
IMD district heavy-rainfall warning for the catchment	IMD	Read gauges [ ] hourly; check outlets are free; confirm the tank is at or below its rule level	[ ]
IMD or UPSDMA red alert	IMD, UPSDMA	Begin releases needed to reach the rule level, within the maximum release rate; notify downstream bodies (paragraph 21)	[ ]
City forecast system warning, where available	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
Tank level reaches FTL	Gauge	Record outflow hourly; inspect bund and weir	[ ]
Tank level reaches [MWL − [ ] m]	Gauge	Emergency procedure; warning to the breach area of any emergency action plan (Clause 7.14.3(c))	[ ]

7C.7 Records and review (Clause 7.8.1(g))

22. During the SW monsoon (15 June to 15 October) the operator shall record daily: the tank level, every release (time, rate and duration), and every gate setting. Outside the SW monsoon, records shall be kept [weekly].
23. Records shall be kept with the O&M plan (Chapter 10) and given to the Authority on request.
24. The tank shall be inspected before the SW monsoon (by 31 May) and after every heavy-rainfall event (Clause 7.14.4).
25. This rule shall be reviewed after any event in which the tank surplused at a level above [ ] m, after any change to the weir, sluices or bund (Clause 7.7.6), and in any case with the review of the Manual.

Schedules: 1 stage–storage curve; 2 continuous simulation report; 3 yield and compensation; 4 downstream check of the maximum release; 5 communication list.

Annex 7D — Desilting and restoration specification

Supports Clauses 7.7.1(b), 7.9 and 7.14.4 of Chapter 7.

This specification applies to every desilting, restoration or deepening of a tank, pond or other waterbody under Clause 7.9. Values are those of Chapter 7. Where the chapter does not set a value, it is marked "to be confirmed in design" and shall be stated in the works design.

7D.1 Pre-works survey (Clause 7.9.1)

- (a) **Topographic and bathymetric survey** of the waterspread, foreshore (to the MWL contour), bund, surplus weir and sluices, levelled to the datum of Clause 7.3.5. Survey grid and point density: to be confirmed in design.
- (b) **Original bed level** found by test pits or augering on a grid (grid spacing to be confirmed in design), and from historical records where available. Each pit log shall show the silt thickness, the level of the original bed, and any clay or silt layer below it.
- (c) **Silt testing** where the tank receives urban runoff or sewage: samples from the pits of (b), tested for heavy metals and other contaminants before disposal is planned. The parameters and limits shall be those the Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board (UPPCB) directs.
- (d) **Structures:** condition of the bund (seepage, slips, cracks, animal burrows, trees), surplus weir and sluices, as in Clause 7.14.4.
- (e) **Existing stage–storage curve** from the survey of (a).

7D.2 Limits of excavation (Clauses 7.9.2 and 7.9.3)

- (a) Desilting removes accumulated sediment down to the original bed level of 7D.1(b), and no deeper.
- (b) Deepening below the original bed only with a hydrogeological report showing each of Clause 7.9.3(a) to (c).
- (c) Storage created below the lowest sluice sill is not flood storage, and shall not be shown as such in the revised stage–storage curve.
- (d) Excavation shall stay clear of the bund toe by a distance to be confirmed in design, so that the bund's stability is not reduced.

7D.3 Edges and safety (Clause 7.9.4)

Where the public has access to the edge:

- (a) side slopes no steeper than **1V:4H** from **0.5 m above FTL** down to **1.2 m below FTL**; or
- (b) a level safety bench at least **3 m** wide, between **0.3 m and 0.5 m below FTL**; and
- (c) no isolated deep pit or vertical cut left in the bed. Borrow pits shall be regraded to the bed.

7D.4 Storage not reduced (Clause 7.9.5)

- (a) Islands, walkways, bund widening into the waterspread, ring roads, parking, buildings and lake-front platforms within the waterspread or foreshore are lost storage.
- (b) Lost storage shall be offset by compensatory storage at equivalent levels, band by band, using Form 7-3.

7D.5 Silt handling and disposal (Clause 7.9.6)

- (a) Desilted material shall not be placed within the setback, on the bund (except approved bund strengthening), or on any flood path.
- (b) Contaminated silt shall be disposed of as the Uttar Pradesh Pollution Control Board (UPPCB) directs.
- (c) Haul routes and temporary stockpiles shall meet the construction erosion and sediment control rules of Clause 8.12, including stockpiles outside Zone 1.

7D.6 Inlets (Clause 7.9.7)

Every inlet that brings urban runoff shall have a sediment forebay, a constructed wetland inlet zone or a gross pollutant trap, designed under Chapter 8 (Annex 8D).

7D.7 Timing (Clause 7.9.8)

Desilting shall be complete, and the waterbody made safe, by **31 May**. No excavation shall be left open, and no sluice or weir left dismantled, during the SW monsoon.

7D.8 Completion records

- (a) As-built survey and revised stage–storage curve. The curve is the one that Clause 7.7.1(b) requires "after the last desilting".
- (b) Volume removed, its disposal site, and the silt test results.
- (c) Photographs of the bund, weir, sluices and inlet works.
- (d) Update of the inventory record (Annex 7A: SSC_DATE, LEVEL_DATE, CONDITION).

Table 7D.1 — Hold points for desilting and restoration works

Hold point	Check	Clause
1. Before excavation	Pre-works survey, pit logs, silt tests, and hydrogeological report if deepening	7.9.1, 7.9.3
2. Original bed reached	Levels checked against pit logs; no excavation below the original bed unless approved	7.9.2
3. Edges formed	Side slopes or safety bench as 7D.3	7.9.4
4. Inlet works	Forebay, wetland inlet zone or GPT built	7.9.7
5. Completion (by 31 May)	As-built survey, stage–storage curve, silt disposal record	7.9.8, 7.7.1(b)

Annex 7E — Glossary of Hindi and Urdu waterbody terms and regional variants

Supports Clause 7.2 and Clause 7.3 of Chapter 7.

The terms below are Hindi and Urdu words for waterbodies, land and floods as used in Uttar Pradesh, given in Devanagari and, where Platts gives it, Urdu script. Spellings in Roman script vary (for example tal and taal; jhil and jheel; nala, nallah and nullah; bangar and bhangar), and many of the words appear in place, tal and nala names. The name used in the Revenue, I&WRD, development authority or municipal record for each waterbody should be recorded in the inventory (Annex 7A) alongside the Manual's term. Only terms whose meaning was confirmed in J. T. Platts, *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English* (1884), or in Syamasundara Dasa, *Hindi Shabdasagara* (1965–1975), both as served by the Digital South Asia Library, or in a statute or official document, are listed in Tables 7E.1 to 7E.3; the meanings are Platts's English glosses, or a translation of the Shabdasagara, with the page shown by the Digital South Asia Library, and modern usage may be narrower or wider. Others are listed in Table 7E.4 as not yet verified. The list is to be extended by the State Stormwater Technical Committee, with modern Revenue, I&WRD and municipal usage.

The Manual's term for a tank or pond in Uttar Pradesh is **tal (ताल)**, with talab and pokhar as synonyms: the Shabdasagara defines ताल as low ground or a long, wide hollow in which rainwater collects, which is the stormwater meaning this chapter needs; the State's largest urban waterbodies carry the name, as Ramgarh Tal does; and the Revenue Code's statutory "tank" includes the talab and the pokhar (s. 61). ताल also means rhythm, and the palm, so the word is always used with its gloss on first use in a document.

Table 7E.1 — Waterbodies and land

Term	Meaning	Source of the term	Manual term (Clause 7.2)
ताल / تال (tāl; tal, taal)	"Pond, pool, tank, lake (= tālāb)"; in the Shabdasagara (ताल २), low ground or a long, wide hollow in which rainwater collects; a reservoir; pokhra; talab	Platts, p. 306; Shabdasagara, p. 2069	Tal (tank or pond), see the definitions after Clause 7.2
तालाब / تالاب (tālāb; talab)	"Pond, pool, tank, reservoir of water (= talā'o ; cf. tāl)"; a "tank" under s. 61 of the UP Revenue Code, 2006	Platts, p. 306; Revenue Code, s. 61	Tal (tank or pond)
पोखर, पोखरा / پوکھر (pokhar, pokhrā)	"A pond, pool, tank, lake"; glossed तालाब in the Shabdasagara; a "tank" under s. 61 of the Revenue Code	Platts, p. 280; Shabdasagara, p. 3113; Revenue Code, s. 61	Tal (tank or pond)
झील / جھیل (jhīl; jheel)	"A pool, a shallow lake; a marsh, morass, swamp"; in the Shabdasagara, a large natural water body surrounded by land; झीलर (jhīlar), a small lake or pond	Platts, p. 411; Shabdasagara, p. 1848	Lake, or marsh or wetland (Clause 7.12), see the definitions after Clause 7.2
जोहड़ (johaṛ; johad)	"कच्चा तालाब", an unlined (earthen) pond	Shabdasagara, p. 1806. Not found in Platts	Tal (tank or pond); its usage in Uttar Pradesh is in Table 7E.4

Term	Meaning	Source of the term	Manual term (Clause 7.2)
कुआँ / کوان (kuāṅ, kū'āṅ; kuan)	"A well; a pit"; in the Shabdasagara, a deep pit dug in the earth to draw water (कूप)	Platts, p. 858; Shabdasagara, p. 973	Well (open well); roof water may be led to it under Clause 8.11.3(a)
खादर / کھادر (khādar)	"Low alluvial land fit for rice cultivation"; in the Shabdasagara, low land on the bank of a river where rain water stands, the opposite of bangar	Platts, p. 867; Shabdasagara, p. 1151	Floodplain land, see the definitions after Clause 7.2
बाँगर / بانگر (bāṅgar; bangar, "bhangar")	"Hilly ground, high ground, upland, highland, tableland"; in the Shabdasagara (बाँगर २), land higher than the khadar, never submerged even when rivers or lakes rise. The spelling "bhangar" of geography texts is not a dictionary headword in this sense: the Shabdasagara's भाँगर means metal dust (p. 3633)	Platts, p. 127; Shabdasagara, p. 3432	Older alluvial upland above the floodplain (not a waterbody)
कछार / کچھار (kachār; kachhar)	"Moist low land (by a river); marshy land ...; bank (of a river); alluvial formation"; in the Shabdasagara, land built up from river silt; khadar; diyara	Platts, p. 819; Shabdasagara, p. 743	Floodplain land; where marshy, a wetland (Clause 7.12)
ऊसर / اوسر (ūsar; usar)	"Barren (land); — s.m. A barren spot, saline soil"; in the Shabdasagara, land in which nothing grows	Platts, p. 105; Shabdasagara, p. 660	Not a waterbody. Sodic land of very low infiltration (Clause 8.8.11)

Table 7E.2 — Channels, embankments and parts of the system

Term	Meaning	Source of the term	Manual term (Clause 7.2)
नाला / نالا (nālā; nala, nallah, nullah)	"A watercourse; channel ... a drain, gutter"; the bed of "nallas" vests in the State under s. 54 of the Revenue Code	Platts, p. 1117; Revenue Code, s. 54	Natural drain or nala, see the definitions after Clause 7.2. In Uttar Pradesh the word covers both natural watercourses and large engineered drains (the Qila Mohammadi, Godhoiya and Sisamau nalas); the definition, not the word, decides which this chapter applies to
नाली (nālī; nali)	In the Shabdasagara, a narrow path for water to flow; a path for filth to flow, a mori	Shabdasagara, p. 2597	Drain (minor system); where it carries sewage or sullage into a storm drain, a cross-connection (Clause 8.9)
बाँध / باندھ (bāṅdh; bandh, bund)	"Fastening; tie ... embankment; dam"; land "forming part of an embankment, bandh or bhita" cannot become private (Revenue Code, s. 77(1)(i))	Platts, p. 127; Revenue Code, s. 77(1)(i)	Flood embankment (Clause 7.14.1); a tal's bund is a tank bund (Clause 7.14.2)
बंधा (bandhā; bandha)	"पानी रोकने का धुस्स । बाँध", an earthen bank to stop water; a bandh	Shabdasagara, p. 3333	Tank bund or field bund (Clause 7.14); for the bandhs of Bundelkhand, see Table 7E.4

Table 7E.3 — Floods and statutory terms

Term	Meaning
बाढ़ / باڑھ (bāṛh; baadh)	A rise of a river, inundation, flood (Platts, p. 121)
सैलाब / سیلاب (sailāb)	A flood, torrent, deluge, inundation (Platts, p. 712)
जलप्लावन (jalplāvan)	Waterlogging or inundation: the Hindi word used in the title of the Urban Development Department's Urban Flood/Jalplavan Control and Storm Water Drainage Scheme guideline (December 2024). Its dictionary meaning was not looked up

Term	Meaning
tank (Revenue Code)	"the term 'tank', includes talab, pond, pokhar and other land covered with water" (UP Revenue Code, 2006, s. 61, Explanation)
flood plain (Ganga Order)	"such area of River Ganga or its tributaries which comes under water on either side of it due to floods corresponding to its greatest flow or with a flood of frequency once in hundred years" (River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl. 3(l), as quoted); see "notified floodplain" in the definitions after Clause 7.2
riverbank (Byelaws 2025)	"the bank mentioned in the records of concerned department (Revenue/Irrigation)" (Byelaws 2025, cl. 2.11(ii))
drain (Byelaws 2025)	"A conduit or channel for the carriage of storm water, sewage, ..." (Byelaws 2025, definition 28)

Table 7E.4 — Terms not yet verified

The following terms are in use for Uttar Pradesh's waterbodies, but their meaning or regional use was not confirmed in Platts, the Shabdasagara or an official source during research for this Manual. They shall not be used in a record or a drawing as defined terms until verified.

Term	Reported meaning or use	Status
johad and pokhar by region	Johad as the usual word in western Uttar Pradesh, and pokhar in the east	The dictionary meanings are in Table 7E.1; their regional use in Uttar Pradesh was not checked in a modern dictionary or gazetteer
bandh, bandha in Bundelkhand	The embanked tanks and field bunds of Bundelkhand, some of them of the Chandela period	Not researched for this Manual
bhita (as printed in the Revenue Code)	Named with "embankment, bandh" in s. 77(1)(i) of the Revenue Code	Not looked up
बरसाती नाला (barsātī nālā)	A seasonal or rain-fed nala	Not looked up
जलभराव (jalbharāv)	Waterlogging	Not looked up

The Manual uses the terms in the last column of Tables 7E.1 and 7E.2, and the Uttar Pradesh terms defined after Clause 7.2.

Form 7-1 — Waterbody Sheet

Supports Clauses 7.3.2, 7.4 and 7.15(1) of Chapter 7.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One sheet per waterbody. Attach the plan of Clause 7.3.2 at 1:1,000 or larger.

Table 7F.1 — Form 7-1, Section A: Project and waterbody

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Project name and Authority file number	_____	—
A2	Waterbody name (English and Hindi) and inventory ID (Annex 7A), if any	_____	7.3.1
A3	Waterbody type (Clause 7.2)	_____	7.2
A4	Position: within the site / within 100 m of the site boundary / downstream within the Chapter 5 extent	_____	7.3.2
A5	Survey numbers and village	_____	7.3.1(a)
A6	Custodian	_____	7.3.1(b)
A7	Sources checked (tick): Revenue records and village maps (from the 1952 record), Master, Zonal and layout plans, I&WRD floodplain coordinates, wetland notifications □; I&WRD / Gram Panchayat registers □; Authority inventory or court list □; historical maps and imagery, including NWIA □; site survey □	_____	7.3.3
A8	Where sources conflict: which extent governs (the larger)	_____	7.3.3
A9	Datum of all levels, and conversion from any I&WRD datum	_____	7.3.5

Table 7F.2 — Form 7-1, Section B: Levels and features

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
B1	FTL (tanks, lakes, ponds) or top of bank (channels), m	_____	7.2
B2	MWL (tanks), m, and basis (I&WRD record or 1% AEP computed)	_____	7.2
B3	TBL, lowest point (tanks), m	_____	7.3.1(d)
B4	1% AEP flood level, m, and source (adopted map / hydraulic study / not available)	_____	7.3.4
B5	Drainage area at the site (channels), ha	_____	7.4.1(b)
B6	Supply channels, surplus courses, sluices and surplus weirs shown on plan (yes / no)	_____	7.3.2
B7	Known encroachments, with date recorded	_____	7.3.1(g)

Table 7F.3 — Form 7-1, Section C: Setback

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	Basis of setback: mapped extent / hydraulic study / fixed width (Annex 7B)	_____	7.15(1)
C2	Is a hydraulic study required under Clause 7.3.4 (a) / (b) / (c)?	_____	7.3.4
C3	Floodway outer edge, m from FTL or top of bank, and how delineated	_____	7.6.1
C4	Zone 1 width, m (greatest of 15 m, floodway edge, MWL contour)	_____	7.4.3
C5	Zone 2 width, m (to 1% AEP extent + 10 m, or 10 m)	_____	7.4.4

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C6	Wider statutory or approval setback, if any, and its source	_____	7.4.5
C7	Setback applied: Manual standard / a wider statutory or approval line: the notified 1-in-100-year floodplain of the Ganga, the Yamuna or another river; the 200 m from the Ganga riverbank of cl. 2.11 of the Byelaws 2025; a court line (for example the Allahabad High Court's 500 m at Prayagraj, 2011); the 50 m zone of influence of a notified wetland; a pond, drain or nala in a Master, Zonal or layout plan; an I&WRD embankment or canal line; or other (state which)	_____	7.4, Disclosure
C8	Uses proposed in Zone 1 and Zone 2, and the custodian's NOC for any work in Zone 1	_____	7.5, 7.15(5)
C9	Fill proposed in the flood fringe (yes / no); if yes, Form 7-3 attached	_____	7.6.3
C10	Zone 1 marker positions shown (not more than 30 m apart)	_____	7.13.4

Table 7F.4 — Form 7-1, Section D: Prepared by

Field	Entry
Name, registration and empanelment number (Clause 10.6)	_____
Signature and date	_____
Licensed surveyor for the levels (name, licence number)	_____

Form 7-2 — Tank Storage Credit Sheet

Supports Clauses 7.7, 7.8, 7.11, 7.14 and 7.15(4) of Chapter 7.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One sheet per tank whose storage is counted. Storage that fails any item in Section B shall not be counted (Clause 7.7.1).

Table 7F.5 — Form 7-2, Section A: Tank and scheme

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Tank name and inventory ID (Annex 7A); custodian	_____	7.3.1
A2	Scheme in which storage is counted: basin plan / regional facility / fee-in-lieu (S-5)	_____	7.7.1, 7.11
A3	Cascade modelled: uppermost tank _____ to outfall _____	_____	7.7.2
A4	Datum	_____	7.3.5

Table 7F.6 — Form 7-2, Section B: Conditions for counting storage

No.	Condition	Date / reference	Met (yes / no)	Clause
B1	FTL, MWL, TBL, weir crest and length, sluice sills surveyed within the previous 5 years	_____	_____	7.7.1(a)
B2	Stage–storage curve from a bathymetric and topographic survey within 5 years or after the last desilting, whichever is later	_____	_____	7.7.1(b)
B3	Documented operating rule agreed with the custodian (Annex 7C)	_____	_____	7.7.1(c), 7.8
B4	Weir, sluices and bund under an O&M plan; latest pre-monsoon inspection found them serviceable	_____	_____	7.7.1(d), 7.14.4
B5	Custodian's written concurrence	_____	_____	7.7.1(e)

Table 7F.7 — Form 7-2, Section C: Levels and creditable volume

No.	Item	Value	Clause
C1	Starting level: FTL, or cushion level under a rule meeting Clause 7.8.2, m	_____	7.7.3
C2	If a cushion is used: controllable outlet (type) and drawdown time, h	_____	7.8.2(a)
C3	If a cushion is used: reliability from continuous simulation, % of SW monsoon seasons (≥ 90%)	_____	7.8.2(c)
C4	Computed maximum level, 1% AEP inflow with climate factor routed through the cascade, m	_____	7.7.4
C5	MWL, m; is C4 ≤ MWL?	_____	7.7.4(a)
C6	Freeboard C4 to TBL, m; I&WRD freeboard standard, m; met?	_____	7.7.4(b)
C7	Storage between C1 and C4, from the stage–storage curve, m^3	_____	7.7.5
C8	Volume already committed to another facility or scheme, m^3	_____	7.7.5
C9	Creditable volume = C7 − C8, m^3	_____	7.7.5
C10	Register entry under Clause 10.17 (fee-in-lieu storage)	_____	7.11.2(d)

Table 7F.8 — Form 7-2, Section D: Bund safety

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
D1	Specified dam under the Dam Safety Act, 2021? Height, crest length, capacity, maximum flood discharge	_____	7.14.1
D2	Hazard class: high / low	_____	7.14.2
D3	High hazard: weir passes 1% AEP at MWL with freeboard; 0.2% AEP check without overtopping	_____	7.14.3(a)
D4	High hazard: breach analysis and emergency action plan (references)	_____	7.14.3(b), (c)
D5	High hazard: independent check under Clause 10.6 (name)	_____	7.14.3(d)

Table 7F.9 — Form 7-2, Section E: Signatures

Role	Name and designation	Signature and date
Designer (Clause 10.6)	_____	_____
Independent checker, where Clause 7.14.3(d) applies	_____	_____
Custodian's concurrence (Clause 7.7.1(e))	_____	_____

Form 7-3 — Compensatory Storage Calculation (by elevation band)

Supports Clauses 7.6.3 to 7.6.5, 7.9.5 and 7.15(3) of Chapter 7.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Method

1. Fix the **lower limit**: the normal water level of the waterbody, or the 50% AEP (2-yr) level where higher (Clause 7.6.4(b)).
2. Fix the **upper limit**: the 1% AEP flood level (with the climate factor).
3. Divide the range into **bands of not more than 0.3 m**. The top band may be thinner.
4. For each level z at a band boundary, measure on plan:
    - A_fill(z): the area of the fill footprint where existing ground is below z; and
    - A_cut(z): the area of the excavation where finished ground is below z and existing ground was above z (new flooded area).
5. For each band, by the average end-area method: V = (A(z_bottom) + A(z_top)) / 2 × band thickness. Do this for fill (volume lost) and for excavation (volume gained).
6. **Check each band:** volume gained ≥ volume lost. A surplus in one band does not make up a shortfall in another (Clause 7.6.4(b)).
7. Check the other conditions of Clause 7.6.4(c) to (f) in Section C.

Figure 7.2 in Chapter 7 shows the method.

Table 7F.10 — Form 7-3, Section A: Levels

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Waterbody, reach, and inventory ID	_____	7.6.4(c)
A2	Normal water level, m; 50% AEP level, m; lower limit (the higher), m	_____	7.6.4(b)
A3	1% AEP flood level with climate factor, m (upper limit)	_____	7.6.4(b)
A4	Band thickness, m (≤ 0.3) and number of bands	_____	7.6.4(b)
A5	Datum	_____	7.3.5

Table 7F.11 — Form 7-3, Section B: Band-by-band balance

Band	From (m)	To (m)	A_fill bottom (m²)	A_fill top (m²)	Volume lost (m³)	A_cut bottom (m²)	A_cut top (m²)	Volume gained (m³)	Gained ≥ lost?
1	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Total					_____			_____	

Add rows as needed.

Table 7F.12 — Form 7-3, Section C: Other conditions

No.	Condition	Met (yes / no) and evidence	Clause
C1	Fill is in the flood fringe, not the floodway, and for a permitted use	_____	7.6.2, 7.6.3
C2	Excavation is in the same reach of the same waterbody, hydraulically connected, and not further downstream than the fill	_____	7.6.4(c)
C3	Excavation drains by gravity as the flood recedes; no pumping; no permanent pool below normal water level	_____	7.6.4(d)
C4	Excavation built before, or at the same time as, the fill	_____	7.6.4(e)
C5	Covenant or handover so that it is never filled (reference)	_____	7.6.4(f)
C6	Not counted as detention or retention under Chapter 4	_____	7.6.5
C7	Signature of designer (Clause 10.6) and date	_____	10.6

Worked example

Illustrative — not design values. A site in the flood fringe of a channel needs a fill pad for a permitted Zone 2 use (Clause 7.5.2). The inputs are assumed.

- Normal water level 10.00 m; 50% AEP level 9.80 m. Lower limit = 10.00 m (the higher).
- 1% AEP flood level 11.20 m. Range 1.20 m, so four bands of 0.30 m.
- The fill footprint is 1,600 m². Existing ground across the footprint rises evenly from 10.00 m to 11.20 m, so the area of footprint below each level is: 0 m² at 10.00 m; 400 m² at 10.30 m; 800 m² at 10.60 m; 1,200 m² at 10.90 m; 1,600 m² at 11.20 m.
- The excavation is a graded cut beside the channel, with its floor at 10.00 m. The new flooded area below each level (first trial) is: 300 m² at 10.00 m; 900 m² at 10.30 m; 1,100 m² at 10.60 m; 1,500 m² at 10.90 m; 1,500 m² at 11.20 m.

Step 1 — volume lost, band by band (V = average area × 0.3 m):

- Band 1: (0 + 400) / 2 × 0.3 = 60 m³
- Band 2: (400 + 800) / 2 × 0.3 = 180 m³
- Band 3: (800 + 1,200) / 2 × 0.3 = 300 m³
- Band 4: (1,200 + 1,600) / 2 × 0.3 = 420 m³
- Total: 960 m³

Step 2 — volume gained, first trial:

Table 7F.13 — Worked example: first trial (illustrative)

Band	From (m)	To (m)	Volume lost (m³)	A_cut bottom (m²)	A_cut top (m²)	Volume gained (m³)	Gained ≥ lost?
1	10.00	10.30	60	300	900	180	Yes
2	10.30	10.60	180	900	1,100	300	Yes
3	10.60	10.90	300	1,100	1,500	390	Yes
4	10.90	11.20	420	1,500	1,500	450	Yes
Total			960			1,320	

Every band passes. Note that a simple total balance would hide a failure if, for example, the cut were made deeper and narrower: suppose the designer instead offers a cut with new flooded areas of 1,400 m² at 10.00 m, 1,400 m² at 10.30 m, 1,000 m² at 10.60 m, 600 m² at 10.90 m and 200 m² at 11.20 m.

Table 7F.14 — Worked example: deeper, narrower cut (illustrative)

Band	From (m)	To (m)	Volume lost (m³)	A_cut bottom (m²)	A_cut top (m²)	Volume gained (m³)	Gained ≥ lost?
1	10.00	10.30	60	1,400	1,400	420	Yes
2	10.30	10.60	180	1,400	1,000	360	Yes
3	10.60	10.90	300	1,000	600	240	**No**
4	10.90	11.20	420	600	200	120	**No**
Total			960			1,140	

The total gained (1,140 m³) exceeds the total lost (960 m³), but bands 3 and 4 are short by 60 m³ and 300 m³. The surplus low down cannot be counted against them: the low storage fills early in every flood and is not available when the fill takes away storage near the peak. This design fails Clause 7.6.4(b) and must be regraded so that the upper bands gain at least as much as they lose, as in the first trial.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 8

Water Quality and Recharge

These annexes support Chapter 8. They give the layout of the water quality rainfall tables, the Level of Service and Value Rating method in detail, the layout of the BMP calibration programme, design sheets for each BMP, standard details for construction erosion and sediment control, and the two forms that Clause 8.14 requires. Annexes 8A and 8C need data that are not yet available; they say so and give the rule to use in the meantime. The forms are draft forms.

Annex 8A — 3-month ARI 24-hour depth and IDF by zone

Supports Clauses 8.2, 8.4.1 and 8.4.5 of Chapter 8.

To be prepared. This annex will contain, for each rainfall zone of Chapter 2, the 24-hour 3-month ARI depth P_3m and the 3-month ARI intensity–duration relationship used for Q_wq. It needs long-term daily and sub-daily rainfall records (IMD station and gridded data, with NIH as the Chapter 2 primary source), analysed as a partial-duration series. Until it is published, the designer shall compute P_3m from the longest available daily record for the site's zone, as the 24-hour depth equalled or exceeded on average four times a year (Clause 8.2), state the record, its length and the method on the Water Quality Sheet (Form 8-1), and use P_wq = max (P_ret, P_3m) (Clause 8.4.1). The climate factor is not applied (Clause 8.4.3).

8A.1 Method to be used in preparing the annex

- (a) Use daily records of at least 30 years where available (as for station IDF in Chapter 2).
- (b) Form the partial-duration series of 24-hour depths, with independent events separated by at least one dry day.
- (c) Choose the threshold so that the number of events above it averages four per year; P_3m is that threshold.
- (d) Derive the 3-month ARI intensities for durations from 10 minutes to 24 hours from sub-daily records, or by the Chapter 2 method of scaling from the daily value, stating which.
- (e) Do not apply the climate factor (Clause 8.4.3).

Table 8A.1 — Water quality rainfall depths by zone (layout)

Zone (Chapter 2)	Representative stations or grid	Record (years)	P_ret, Annex 2E (mm)	P_3m (mm)	P_wq = max (mm)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 8A.2 — 3-month ARI intensity by duration (layout)

Zone	10 min (mm/h)	15 min (mm/h)	30 min (mm/h)	1 h (mm/h)	2 h (mm/h)	6 h (mm/h)	24 h (mm/h)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Zone	10 min (mm/h)	15 min (mm/h)	30 min (mm/h)	1 h (mm/h)	2 h (mm/h)	6 h (mm/h)	24 h (mm/h)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 8B — Redevelopment LoS table and treatment-train composite VR

Supports Clauses 8.6.2 to 8.6.5 of Chapter 8.

8B.1 Required Level of Service for redevelopment

To be prepared. This part will give the required Level of Service for redevelopment sites (existing impervious cover of 20% or more of the site, Clause 8.6.2). The MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012, Table 4.3) sets the redevelopment LoS from the percentage of impervious cover within the disturbed area; the Uttar Pradesh values need to be set by the State Stormwater Technical Committee and checked against local redevelopment cases. Until it is published, the required LoS for a redevelopment site is **6** for the disturbed area. Where Table 8.2, applied to the change in CN from the existing condition to post-development, gives a higher LoS, that higher LoS applies. This interim value is set by this Manual. A redevelopment site that retains its whole WQv on site under Chapter 4 needs no further treatment for that area, apart from pretreatment, hotspot controls and the outfall requirements (Clause 8.4.4).

Table 8B.1 — Required LoS for redevelopment (layout)

Existing impervious cover within the disturbed area (%)	Change in impervious cover	Required LoS
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

8B.2 Composite Value Rating: area-weighted method

The composite VR of a site is the area-weighted average of the VRs of the BMPs serving each part of the site (Clause 8.6.3):

$$VR_{site} = \Sigma (A_i \times VR_i) / \Sigma A_i + VR_{signage}$$

where:

- A_i = the area of part i of the site, ha;
- VR_i = the Value Rating (Table 8.3) of the BMP serving part i, which counts only if the BMP meets Clause 8.6.4 for the whole of A_i;
- ΣA_i = the whole site area: every part of the site is assigned to one BMP, or to preserved native vegetation; a part served by no BMP is entered with $VR_i = 0$; and
- $VR_{signage} = 0.25$ where public education signage is provided (Table 8.3), otherwise 0.

The site complies where $VR_{site} \geq$ required LoS (Clause 8.6.3).

Illustrative — not design values. A 1.0 ha site that is not redevelopment, with ΔCN = 18. Required LoS = 8 (Table 8.2).

Table 8B.2 — Worked example: composite VR (illustrative)

Part	Area A_i (ha)	BMP	VR_i (Table 8.3)	A_i × VR_i
Roofs and paving draining to bioretention	0.60	Bioretention	8.5	5.100
Car park	0.25	Permeable pavement	7.5	1.875
Preserved strip along boundary	0.15	Native vegetation (preserved)	9.25	1.388
Total	1.00			8.363

- Area-weighted VR = 8.363 / 1.00 = 8.36
- Signage provided: + 0.25
- VR_site = 8.61 ≥ 8. The site complies.

Without the permeable pavement (car park draining untreated, VR = 0): (5.100 + 0 + 1.388) / 1.00 + 0.25 = 6.74 < 8. The site would not comply.

8B.3 Treatment trains

To be prepared. This part will give the composite VR of BMPs in series (a treatment train), following the approach of the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012, Table 4.6), with values to be confirmed for Uttar Pradesh by the calibration programme of Clause 8.13.4 (Annex 8C). Until it is published, each part of the site is credited with the VR of one BMP in the train that meets Clause 8.6.4 for that part, normally the last BMP before discharge, and no extra credit is given for BMPs in series. Pretreatment devices, silt traps and oil-grit separators upstream of the credited BMP earn no VR of their own (Clauses 8.6.4(c), 8.7.11(c) and 8.7.12(c)).

Table 8B.3 — Composite VR of treatment trains (layout)

First BMP	Second BMP	Composite VR	Conditions
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 8C — Uttar Pradesh BMP performance calibration

Supports Clauses 8.6.3, 8.13 and 8.15.1 of Chapter 8.

To be prepared. This annex will report the BMP performance calibration programme of the State Stormwater Technical Committee (Clause 8.13.4): measured inflow and outflow concentrations and volumes for BMPs built in Uttar Pradesh, and the revised Value Ratings that follow from them. It needs wet-weather monitoring of BMPs over several SW monsoon seasons, with laboratory analysis to the CPCB methods, and the outfall monitoring of Clause 8.13.1 published under Clause 10.17. Until it is published, the Value Ratings of Table 8.3 (MARC/APWA 2012) apply, and a proprietary device earns a VR only from verified test data (Table 8.3).

The layouts below set the minimum records the programme shall keep, so that results from different authorities can be pooled.

Table 8C.1 — Monitoring site register (layout)

Site ID	BMP type (Table 8.3)	Location and authority	Catchment area (ha)	Impervious (%)	Soil and groundwater setting	Date commissioned	Pretreatment
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 8C.2 — Event record (layout; parameters of Clause 8.13.2)

Site ID	Event date	Rainfall (mm)	Inflow volume (m^3)	Outflow volume (m^3)	TSS in / out (mg/L)	BOD in / out (mg/L)	COD in / out (mg/L)	Faecal coliform in / out (MPN/100 mL)	TN in / out (mg/L)	TP in / out (mg/L)	Oil and grease in / out (mg/L)	Heavy metals (industrial catchments)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 8C.3 — Performance summary and proposed VR (layout)

BMP type	Sites	Events	Volume reduction (%)	Median effluent TSS (mg/L)	Other findings	VR in Table 8.3	Proposed VR
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 8D — BMP design sheets, media specification, plant lists

Supports Clauses 8.5, 8.7, 8.8 and 8.11 of Chapter 8.

Each design sheet collects the requirements of Chapter 8 for one BMP. Values marked "recommended starting value" in Clause 8.7.1 may be departed from with justification. Values that the Manual does not set are marked "to be confirmed in design"; the designer shall state and justify them. Every BMP also needs: sizing for the WQv or Q_wq (Clause 8.6.4(a)), pretreatment (Clause 8.5.3), a safe bypass for flows above Q_wq (Clause 8.4.6) and maintenance access (Chapter 10).

8D.1 Design sheets

Table 8D.1 — Pretreatment (all BMPs)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Where needed	Every bioretention cell, infiltration facility, permeable pavement receiving run-on, wet pond and constructed wetland, at each concentrated inflow	8.5.3
Types	Sediment forebay, grass filter strip, silt trap or proprietary device	8.5.3
Size	Holds at least 10% of the WQv of its contributing area; or sized for Q_wq (flow-through devices)	8.5.3
Access	Cleanable without entering or disturbing the main BMP	8.5.4
Silt traps and catch pits	At every inlet receiving runoff from unpaved ground, and at the inlet of every drain discharging to a BMP or waterbody; sump at least 300 mm below the outlet invert; earn no VR	8.7.12

Table 8D.2 — Bioretention and rain gardens (Figure 8.2)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Ponding depth	≤ 300 mm above the mulch, with an overflow at maximum ponding level	8.7.2(a)
Ponding drawdown	Within 48 h	8.7.2(b)
Filter media	600–900 mm engineered sandy loam, low fines, low phosphorus (Table 8D.12)	8.7.2(c)
Mulch	50–75 mm	8.7.2(c)
Transition (choker) and gravel drainage layers	Required; thickness and grading to be confirmed in design	8.7.2(d)
Underdrain	Perforated; required where the design infiltration rate cannot meet the 48 h drawdown, or where lined; diameter to be confirmed in design	8.7.2(e)
Lining	Required where Clause 8.8 cannot be met, and at hotspots	8.7.2(f)
Plants	Native or naturalised, tolerant of waterlogging and long dry spells (Tables 8D.13 and 8D.14)	8.7.2(g)
VR	8.5 (rain garden / infiltration 9.0)	Table 8.3

Table 8D.3 — Vegetated swales

Item	Requirement	Clause
Section	Trapezoidal or parabolic; side slopes no steeper than 1V:3H	8.7.3(a)
Longitudinal slope	0.5% to 4%; check dams where steeper	8.7.3(b)
Flow at Q_wq	Depth not more than grass height; velocity ≤ 0.3 m/s	8.7.3(c)
1% AEP or bypass flow	No erosion (Chapter 9 permissible velocities)	8.7.3(d)
Underdrained ("dry") swale	Where slope < 1% or subsoil is poorly drained; filter media as Table 8D.12	8.7.3(e)
VR	4.0 (native vegetation swale)	Table 8.3

Table 8D.4 — Vegetated filter strips

Item	Requirement	Clause
Inflow	Sheet flow only; level spreader where flow arrives concentrated	8.7.4(a)
Length in flow direction	≥ 5 m	8.7.4(b)
Slope	1% to 8%	8.7.4(b)
Use	Mainly pretreatment for bioretention, infiltration and swales	8.7.4(c)
VR	5.0	Table 8.3

Table 8D.5 — Permeable pavement

Item	Requirement	Clause
Run-on	Impervious run-on area ≤ 2 × permeable area; none from unpaved or eroding areas	8.7.5(a)
Base reservoir	Clean open-graded aggregate holding its share of the WQv in its voids; void ratio confirmed by test	8.7.5(b)
Open (infiltrating) base	Only where Clause 8.8 is met; otherwise lined with underdrain and counted as filtration only	8.7.5(c)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Structure	Designed for traffic loading to the road authority's standards	8.7.5(d)
Exclusions	Not at hotspots; not where it will be resurfaced with impermeable material	8.7.5(e)
VR	7.5	Table 8.3

Table 8D.6 — Infiltration trenches and basins (Figure 8.3)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Pretreatment	Always (Table 8D.1)	8.7.6(a)
Fill	Clean washed aggregate, void ratio confirmed by test; geotextile on sides and top; sand base	8.7.6(b)
Observation well	To the base of each trench	8.7.6(c)
Storage	WQv (or Chapter 4 retention volume, if greater) held in the voids	8.7.6(d)
Drawdown	Empty within 72 h at the design infiltration rate	8.7.6(d), 8.8.7
Overflow	At grade, to the minor or major system	8.7.6(e)
Commissioning	Not in service until the contributing area is stabilised	8.7.6(f)
Criteria	All of Clause 8.8 (Table 8D.11)	8.8

Table 8D.7 — Wet ponds (extended wet detention)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Permanent pool	≥ WQv	8.7.7(a)
Extended detention	WQv above the pool, released over 24–48 h	8.7.7(a), 8.4.7
Forebay	At each inlet	8.7.7(b)
Flow path	Length-to-width ≥ 3:1; no short-circuiting	8.7.7(c)
Pool depth	1.0–2.5 m, with safety bench (Clause 7.9.4)	8.7.7(d)
Water balance	Monthly balance with IMD rainfall and pan evaporation: ≥ 50% of pool volume kept through the driest year in 10; no top-up with groundwater, potable water or sewage	8.7.8
Flood detention	Chapter 4 detention may sit above the extended detention level	8.7.7(f)
VR	5.0	Table 8.3

Table 8D.8 — Constructed wetlands

Item	Requirement	Clause
Layout	Inlet sedimentation pond (forebay), then shallow macrophyte zone	8.7.9(a)
Extended detention	WQv above normal water level, released over 24–48 h; depth ≤ 0.5 m	8.7.9(b)
Flow path	Length-to-width ≥ 3:1; deep zones across the flow path	8.7.9(c)
Bypass	High-flow bypass so that floods do not scour the macrophyte zone	8.7.9(d)
At a tank inlet	Within the tank's setback, outside its waterspread; not counted as tank storage	8.7.9(e)
Water balance	As wet ponds (minimum wetland depth kept)	8.7.8

Item	Requirement	Clause
VR	7.0 (extended detention wetland)	Table 8.3

Table 8D.9 — Gross pollutant traps and outfall screens

Item	Requirement	Clause
Treatment flow	Q_wq; all flows up to 1% AEP pass without washing out captured material	8.7.10(a)
Capture size	Down to about 5 mm	8.7.10(b)
Head loss	In the drain HGL (Chapter 9), screen 50% blocked	8.7.10(c), 8.10.3(a)
Storage	For the O&M cleaning interval; not less than 3-monthly cleaning	8.7.10(d)
Access	Vehicle access for suction or grab cleaning; safe cleaning platform	8.7.10(e), 8.10.3(d)
Blocked screen	Overflow or bypass path so that a fully blocked screen does not flood property	8.10.3(b)
Bar spacing	Chosen for the hazard: closer for litter capture, wider where blockage would cause flooding; to be confirmed in design	8.10.3(c)

Table 8D.10 — Oil-grit separators

Item	Requirement	Clause
Where	Fuel stations; vehicle workshops and washing bays; bus and truck depots; parking areas of more than 50 spaces	8.7.11(a)
Sizing	Q_wq, with high-flow bypass	8.7.11(b)
Not alone	Followed by a filtering BMP where the site needs a VR above 5; lined filtering BMP before any infiltration at hotspots	8.7.11(c), 8.8.8

Table 8D.11 — Infiltration and recharge criteria (all infiltrating BMPs)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Groundwater separation	Seasonal high groundwater ≥ 1.0 m below base (roof-only runoff in notified coastal sand: ≥ 0.5 m with mounding check, mound ≥ 0.3 m below base)	8.8.1, 8.8.9(d)
Bedrock or impermeable layer	Base ≥ 1.0 m above, unless designed for rock-aquifer recharge under Clause 8.8.10	8.8.2
Tests	Double-ring (ASTM D3385) for basins, bioretention, permeable pavement; falling-head borehole or trial-pit soakage (e.g. BRE Digest 365) for trenches, soakaways, pits, wells; ≥ 2 per facility and ≥ 1 per 100 m² of base or per 50 m of trench; Form 8-2	8.8.3
Design rate	Measured rate ÷ 2.0 (tests meet 8.8.3(c) and vary by no more than a factor of 2), otherwise ÷ 3.0	8.8.4
Minimum rates	≥ 13 mm/h full infiltration; 3–13 mm/h partial, with underdrain, credit only for volume infiltrated within 72 h; < 3 mm/h no credit	8.8.5
Setbacks (runoff from paved surfaces)	Foundations 3 m, basements 5 m; property boundary 1.5 m; drinking-water well or borewell 30 m; septic tank or soak pit 15 m; crest of slope steeper than 1V:3H 6 m	8.8.6
Expansive soils	Foundation setback doubled	8.8.11(b)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Drawdown	Empty within 72 h at design rate; tested after construction	8.8.7
Hotspots	No infiltration without treatment; none at all for waste sites and contaminated land	8.8.8
Road runoff	Never led directly into a well, borewell or recharge shaft	8.11.3(b)

8D.2 Bioretention drawdown check

The 48-hour ponding drawdown (Clause 8.7.2(b)) and the minimum rates of Clause 8.8.5 together decide whether a cell needs an underdrain.

- Rate needed to drain the maximum ponding depth in 48 h = 300 mm / 48 h = 6.25 mm/h.
- Design rate ≥ 13 mm/h: full infiltration, no underdrain, provided Clause 8.8 is met.
- Design rate from 6.25 mm/h to 13 mm/h: the ponding drains in time, but Clause 8.8.5(b) applies, so an underdrain is required.
- Design rate below 6.25 mm/h: the ponding cannot drain in 48 h by infiltration; an underdrain is required (Clause 8.7.2(e)), and below 3 mm/h no infiltration credit is given.

Illustrative — not design values. Two tests at the base of a proposed cell give 30 mm/h and 22 mm/h. The two results differ by a factor of 30 / 22 = 1.36, which is not more than 2, and the number of tests meets Clause 8.8.3(c), so the safety factor is 2.0. Taking the lower result, the design rate = 22 / 2.0 = 11 mm/h. This is above 6.25 mm/h, so the ponding drains in 300 / 11 = 27 h, within 48 h. It is below 13 mm/h, so the cell is a partial-infiltration design with an underdrain (Clause 8.8.5(b)).

8D.3 Filter media specification

Table 8D.12 — Bioretention filter media and layers

Layer	Requirement from Chapter 8	Values to be confirmed in design
Mulch	50–75 mm (Clause 8.7.2(c)); shredded hardwood or similar organic mulch that does not float away at the ponding depth	Material and source
Filter media	600–900 mm engineered sandy loam with low fines and low phosphorus content (Clause 8.7.2(c))	Particle size grading; fines (silt + clay) limit; organic matter content; phosphorus limit; saturated hydraulic conductivity of the compacted media; source and test certificate for each batch
Transition (choker) layer	Between media and gravel, to stop media washing into the gravel (Clause 8.7.2(d))	Thickness and grading, matched to the media and gravel
Gravel drainage layer	Below the transition layer, surrounding the underdrain (Clause 8.7.2(d))	Thickness, grading, washed
Underdrain	Perforated pipe where Clause 8.7.2(e) applies, with cleanouts	Diameter, slope, perforation, outlet level
Liner	Where Clause 8.7.2(f) applies (cannot meet Clause 8.8; hotspots)	Liner type and protection

Media shall be tested before placing, and placed in lifts without heavy compaction. The State Stormwater Technical Committee should set numeric limits for grading, fines, organic matter and phosphorus, with local sources of sand and compost, when it reviews this annex.

8D.4 Plant lists

The lists below are **indicative**. They name species that are native or long naturalised in the Ganga plain and known to tolerate both wet and dry periods; no Uttar Pradesh source on planting for stormwater was researched for this Manual. Hindi or Urdu names are given only where J. T. Platts, *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English* (1884, as served by the Digital South Asia Library), gives the name for the species or plant named, with its page; a dash means none was confirmed. Platts often uses older botanical names, which are given in the notes. Final selection shall be confirmed with a horticulturist or the State Forest Department for the site's soil and water table. Khadar sites need species tolerant of long waterlogging in sand and silt; Bundelkhand sites species tolerant of dry, thin soils over rock; tal and clay sites species tolerant of standing water. Usar (sodic) sites need specialist advice: species tolerant of sodic soils were not researched for this Manual.

Table 8D.13 — Indicative plants for bioretention, swales and filter strips

Use	Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Notes
Swales, filter strips, bioretention edges	*Chrysopogon zizanioides* (vetiver)	ख़स / خس (kẖas)	Deep-rooted clump grass; tolerates flooding and drought; binds soil on side slopes and tal banks. Platts: "A fragrant grass, *Andropogon muricatum* (from the roots of which *taṭṭīs* are made)" (p. 489), an older name of this species
Swales and filter strips (turf)	*Cynodon dactylon* (Bermuda grass)	दूब / دوب (dūb)	Low turf; tolerates drought, traffic and short flooding. Platts: "Bent grass, panic grass, *Panicum dactylon*, or *Cynodon dactylon*" (p. 531)
Swales and banks on floodplain sites	*Saccharum spontaneum*	कास / کاس (kās)	Native tall grass of river sands; binds banks; cut back where it would obstruct a channel. Platts: "A species of grass, of which ropes, &c. are made, *Saccharum spontaneum*" (p. 801)
Trees beside bioretention and swales	*Syzygium cumini*	जामुन, जामन / جامن (jāmun, jāman)	Native; tolerates wet ground. Platts: "The tree *Eugenia jambelana*, or *Syzygium jambolanum*, and its fruit" (p. 372)
Trees beside bioretention and swales	*Millettia pinnata* (syn. *Pongamia pinnata*)	करंज / کرنج (karanj)	Native; tolerates waterlogging and drought. Platts names *Galedupa arborea*, an older name of this species, but also the fever-nut *Caesalpinia bonducella* under the same word (p. 828); confirm the species with the supplier. Keep roots clear of underdrains
Trees beside bioretention, swales and channels	*Terminalia arjuna*	अर्जुन / ارجن (arjun)	Native riverbank tree; tolerates seasonal flooding. Platts: "a certain tree, *Terminalia alata glabra*" (p. 39); that the name refers to this species was not confirmed in Platts
Trees beside channels and on floodplain sites	*Dalbergia sissoo*	शीशम / شیشم (śīśam)	Native riverine tree. Platts: "The tree *Dalbergia sisu*, and its wood" (p. 740)
Trees beside wet ponds and channels	*Ficus racemosa* (syn. *F. glomerata*)	गूलर / گولر (gūlar)	Native fig of stream banks. Platts: "The wild fig, *Ficus glomerata*" (p. 926). Keep roots clear of underdrains, pipes and walls
Bioretention (flowering, wet zones)	*Canna indica*	—	Naturalised; tolerates waterlogging; widely used in constructed wetlands in India

Table 8D.14 — Indicative plants for constructed wetlands and wet ponds

Zone	Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Notes
Shallow macrophyte zone	*Typha* spp. (e.g. *T. domingensis*, syn. *T. angustata*)	—	Native; spreads quickly and needs periodic harvesting. No Hindi name was confirmed in Platts: पटेर (paṭer), sometimes used for it, is glossed by Platts as *Cyperus* (p. 229)

Zone	Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Notes
Shallow macrophyte zone	*Phragmites karka*	नल / نل (nal); नरसल / نرسل (narsal)	Native reed; vigorous; keep out of nalas and channels where it would obstruct flow. Platts: "A species of reed, *Amphidonax karka*, or *Arundo karka*" (p. 1152) and "A large species of reed, *Arundo karka*" (p. 1132)
Shallow macrophyte zone	*Canna indica*	—	As Table 8D.13
Open water and deep zones	*Nelumbo nucifera* (lotus)	कमल / کمل (kamal)	Native; for permanent pools only. Platts: "The lotus, *Nelumbium speciosum*" (p. 849)
Open water and deep zones	*Nymphaea nouchali* (blue water lily)	नीलोफ़र / نیلوفر (nīlofar)	Native; for permanent pools only. Platts: "the blue water-lily, *Nymphæa cyanea*" (p. 1168), an older name of this species

Table 8D.15 — Species not to be planted

Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Reason
Eichhornia crassipes (water hyacinth)	—	Invasive; chokes tals, jheels, nalas and screens
Prosopis juliflora	—	Invasive on pond beds, embankments and drain banks
Ipomoea carnea	—	Invasive in ponds and channels; obstructs flow

---

Annex 8E — Erosion and sediment control standard details

Supports Clause 8.12 of Chapter 8.

The details below show the arrangement of each measure. Dimensions set by the Manual are given. Dimensions the Manual does not set are labelled "to be confirmed in design" and shall be shown on the ESC plan (Clause 8.12.1). Temporary measures are designed with the rainfall of Chapter 2 and a climate factor of 1.0 (Clause 8.12.4).

Table 8E.1 — Selection of measures (Clause 8.12.3)

Situation	Measure	Detail
Sheet flow leaving a disturbed area, along its downslope edge	Silt fence	Figure 8E.1
Concentrated flow from a disturbed area of up to 2 ha	Sediment trap	Figure 8E.2
Disturbed area of more than 2 ha	Sediment basin with surface dewatering outlet	Figure 8E.2
Existing drain inlet receiving site runoff	Inlet protection	Figure 8E.4
Vehicle exit to a public road	Stabilised construction exit, with wheel washing	Figure 8E.3
Stockpiles	Outside Zone 1 of any waterbody setback; ≥ 10 m from any drain; covered in the SW monsoon	Notes to Figure 8E.1
Dewatering	Through a sediment basin, settling tank or filter bag; never pumped directly to a drain or waterbody	Notes to Figure 8E.2
Concrete washout	Lined pit; never into a drain	Notes to Figure 8E.3

8E.1 Silt fence

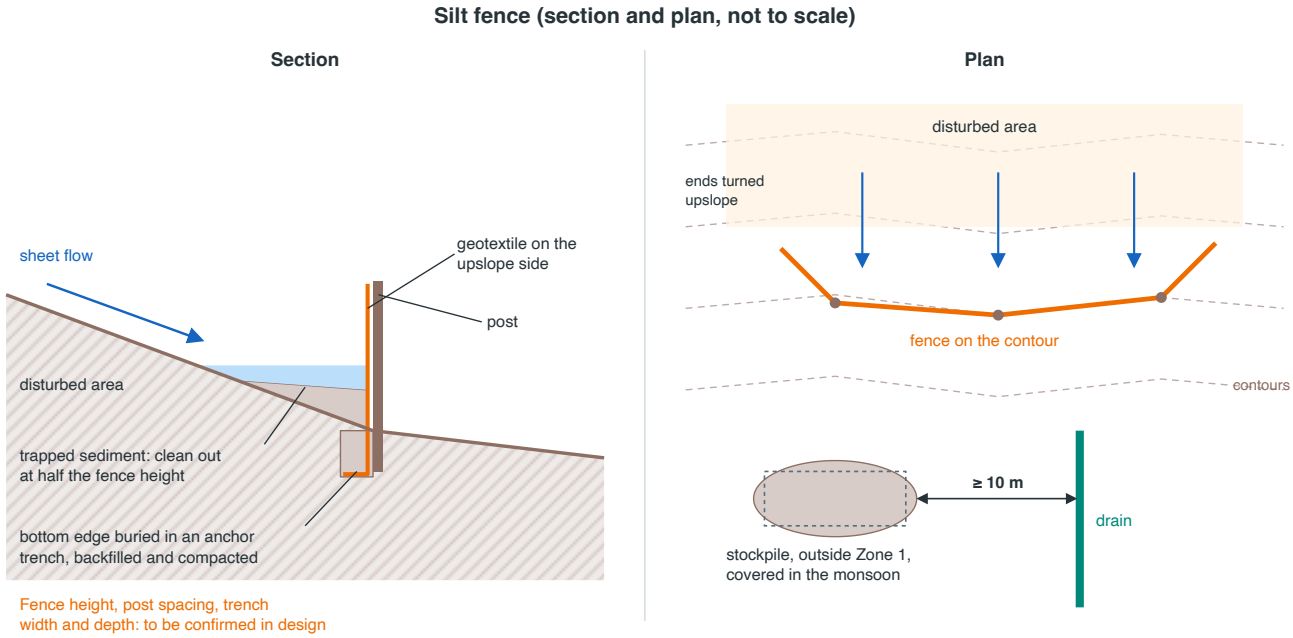


Figure 8E.1 — Silt fence: section showing geotextile on posts with the bottom edge buried in an anchor trench on the upslope side, and plan showing the fence on the contour with returns at the ends. Dimensions not set by the Manual are to be confirmed in design. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022), and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

To be prepared. Clause 8.12.3(a) refers to this annex for the limit on the area draining to each silt fence. That limit, and the maximum slope length above a fence, need to be set by the State Stormwater Technical Committee for Uttar Pradesh rainfall. Until they are published, the following interim limits apply, taken from common US practice (US EPA, Stormwater Best Management Practice fact sheet: Silt Fence):

- drainage area: not more than **0.1 ha per 30 m** of fence;
- slope length above the fence: not more than 30 m on slopes under 2%, 23 m at 2–5%, 15 m at 5–10%, 8 m at 10–20% and 5 m steeper than 20%;
- wherever flow arrives concentrated, or a limit cannot be met, a sediment trap (Figure 8E.2) is used instead.

The designer shall show the drainage area and slope length served by each fence on the ESC plan.

Notes:

1. Place along the contour at the downslope edge of the disturbed area, never across a concentrated flow path.
2. Turn the ends upslope so that water cannot run round them.
3. Inspect weekly and within 24 hours after every heavy-rainfall event; repair within 48 hours; remove sediment when the deposit reaches half the fence height (Clause 8.12.5).
4. Remove only after the area draining to it is stabilised (Clause 8.12.6).
5. Stockpiles: outside Zone 1, at least 10 m from any drain, and covered during the SW monsoon (Clause 8.12.3(f)).

8E.2 Sediment trap and sediment basin

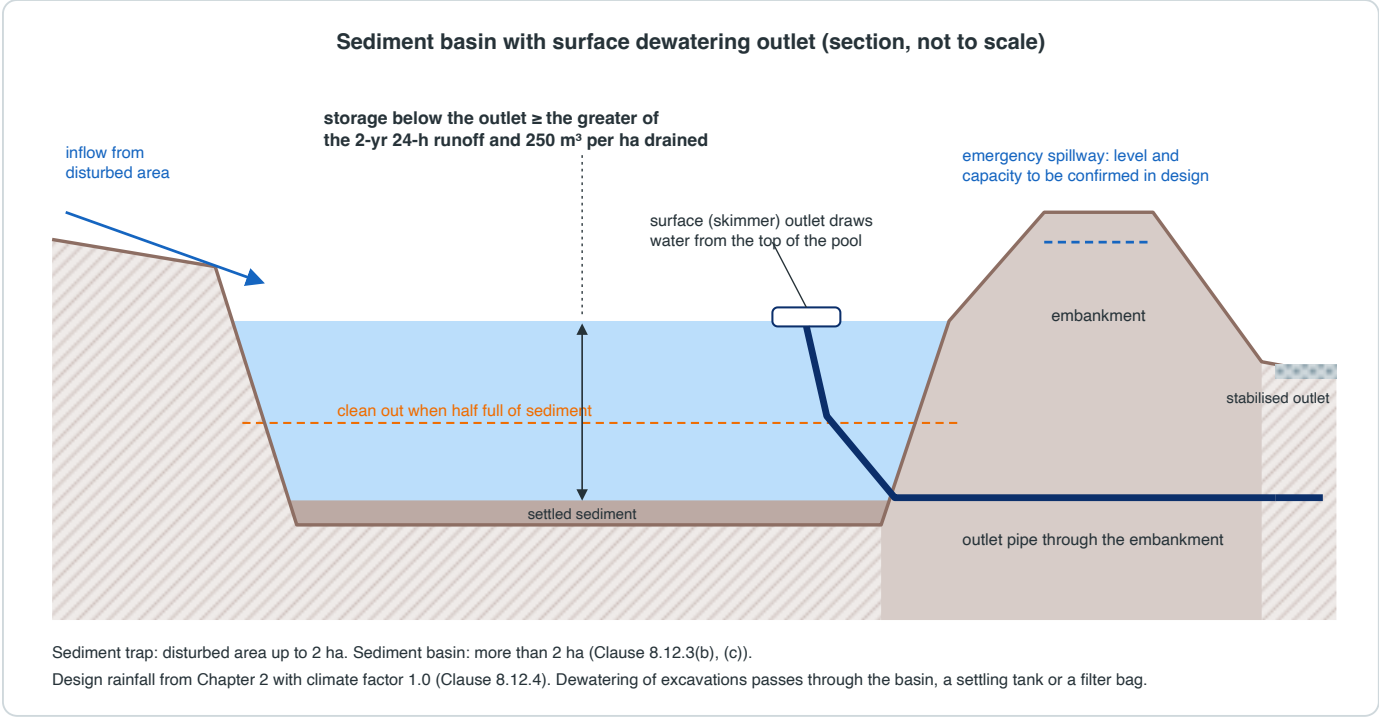


Figure 8E.2 — Sediment trap or basin in section: inflow, storage volume below the outlet, surface dewatering outlet (skimmer) drawing water from the top of the pool, emergency spillway, and sediment cleanout level at half the storage. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022).

Notes:

1. **Sediment trap:** for concentrated flow from disturbed areas of up to 2 ha (Clause 8.12.3(b)). Storage volume, depth and outlet: to be confirmed in design.
2. **Sediment basin:** for disturbed areas of more than 2 ha. Storage below the outlet ≥ the greater of (a) the runoff from the 50% AEP (2-yr) 24-hour storm and (b) 250 m³ per hectare of drainage area (Clause 8.12.3(c)).
3. The dewatering outlet draws water from the surface (Clause 8.12.3(c)).
4. An emergency spillway and its capacity: to be confirmed in design. Where the basin is also a permanent detention facility, the Chapter 4 spillway rules apply.
5. Clean out when half full of sediment (Clause 8.12.5). Remove sediment from any permanent facility before its as-built survey (Clause 8.12.6).
6. Dewatering of excavations shall pass through a sediment basin, settling tank or filter bag (Clause 8.12.3(g)).

Illustrative — not design values. A sediment basin serves 3.0 ha of disturbed land. Assume a 2-yr 24-hour rainfall of 100 mm (climate factor 1.0, Clause 8.12.4) and a curve number of 86 for bare compacted ground under the antecedent moisture condition of Chapter 2.

- $S = 25{,}400 / 86 - 254 = 41.35$ mm; $I_a = 0.2S = 8.27$ mm
- $Q = (P - I_a)^2 / (P - I_a + S) = (100 - 8.27)^2 / (100 - 8.27 + 41.35) = 8{,}414 / 133.08 = 63.2$ mm
- (a) Runoff volume = $10 \times Q \times A = 10 \times 63.2 \times 3.0 = 1{,}896$ m³
- (b) 250 m³/ha × 3.0 ha = 750 m³
- Required storage below the outlet = max (1,896, 750) = 1,896 m³. Here the 2-yr runoff governs.

8E.3 Stabilised construction exit and concrete washout

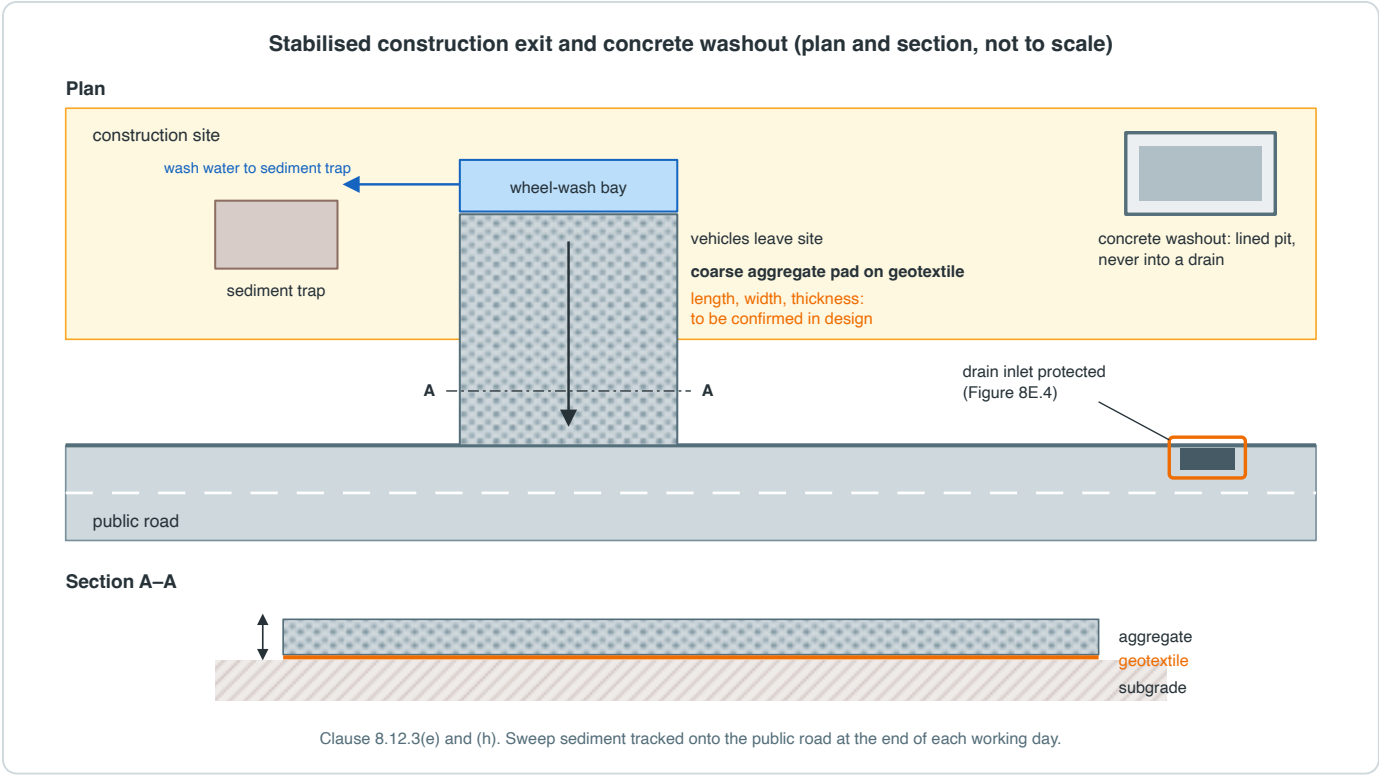


Figure 8E.3 — Stabilised construction exit: plan and section showing a coarse aggregate pad on geotextile between the site and the public road, a wheel-wash bay draining to a sediment trap, and a lined concrete washout pit. Dimensions not set by the Manual are to be confirmed in design. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022).

Notes:

1. Provide at every point where vehicles leave the site onto a public road, with wheel washing (Clause 8.12.3(e)).
2. Pad length, width, thickness and aggregate size: to be confirmed in design.
3. Wash water drains to a sediment trap or basin, never to a drain.
4. Concrete washout in a lined pit, never into a drain (Clause 8.12.3(h)).
5. Sweep any sediment tracked onto the public road at the end of each working day.

8E.4 Inlet protection

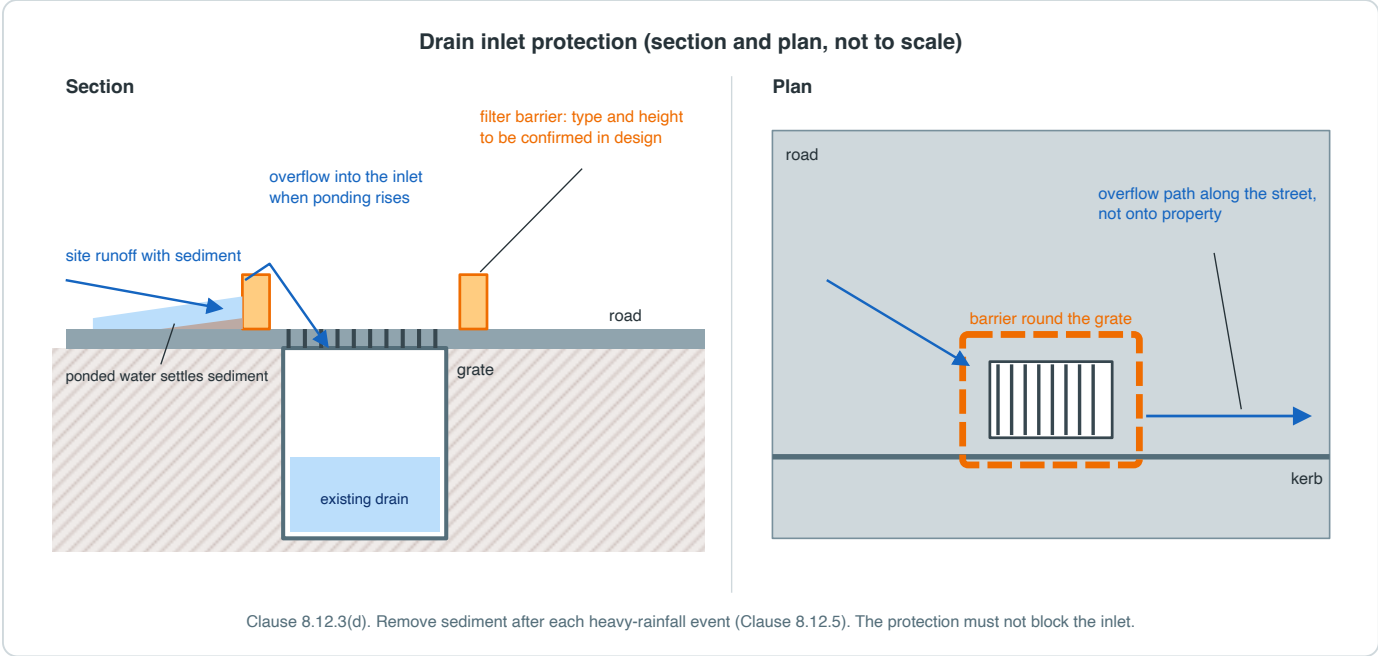


Figure 8E.4 — Inlet protection at an existing drain inlet: a filter barrier around a grate or kerb inlet, with an overflow path so that ponding does not flood the road or property. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022), and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

Notes:

1. At every existing drain inlet that receives runoff from the site (Clause 8.12.3(d)).
2. The protection must not block the inlet: water ponding behind it must be able to overflow into the inlet or along the street.
3. Barrier type and height: to be confirmed in design.
4. Remove sediment after each heavy-rainfall event (Clause 8.12.5).

8E.5 Timing and inspection

Table 8E.2 — ESC timing and inspection (Clauses 8.12.2 and 8.12.5)

Item	Requirement
Completed earthworks	Stabilised by vegetation, mulch, matting or paving by 31 May
Area cleared between 15 June and 15 October	Sediment controls in place before clearing
Area exposed in the SW monsoon	As small as practicable
Inspection	Weekly, and within 24 h after every heavy-rainfall event (Chapter 10)
Repair	Within 48 h
Cleaning	When half full of sediment
Removal	Only after the area draining to the measure is stabilised

Form 8-1 — Water Quality Sheet

Supports Clauses 8.4, 8.6 and 8.14 of Chapter 8.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Table 8F.1 — Form 8-1, Section A: Site and rainfall

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Project name and Authority file number	_____	—
A2	Tier (A / B) and site area, ha	_____	8.6.1
A3	Rainfall zone (Chapter 2)	_____	8.4.1
A4	P_ret, mm (Annex 2E)	_____	8.4.1
A5	P_3m, mm (Annex 8A, or the interim calculation: record, years, method)	_____	8.4.1
A6	P_wq = max (P_ret, P_3m), mm (no climate factor)	_____	8.4.1, 8.4.3
A7	WQv method: SCS-CN, or Rv (sites < 0.5 ha and Tier B simplified method only)	_____	8.4.2
A8	Redevelopment (existing impervious ≥ 20%)?	_____	8.6.2

Table 8F.2 — Form 8-1, Section B: Water quality volume and flow by drainage area

Area ID	Area (ha)	Impervious I (%)	Q_wq runoff depth (mm) or Rv	WQv (m^3)	Q_wq (m^3/s)	Volume retained, Chapter 4 (m^3)	WQv not retained (m^3)	BMP serving the area	Pretreatment
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Total	_____			_____		_____	_____		

Table 8F.3 — Form 8-1, Section C: Level of Service and Value Rating (Tier A)

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	CN pre-development; CN post-development; ΔCN	_____	8.6.2
C2	Required LoS (Table 8.2, or Annex 8B for redevelopment)	_____	8.6.2
C3	Composite VR (Annex 8B calculation attached)	_____	8.6.3
C4	Composite VR ≥ required LoS?	_____	8.6.3
C5	Tier B: route used under Clause 8.6.5 (a) retained on site / (b) bioretention, rain garden or infiltration	_____	8.6.5

Table 8F.4 — Form 8-1, Section D: Other submittals (Clause 8.14)

No.	Item	Attached (yes / no / not applicable)	Clause
D1	BMP designs to Clause 8.7 and Annex 8D, with pretreatment	_____	8.14(3)

No.	Item	Attached (yes / no / not applicable)	Clause
D2	Infiltration Test Record (Form 8-2), seasonal high groundwater level and source, design rate, drawdown time, setbacks	_____	8.14(4)
D3	Sewage and sullage connection plan; dye or smoke test record	_____	8.9.2, 8.14(5)
D4	GPT and first-flush design for any outfall to a waterbody	_____	8.10, 8.14(6)
D5	RWH layout separating harvesting, recharge and detention	_____	8.11, 8.14(7)
D6	ESC plan	_____	8.12, 8.14(8)
D7	Hotspot controls, where Clause 8.8.8 applies	_____	8.8.8

Table 8F.5 — Form 8-1, Section E: Prepared by

Field	Entry
Name, registration and empanelment number (Clause 10.6)	_____
Signature and date	_____

Form 8-2 — Infiltration Test Record

Supports Clauses 8.8.1 to 8.8.7 and 8.11.4 of Chapter 8.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One record per facility. Attach a plan showing the test locations, and the readings for each test.

Table 8F.6 — Form 8-2, Section A: Facility

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Project and facility ID; facility type	_____	8.8.3
A2	Infiltration base area (m²) or trench length (m)	_____	8.8.3(c)
A3	Proposed base level of the facility, m (datum)	_____	8.8.3
A4	Runoff source: roof only / paved surfaces / mixed; hotspot (yes / no)	_____	8.8.6, 8.8.8
A5	Ground setting: sandy coastal / laterite or hard rock / delta clay or black cotton / other	_____	8.8.9–8.8.11

Table 8F.7 — Form 8-2, Section B: Tests

Test no.	Location (grid ref.)	Date	Method: double-ring (ASTM D3385) / falling-head borehole or trial-pit soakage (e.g. BRE Digest 365)	Test level, m	Groundwater level at time of test, m	Measured rate (mm/h)
1	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Minimum number of tests: 2 per facility, and 1 per 100 m² of base area or per 50 m of trench (Clause 8.8.3(c)).

Table 8F.8 — Form 8-2, Section C: Design rate and drawdown

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
C1	Number of tests made; number required	_____	8.8.3(c)
C2	Highest and lowest measured rates; ratio (highest ÷ lowest)	_____	8.8.4
C3	Safety factor: 2.0 (tests meet 8.8.3(c) and ratio ≤ 2) or 3.0	_____	8.8.4
C4	Design rate = measured rate used ÷ safety factor, mm/h (state which measured rate was used)	_____	8.8.4
C5	Category: ≥ 13 mm/h full infiltration / 3–13 mm/h partial with underdrain / < 3 mm/h no credit	_____	8.8.5
C6	Depth of water to infiltrate, mm; drawdown time = depth ÷ design rate, h (≤ 72 h)	_____	8.8.7

Table 8F.9 — Form 8-2, Section D: Separation and setbacks

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
D1	Seasonal high groundwater level, m, and its source (Clause 3.10.2)	_____	8.8.1
D2	Separation from facility base to seasonal high groundwater, m (≥ 1.0; ≥ 0.5 for roof-only runoff in notified coastal sand with mounding check)	_____	8.8.1, 8.8.9(d)

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
D3	Depth to bedrock or impermeable layer below base, m (≥ 1.0 unless Clause 8.8.10)	_____	8.8.2
D4	Distances to: foundations / basement / property boundary / drinking-water well or borewell / septic tank or soak pit / crest of slope steeper than 1V:3H, m	_____	8.8.6
D5	Expansive soils: foundation setback doubled?	_____	8.8.11(b)

Table 8F.10 — Form 8-2, Section E: Declaration

Field	Entry
Tester: name, qualification in geotechnical testing, organisation	_____
I certify that the tests were made at the stated locations and levels, by the stated methods, and that the readings attached are complete. Signature and date	_____
Designer (Clause 10.6): name and signature	_____

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 9

Hydraulic Design of Structures

These annexes support Chapter 9. Annex 9A gives the FHWA HDS-5 inlet-control equations in SI units, with published coefficients for common inlets, and a full worked culvert example. Annex 9B gives standard drawings that carry only the dimensions Chapter 9 and Chapter 6 already set; every other dimension is marked "to be confirmed in design". Annex 9C is a pump station design checklist with a standard control philosophy drawn from Clause 9.9. Form 9-1 is a draft form: it lists what Clause 9.14 requires and does not add to it.

Annex 9A — HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients and worked culvert example in SI units

Supports Clauses 9.4.1 to 9.4.7 of Chapter 9 and Clause 6.12 of Chapter 6.

9A.1 Inlet-control equations

FHWA *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, HDS-5, 3rd edition (2012), Appendix A, gives three inlet-control equations. In SI units:

> Unsubmerged, Form 1: HWi/D = Hc/D + K · [Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5)]^M + Ks · S

> Unsubmerged, Form 2: HWi/D = K · [Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5)]^M

> Submerged: HWi/D = c · [Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5)]² + Y + Ks · S

where HWi is the headwater depth above the inlet invert under inlet control (m), D is the interior height (rise) of the barrel (m), Hc is the specific head at critical depth, dc + Vc²/2g (m), Q is the discharge (m³/s), A is the full cross-sectional area of the barrel (m²), S is the barrel slope (m/m), K, M, c and Y are the constants of Table 9A.1, Ku = 1.811 in SI units (1.0 in US units), and Ks is the slope correction: −0.5, or +0.7 for mitred inlets.

Which equation applies depends on X = Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5):

- X ≤ 3.5: unsubmerged equation (Form 1 or Form 2 as listed in Table 9A.1);
- X ≥ 4.0: submerged equation;
- 3.5 < X < 4.0 (transition): use FHWA HY-8, which implements the HDS-5 transition. Where a hand calculation is used, take the higher of the unsubmerged and submerged results. This is a conservative simplification made by this annex, not an HDS-5 rule.

Table 9A.1 — HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients for common inlets

Barrel	Inlet edge	Form	K	M	c	Y
Circular concrete	Square edge with headwall	1	0.0098	2.0	0.0398	0.67
Circular concrete	Groove (socket) end with headwall	1	0.0018	2.0	0.0292	0.74
Circular concrete	Groove (socket) end projecting	1	0.0045	2.0	0.0317	0.69
Circular corrugated metal	Headwall	1	0.0078	2.0	0.0379	0.69
Circular corrugated metal	Mitred to slope	1	0.0210	1.33	0.0463	0.75
Circular corrugated metal	Projecting	1	0.0340	1.50	0.0553	0.54
Rectangular box	Wingwalls flared 30° to 75°	1	0.026	1.0	0.0347	0.81
Rectangular box	Wingwalls flared 90° and 15°	1	0.061	0.75	0.0400	0.80
Rectangular box	Wingwalls at 0° (extensions of the sides)	1	0.061	0.75	0.0423	0.82
Rectangular box	90° headwall with 19 mm (3/4 in) chamfers	2	0.515	0.667	0.0375	0.79
Rectangular box	90° headwall with 45° bevels	2	0.495	0.667	0.0314	0.82
Rectangular box	90° headwall with 33.7° bevels	2	0.486	0.667	0.0252	0.865

Source: FHWA HDS-5 (2012), Appendix A, Table A.1 (the coefficients are dimensionless and apply in SI units with Ku = 1.811). The values were checked against HIF-12-026, Table A.1 (chart and scale numbers 1/1–1/3, 2/1–2/3, 8/1–8/3 and 10/1–10/3). Where a later edition of HDS-5 differs, the later table governs. Entrance loss coefficients for outlet control are in Table 9.1 of Chapter 9.

9A.2 Worked example: pipe culvert under a collector road

Illustrative — not design values. The inputs below are invented to show the method; the results are not design values for any site.

Inputs.

Table 9A.2 — Inputs for the worked example

Item	Value	Source
Road class	Collector; design AEP 4% (25-yr), check event 2% (50-yr), and the 1% AEP check	Table 6.1, Clause 6.12.2
Design flow, 4% AEP	1.80 m³/s (including the climate factor)	Illustrative
Check flow, 2% AEP	2.20 m³/s	Illustrative
1% AEP flow	3.00 m³/s	Illustrative
Barrel	One 1,200 mm RCC pipe with collar joints, n = 0.015	Table 6.6
Inlet	Square edge with headwall: ke = 0.5; K = 0.0098, M = 2.0, c = 0.0398, Y = 0.67, Form 1	Tables 9.1 and 9A.1
Length and slope	L = 20.0 m; S = 0.005 (inlet invert 20.00 m, outlet invert 19.90 m, local datum)	Illustrative
Road levels at the inlet	Shoulder edge 22.00 m; lowest point of the road crest 22.10 m	Illustrative
Tailwater above the outlet invert, TW	0.60 m at 1.80 m³/s; 0.70 m at 2.20 m³/s; 0.85 m at 3.00 m³/s (normal depth in the downstream channel)	Illustrative; Clause 9.4.4
Receiving channel	Unlined sandy loam	Table 9.2

Minimum size: 1,200 mm ≥ 900 mm (Clause 6.12.5). The span is below 1.5 m, so the blockage check uses 50% of the inlet area blocked (Clause 6.12.4(a)).

Step 1 — Barrel properties. A = π · 1.2² / 4 = 1.131 m²; full-barrel hydraulic radius R = D/4 = 0.300 m; D^0.5 = 1.095.

Step 2 — Critical depth. For each flow, dc is found by trial from the critical-flow condition for a circular section, $Q^2 \cdot T / (g \cdot Ac^3) = 1$, where Ac and T are the flow area and top width at depth dc.

Table 9A.3 — Critical depth and specific head (D = 1.2 m)

Q (m³/s)	dc (m)	Ac (m²)	T (m)	Vc = Q/Ac (m/s)	Hc = dc + Vc²/2g (m)	Hc/D
1.80	0.737	0.728	1.168	2.471	1.048	0.873
2.20	0.817	0.820	1.119	2.683	1.184	0.987
3.00	0.952	0.962	0.972	3.118	1.447	1.206

Step 3 — Headwater under inlet control. X = 1.811 · Q / (1.131 × 1.095) = 1.462 · Q.

Table 9A.4 — Inlet-control headwater

Q (m³/s)	X	Equation	HWi/D	HWi (m)
1.80	2.631	Unsubmerged, Form 1: 0.873 + 0.0098 × 2.631² − 0.5 × 0.005 = 0.873 + 0.068 − 0.003	0.939	1.127
2.20	3.216	Unsubmerged, Form 1: 0.987 + 0.0098 × 3.216² − 0.003 = 0.987 + 0.101 − 0.003	1.085	1.302
3.00	4.385	Submerged: 0.0398 × 4.385² + 0.67 − 0.003 = 0.765 + 0.67 − 0.003	1.433	1.719

Step 4 — Headwater under outlet control (Clause 9.4.3). The friction term is 19.63 · n² · L / R^1.33 = 19.63 × 0.015² × 20.0 / 0.300^1.33 = 0.0883 / 0.2016 = 0.438, so H = (1 + 0.5 + 0.438) · V²/2g = 1.938 · V²/2g. L · S = 20.0 × 0.005 = 0.100 m.

Table 9A.5 — Outlet-control headwater

Q (m³/s)	V = Q/A (m/s)	V²/2g (m)	H (m)	(dc + D)/2 (m)	TW (m)	ho (m)	HWo = ho + H − L·S (m)
1.80	1.592	0.129	0.250	0.969	0.60	0.969	1.119
2.20	1.945	0.193	0.374	1.009	0.70	1.009	1.283
3.00	2.653	0.359	0.695	1.076	0.85	1.076	1.671

Step 5 — Governing headwater (Clause 9.4.1): the greater of HWi and HWo.

Table 9A.6 — Governing headwater and checks

Event	Q (m³/s)	HWi (m)	HWo (m)	Control	HW (m)	HW level (m)	HW/D
Design, 4% AEP	1.80	1.127	1.119	Inlet	1.127	21.13	0.94
Check, 2% AEP	2.20	1.302	1.283	Inlet	1.302	21.30	1.09
1% AEP	3.00	1.719	1.671	Inlet	1.719	21.72	1.43

Step 6 — Headwater limits at the design AEP (Clause 9.4.5):

- (a) HW/D = 0.94 ≤ 1.2. Complies.
- (b) HW level 21.13 m ≤ shoulder edge 22.00 m − 0.30 m = 21.70 m. Complies.

- (c) Water levels at upstream buildings and property boundaries are compared with the existing condition under Clause 6.12.2(d). This needs the upstream survey and is not shown here.

Step 7 — Road overtopping (Clauses 6.12.2, 6.12.3 and 9.4.6). The 1% AEP headwater level, 21.72 m, is below the lowest road crest, 22.10 m, so the road is not overtopped in the check or 1% AEP events. Had the headwater exceeded the crest, the overtopping flow Qr = Cd · L · h^1.5 (Cd ≤ 1.66) would be balanced with the culvert flow at a common headwater, and the overtopping depth checked against Clause 6.12.2(a).

Step 8 — Outlet velocity (Clause 9.4.7). Under inlet control, the outlet velocity is the velocity at normal depth in the barrel. The barrel's full-flow capacity is (1/n) · A · R^(2/3) · S^0.5 = (1/0.015) × 1.131 × 0.448 × 0.0707 = 2.39 m³/s.

- 1.80 m³/s: normal depth 0.778 m, outlet velocity 2.32 m/s.
- 2.20 m³/s: normal depth 0.908 m, outlet velocity 2.40 m/s.
- 3.00 m³/s: above the full-flow capacity, so the barrel flows full at the outlet; velocity = Q/A = 2.65 m/s.

The receiving channel is unlined sandy loam, with a permissible velocity of 0.53 m/s (Table 9.2), so outlet protection is required (Clause 9.6.1). All barrel velocities are below 3.0 m/s (Clause 6.7.3(b)).

Step 9 — Riprap apron (Clause 9.6.3; Figure 9.2). D50 = 0.2 · D · [Q / (g^0.5 · D^2.5)]^(4/3) · (D/TW), with g^0.5 · D^2.5 = 3.132 × 1.577 = 4.941.

Table 9A.7 — Riprap apron sizing

Q (m³/s)	TW (m)	Q / (g^0.5 · D^2.5)	[ ]^(4/3)	D50 (m)
1.80	0.60	0.364	0.260	0.2 × 1.2 × 0.260 × 2.00 = 0.125
2.20	0.70	0.445	0.340	0.2 × 1.2 × 0.340 × 1.71 = 0.140
3.00	0.85	0.607	0.514	0.2 × 1.2 × 0.514 × 1.41 = 0.174

Clause 9.4.7 requires the outlet to be protected for the design AEP and the 1% AEP, so the apron is sized here for the largest D50, 0.174 m. From Table 9.3, Class 2 (D50 = 150 mm) is too small, so **Class 3** (D50 = 250 mm) is used:

- apron length 5D = 5 × 1.2 = 6.0 m;
- apron thickness 2.4 × D50 = 2.4 × 0.25 = 0.60 m;
- apron width at the outlet at least 3D = 3.6 m, flaring to the downstream channel;
- stone placed on a granular filter or geotextile (Clause 9.6.4).

Step 10 — Blockage check (Clause 6.12.4(a)). Steps 3 to 7 are repeated for the 1% AEP flow with 50% of the inlet area blocked, and the results must meet Clause 6.12.2(a) and (d). This Manual does not yet set a standard way of representing a partly blocked inlet, so this check is carried out in HY-8 or by a method agreed with the Approving Authority. It is not worked here.

Table 9A.8 — Summary of the worked example (Illustrative — not design values)

Check	Result	Clause
Minimum size	1,200 mm ≥ 900 mm	6.12.5
Design HW/D	0.94 ≤ 1.2	9.4.5(a)
Design HW below shoulder edge	21.13 m ≤ 21.70 m	9.4.5(b)
Overtopping in the check and 1% events	None (21.72 m < 22.10 m)	6.12.2, 9.4.6
Outlet protection	Class 3 riprap apron, 6.0 m long, 0.60 m thick, 3.6 m wide at the outlet	9.6.1, 9.6.3
Blockage check	To be run in HY-8 or by an agreed method	6.12.4

Annex 9B — Standard drawings: headwalls, riprap aprons, drop structures, trash racks, detention risers

Supports Clauses 9.4, 9.6, 9.7 and 9.8 of Chapter 9.

The drawings below are schematic standard drawings. They show only the dimensions and rules that Chapter 9 and Chapter 6 set. Structural dimensions, reinforcement, foundations and fixings are to be confirmed in design (Clause 9.1.2). The riprap apron standard drawing is Figure 9.2 of Chapter 9, with dimensions from Table 9.3; it is not repeated here. Table 9B.1 lists the dimensions shown and their source clauses.

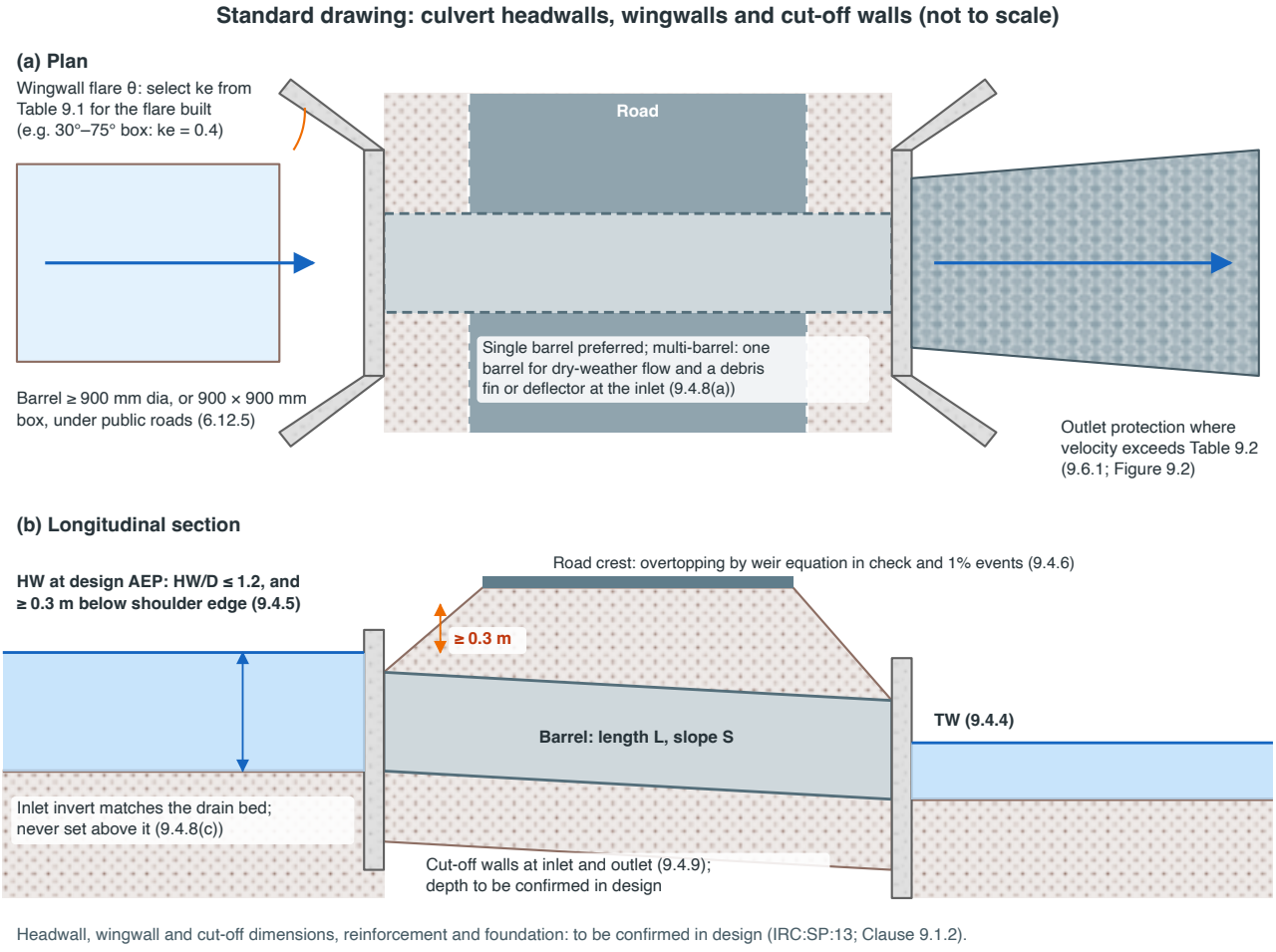


Figure 9B.1 — Standard drawing: culvert headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls, in plan and long section, with the headwater limits, invert rule and debris provisions. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts, HDS-5 (3rd ed., 2012).

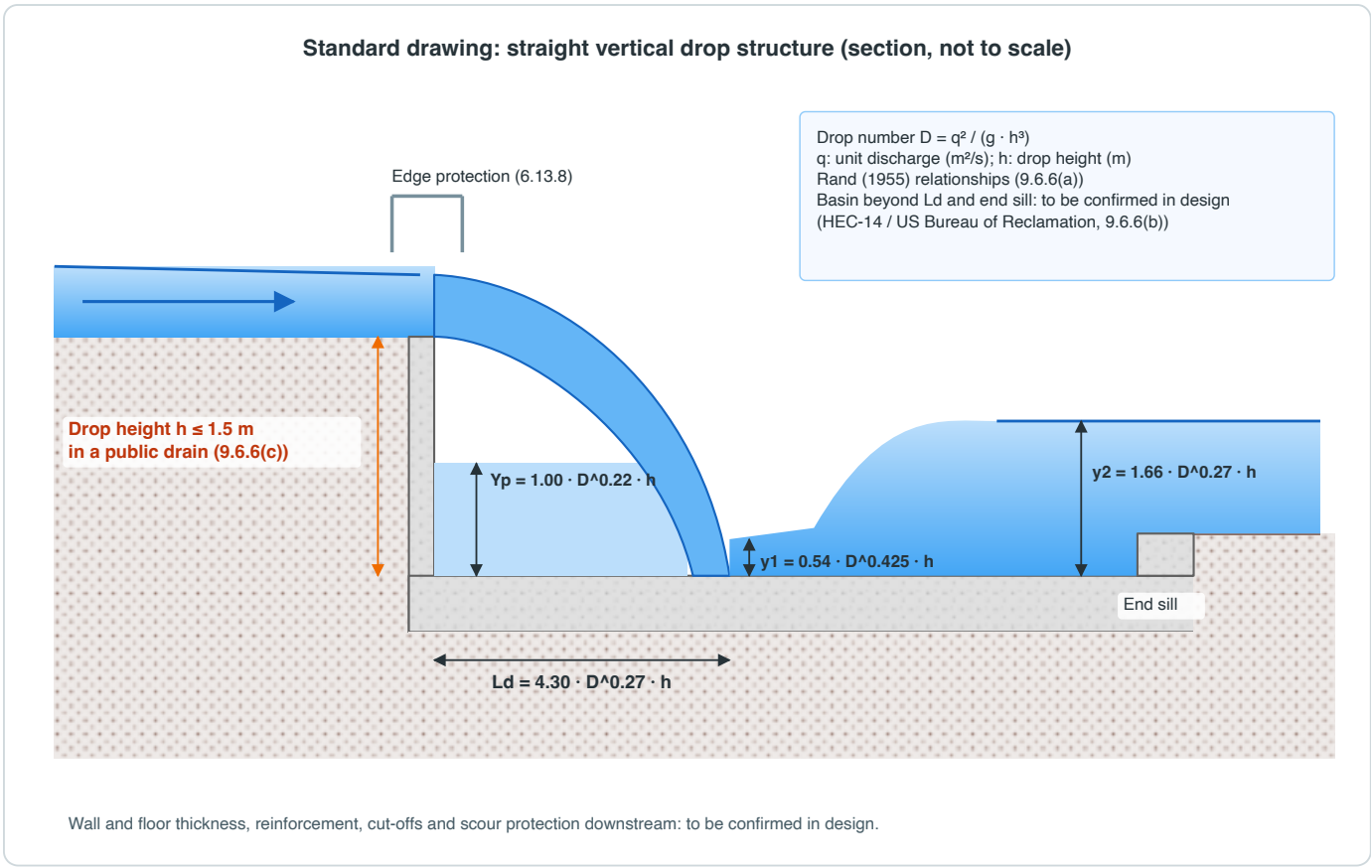


Figure 9B.2 — Standard drawing: straight vertical drop structure with the Rand (1955) pool geometry and the 1.5 m height limit. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Chow, Open-Channel Hydraulics (1959), and FHWA, HEC-14 (3rd ed., 2006).

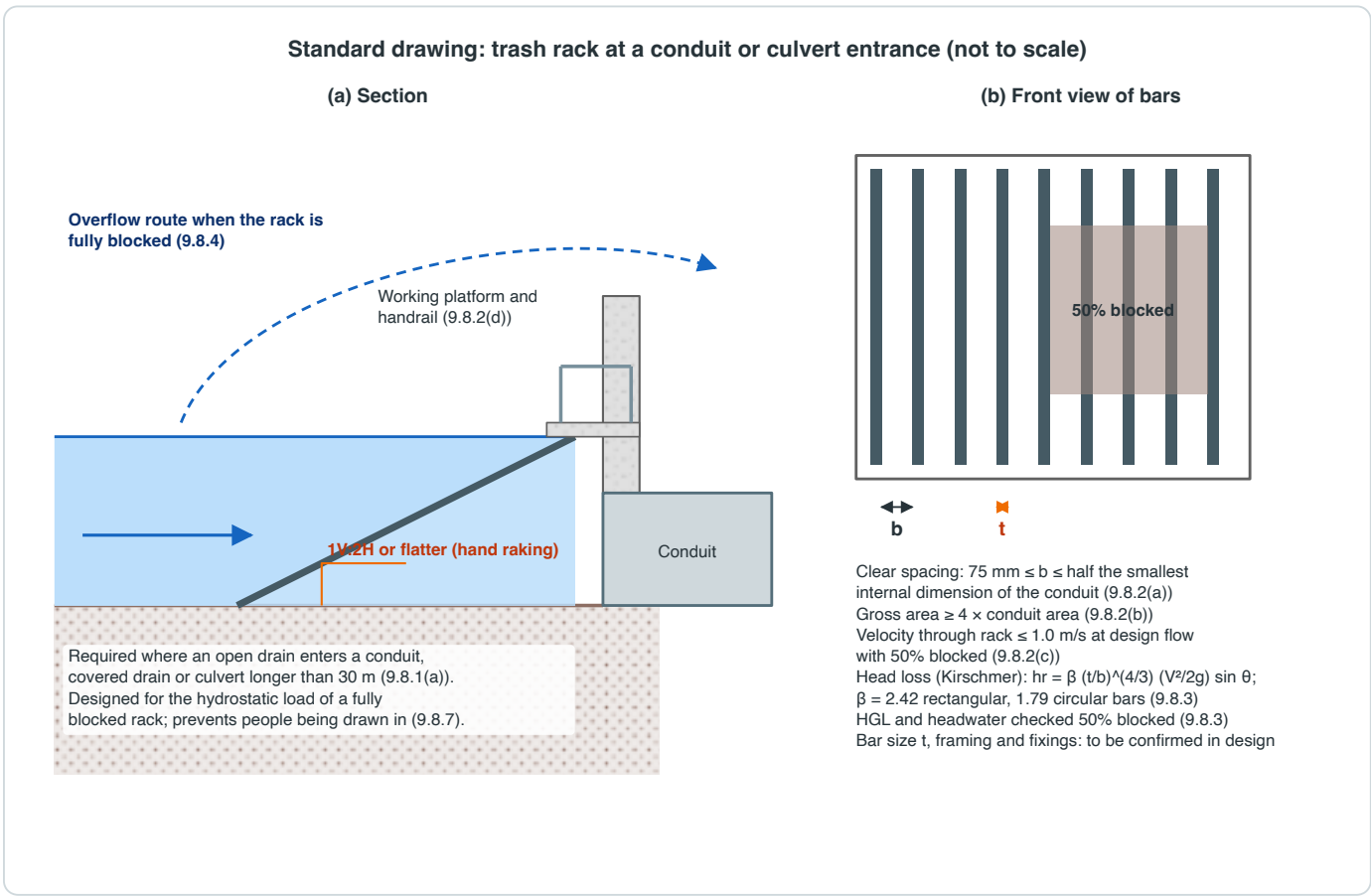


Figure 9B.3 — Standard drawing: trash rack at a conduit or culvert entrance, in section and front view, with bar spacing, area, velocity, slope and overflow requirements. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CIRIA, Culvert, screen and outfall manual, C786 (2019), and CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), §8.3.1.3.

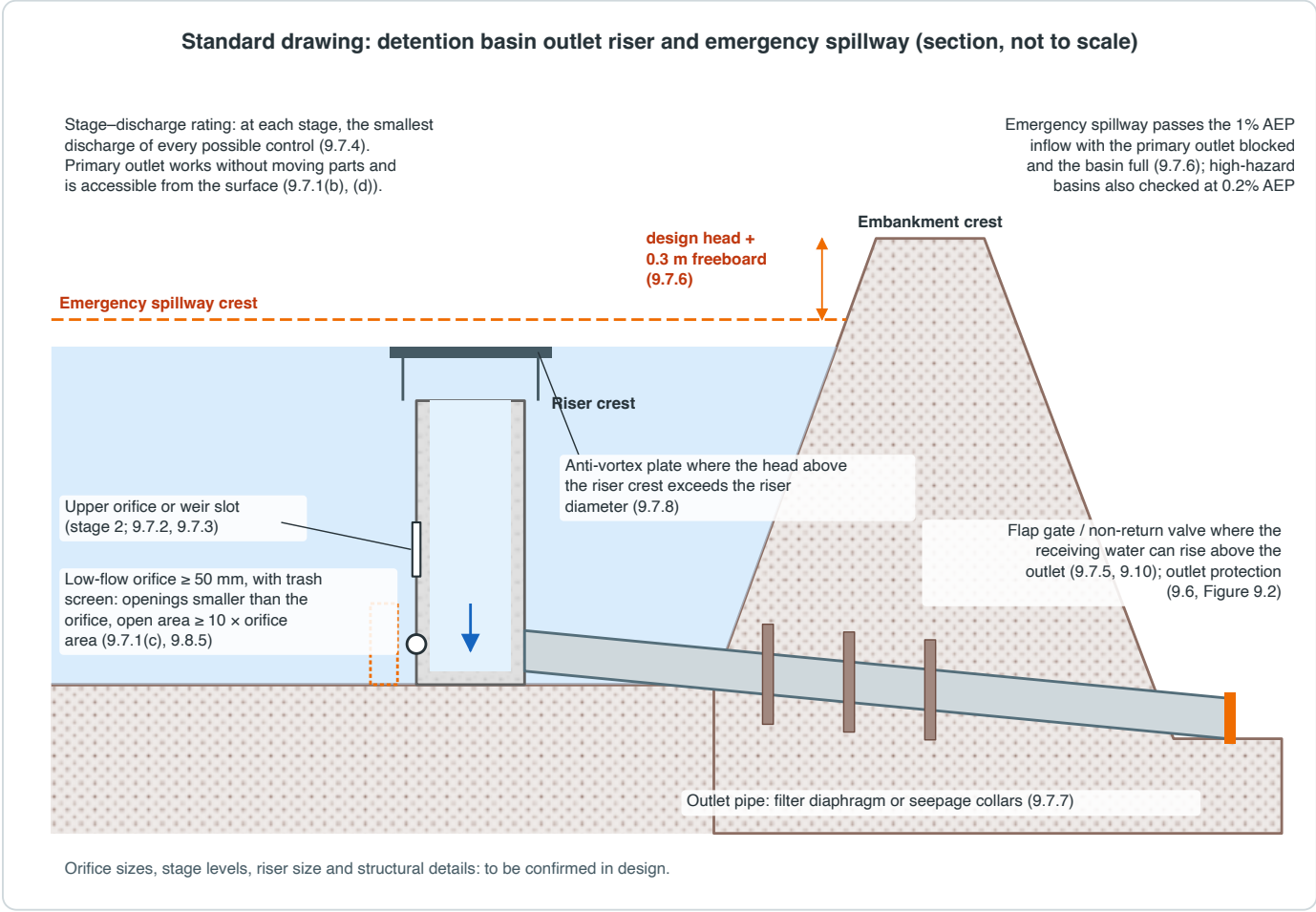


Figure 9B.4 — Standard drawing: detention basin outlet riser with low-flow orifice and screen, upper stage, anti-vortex plate, outlet pipe through the embankment, flap gate and emergency spillway. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Kansas City Metro APWA, Section 5600 (2006, 5608.4).

Table 9B.1 — Dimensions and rules on the standard drawings and their source clauses

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
9B.1	Minimum culvert size under public roads	900 mm diameter, or 900 mm × 900 mm box	6.12.5
9B.1	Headwater at the design AEP	HW/D ≤ 1.2; at least 0.3 m below the shoulder edge at the upstream face	9.4.5
9B.1	Entrance loss coefficient	From Table 9.1 for the inlet built (for example 0.4 for a box with wingwalls at 30°–75°)	9.4.3
9B.1	Inverts	Match the drain bed; never above it	9.4.8(c)
9B.1	Multi-barrel culverts	Avoided in debris-prone drains; where used, one barrel for dry-weather flow and a debris fin or deflector	9.4.8(a)
9B.1	Headwalls, wingwalls, cut-off walls	Required; dimensions to be confirmed in design	9.4.9
9B.1	Road overtopping	Qr = Cd · L · h^1.5, Cd ≤ 1.66	9.4.6
Figure 9.2	Riprap apron	Width at the outlet ≥ 3D, flaring to the channel; length and thickness from Table 9.3; filter or geotextile	9.6.3, 9.6.4

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
9B.2	Single vertical drop in a public drain	Height h ≤ 1.5 m; edge protection	9.6.6(c), 6.13.8
9B.2	Pool geometry	D = q²/(g h³); Ld/h = 4.30 D^0.27; Yp/h = 1.00 D^0.22; y1/h = 0.54 D^0.425; y2/h = 1.66 D^0.27	9.6.6(a)
9B.2	Basin beyond Ld, end sill	To be confirmed in design (HEC-14 or US Bureau of Reclamation)	9.6.6(b)
9B.3	Where required	Where an open drain enters a conduit, covered drain or culvert longer than 30 m	9.8.1(a)
9B.3	Clear bar spacing b	Not less than 75 mm and not more than half the smallest internal dimension of the conduit	9.8.2(a)
9B.3	Gross rack area	At least 4 times the conduit area	9.8.2(b)
9B.3	Velocity through the rack	Not more than 1.0 m/s at the design flow with 50% blocked	9.8.2(c)
9B.3	Inclination	No steeper than 1V:2H where raked by hand; working platform and handrail	9.8.2(d)
9B.3	Head loss and blocked check	Kirschmer equation; HGL and headwater checked with 50% blocked	9.8.3
9B.3	Overflow and safety	Overflow route for a fully blocked rack; designed for the full hydrostatic load	9.8.4, 9.8.7
9B.4	Low-flow orifice	Not smaller than 50 mm; trash screen with openings smaller than the orifice and open area at least 10 times the orifice area	9.7.1(c), 9.8.5
9B.4	Orifice and weir flow	Q = Cd · A · (2gh)^0.5, Cd = 0.60 sharp-edged; weir coefficients of Clause 9.7.3	9.7.2, 9.7.3
9B.4	Stage–discharge rating	Smallest discharge of every possible control at each stage	9.7.4
9B.4	Anti-vortex plate	Where the design head above the riser crest exceeds the riser diameter	9.7.8
9B.4	Outlet pipe through the embankment	Filter diaphragm or seepage collars; flared or headwalled inlet	9.7.7
9B.4	Flap gate or non-return valve	Where the receiving water can rise above the outlet	9.7.5, 9.10
9B.4	Emergency spillway	Passes the 1% AEP inflow with the primary outlet blocked and the basin full, with 0.3 m freeboard to the embankment crest; 0.2% AEP check for high-hazard basins	9.7.6
All	Structural dimensions, reinforcement, foundations, bar sizes, orifice sizes and stage levels	To be confirmed in design	9.1.2

Annex 9C — Pump station design checklist and standard control philosophy

Supports Clauses 9.8.6, 9.9 and 9.10 of Chapter 9, with Clause 6.10.5 of Chapter 6 and the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

9C.1 Design checklist

Submit this checklist with the pump station design report of Clause 9.14, item 6.

Table 9C.1 — Pump station design checklist

No.	Item	Requirement	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)
1	Need for pumping	Gravity drainage cannot meet Chapters 5 and 6; reason stated	9.9.1	
2	Inflow	Inflow hydrograph routed through the catchment and any upstream storage	9.9.2	
3	Design standard	Design AEP of the element served; for underpasses, 2% AEP with a 1% AEP check	9.9.2(a), 6.10.5(a)	
4	Tidal outfall	Storage plus pumps hold the 48 h design volume with the outfall throttled for the tidal-lock duration (default two high tides of 6 h each)	9.9.2(b), Chapter 5	
5	Head range	Pumps selected from the lowest sump level against the lowest tailwater to the highest tailwater (HAT + surge + 0.3 m); pump and system curves submitted	9.9.2(c), 9.14	
6	Wet-well volume	Greatest of: 5 min of minimum inflow (variable speed and automatic control); 10 to 15 min of peak inflow, or the manufacturer's minimum cycle volume; $V = \Theta \cdot q / 4$ for each constant-speed pump	9.9.3	
7	Duty pumps	Same size where practicable	9.9.4(a)	
8	Standby	At least equal to the largest duty pump, and not less than 50% of the number of duty pumps	9.9.4(b)	
9	Alternation	Duty and standby roles alternate automatically	9.9.4(c)	
10	Pump type	Solids-handling (non-clog); axial-flow only behind a screen meeting Clause 9.8.6	9.9.5	
11	Sump and intake	Manufacturer's requirements and ANSI/HI 9.8; clear space 0.6 m (small and medium) or 1.0 m (large units)	9.9.6	
12	Model study	Physical model where any pump exceeds 1 m^3/s or the sump departs from ANSI/HI 9.8 geometry	9.9.6	
13	Silt trap and screen	Upstream of the wet well; screen spacing smaller than the pumps' solids size; removable modules; mechanical raking where inflow exceeds 1 m^3/s	9.9.7, 9.8.6	
14	Screen overflow	Overflow route when the screen is fully blocked	9.8.4	
15	Level control	Primary level sensor (ultrasonic, radar or pressure) with an independent float-switch back-up	9.9.8(a)	
16	Alarms	High-level and pump-fault alarms by telemetry to the local body's control room	9.9.8(b)	
17	Records	Sump levels, pump run hours and power status logged and kept at least 5 years	9.9.8(c)	
18	Power sources	Grid supply plus a standby generator or second independent feeder able to run all duty pumps at once	9.9.9(a)	
19	Fuel	At least 72 h of all duty pumps, stored above the flood level of Clause 9.9.10	9.9.9(b)	
20	Changeover	Automatic changeover to standby power	9.9.9(c)	
21	Flood protection	Electrical and control room floor, generator and transformer at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level; vehicle access usable in the 1% AEP event	9.9.10	
22	Discharge	Separate rising mains, or a non-return and an isolating valve where mains combine; delivery chamber or outfall with a flap gate or non-return valve; mains sized by a recognised friction formula	9.9.11	

No.	Item	Requirement	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)
23	Gates	Flap or tide gate on outfalls below the 1% AEP still-water level; penstock or stop-log slot upstream for outfalls of 900 mm or more and every pumped outfall; head loss from tested data	9.10.1, 9.10.3, 9.10.4	
24	Sand and debris at the outfall	Gate in a chamber with surface access, or elastomeric check valves, at beach, estuary and creek outfalls	9.10.5	
25	Emergency connection	Hard-standing and quick-coupling connection for mobile pumps into the delivery chamber	9.9.12	
26	Materials	Exposure class of Clause 9.13; stainless steel grade 316, galvanised and coated steel, or non-metallic fixings within 5 km of the coast	9.13	
27	Design life	At least 50 years for civil works and 25 years for mechanical and electrical equipment	9.2.4	
28	Underpass stations	Depth markers and automatic warning or closure signals at 150 mm depth on the carriageway	6.10.5(d)	
29	Certification	Designed by an empanelled professional and checked by an independent empanelled professional	10.6.1(d), 10.6.4	

9C.2 Standard control philosophy

This is the standard control philosophy for a stormwater pump station designed under Clause 9.9. The designer adapts it to the station and submits it with the design report. Items marked "recommended" are good practice that Chapter 9 does not require; all others restate a clause.

Table 9C.2 — Control levels (values to be set in design)

Level	Rule for setting it	Clause
Pump stop	Not below the minimum submergence required by the pump manufacturer and ANSI/HI 9.8	9.9.6
Duty pump 1 start	Above the pump-stop level by at least the effective wet-well volume of Clause 9.9.3	9.9.3
Duty pumps 2, 3 … start	Staged above duty pump 1 start; spacing to be confirmed in design	9.9.2
High-level alarm	Above the highest duty-pump start level; to be confirmed in design	9.9.8(b)
Float back-up high	Independent float; starts the duty pumps	9.9.8(a)
Float back-up low	Independent float; stops the pumps	9.9.8(a)

1. **Normal (automatic) operation.** As the wet-well level rises to the duty pump 1 start level, the lead pump starts. If the level keeps rising, each further duty pump starts at its start level. The pumps stop when the level falls to the pump-stop level. The primary level sensor controls this sequence (Clause 9.9.8(a)).
2. **Duty rotation.** The lead pump changes automatically, after each pump-down cycle or by run hours as set in the design, so that duty and standby roles alternate and wear is shared (Clause 9.9.4(c)).
3. **Pump fault.** A pump that trips or fails to start is locked out. The next available pump, including the standby pump, takes its place, and a pump-fault alarm is sent by telemetry (Clauses 9.9.4(b) and 9.9.8(b)).
4. **Level-sensor failure.** If the primary sensor fails, or disagrees with the float switches, control passes to the independent float back-up: at the float-high level the duty pumps run, and at the float-low level they stop. An alarm is sent (Clause 9.9.8(a), (b)).
5. **Power failure.** Supply changes over automatically to the standby generator or second feeder (Clause 9.9.9(c)). Recommended: pumps restart one at a time after changeover, to limit the starting load on the generator.

6. **High level.** At the high-level alarm level an alarm is sent by telemetry to the local body's control room (Clause 9.9.8(b)). At an underpass, the warning or closure signals operate at 150 mm depth on the carriageway (Clause 6.10.5(d)).
7. **Outfall and gates.** Rising mains discharge to a delivery chamber or outfall fitted with a flap gate or non-return valve (Clause 9.9.11). Flap gates open and close under head difference without control action. The upstream penstock or stop logs are closed only for maintenance, or if the flap gate jams open (Clause 9.10.3). Recommended: penstock position is shown at the control panel and logged.
8. **Tide-locked operation.** Where the outfall is tide-locked, storage and pumping together hold the 48 h design volume for the tidal-lock duration (Clause 9.9.2(b) and Chapter 5). Where the station also has a gravity outfall, gravity discharge resumes through the flap gate when the tide falls.
9. **Screens.** Mechanically raked screens (required where inflow exceeds 1 m³/s, Clause 9.8.6) are run automatically. Recommended: raking is started by a timer and by the level difference across the screen, with an alarm when the difference stays high.
10. **Manual operation.** Recommended: each pump has a hand–off–auto selector at the panel, and the float back-up high-level start remains active in hand mode.
11. **Mobile pumps.** When fixed pumps are out of service or overwhelmed, mobile pumps discharge into the delivery chamber through the quick-coupling connection (Clause 9.9.12).
12. **Records.** Sump levels, pump run hours and power status are logged and kept for at least 5 years (Clause 9.9.8(c)). Recommended: alarms, pump starts and stops, and changeovers are logged as well.
13. **Testing.** The controls, floats, alarms, telemetry, changeover and generator are tested in the pre-monsoon inspection of Chapter 10 (Clause 10.12), and the results reported in the Annual Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-7; Clause 10.10.3).

Form 9-1 — Hydraulic Structures Report checklist

Supports Clause 9.14 of Chapter 9.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Not for statutory use.

Attach this checklist to the front of the Hydraulic Structures Report. For each item, enter Yes, No or Not applicable, and the drawing or page where it is shown.

Section A — Project

Table 9F.1 — Form 9-1, Section A: project

Field	Entry
Project name and location	_____
Local body, and Tier A or Tier B (Chapter 1)	_____
Applicant	_____
Designer (name and registration)	_____
Structures covered (culverts, channels, dissipators, outlets, screens, pumps, gates, inlets, manholes)	_____
Tailwater conditions used: MHWS, HAT + surge, sea-level allowance, joint case (Clause 9.2.1)	_____
Date and revision	_____

Section B — Contents required by Clause 9.14

Table 9F.2 — Form 9-1, Section B: contents required by Clause 9.14

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)	Drawing or page
1	Culvert calculations (HDS-5 or HY-8 output) with HWi, HWo, outlet velocity, tailwater, overtopping and the blockage check	9.4, 6.12		
2	Channel water-surface profiles, velocities, Froude numbers and freeboard	9.5		
3	Outlet protection and dissipator design, with riprap sizing	9.6		
4	Detention outlet stage–discharge tables and the emergency spillway check	9.7		
5	Screen and rack design with the 50% blocked check	9.8		
6	Pump station design report: inflow hydrograph, storage, pump and system curves, wet-well volume, controls, power supply and the Chapter 5 outfall-closed check (with Annex 9C)	9.9		
7	Gate and valve selection with head-loss data	9.10		
8	Inlet, grate and cover load classes	9.11		
9	Exposure class and materials statement	9.13		

Section C — Compliance checks

Table 9F.3 — Form 9-1, Section C: compliance checks

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
C1	Climate factor included in design flows	Clause 2.8	9.2.2	
C2	Blocked condition checked where debris can block; safe overflow route	—	9.2.5	
C3	Pipes and box drains: design n (box drains ≥ 0.015); supercritical pipes: jump located in a structure, air venting	—	9.3.1, 9.3.4	
C4	Pipe size does not decrease downstream; joins only at manholes or junction chambers; no change of direction over 90°	—	9.3.5	
C5	Culvert design headwater = greater of HWi and HWo	—	9.4.1	
C6	Culvert headwater at the design AEP	HW/D ≤ 1.2; ≥ 0.3 m below shoulder edge	9.4.5	
C7	Road overtopping weir coefficient	Cd ≤ 1.66	9.4.6	
C8	Culvert inverts match the drain bed; headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls	—	9.4.8(c), 9.4.9	
C9	Channel Froude number at the design flow	≤ 0.8; none between 0.8 and 1.2	9.5.2	
C10	Channel velocity	Table 9.2	9.5.3	
C11	Channel slope in engineered channels	≤ 0.4% natural, ≤ 0.2% concrete, or drops / chute	9.5.4	
C12	Side slopes; low-flow channel where bed width ≥ 3 m; uplift or weep holes	—	9.5.6, 9.5.7, 9.5.9	
C13	Outlet protection where outlet velocity exceeds Table 9.2	Table 9.3 apron, or basin	9.6.1, 9.6.3	
C14	Single vertical drop height	≤ 1.5 m	9.6.6(c)	
C15	Detention primary outlet: no moving parts; minimum orifice	≥ 50 mm with screen	9.7.1	
C16	Emergency spillway	1% AEP, outlet blocked, basin full, 0.3 m freeboard; 0.2% AEP for high-hazard basins	9.7.6	
C17	Outlet pipe through embankment; anti-vortex plate where needed	—	9.7.7, 9.7.8	
C18	Conduit-entrance racks	Spacing 75 mm to half the smallest conduit dimension; area ≥ 4×; ≤ 1.0 m/s at 50% blocked	9.8.2	
C19	Detention orifice screens	Openings smaller than the orifice; open area ≥ 10×	9.8.5	
C20	Pump station	Annex 9C checklist complete	9.9	
C21	Gates on outfalls below the 1% AEP still-water level; secondary closure; corrosion-resistant fittings	—	9.10	
C22	Grate load classes, parallel openings ≤ 25 mm, kerb openings ≥ 100 mm × 1.0 m, locked covers	—	9.11	
C23	Manhole sizes (Table 9.4), 600 mm access openings, drops, benching, surcharge covers	—	9.12	

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
C24	Exposure class (Table 9.5); chloride and sulphate tests in coastal and delta areas; sulphide protection; metalwork within 5 km of the coast	—	9.13	

Section D — Variances

Table 9F.4 — Form 9-1, Section D: variances

Clause	Requirement not met	Reason and proposed alternative	Approved by and date
_____	_____	_____	_____

Section E — Signatures

The report shall be prepared and signed by a registered professional, and the Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) attached (Clauses 10.6.1 and 10.6.3 of Chapter 10). For a facility with an embankment, a high-hazard basin, a pumped facility, a tide gate or a regional facility, the signatory shall be an empanelled Stormwater Design Professional, and a second, independent empanelled professional shall sign as checker (Clauses 10.6.1(c), (d) and 10.6.4).

Table 9F.5 — Form 9-1, Section E: signatures

Role	Name	Registration or empanelment no.	Signature	Date
Designer	_____	_____	_____	_____
Independent checker (Clause 10.6.4, where applicable)	_____	_____	_____	_____

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 10

Submittals, Review, Operation & Maintenance and Enforcement

These annexes support Chapter 10. They give the specification and user-guide outline of the compliance calculator, the GIS data specification, the maintenance access dimensions that the Manual sets, model O&M plans for each facility type, model empanelment criteria, and the eight forms that Chapter 10 requires. The Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) is in the annexes to Chapter 2. The forms are draft forms. The model texts are for consideration by a competent authority and are not in force.

Annex 10A — Compliance calculator and user guide

Supports Clauses 10.4.1(g), 10.5 and 10.9.1(b) of Chapter 10.

> **Status.** The compliance calculator does not exist yet. Clause 10.5.1 requires the State Stormwater Technical Committee to issue and maintain it. This annex is the specification the calculator shall meet and the outline of its user guide. Until the calculator is issued, the designer completes Form 10-2 by hand from the calculations of Chapters 4, 5 and 8, enters "not issued" as the calculator version, and attaches the calculations.

10A.1 General requirements

The calculator shall:

- (a) be a spreadsheet or web tool, published free of charge with its user guide and the source of every table in it (Clause 10.5.4);
- (b) print its version number and release date on every output page and every exported file (Clause 10.5.3);
- (c) keep a public version log. A new version applies to new submittals 6 months after release; a submittal keeps one version from Stage 1 to Stage 4 unless the Applicant elects a later one (Clause 10.5.3);
- (d) work for one site at a time, with one or more drainage areas, each draining to its own outfall (Clause 4.5.1.3);
- (e) never apply a value that the Manual has not published. Where a table it needs has not been issued (for example Table 4.3 of Annex 4B, or the S-2 discharge tables of Annex 1C), the calculator shall show that route as "not available" rather than estimate the value; and
- (f) export its inputs and results as a machine-readable file (CSV or JSON) as well as Form 10-2, so that the Authority can load them into the facility register (Clause 10.17.1(b)).

10A.2 Inputs

Table 10A.1 — Calculator inputs

No.	Input	Unit	Source
I1	Authority, tier (A or B) and file number	—	Clause 1.6

No.	Input	Unit	Source
I2	Site area; land disturbance area	ha	Clause 1.5.2
I3	New impervious area; replaced impervious area; existing impervious area before demolition	m²	Clauses 1.5.2, 1.5.6, 4.5.6.1
I4	Development type: new, redevelopment, linear public work, single dwelling	—	Clauses 1.5.6–1.5.8
I5	Flood-sensitive catchment (yes / no), and basin with an approved BSMP (yes / no)	—	Clauses 4.5.3, 4.13, 11.12
I6	Rainfall zone	—	Annex 2A
I7	Retention depth P_R; 3-month ARI 24-hour depth P_3m	mm	Annexes 2E, 8A
I8	Design rainfall depths by duration (1–72 h) and AEP, with the climate factor, as recorded on Form 2-1	mm	Clauses 2.5, 2.8, 2.13
I9	15-minute intensities i_10 and i_2, with the climate factor (fixed-coefficient route only)	mm/h	Clause 4.14.4
I10	Drainage areas: for each, area, land cover, impervious percentage, HSG and curve number, pre- and post-development	ha, %, —	Clauses 3.3, 3.7, 3.9
I11	Areas preserved under a registered covenant	ha	Clause 4.4.7
I12	Seasonal high groundwater depth below the base of each retention practice	m	Clauses 4.4.3(c), 8.8
I13	Measured infiltration rate at each practice	mm/h	Clause 4.4.3
I14	Retention volume provided, by practice; reuse demand where retention is by reuse	m³, m³/d	Clauses 4.4.3, 4.4.5
I15	Route: full hydrograph method (Clause 4.6); design-aid S-1 (Clause 4.14.2); PSD S-2 (Clause 1.7); fixed-coefficient (Clause 4.14.3); constrained redevelopment (Clause 4.5.6)	—	Clauses 1.7, 4.5.6, 4.6, 4.14
I16	For the full method: model results for each AEP and duration — pre- and post-development peaks, storage used, retention credit found by routing	m³/s, m³	Clauses 4.4.6.2, 4.6
I17	Outlet: low-flow orifice diameter or least slot dimension; drawdown times from routing	mm, h	Clauses 4.7, 4.8.2
I18	Outfall: tidal or non-tidal; outfall-closed check result	—	Chapter 5
I19	Fee-in-lieu unit rate notified for the basin, where the route applies	₹/m³	Clause 4.13.3
I20	Stage of submittal (1, 2 or 4) and, at Stage 4, the as-built values of I14, I16 and I17	—	Clauses 10.5.2, 10.9.1(b)

10A.3 Calculations, by clause

Table 10A.2 — Calculations the calculator shall perform

Step	Calculation	Clause
C1	**Applicability.** Chapters 4 and 5 apply where land disturbance ≥ 0.1 ha or new plus replaced impervious area ≥ 500 m², over the common plan of development. Report exemptions. Flag that the universal provisions apply at every size, and that RWH applies to plots of 300 m² and more of all uses, including group housing, where there is no collective recharge network, except in waterlogged areas, where roof water may be stored but not recharged, and requires a recharge reservoir of at least 1% of the area in layouts of more than 4 ha (Byelaws 2025, cl. 13.1.2); in the areas of Noida, Greater Noida and YEIDA their own building regulations apply.	1.5.2–1.5.8

Step	Calculation	Clause
C2	**Process flags.** Stage 0 mandatory (≥ 2 ha, flood-sensitive, variance or regional route, tidal outfall or waterbody); Stages 1 and 2 may be combined (< 1 ha, not flood-sensitive); empanelled signatory required; independent check required.	10.3.2, 10.3.3, 10.6.1, 10.6.4
C3	**Route eligibility.** Tier B simplified method: ≤ 2 ha, or ≤ 0.5 ha in a flood-sensitive catchment, and only once Table 4.3 is published. Fixed-coefficient route: ≤ 1 ha and none of the exclusions of Clause 4.14.3. Constrained redevelopment: existing ≥ 60% impervious and ≤ 1 ha. Regional detention or fee-in-lieu: only in a basin with an approved BSMP.	4.5.6.1, 4.13.1, 4.14.1, 4.14.3, 11.12.1(b)
C4	**Retention volume.** RRV = 10 × Q_R × A, with Q_R the SCS-CN runoff from P_R for each sub-area at AMC II, summed over sub-areas. The larger of the Ia = 0.2S and Ia = 0.05S results governs. The Rv form (RRV = 10 × P_R × Rv × A, Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 × I) is offered only for sites < 0.5 ha and the Tier B method. No climate factor.	4.4.2, 3.8.5(c), 2.8.3
C5	**Preservation credit.** Preserved areas are modelled at their pre-development CN in the post-development condition.	4.4.7
C6	**Retention checks.** Design infiltration rate ≤ half the measured rate; groundwater ≥ 1.0 m below the base; drawdown of the retained volume within 72 h at the design rate (or by the stated reuse demand). A practice that fails any check gets no credit; any shortfall is reported and treated as WQv.	4.4.3–4.4.5, 4.4.6.4
C7	**Water quality volume.** P_wq = max(P_ret, P_3m); WQv = 10 × Q_wq × A by SCS-CN, or (P_wq / 1000) × Rv × A (A in m²) for sites < 0.5 ha and the Tier B method. The retained volume counts toward the WQv in full. No climate factor.	8.4.1–8.4.4, 3.8.5(c)
C8	**Retention credit.** Tier A: the credit found by routing is entered (I16); the calculator does not compute it. Tier B: V_credit = C_R × RRV provided, with C_R = 0 until Annex 4B is published.	4.4.6
C9	**Design-aid route (S-1).** V = SSR × A − V_credit; Q_PSD,T = PSD_T × A for the 2-yr and 100-yr stages, from Table 4.3. Shown as "not available" until Table 4.3 is published.	1.7.2, 4.14.2
C10	**Permissible site discharge (S-2).** Q = PSD (m³/s/ha) × A for each AEP, from the S-2 tables. Shown as "not available" until they are issued.	1.7.2, 1.7.3(e)
C11	**Fixed-coefficient route.** Q_cap,10 = 2.78 × C_10 × i_10 × A and Q_cap,2 = 2.78 × C_2 × i_2 × A (L/s); V_100 and V_2 = max over d of [10 × C_v × P(d) × A − 1.8 × Q_cap × d] for d = 1 to 72 h, with pervious C ≥ 0.50 for d ≥ 12 h; V = max(V_100, V_2); retention added without credit. Coefficients from Table 4.3A (provisional).	4.14.4–4.14.7
C12	**Release-rate screen (full method).** For each AEP and duration: Q_post ≤ 0.9 × Q_pre (standard), or the two mixed-frequency caps (flood-sensitive). Report the governing duration and margin.	4.5.2, 4.5.3
C13	**Constrained redevelopment.** Q_post ≤ 0.5 × Q_existing for 2-, 10- and 100-yr at each duration; shortfall volume = greenfield storage − storage provided; fee = shortfall × unit rate.	4.5.6.2, 4.5.6.3
C14	**Minimum orifice.** Flag any orifice < 50 mm. Where a cap is below the discharge of a 50 mm orifice at the corresponding stage, report "50 mm orifice deemed to comply".	4.5.5.1, 4.8.2
C15	**Drawdown.** Report the detention drawdown (90% of the 10-yr stored volume within 48 h), the WQv release time (24–48 h) and the retention emptying time (≤ 72 h).	4.7
C16	**Fee-in-lieu.** Fee = detention volume required on site × notified unit rate.	4.13.3
C17	**Model screen.** Where the full method is used, compare the model results (I16) with the calculator's screen values (C9 to C11, where available) and flag a difference above the tolerance stated in the user guide.	10.5.2(c)
C18	**As-built re-run.** At Stage 4, repeat C4 to C17 with the as-built values and report each change from Stage 2.	10.9.1(b), 10.9.2

10A.4 Outputs

The calculator produces:

- (a) **Form 10-2**, filled in, with the calculator version and release date on every page;

- (b) a machine-readable export of every input and result of Tables 10A.1 and 10A.2; and
- (c) a list of the flags raised (C1 to C3, C6, C14, C17), each with the clause on which it is based (Clause 10.7.7).

10A.5 Testing before release

Before each release the State Stormwater Technical Committee shall check that the calculator reproduces, within rounding, the worked examples of the Manual that use the same method, including the illustrative examples of Clauses 4.6.7 and 4.14, and the benchmark problems of Annex 3C where they apply. The test results shall be published with the version log.

10A.6 Outline of the user guide

The user guide shall contain at least:

1. Purpose, status and limits of the calculator: a summary and screening check outside the design-aid route (Clause 10.5.2(c)).
2. How to obtain the current version, and the version rule of Clause 10.5.3.
3. Each input of Table 10A.1, with where to find it in the Manual and its annexes.
4. Each calculation of Table 10A.2, with its equation and clause.
5. The tolerance used in step C17, and what the drainage report must explain where it is exceeded (Clause 10.5.2(c)).
6. How to read and sign Form 10-2, and what to attach.
7. At least one worked example for each route, labelled "Illustrative — not design values".
8. The sources of every table in the calculator (Clause 10.5.4), and the version log.

Annex 10B — GIS data specification and attribute schema

Supports Clauses 10.4.4, 10.14.1(d), 10.14.3 and 10.17 of Chapter 10.

10B.1 Format and reference systems

- (a) **Format.** One OGC GeoPackage (.gpkg) per submittal is preferred. Shapefiles are accepted, one per layer, zipped with all component files. Field names shall be as in Tables 10B.2 to 10B.6; shapefile names are limited to 10 characters, and the names below meet that limit.
- (b) **Horizontal reference.** WGS 84 geographic (EPSG:4326), or WGS 84 / UTM zone 44N (EPSG:32644) or, for a project wholly in the NCR districts or Mathura, west of 78° E, 43N (EPSG:32643) (Ballia and the east of Kushinagar and Deoria, which lie in zone 45N, use 44N), whichever contains the site (Clause 10.4.4(c)). One system shall be used for all layers.
- (c) **Vertical reference.** All levels shall be in metres relative to a named vertical datum, stated in the metadata. The metadata shall also state the relationship between that datum and the river datums of the CWC and I&WRD gauges on the receiving rivers and of I&WRD's embankment, regulator and drain levels used in Chapter 5 (Clause 10.4.4(d)).
- (d) **Accuracy.** Positions shall come from the site survey or the approved drawings. At Stage 4 and at handover, positions and levels shall come from the as-built survey (Clause 10.9.1(a)).
- (e) **File name.** `<Authority file number>_<stage>_<yyyymmdd>.gpkg`, for example `LDA–BP–2026–0123_S2_20261015.gpkg`.
- (f) **Identifiers.** Every feature has an identifier unique within the submittal (FAC_ID, OUT_ID, CAT_ID, FLP_ID). The Authority replaces them with register identifiers on acceptance and returns the mapping to the Applicant.

10B.2 Layers

Table 10B.1 — Layers

Layer	Geometry	Content	Required at
SW_SITE	Polygon	Site boundary	Stages 1, 2, 4
SW_CATCH	Polygon	Catchment boundaries draining to and through the site, pre- and post-development (Clause 10.4.1(b))	Stages 1, 2, 4
SW_FAC	Polygon (point for buried items smaller than 5 m across)	Every stormwater facility: retention, detention, water quality, pumping, gate, conveyance element designed under this Manual	Stages 2, 4; handover
SW_OUTF	Point	Every outfall from the site, and every public outfall	Stages 1, 2, 4; handover
SW_FLOW	Line	Major-system flow paths through and from the site, and natural drainage paths (Clause 10.15.1(g))	Stages 1, 2, 4
SW_CONV	Line	Drains and pipes designed under Chapter 6	Stage 4 for public works; handover
SW_META	Table (no geometry)	Metadata of Table 10B.6	Every stage

10B.3 Attribute schema

Types: T = text, I = integer, R = real, D = date (ISO 8601, yyyy-mm-dd). "Req." marks fields that shall not be empty; other fields are filled where they apply.

Table 10B.2 — Attributes of SW_FAC (facilities)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
FAC_ID	T	—	Yes	Facility identifier	10B.1(f)
FAC_TYPE	T	—	Yes	Code from Table 10B.7	Clause 4.10, Table 10.3
FAC_NAME	T	—		Name on the drawings	—
OWNER_TYP	T	—	Yes	PRIVATE / ASSOC / DEVELOPER / ULB / DEPT	Clauses 10.10, 10.14
OWNER_NM	T	—	Yes	Name of a corporate owner or association only; for an individual, "private individual" (Clause 10.17.3)	Clause 10.17.3
CTRL_AREA	R	ha	Yes	Area draining to the facility	Clause 4.5.1.3
V_RET	R	m³		Retention volume provided	Clause 4.4
V_WQ	R	m³		Water quality volume provided	Clause 8.4
V_DET	R	m³		Detention volume at the top design level	Clause 4.6
Q_2	R	L/s		Release at the 50% AEP (2-yr) design level	Clause 4.5
Q_10	R	L/s		Release at the 10% AEP (10-yr) design level	Clause 4.5
Q_100	R	L/s		Release at the 1% AEP (100-yr) design level	Clause 4.5
ORIF_MM	R	mm		Low-flow orifice diameter or least slot dimension	Clause 4.8.2
INV_OUT	R	m		Outlet invert level	Clause 10.9.1(a)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
TWL_DES	R	m		Top design water level	Clause 10.9.2(a)
SPILL_LV	R	m		Spillway or overflow crest level	Clause 4.9
PUMPED	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Clause 10.10.3
REGIONAL	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Clause 4.13
EMPANEL	T	—	Yes	Y / N: facility under Clause 10.6.1(c) or (d)	Clause 10.6.1
STATUS	T	—	Yes	Code from Table 10B.8	Clause 10.17.1(a)
APPR_DATE	D	—		Date of Stage 2 approval	Clause 10.3
ASB_DATE	D	—		Date the as-built certificate was accepted	Clause 10.9
DECL_REF	T	—		Registration reference of the Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6)	Clause 10.10.1(e)
HAND_DATE	D	—		Date of the Asset Handover Certificate (Form 10-8)	Clause 10.14
LAST_INSP	D	—		Date of the latest inspection	Clause 10.12
INSP_RES	T	—		Code from Table 10B.9	Clause 10.17.1(a)
OUT_ID	T	—	Yes	Outfall to which the facility discharges	—

Table 10B.3 — Attributes of SW_OUTF (outfalls)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
OUT_ID	T	—	Yes	Outfall identifier	10B.1(f)
RECEIVER	T	—	Yes	Receiving drain, channel, waterbody or sea, by name	Clause 4.5.1.3
RECV_TYPE	T	—	Yes	PUBLIC_DRAIN / CANAL / RIVER / TANK / SEA / OTHER	Chapter 5
INV_LEVEL	R	m	Yes	Outfall invert level	Clause 10.9.1(a)
SIZE_MM	R	mm	Yes	Diameter, or width × height written in the drawing	Chapter 6
TIDAL	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Chapter 5
GATE_TYPE	T	—		NONE / FLAP / TIDE / DUCKBILL / PENSTOCK / NRV	Clauses 5.11, 9.10
GATE_REQ	T	—	Yes	Y / N: invert below the 1% AEP still-water level	Clause 5.11.1
GPT	T	—		Y / N: gross pollutant trap fitted	Clause 8.10.1
Q_100	R	L/s		Design 1% AEP discharge	Chapter 5

Table 10B.4 — Attributes of SW_CATCH (catchments)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
CAT_ID	T	—	Yes	Catchment identifier	10B.1(f)
CONDITION	T	—	Yes	PRE / POST / EXTERNAL (land outside the site draining through it)	Clause 10.4.1(b)
AREA_HA	R	ha	Yes	Area	—
IMPERV_PC	R	%	Yes	Impervious percentage	Clause 3.9
HSG	T	—	Yes	A / B / C / D, or mixed with area shares in NOTES	Clause 3.7
CN	R	—		Curve number, AMC II	Chapter 3

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
OUT_ID	T	—	Yes	Outfall to which it drains	Clause 4.5.1.3
FLOODSENS	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Clause 4.5.3
NOTES	T	—		Free text	—

Table 10B.5 — Attributes of SW_FLOW and SW_CONV (flow paths and conveyance)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
FLP_ID	T	—	Yes	Line identifier	10B.1(f)
LINE_TYPE	T	—	Yes	OVERLAND / NATURAL / OPEN_DRAIN / COVERED_DRAIN / PIPE / CULVERT	Chapter 6
US_LEVEL	R	m		Upstream invert or ground level	Chapter 6
DS_LEVEL	R	m		Downstream invert or ground level	Chapter 6
SIZE_MM	R	mm		Pipe diameter, or drain width (depth in NOTES)	Clause 6.7.6
Q_DES	R	L/s		Design discharge	Chapter 6
AEP_DES	T	—		Design AEP, for example "10%" or "1%"	Clause 6.4
RESERVE_M	R	m		Drainage reserve width, where one applies	Clause 6.9.7
NOTES	T	—		Free text	—

Table 10B.6 — Metadata (SW_META)

Field	Content
FILE_NO	Authority file number
STAGE	1, 2, 4 or HANDOVER
H_CRS	EPSG code of the horizontal reference system
V_DATUM	Name of the vertical datum
TIDE_REL	Relationship of the vertical datum to the Chapter 5 river datums of the CWC and I&WRD gauges on the receiving rivers and of I&WRD's embankment, regulator and drain levels (for example, MSL = x.xx m on the site datum)
SURVEYOR	Name and licence number of the surveyor
SURV_DATE	Date of the survey
PREP_BY	Name and registration number of the certifying professional
CALC_VER	Compliance calculator version (Annex 10A), or "not issued"
DATE	Date the file was prepared

10B.4 Code lists

Table 10B.7 — Facility type codes (FAC_TYPE)

Code	Facility	Inspection row of Table 10.3
RET_SOAK	Soakaway, recharge pit or shaft	Retention / infiltration
RET_TRENCH	Infiltration trench or basin	Retention / infiltration

Code	Facility	Inspection row of Table 10.3
RET_BIO	Bioretention or rain garden	Retention / infiltration
RET_PERM	Permeable pavement	Retention / infiltration
RET_REUSE	Retention by reuse (tank with demand)	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_BASIN	Surface detention basin	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
DET_OSR	Multi-use detention in open space, park or playfield	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
DET_ROOF	Rooftop detention	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_PODIUM	Podium or landscape-deck detention	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_PARK	Parking-lot detention	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
DET_TANK	Underground tank or vault, gravity outlet	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_PUMP	Pumped detention or pump station	Pumped detention, pumps and controls
WQ_POND	Wet pond or constructed wetland	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
WQ_SWALE	Swale or filter strip	Private drains and inlets
WQ_GPT	Gross pollutant trap, first-flush device or oil-grit separator	Gross pollutant trap / first-flush device
GATE	Flap or tide gate, non-return valve	Flap / tide gate, non-return valve
CONV	Private drain, inlet or culvert	Private drains and inlets

Table 10B.8 — Status codes (STATUS)

Code	Meaning
PROPOSED	In a Stage 1 or Stage 2 submittal
APPROVED	Stage 2 approved; not yet built
ASBUILT	As-built certificate accepted (Clause 10.9)
HANDEDOVER	Accepted by the ULB (Clause 10.14)
ALTERED	Changed with the Authority's approval (Clause 10.3.5)
REMOVED	Removed with the Authority's approval

Table 10B.9 — Inspection result codes (INSP_RES)

Code	Meaning
OK	Working as designed; no defect
MINOR	Defect found and corrected; date in the inspection record
MAJOR	Defect affecting storage, outlet or safety; notice issued (Clause 10.15.2, step 1)
NOACCESS	Inspection could not be made
NOTFOUND	Facility missing, filled, covered or changed in use (Clause 10.15.1(c))

10B.5 Facility register extract

The public facility register of Clause 10.17.1(a) is an extract of SW_FAC: FAC_ID, FAC_TYPE, location (centroid), V_DET (and V_RET, V_WQ), Q_100 (and Q_2, Q_10), OWNER_NM, ASB_DATE, LAST_INSP and INSP_RES. It is published as CSV and GeoPackage under the licence of Clause 10.17.4. Personal data are not published (Clause 10.17.3).

Annex 10C — Maintenance access dimensions

Supports Clause 10.13 of Chapter 10.

Clause 10.13 sets access by function. This annex collects the access dimensions that the Manual already sets in other chapters, and lists the dimensions that it does not set. Where a dimension is not set by the Manual, the designer shall state it on the drawings, show that it suits the plant and equipment named in the O&M plan (Clause 10.11.1(h)), and mark it "to be confirmed in design".

Table 10C.1 — Access dimensions set by the Manual

Element	Requirement	Clause
Open drains with a top width of 2 m or more	Maintenance access strip at least 3.5 m wide along one bank, connected to a public road at intervals of not more than 500 m	6.9.4
Drainage reserves	Width not less than Table 6.9, based on the required drain size; where the access strip of Clause 6.9.4 is wider, the wider governs	6.9.7
Covered drains, minimum section	0.6 m × 0.6 m clear	6.7.6
Covered drains, removable covers	Panels at not more than 10 m centres, each at least 0.6 m long and spanning the full clear width, liftable by two workers or a hand-operated device	6.13.2(a)
Covered drains, access chambers	Clear opening at least 0.6 m × 0.6 m at every junction, bend and change of section, and at not more than 30 m centres on straight runs	6.13.2(b)
Manholes and access chambers on public drains	Clear access opening at least 600 mm	9.12.3
Inlet chambers on public roads	Silt sump at least 300 mm deep below the outlet pipe invert, cleanable from the surface	6.6.7
Underground tanks and vaults	Access openings over the outlet chamber and over every inlet; in tanks over 500 m², not more than 30 m apart; floor falling at least 1% to a sump at the outlet	4.10.2(b), (c)
Detention outlets serving more than 1 ha	A means of isolating the outlet (stop-log slot or penstock)	4.8.6
Outfall gates	Stop-log slot or penstock upstream on outfalls larger than 600 mm (Chapter 5) and on outfalls of 900 mm or more or serving a pumped or storage system (Chapter 9); the gate chamber accessible at all tides, with its access above HAT + surge + sea-level allowance	5.11.3(d), (e); 9.10.3
Pump stations	Maintenance vehicle access usable in the 1% AEP event; hard standing and a quick-coupling connection for mobile pumps; clear space between adjacent pumps or motors of 0.6 m (small and medium units) or 1.0 m (large units)	9.9.6, 9.9.10, 9.9.12
Pretreatment devices	Cleanable without entering or disturbing the main BMP	8.5.4
Screens at outfalls, culvert inlets and pump sumps	Cleanable from a safe platform, with vehicle access	8.10.3(d)

Element	Requirement	Clause
Infiltration trenches	Observation well to the base of each trench	8.7.6(c)
Publicly accessible storage	Side slopes no steeper than 4H:1V, with at least a quarter of the perimeter at 6H:1V or flatter	4.15.1(c)
Wet basins	Safety bench at least 3 m wide, no more than 0.3 m below normal water level	4.15.2
Fencing	At least 1.2 m high, non-climbable, with a lockable gate, where Clause 4.15.3 requires it	4.15.3

Table 10C.2 — Access dimensions not set by the Manual (to be confirmed in design)

Element	What the designer shall state	Clause setting the function
Vehicle access route to the inlet, outlet and base of a basin, pond or open channel	Width, gradient, turning space and design load for the plant in the O&M plan	10.13.2
Maintenance strip beside a basin or pond	Width along at least one side	10.13.2
Ramp into a basin	Width, gradient and surface for the sediment-removal plant	10.13.2
Access openings of private tanks	Clear size of each opening over the inlet, outlet and each chamber	10.13.3(a)
Ladders and steps	Type and spacing; ventilation for confined-space entry	10.13.3(b)
Headroom in underground tanks	Clear height for manual cleaning	10.13.3(d)
Reach to orifices and screens	How the outlet is cleaned without entering a full facility	10.13.4

> **Commentary.** APWA 5600 (2006, §5608) required a maintenance access strip of 15 ft (about 4.5 m) for detention facilities. The Manual did not adopt a fixed width for private sites, because plot sizes in Uttar Pradesh cities vary widely (Clause 10.13, Commentary). The State Stormwater Technical Committee may add standard values to Table 10C.2 when it issues the standard drawings of Annexes 6C and 9B.

Annex 10D — Model O&M plans by facility type

Supports Clauses 10.11, 10.12 and 10.13 of Chapter 10.

The model plans below are starting points. The designer adapts them to each facility and completes the items marked "_____". Inspection frequencies are the minimum frequencies of Table 10.3; a plan may set more frequent inspection, never less. Where this annex leaves a value to the designer, the Manual does not set it.

10D.1 Contents of every O&M plan

Every plan shall contain the items of Clause 10.11.1:

Table 10D.1 — Contents of an O&M plan

Item	Content	Clause
1	Inventory and plan drawing of each facility, with design levels, volumes and outlet details (from SW_FAC, Annex 10B)	10.11.1(a)
2	Routine tasks and their frequency (Tables 10D.2 to 10D.8)	10.11.1(b)
3	Trigger for sediment removal, as a depth (mm) or a percentage of design volume: _____	10.11.1(c)
4	Inspection checklist matching Form 10-7	10.11.1(d)
5	For pumps, gates and valves: operating rules, test schedule, standby power, and actions on a cyclone or heavy-rainfall warning	10.11.1(e)
6	Actions against standing water and mosquito breeding, consistent with the drawdown times of Clause 4.7	10.11.1(f)
7	Safety: confined spaces, deep water, public access	10.11.1(g)
8	Access routes and equipment (Annex 10C)	10.11.1(h)
9	Annual cost estimate (₹ _____ per year) and who pays it	10.11.1(i)
10	Records to be kept, and for how long: _____ years (pump records at least 5 years, Clause 9.9.8(c))	10.11.1(j)

10D.2 Model plans

Table 10D.2 — Retention and infiltration (soakaways, trenches, bioretention, permeable paving)

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect surface, inlets, pretreatment and overflow	Every 6 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	No blockage; overflow clear	Table 10.3
Check drawdown at the observation well or surface	At each inspection after rain	Empties within 72 h of the end of rain; if not, investigate clogging	4.4.5, 8.7.6(c)
Clean pretreatment (forebay, filter strip, silt trap)	When the sediment trigger (item 3) is reached	Pretreatment cleaned without disturbing the main BMP	8.5.3, 8.5.4
Bioretention: mulch, plants, ponding	Every 6 months	Ponding drains within 48 h; dead plants replaced; mulch 50–75 mm	8.7.2
Permeable paving: surface	Every 6 months	Sweep or vacuum; no resurfacing with impermeable material	8.7.5(e)
Keep the contributing area stable	Each inspection	Bare soil stabilised; no sediment washing in	10.8.3(b)
Keep the facility in place and in use	Each inspection	Not filled, covered, paved or built over without approval	10.10.1(d)

Table 10D.3 — Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect inlets, outlet, orifice, trash rack and spillway	Every 6 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	Orifice and rack clear; spillway unobstructed	Table 10.3, 4.8, 4.9
Remove debris and sediment	When the sediment trigger is reached, and after events	Design volume restored	10.11.1(c)
Check that the basin drains	After rain	No low point ponds for more than 72 h	4.15.7
Vegetation	As set in the plan	Grass cut; no woody growth on embankments or in the outlet zone	10.11.1(b)

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Safety features	Every 6 months	Signs in Hindi and English and a depth marker in place; fences and gates sound where required	4.15.3, 4.15.5
Embankment (if any)	Every 6 months and after events	No cracks, slips, seepage or animal burrows	4.9.6

Table 10D.4 — Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect from the access openings: inlets, outlet, orifice, screen, sump, vents	Every 6 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	Clear; vents open	Table 10.3, 4.10.2
Clean the sump and floor	When the sediment trigger is reached	Floor falls freely to the sump	4.10.2(c)
Inlet silt trap or GPT	Every 3 months (Table 10.3 row for GPTs)	Cleaned	4.10.2(e)
Overflow route	Each inspection	Operates when the outlet is blocked; route to the overland path unobstructed	4.9.5
Confined-space entry	Each entry	Entry procedure stated in the maintenance declaration followed; covers locked after	4.15.6
Use of the space	Each inspection	Not used for parking or storage; volume not reduced	10.10.1(d)

Table 10D.5 — Pumped detention, pumps and controls

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Test run of each pump, duty and standby	Monthly	Each pump starts on level control; roles alternate	Table 10.3, 9.9.4(c)
Full duty test	Before 31 May	Station meets its design duty point	Table 10.3, 10.9.3
Standby power	Monthly with the test run; full test before 31 May	Automatic changeover works; fuel for at least 72 h of all duty pumps on site	9.9.9
Level sensors, float back-up, alarms, telemetry	Monthly	High-level and fault alarms reach the control room	9.9.8
Screens and silt trap	Every 3 months and after events	Clean	9.9.7
Records	Continuous	Sump levels, run hours and power status logged; kept at least 5 years	9.9.8(c)
Warning actions	On an IMD heavy-rainfall or cyclone warning	Actions written in the plan: _____ (for example staff on site, fuel topped up, mobile pump connection checked)	10.11.1(e), 9.9.12

Table 10D.6 — Flap or tide gate, non-return valve

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect and operate	Every 3 months; after each heavy-rainfall day	Opens at a small head; no debris, sand or growth holding it	Table 10.3, 9.10.4

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Seal test	Before 31 May	Seals against the receiving water	Table 10.3, 10.9.3
Beach, estuary and creek outfalls	After every high-tide or surge event in the monsoon season	Sand and debris cleared	9.10.5(b)
Isolation	Before 31 May	Stop-log slot or penstock operable	9.10.3
Hinges, pins and fixings	Before 31 May	No corrosion that would stop the gate working	9.10.6
Property non-return valves	Every 3 months	Cleaning eye accessible; valve seals	5.11.4

Table 10D.7 — Gross pollutant trap or first-flush device

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect and empty	Every 3 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	Emptied before the capture chamber is full; bypass clear	Table 10.3, 8.4.6
Screens	Each inspection	Clean; overflow path clear	8.10.3(b)
Disposal	Each cleaning	Material taken to an authorised solid-waste facility	—

Table 10D.8 — Private drains and inlets

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect and clean drains, inlets and silt sumps	Every 6 months; before 31 May	Free of silt and debris	Table 10.3
Check for sewage connections	Each inspection	None; any cross-connection removed	1.5.4, 8.9
Overland flow paths	Each inspection	Not obstructed by walls, fill or stored material	6.9.2, 10.15.1(g)

Annex 10E — Empanelment criteria for Stormwater Design Professionals and reviewers

Supports Clauses 10.6, 10.7.4 and 11.4.3 of Chapter 10.

> *Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.* Clause 10.6.2 assigns the issue of empanelment criteria to TCPD. The text below is a model. Values shown as "[ ]" are for the competent authority to set; the Manual does not set them.

10E.1 Model criteria

1. **Lists.** The competent authority shall keep three public lists:
    - (a) **Stormwater Design Professionals**, who may sign designs under Clause 10.6.1 and act as independent checkers under Clause 10.6.4;
    - (b) **Empanelled Reviewers**, who may review submittals for an Authority under Clause 10.7.4; and

    - (c) a **basin modelling endorsement**, held by a Stormwater Design Professional who may prepare or direct a BSMP under Clause 11.4.3.
2. **Eligibility for list (a).** An applicant shall:
    - (a) hold a degree in civil engineering, or an equivalent qualification recognised by the competent authority (Clause 10.6.2);
    - (b) be registered as a professional under the Uttar Pradesh Development Authority Building Construction and Development Byelaws 2025 (Clause 1.4);
    - (c) have at least [ ] years of experience in drainage design after graduation, shown by a list of at least [ ] projects with the applicant's role in each (Clause 10.6.2); and
    - (d) have completed a training course on this Manual, with an assessment, within the [ ] years before application (Clause 10.6.2).
3. **Eligibility for list (b).** As for list (a), with at least [ ] years of experience, of which at least [ ] years in the design or review of drainage under this Manual or an equivalent standard.
4. **Basin modelling endorsement (c).** A Stormwater Design Professional who shows experience in basin-scale 1D–2D modelling, including calibration, on at least [ ] studies (Clause 11.4.3).
5. **Independence of a checker.** A checker under Clause 10.6.4 shall not be employed by, or a partner of, the designer's firm or the Applicant, and shall not have worked on the design.
6. **Conflict of interest of a reviewer.** An Empanelled Reviewer shall not review a site on which the reviewer, or the reviewer's firm, has worked in any capacity (Clause 10.7.4), and shall declare any other interest before accepting a review. The Authority remains the decision-maker (Clause 10.7.4).
7. **Application.** The application shall include proof of degree and registration, the project list with references, the training certificate, and a signed declaration that the information is true.
8. **Term and renewal.** Empanelment is valid for [ ] years. Renewal requires evidence of continuing practice and of any refresher training issued after a revision of the Manual (Clause 1.12).
9. **Suspension and removal.** The competent authority may suspend or remove an empanelled person after a false or negligent certificate (Clause 10.6.5), on a report under step 6 of Table 10.4, or on loss of registration. The person shall be given notice and an opportunity to be heard. Every suspension and removal shall be published on the list.
10. **Publication.** The lists shall be published and kept current, with each person's name, registration number, list, endorsement and validity date.

Form 10-1 — Drainage Report Checklist

Supports Clauses 10.4.1 to 10.4.4 and 10.7.1 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodge with every Stage 1 and Stage 2 submittal. For each item give the page or sheet where it is addressed, or the reason it does not apply. The Authority does not start technical review without a completed Form 10-1 (Clause 10.4.3).

Table 10F.1 — Form 10-1, Section A: Submittal

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Authority and file number	_____
A2	Site name and address; survey numbers	_____
A3	Stage: 1 / 2 / combined 1 and 2 (Clause 10.3.3) / public work DPR or tender (Clause 10.3.4)	_____
A4	Applicant	_____
A5	Certifying professional (name, registration and empanelment number)	_____

Table 10F.2 — Form 10-1, Section B: Stage 1 contents (Clause 10.4.1)

No.	Item	Clause	Page / sheet	Not applicable: reason
B1	Form 1-1; Form 1-2 where a variance or waiver is sought	10.4.1(a)	_____	_____
B2	Site plan: existing and proposed levels, impervious areas, catchment boundaries to and through the site	10.4.1(b)	_____	_____
B3	Soils (HSG), seasonal high groundwater, infiltration tests or test plan	10.4.1(c)	_____	_____
B4	Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1)	10.4.1(d)	_____	_____
B5	Pre-development condition and hydrologic method	10.4.1(e)	_____	_____
B6	Order of measures: areas preserved, retention method, detention concept, conveyance	10.4.1(f)	_____	_____
B7	Preliminary retention, WQ and detention volumes and release rates, with Form 10-2	10.4.1(g)	_____	_____
B8	Downstream extent and tailwater case	10.4.1(h)	_____	_____
B9	Waterbodies, setbacks and the 1% AEP level	10.4.1(i)	_____	_____
B10	Land reserved for facilities and maintenance access	10.4.1(j)	_____	_____
B11	Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3)	10.4.5	_____	_____

Table 10F.3 — Form 10-1, Section C: Stage 2 contents (Clause 10.4.2)

No.	Item	Clause	Page / sheet	Not applicable: reason
C1	Updated Stage 1 contents (Section B)	10.4.2	_____	_____
C2	Final calculations for every storage duration and AEP, with the outfall-closed check	10.4.2(a)	_____	_____

No.	Item	Clause	Page / sheet	Not applicable: reason
C3	Stage–storage–discharge tables; emergency spillway design	10.4.2(b)	_____	_____
C4	Hydraulic design of conveyance, inlets and structures	10.4.2(c)	_____	_____
C5	Water quality design; first-flush device or GPT where required	10.4.2(d)	_____	_____
C6	Construction drawings, details and specifications of every facility	10.4.2(e)	_____	_____
C7	Construction sequence, with protection of retention and infiltration areas	10.4.2(f)	_____	_____
C8	Hold-point schedule (Form 10-4, Section A)	10.4.2(g)	_____	_____
C9	Draft O&M plan and draft Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6)	10.4.2(h)	_____	_____
C10	Model input files and GIS data	10.4.2(i)	_____	_____
C11	Certificates (Form 10-3, signed by designer and, where required, checker)	10.4.2(j)	_____	_____

Table 10F.4 — Form 10-1, Section D: Digital submittal (Clause 10.4.4)

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (yes / no)	Detail
D1	Reports and drawings as searchable PDF	10.4.4(a)	_____	_____
D2	Models in native, runnable format; software name and version	10.4.4(b)	_____	_____
D3	GIS data to Annex 10B; horizontal reference system (EPSG code)	10.4.4(c)	_____	_____
D4	Vertical datum named; relationship to the Chapter 5 river datums of the CWC and I&WRD gauges on the receiving rivers and of I&WRD's embankment, regulator and drain levels	10.4.4(d)	_____	_____

Table 10F.5 — Form 10-1, Section E: Declaration and completeness check

Field	Entry
I confirm that this checklist is complete and correct. Certifying professional: name, signature, date	_____
For the Authority: date received	_____
Date of completeness check (within 5 working days, Clause 10.7.1)	_____
Result: accepted for review / returned	_____
Missing items, if returned	_____
Officer: name, designation, signature	_____

Form 10-2 — Compliance Calculator Summary

Supports Clauses 10.4.1(g), 10.5 and 10.9.1(b) of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Produced by the compliance calculator (Annex 10A) with Stage 1, 2 and 4 submittals. Until the calculator is issued, complete it by hand and enter "not issued" in A3. One column per drainage area where the site has more than one outfall.

Table 10F.6 — Form 10-2, Section A: Site and route

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Authority, file number, stage (1 / 2 / 4)	_____	10.5.2(a)
A2	Site area, ha; land disturbance, ha; new + replaced impervious area, m²	_____	1.5.2
A3	Calculator version and release date	_____	10.5.3
A4	Tier (A / B); flood-sensitive (yes / no); approved BSMP for the basin (yes / no)	_____	1.6, 4.5.3, 11.12
A5	Route: full method / S-1 / S-2 / fixed-coefficient / constrained redevelopment / regional or fee-in-lieu	_____	1.7, 4.5.6, 4.13, 4.14
A6	Flags raised by the calculator (list)	_____	Annex 10A.4

Table 10F.7 — Form 10-2, Section B: Rainfall and soils

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
B1	Rainfall zone; Form 2-1 reference	_____	2.13
B2	Retention depth P_R, mm; 3-month ARI depth P_3m, mm	_____	2.10, 8.4.1
B3	Climate factor applied (≤ 6 h; > 6–72 h)	_____	2.8
B4	HSG by sub-area; seasonal high groundwater, m below base	_____	3.7, 4.4.3
B5	Measured and design infiltration rates, mm/h	_____	4.4.3

Table 10F.8 — Form 10-2, Section C: Volumes

No.	Quantity	Required (m³)	Provided (m³)	Clause
C1	Retention volume (RRV)	_____	_____	4.4.2
C2	Water quality volume (WQv)	_____	_____	8.4.2
C3	Retention credit against detention	_____	—	4.4.6
C4	Detention volume	_____	_____	4.6, 4.14
C5	Fee-in-lieu or regional volume, and fee (₹)	_____	_____	4.5.6.3, 4.13.3

Table 10F.9 — Form 10-2, Section D: Release rates (each outfall)

AEP	Q_pre or cap (L/s)	Q_post (L/s)	Governing duration (h)	Meets criterion (yes / no)	Clause
50% (2-yr)	_____	_____	_____	_____	4.5
10% (10-yr)	_____	_____	_____	_____	4.5

AEP	Q_pre or cap (L/s)	Q_post (L/s)	Governing duration (h)	Meets criterion (yes / no)	Clause
1% (100-yr)	_____	_____	_____	_____	4.5

Table 10F.10 — Form 10-2, Section E: Outlets, drawdown and stage comparison

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
E1	Low-flow orifice, mm (minimum 50 mm)	_____	4.8.2
E2	Detention: time to release 90% of the 10-yr stored volume, h (≤ 48 h)	_____	4.7.1
E3	WQv release time, h (24–48 h)	_____	4.7.2
E4	Retention emptying time, h (≤ 72 h)	_____	4.7.3
E5	Model result differs from the calculator screen by more than the guide tolerance? If yes, report section that explains it	_____	10.5.2(c)
E6	Stage 4 only: changes from the Stage 2 values (list), and whether every criterion is still met	_____	10.9.2
E7	Prepared by (name, registration number), signature, date	_____	10.6.3(b)

Form 10-3 — Professional Design Certificate

Supports Clauses 10.6.1 to 10.6.5 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Signed by the designer with every Stage 1 and Stage 2 submittal, and by an independent checker for facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d).

Table 10F.11 — Form 10-3, Section A: Project and signatory

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Authority, file number, stage	_____	—
A2	Site and facilities covered by this certificate	_____	—
A3	Designer: name, qualification, Byelaws 2025 registration number	_____	10.6.1
A4	Empanelment number, where required, and the reason: Tier A ≥ 1 ha / flood-sensitive / embankment or high-hazard basin / pumped, tide gate or regional facility	_____	10.6.1(a)–(d)
A5	Variances or waivers approved (Form 1-2 references), or "none"	_____	10.6.3(a)

Table 10F.12 — Form 10-3, Section B: Certificate of the designer

No.	I certify that:	Initials
B1	the design complies with the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, except for the variances listed at A5, which have been approved	_____
B2	the rainfall, soils and tailwater inputs are as recorded on Form 2-1 and Form 10-2	_____
B3	the models submitted reproduce the results reported	_____
B4	I understand that a false or negligent certificate is a contravention under Clause 10.15	_____

Table 10F.13 — Form 10-3, Section C: Certificate of the independent checker (Clause 10.6.4)

No.	Field or statement	Entry
C1	Checker: name, registration and empanelment number	_____
C2	I am independent of the designer and the Applicant and have not worked on this design	_____
C3	I have checked the facilities listed: _____, and agree with the certificate in Section B	_____
C4	Matters on which I do not agree, if any	_____

Table 10F.14 — Form 10-3, Section D: Signatures

Role	Name	Signature	Date
Designer	_____	_____	_____
Independent checker (where required)	_____	_____	_____

Form 10-4 — Hold-Point Inspection Record

Supports Clauses 10.4.2(g), 10.8 and 10.9.3 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Section A is the hold-point schedule, approved at Stage 2. Section B is completed at each hold point, with dated, geotagged photographs (Clause 10.8.2). Work shall not proceed past a hold point until Section B is signed. See Figure 10.2.

Table 10F.15 — Form 10-4, Section A: Hold-point schedule

Hold point	Facility (FAC_ID)	Stage of work	Planned date	Notice to Authority sent (date)*	Authority attended (yes / no)
(a) Excavated base, before media, liner or structure	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
(b) Outlet structure, orifice and trash screen, before backfill or first filling	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
(c) Infiltration and verification tests (Clause 10.9.3)	_____	_____	_____	–	_____
(d) Outfall, flap or tide gate and non-return valve, before downstream connection	_____	_____	_____	–	_____
(e) Pumps and controls, at commissioning	_____	_____	_____	–	_____
Other hold points added by the Authority	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

* For sites under Clause 10.6.1, at least 3 working days' notice of hold points (a) and (b) (Clause 10.8.2).

Table 10F.16 — Form 10-4, Section B: Inspection record (one per hold point)

No.	Field	Entry
B1	Hold point and facility	_____
B2	Date and time of inspection; weather	_____
B3	Inspected by (certifying professional); others present	_____
B4	Approved drawing and revision checked against	_____
B5	Levels, dimensions and materials found, against approved values	_____
B6	For (a): retention and infiltration areas protected from traffic and stockpiles (Clause 10.8.3(a))	_____
B7	For (b): orifice size and invert; screen in place	_____
B8	For (c): infiltration test result and emptying time (≤ 72 h); pump duty point; gate opening and sealing	_____
B9	For (d) and (e): gate type, seating and test; pump commissioning record	_____
B10	Photograph references (dated, geotagged)	_____
B11	Result: released / not released; corrective work required	_____
B12	Corrective work checked (date, by)	_____
B13	Signature of the certifying professional, date	_____

Form 10-5 — As-built Certificate

Supports Clauses 10.9 and 10.3.5 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodged before the completion certificate. The Authority shall not issue the completion certificate until this form is accepted (Clause 10.9.4).

Table 10F.17 — Form 10-5, Section A: Project and survey

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Authority, file number; Stage 2 approval reference and date	_____	—
A2	Licensed surveyor: name, licence number, date of survey	_____	10.9.1(a)
A3	Vertical datum	_____	10.4.4(d)
A4	GIS data to Annex 10B, as built (file name)	_____	10.4.4(c)

Table 10F.18 — Form 10-5, Section B: Approved against as built (one block per facility)

Item	Approved	As built	Accepted (yes / no)	Clause
Storage volume at each design level, m³	_____	_____	_____	10.9.2(a)
Outlet dimensions (orifice, weir), mm	_____	_____	_____	10.9.2(b)
Outlet and outfall inverts, m	_____	_____	_____	10.9.2(b)
Spillway or overflow level, m	_____	_____	_____	4.9
Retention volume, m³	_____	_____	_____	4.4

Table 10F.19 — Form 10-5, Section C: Re-run and tests

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	Compliance calculator re-run with as-built values: version, and Form 10-2 (Stage 4) attached	_____	10.9.1(b)
C2	Model re-run with as-built values (where a model was used): file name	_____	10.9.1(b)
C3	Every criterion of Chapters 4 and 5 met on re-run (yes / no; list any not met)	_____	10.9.2(c)
C4	Infiltration retention: measured emptying time, h (≤ 72 h)	_____	10.9.3
C5	Pumps: duty point achieved (flow at head)	_____	10.9.3
C6	Tide gates and non-return valves: shown to open and seal	_____	10.9.3
C7	Deviations, and how corrected or re-certified under Clause 10.3.5	_____	10.9.2

Table 10F.20 — Form 10-5, Section D: Attachments and certificate

No.	Field	Entry
D1	Completed hold-point records (Form 10-4)	_____
D2	Final O&M plan	_____
D3	Executed Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6) or handover documents (Form 10-8)	_____

No.	Field	Entry
D4	I certify that the facilities listed were built as approved, except as stated at C7, and perform as designed. Certifying professional: name, registration number, signature, date	_____
D5	For the Authority: accepted / returned; officer, date	_____

Form 10-6 — Maintenance Declaration

Supports Clauses 10.10.1, 10.10.2, 10.10.4 and 10.13.1 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force. Executed by the owner of every private stormwater facility before the completion certificate is issued, and registered so that it runs with the land.

> **Drafting note D10A.1.** The instrument under which this declaration is registered, and the Act that gives the Authority its right of entry and its power to carry out works in default, are to be confirmed by the competent authority. This form does not cite statute sections.

Table 10F.21 — Form 10-6, Section A: Parties and land

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Owner (the declarant): name and address; for a company or association, its registration number	_____
A2	Authority	_____
A3	Land: survey numbers, village, tehsil, district; extent	_____
A4	Approval reference (file number, Stage 2 approval date)	_____
A5	For multi-owner developments: the association or body that takes over after the developer (Clause 10.10.2)	_____

Table 10F.22 — Form 10-6, Section B: Schedule of facilities

Facility (FAC_ID)	Type	Location on the attached plan	Design volume (m³)	Outlet	O&M plan reference
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Model declaration. I/We, the owner named in Section A, declare and undertake, for myself/ourselves and for every successor in title to the land:

1. to operate, inspect and maintain each facility in Section B under the approved O&M plan, and to make the inspections of Clause 10.12 (Clause 10.10.1(b));
2. to give the Authority, its officers and its contractors a right of entry to inspect each facility and the access route shown on the plan, and to carry out works in default under Clause 10.15, with the cost recoverable from the owner (Clause 10.10.1(c));
3. not to remove, fill, cover, reduce or change the use of any facility, or obstruct its access route, without the Authority's written approval (Clauses 10.10.1(d), 10.13.5);
4. where Clause 10.10.3 applies, to lodge an Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report (Form 10-7) by 31 May each year;
5. for underground tanks, to follow the confined-space entry procedure stated here: _____ (Clause 4.15.6);
6. on sale or transfer of the land or any part of it, to disclose this declaration and the latest Form 10-7 to the purchaser, who takes on these obligations from the date of transfer (Clause 10.10.4); and
7. for a multi-owner development, that the developer remains responsible until the body named at A5 is legally constituted and has accepted this declaration in writing (Clause 10.10.2).

Table 10F.23 — Form 10-6, Section C: Execution and registration

Field	Entry
Owner: signature, name, date	_____
Witness 1: signature, name, address	_____
Witness 2: signature, name, address	_____
Acceptance by the association or body at A5 (when constituted): signature, date	_____
Registration: office, document number, date	_____
For the Authority: received and recorded in the facility register; officer, date	_____

Form 10-7 — Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report

Supports Clauses 10.10.3, 10.11.1(d) and 10.12 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Due by **31 May** each year from every owner of a facility in a Tier A area, and from every owner of a pumped facility, tide gate or regional facility anywhere (Clause 10.10.3). See Figure 10.3.

Table 10F.24 — Form 10-7, Section A: Owner and facilities

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Reporting year (1 June to 31 May)	_____
A2	Owner or association; Maintenance Declaration registration reference	_____
A3	Facilities covered (FAC_ID and type)	_____
A4	Any facility under Clause 10.6.1(c) or (d) (yes / no). If yes, Section E is required	_____

Table 10F.25 — Form 10-7, Section B: Inspections made during the year (Table 10.3)

Facility	Routine inspections (dates)	Pre-monsoon inspection (date)	After heavy-rainfall events (dates)	Monthly pump test runs (number)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 10F.26 — Form 10-7, Section C: Pre-monsoon checklist (one per facility)

No.	Item	Condition (OK / defect)	Defect and date corrected
C1	Inlets, pretreatment and silt traps clear	_____	_____
C2	Orifice, trash screen and outlet clear; orifice size unchanged	_____	_____
C3	Sediment below the trigger in the O&M plan	_____	_____
C4	Storage volume not reduced; no filling, covering or change of use	_____	_____
C5	Overflow and spillway route clear	_____	_____
C6	Retention drains within 72 h (observation well or surface)	_____	_____
C7	Pumps: full duty test; standby pump and standby power tested; fuel for 72 h on site	_____	_____
C8	Alarms and telemetry tested	_____	_____
C9	Flap or tide gates and non-return valves: operated and seal tested	_____	_____
C10	Safety: covers locked, fences, signs and depth markers in place	_____	_____
C11	Access routes clear and not used for parking	_____	_____

Table 10F.27 — Form 10-7, Section D: Declaration of the owner

Field	Entry
I/We declare that the pre-monsoon inspection of Clause 10.12 has been made, that the defects found have been corrected as listed in Section C, and that the facilities are maintained under the approved O&M plan. Owner: name, signature, date	_____

Table 10F.28 — Form 10-7, Section E: Empanelled professional (facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d))

Field	Entry
I have inspected the facilities listed and confirm Section C. Name, empanelment number, signature, date	_____

Table 10F.29 — Form 10-7, Section F: For the Authority

Field	Entry
Date received; on time (by 31 May) yes / no	_____
Entered in the facility register (Clause 10.17), date	_____
Follow-up action, if any (Clause 10.15)	_____

Form 10-8 — Asset Handover Certificate

Supports Clause 10.14 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Signed by the developer and the ULB when drains, open space facilities, regional facilities or other stormwater assets built by a developer are handed over.

Table 10F.30 — Form 10-8, Section A: Asset and parties

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Developer: name and address	_____
A2	ULB	_____
A3	Layout or project, approval reference	_____
A4	Assets handed over (FAC_ID, type, length or volume), with a plan	_____

Table 10F.31 — Form 10-8, Section B: Conditions of handover (Clause 10.14.1)

No.	Condition	Met (yes / no)	Reference or date
B1	As-built certificate (Form 10-5) accepted	_____	_____
B2	Facility cleaned; pipes and culverts inspected internally (CCTV or manual entry), record handed over	_____	_____
B3	Land, or an easement over it, transferred to the ULB	_____	_____
B4	O&M plan, drawings, GIS data (Annex 10B) and warranties handed over	_____	_____

Table 10F.32 — Form 10-8, Section C: Defects liability and register

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	Defects liability period: from _____ to _____ (includes at least one full monsoon season, from 15 June to 15 October, after handover)	_____	10.14.2
C2	Developer responsible during the period for defects and routine maintenance	_____	10.14.2
C3	Security deposit held by the ULB, ₹, and release date	_____	10.14.2
C4	Entered in the ULB GIS drainage asset register and the facility register: date	_____	10.14.3

Table 10F.33 — Form 10-8, Section D: Signatures

Party	Name and designation	Signature	Date
Developer	_____	_____	_____
Certifying professional	_____	_____	_____
ULB	_____	_____	_____

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 11

Basin and City Stormwater Master Plans

These annexes support Chapter 11. They give a terms of reference template for a Basin Stormwater Master Plan (BSMP), the layout of the basin list and boundary layer, the layout and method for depth–damage curves, the standard for publishing BSMP data and models, and the annual implementation report form. Annexes 11B and 11C need data that are not yet available; they say so and give the rule to use in the meantime. The template and the form are a model and a draft form for consideration by a competent authority, and are not in force.

Annex 11A — BSMP terms of reference template

Supports Clauses 11.1 to 11.12 of Chapter 11.

> *Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.* The Lead Authority adapts this template for each basin. Items in "[ ]" are for the Lead Authority to complete. Clause references are to this Manual, which the consultant shall follow in full.

11A.1 Background and purpose

1. The [Lead Authority] intends to prepare a Basin Stormwater Master Plan for the [name] basin under Chapter 11 of the Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual.
2. The BSMP shall (Clause 11.1.2):
    - (a) map flood hazard for the basin under existing and future conditions;
    - (b) set the level of service for each part of the drainage system;
    - (c) identify, cost and rank the works, storage and land needed to reach that level of service;
    - (d) identify land to be reserved in the statutory land-use plan for regional storage, tal and tank restoration and major flow paths;
    - (e) set the basin inputs for site design: regional facilities, the fee-in-lieu unit rate, and any basin release rate stricter than Chapter 4; and
    - (f) recommend catchments for notification as flood-sensitive.
3. The BSMP may make the site criteria of Chapters 4 to 8 stricter for the basin. It shall not relax them, except through the regional detention and fee-in-lieu routes of Clauses 4.13 and 4.5.6 (Clause 11.1.3).

11A.2 Client, partners and study area

1. **Client:** [Lead Authority] (Clause 11.4.1).
2. **Partners:** I&WRD, wherever the basin includes a river, canal or tank under its control, and [other local bodies, LDA or TCPD, UPSDMA] (Clause 11.4.1).
3. **Study area:** the whole of the [name] basin, draining to [outfall], as delineated under Clause 11.3, including the parts outside the client's limits (Clause 11.3.1). The provisional boundary is in [Annex 11B / attached map]. The consultant shall confirm it in Task 2.

4. **Links to other basins:** [for example the receiving river corridor]. Diversions between basins by canal, drain or surplus course shall be mapped and represented in the model (Clause 11.3.2).

11A.3 Team

1. The study shall be led by an engineer empanelled as a Stormwater Design Professional with the basin modelling endorsement of Annex 10E (Clause 11.4.3).
2. The team shall include at least: [a hydrologist; a hydraulic modeller; a coastal or tidal specialist where the basin has a tidal outfall; a GIS and survey lead; a planner; a cost engineer; a community engagement lead]. The client sets the minimum qualifications and experience of each.

11A.4 Tasks

Task 1 — Inception. Review existing studies, data and projects in the basin. Prepare a data inventory against Table 11.1, a gap list, a survey plan, a consultation plan, and the work programme. Deliver the inception report.

Task 2 — Data and surveys. Assemble, survey where missing, and quality-check every item of Table 11.1 (Clause 11.5.1):

- (a) terrain: DEM from LiDAR or photogrammetry with vertical accuracy of 0.15 m RMSE or better in urban areas, tied to the Survey of India datum, with the accuracy test reported;
- (b) drain network: every public drain, culvert and outfall, with invert levels, sizes, condition and silt depth; private drains above 600 mm;
- (c) waterbodies: every tank, tal, pond and marsh under Chapter 7: FTL, MWL, bund level, stage–storage, sluices, surplus weirs, supply channels and encroachment, in the fields of Annex 7A;
- (d) rivers and canals: cross-sections at no more than 200 m spacing and at every structure;
- (e) outfalls and rivers: outfall invert levels, on a named datum, against the warning, danger and high flood levels of the receiving river at the nearest CWC or I&WRD gauge (the Gomti, the Ganga, the Yamuna, the Rapti, the Hindon or another river) and its recorded peaks; the 1-in-100-year flood levels and floodplain coordinates notified by I&WRD; regulators, flap gates, interception (drain-tapping) structures and pumping stations on the outfalls and in the river embankments, with their capacities and operating rules; embankment crest levels; and releases from any barrage or dam upstream;
- (f) rainfall and water levels: all available records (IMD, including the Lucknow (city and Amausi), Kanpur, Prayagraj (Bamhrauli), Varanasi (Babatpur and BHU), Gorakhpur, Agra, Meerut, Bareilly and Jhansi stations and the automatic weather stations and rain gauges reported by the Meteorological Centre Lucknow, and, for Ghaziabad and Noida, which have no long-record IMD station, Safdarjung and Palam in Delhi; the tehsil rain gauges; the rain and river gauges of CWC and I&WRD; and any gauges kept by the Nagar Nigams and the development and industrial development authorities), including the September 1971 (the Gomti at Lucknow), September 1978 (the Ganga and the Yamuna at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi), August 1998 (the Rapti at Gorakhpur), September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Lucknow), July 2023 (the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida) and September 2023 (Lucknow and Kanpur) events;
- (g) flood evidence: surveyed flood marks and mapped extents of past events, including public reports, photographs and residents' records;
- (h) land use: existing land use and imperviousness; future land use from the statutory master plan;
- (i) soils and groundwater: HSG map (Annex 3A or Clause 3.7.2), seasonal high groundwater, aquifer and recharge zones; and
- (j) sewer interaction: known cross-connections, dry-weather flow in drains, solid-waste hotspots.

Confirm the basin boundary and the inter-basin diversions (Clause 11.3.2). Deliver the data report and the data in the formats of Annex 11D.

Task 3 — Model build. Build a coupled 1D–2D hydraulic model of the minor system, the major (overland) system, rivers, canals and tanks, and the outfalls (Clause 11.7.1; Figure 11.2). Use the methods of Chapter 3 and the tidal and river boundaries of Chapter 5. Run the design storms of Chapter 2, including the 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms, for at least the 50%, 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs, with areal reduction under Clause 2.7.3 (Clause 11.7.2). Where the basin has tank cascades, run continuous simulation under Clause 3.13 with the full IMD gridded daily record where available, and at least 30 years, disaggregated by the temporal patterns of Annex 2D. The two-step approach of Clause 3.13.5 may be used: starting tank levels and antecedent conditions from the continuous run are passed to the design-storm runs (Clause 11.7.3).

Task 4 — Calibration and validation. Calibrate and validate the model under Clause 3.15, using at least two of the September 1971 (the Gomti at Lucknow), September 1978 (the Ganga and the Yamuna at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi), August 1998 (the Rapti at Gorakhpur), September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Lucknow), July 2023 (the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida) and September 2023 (Lucknow and Kanpur) events where data exist (Clause 11.7.5). Report the performance measures of Clause 3.15.4 and the reasonableness check of Clause 3.15.6.

Task 5 — Scenarios and hazard maps. Model the scenarios of Clause 11.7.4: (a) existing; (b) future, uncontrolled; (c) future, controlled; (d) future, with plan; and (e) climate, applied to (a) and (d). Produce flood hazard maps of extent, depth, velocity and hazard class (H1–H6, Chapter 6) for the 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs, existing and future-with-plan (Clause 11.8.4(a)).

Task 6 — Level-of-service assessment. Compare scenarios (a), (c) and (d) with the levels of service of Table 11.2 and any stricter levels the client adopts (Clause 11.6.1). Map every shortfall.

Task 7 — Options. Develop options in the order of Clause 11.8.1: protect and restore storage; regional retention and detention, sited by modelling; conveyance; outfall works; property-level protection; non-structural measures. Assess each option for the criteria of Clause 11.8.2: reduction in flood risk (buildings and people flooded, and expected annual damage using Annex 11C); capital and 30-year maintenance cost; land required; effect on groundwater recharge where the water table is deep, and waterlogging where it is shallow or the soils are usar; effect on downstream basins and the receiving river; and who benefits.

Task 8 — Basin inputs for site design. Where scenario (c) does not meet the level of service, propose basin release rates ($m^3/s/ha$) by AEP and sub-catchment (Clause 11.8.3). Recommend catchments for notification as flood-sensitive, with the evidence of Clause 4.5.4.1. Identify regional facility sites, with storage volumes, land needs and the sites they serve, and compute the fee-in-lieu unit rate, including land, construction and 10 years of maintenance (Clauses 4.13.3, 11.8.4(c), (d)).

Task 9 — Capital Improvement Programme. Rank the works by risk reduction per rupee, with cost, phasing and responsible agency (Clause 11.8.4(e)).

Task 10 — Maintenance and monitoring. Prepare the pre-monsoon maintenance programme: desilting, gate and pump testing, and tank operating rules (Clause 11.8.4(f); Chapters 7 and 10). Specify monitoring needs: new rain gauges, level sensors and flood-mark survey points (Clause 11.8.4(g); Clause 10.16.1).

Task 11 — Land-use integration. Prepare the material for the statutory land-use plan required by Clause 11.9.1: sites to be reserved; the 1% AEP hazard map with the Chapter 7 setbacks; land in hazard classes H5–H6 in the 1% AEP event; and open space locations that can form part of flow paths or regional storage.

Task 12 — Consultation. Publish the draft BSMP for public comment for at least 60 days, with public meetings in each affected local body (Clause 11.10.1). Keep a log of comments and responses.

Task 13 — Final BSMP and publication. Revise the BSMP after consultation. Prepare the package for approval by the State Stormwater Technical Committee, including the model for review (Clause 11.11.1). Publish the data, models, maps and CIP under Annex 11D (Clause 11.10.2).

11A.5 Deliverables

Table 11A.1 — Deliverables

No.	Deliverable	Task	Due (months from start)
D1	Inception report, data inventory and survey plan	1	[ ]
D2	Data report and data sets (Annex 11D)	2	[ ]
D3	Model build report and model files	3	[ ]
D4	Calibration and validation report	4	[ ]
D5	Scenario results, hazard maps and level-of-service assessment	5, 6	[ ]
D6	Options report, with basin inputs for site design	7, 8	[ ]
D7	Draft BSMP with draft CIP, for consultation	9–12	[ ]
D8	Final BSMP, consultation log, approval package and open-data release	13	[ ]

11A.6 Ownership and publication

All data, models, maps and reports produced under these terms are owned by the Lead Authority and shall be published under Annex 11D. The consultant shall not use any software licence, data licence or format that prevents publication, or that prevents a third party from re-running the model with the stated software version.

Annex 11B — Basin lists and boundaries for Tier A bodies

Supports Clauses 11.3 and 11.4 of Chapter 11.

To be prepared. This annex will contain the list of basins for every Tier A body, with a GIS layer of basin boundaries delineated under Clause 11.3.2. It needs the list of Tier A bodies (Annex 1A), a DEM of the accuracy of Clause 11.5.1, the drain network of every drain-owning body (the Nagar Nigams and their Jal Kal departments, the development and industrial development authorities, I&WRD's drains and canals, and UP Jal Nigam's interceptors and drain-tapping works), the regulators, flap gates and pumping stations on the outfalls and in the river embankments, with their capacities, the tals and ponds recorded in the revenue records and in master and layout plans, the floodplain coordinates notified by I&WRD, and any basin maps prepared for an IUSWDMP under the Urban Development Department's guideline of December 2024 (other likely sources: Survey of India, the Remote Sensing Applications Centre, CWC and CGWB). No basin map of any Uttar Pradesh city was found. Until the annex is published, the basins of Lucknow, Gorakhpur, Prayagraj, Ghaziabad and Noida named in Clause 11.3.3 are at least those named there; other Tier A bodies define their basins in their first BSMP (Clause 11.3.3); and the interim arrangements of Clause 11.12 apply in every basin without an approved BSMP.

Table 11B.1 — Basins named in Clause 11.3.3 (provisional)

Tier A body or area	Basin	Note from Chapter 11
Lucknow (Nagar Nigam, LDA)	Catchment of each drain that outfalls to the Gomti	33 of the city's 34 drains (as reported); Gomti level as boundary; outfall-closed case with pumping capacity a design case; includes the Kukrail nala and the Qila Mohammadi nala, with the Geetapalli–Haider canal diversion as a link

Tier A body or area	Basin	Note from Chapter 11
Gorakhpur (Nagar Nigam, Gorakhpur Development Authority)	City inside the Rapti and Rohin embankments	Rapti level at Birdghat as boundary; outfall-closed case a design case
Gorakhpur (Nagar Nigam, Gorakhpur Development Authority)	Ramgarh Tal catchment	Notified wetland of 742.245 ha with a 50 m zone of influence; six named inflow nalas; Goddhoiya nala project of 2022; UP State Wetland Authority consulted
Prayagraj (Nagar Nigam, Prayagraj Development Authority)	Catchments of the drains to the Ganga and the Yamuna	81 drains (as reported); levels at Phaphamau and Naini and the Sangam backwater as boundaries
Ghaziabad and Noida (Ghaziabad Nagar Nigam, Ghaziabad Development Authority, Noida, Greater Noida)	Catchments draining to the Hindon	One set of basins across the bodies; Hindon level as boundary; I&WRD Lead Authority for the river and its floodplain, not yet demarcated
Other Tier A bodies, including Kanpur, Varanasi, Agra and Meerut	To be defined in the first BSMP	Clause 11.3.3

Table 11B.2 — Attributes of the basin boundary layer (layout)

Field	Type	Content
BASIN_ID	Text	Basin identifier
NAME_EN, NAME_HI	Text	Basin name in English and Hindi
TIER_A	Text	Tier A body or bodies in the basin
OUTFALL	Text	Outfall to the sea, river or major waterbody (Clause 11.2)
AREA_KM2	Real	Basin area, km²
LEAD_AUTH	Text	Lead Authority (Clause 11.4.1)
PARTNERS	Text	Partners, including I&WRD where it applies
LINKS	Text	Diversions to and from other basins (Clause 11.3.2)
BSMP_STAT	Text	None / in preparation / draft published / approved
BSMP_DATE	Date	Date of approval of the current BSMP
REVIEW_DUE	Date	Date of the next review (Clause 11.11.2)

Annex 11C — Depth–damage curves for Uttar Pradesh building types

Supports Clause 11.8.2 of Chapter 11.

To be prepared. This annex will contain depth–damage curves for the main building types of Uttar Pradesh cities, for structure and contents, for use in computing expected annual damage under Clause 11.8.2. It needs a building-type classification and building stock data (Census housing tables, property-tax records, Lead Authority GIS), damage surveys and claims from the September 1971 (the Gomti at Lucknow), September 1978 (the Ganga and the Yamuna at Agra, Prayagraj and Varanasi), August 1998 (the Rapti at Gorakhpur), September 2022 (Gorakhpur and Lucknow), July 2023 (the Hindon at Ghaziabad and Noida) and September 2023 (Lucknow and Kanpur) floods (Revenue Department and UPSDMA damage assessments, insurers), and replacement costs (PWD schedules of rates). Until it is published, each BSMP shall state the depth–damage relations it uses and their source, and shall report the reduction in buildings and people flooded for every option (Clause 11.8.2), which does not depend on the curves.

Table 11C.1 — Depth–damage curve (layout, one table per building type)

Depth of water above floor level (m)	0	0.25	0.5	1.0	1.5	2.0	3.0
Structure damage (% of replacement cost)	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Contents damage (% of contents value)	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Building type, source and year of costs	_____						

11C.1 Use in option assessment

Expected annual damage (EAD) is computed for each scenario from the damages at the modelled AEPs. With damages D_1, D_2, … at annual exceedance probabilities P_1 > P_2 > …, using at least the 50%, 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEP results of Clause 11.7.2:

> $$EAD \approx \Sigma \tfrac{1}{2} \times (D_i + D_{(i+1)}) \times (P_i - P_{(i+1)})$$

The reduction in EAD between scenario (c) and scenario (d), or between options, is the risk-reduction benefit used to rank works per rupee (Clause 11.8.4(e)). The BSMP shall state how damages beyond the 0.2% AEP and below the 50% AEP were treated.

Annex 11D — BSMP data and model publication standard

Supports Clauses 11.5.1 and 11.10 of Chapter 11, and Clause 10.17 of Chapter 10.

11D.1 What is published, and when

Table 11D.1 — Items to be published

Item	Format	At draft (Clause 11.10.1)	At approval (Clause 11.10.2)
BSMP report, with the level-of-service assessment and options	Searchable PDF	Yes	Yes, final

Item	Format	At draft (Clause 11.10.1)	At approval (Clause 11.10.2)
Flood hazard maps: extent, depth, velocity, hazard class, for each AEP and scenario of Clause 11.8.4(a)	GeoTIFF rasters; extents also as GeoPackage polygons	Yes	Yes
Capital Improvement Programme	CSV and PDF	Draft	Yes
Basin release rates, recommended flood-sensitive catchments, regional facility sites, fee-in-lieu unit rate	GeoPackage and CSV	Yes	Yes
Data of Table 11.1 (terrain, drains, waterbodies, cross-sections, river levels and outfall structures, rainfall and levels, flood evidence, land use, soils and groundwater, sewer interaction)	GeoTIFF (terrain); GeoPackage (features); CSV (tables and time series)	Summary	Yes, except security-sensitive asset details
Model files: native, runnable, with all boundary-condition, rainfall and control files, the software name and version, and a run log	Native format, zipped	No	Yes
Calibration and validation report	Searchable PDF	Yes	Yes
Consultation log of comments and responses	PDF or CSV	—	Yes

11D.2 Formats and references

- (a) Raster data shall be GeoTIFF, preferably cloud-optimised, with the cell size stated. Vector data shall be GeoPackage. Tables and time series shall be CSV in UTF-8, with a header row and units in the column names.
- (b) Horizontal and vertical references shall be as in Annex 10B.1(b) and (c). The vertical datum and its relationship to the Chapter 5 river datums of the CWC and I&WRD gauges on the receiving rivers and of I&WRD's embankment, regulator and drain levels shall be stated in every data set that carries levels.
- (c) Times shall be in Indian Standard Time, written as ISO 8601 (yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm+05:30). Units shall be SI.
- (d) Hazard map files shall be named `<basin>_<scenario>_<AEP>_<variable>.tif`, where scenario is a to e of Clause 11.7.4, AEP is written as 50, 10, 1 or 0p2, and variable is depth, velocity, hazard or extent; for example `kukrail_d_1_depth.tif`.
- (e) Waterbody data shall use the fields of Annex 7A. Facility and outfall data shall use the fields of Annex 10B.

11D.3 Metadata

Every published data set shall carry: title; description; Lead Authority; source and method; date of capture; accuracy (for the DEM, the measured vertical RMSE); horizontal and vertical reference; scenario and AEP, where relevant; BSMP version; licence; and a contact.

11D.4 Withholding and personal data

- (a) Security-sensitive details of critical assets may be withheld, with the reason recorded and published (Clauses 10.17.3, 11.10.2). The flood hazard maps and the model shall still be published; only the sensitive attributes are removed.
- (b) Personal data shall not be published (Clause 10.17.3). Flood evidence collected from residents shall be published without names or contact details unless the person consents.

11D.5 Licence, viewer and versions

- (a) Published data and models shall be released under the Government Open Data Licence – India or an equivalent open licence (Clause 10.17.4).
- (b) The hazard maps, regional facility sites and CIP shall also be shown on a public map viewer (Clause 11.10.2).

- (c) Each approved BSMP shall carry a version number and date. Superseded versions shall stay available, marked as superseded, so that designs approved under them can be checked.
- (d) The published model package shall allow a third party with the stated software version to reproduce the published results. Designers may use its boundary conditions for site designs in the basin (Clause 11.10, Commentary).

Form 11-1 — Annual implementation report

Supports Clause 11.11.3 of Chapter 11, with Clauses 4.5.6.3 and 4.13.4 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Uttar Pradesh Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Published by the Lead Authority for each basin with an approved BSMP before each south-west monsoon, by **31 May** (Clause 11.11.3).

Table 11F.1 — Form 11-1, Section A: Basin and plan

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Basin; Lead Authority; partners	_____
A2	BSMP version and date of approval	_____
A3	Reporting year (1 June to 31 May)	_____
A4	Date of publication (by 31 May) and web address	_____

Table 11F.2 — Form 11-1, Section B: CIP progress

CIP rank	Work	Agency	Cost in CIP (₹)	Spent this year (₹)	Spent to date (₹)	Status	Expected completion
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.3 — Form 11-1, Section C: Fee-in-lieu ledger (Clauses 4.5.6.3(c) and 4.13.4)

Regional facility or tank	Volume credited to sites (m³)	Volume delivered (m³)	Fees received (₹)	Fees spent (₹)	Fees held, with year received
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Basin total: volume owed and delivered	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.4 — Form 11-1, Section D: Maintenance completed (Clause 11.8.4(f))

No.	Item	Planned	Done	Date completed
D1	Desilting of drains and canals (length, km; volume, m³)	_____	_____	_____
D2	Tank and tal desilting and restoration (tanks, number; storage restored, m³)	_____	_____	_____
D3	Gate tests (number of gates)	_____	_____	_____
D4	Pump station duty tests (number of stations)	_____	_____	_____
D5	Tank operating rules reviewed with the custodian (number)	_____	_____	_____
D6	Monitoring added: rain gauges, level sensors, flood-mark points (Clause 11.8.4(g))	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.5 — Form 11-1, Section E: Flooding against the levels of service

Event (dates)	Rainfall compared with the design depths (Clause 10.16.2(a))	Level-of-service element (Table 11.2)	Location	Met (yes / no)	Event report reference (Clause 10.16.2)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.6 — Form 11-1, Section F: Review triggers and sign-off

No.	Field	Entry
F1	Event exceeding the 1% AEP design depth in the basin this year (yes / no). If yes, review due within 2 years (Clause 11.11.2)	_____
F2	Statutory land-use plan revised this year (yes / no) (Clause 11.11.2)	_____
F3	Next 10-year review due (date)	_____
F4	Officer of the Lead Authority: name, designation, signature, date	_____